Science
Council
of Canada

Conseil
des sciences
du Canada

Summary of Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Graham W.F. Orpwood
Jean-Pascal Souque

85-2518/

The English and French summaries of this Background Study have been prepared separately. The summaries represent the views of the authors and not necessarily those of the Science Council.

Preface

This document is a summary of the three-volume Background Study of the Science Council of Canada, *Science Education in Canadian Schools*. The individual volumes of the complete study are as follows:

I. *Introduction and Curriculum Analyses*
by Graham W.F. Orpwood and Jean-Pascal Souque

II. *Statistical Database for Canadian Science Education*
by Graham W.F. Orpwood and Isme Alam

III. *Case Studies of Science Teaching*
edited by John Olson and Thomas Russell

Together, these volumes constitute the research portion of a study on Canadian science education conducted by Council between 1980 and 1983. This research provided a database for a nationwide series of conferences which were held to discuss the questions raised by the study and to explore future directions for science education in Canada. The research is now being made available to a more general audience, in the form of the Background Study, to encourage continuing deliberation about the issues by science educators and others concerned with the quality of Canadian science education.

Conclusions and recommended policy initiatives based on the Background Study are contained in a separate Science Council Report entitled: *Science for Every Student: Educating Canadians for Tomorrow's World*. Copies of Report 36, of its summary, and of the Background Study can be ordered using the form at the back of this booklet.

Science Education at a Crossroads

In the late seventies, Canadian elementary and secondary schools were sharply criticized for the way in which science was being taught. In the report of the Commission on Canadian Studies published in 1975, Professor Thomas Symons accused schools of teaching children "virtually nothing about the impact of science in their own country."* According to Symons, science was being taught as a body of knowledge and technique, without any mention of its personal, social or national relevance. David Suzuki, a geneticist and well-known broadcaster, claimed that schools were perpetuating the separation of arts and science as "two cultures," so that potential scientists learned nothing of their moral responsibility to society, while members of even the educated public remained ignorant of the enormous impact of science and technology on their lives. In *École + Science = Échec* (School + Science = Failure), Jacques Désautels charged that Québec schools were not developing scientific attitudes among students and that they were decreasing rather than increasing interest in science, promoting élitism and, in short, miseducating those they should be educating.

If the critics were right, the consequence for Canadians would be serious. A public that did not understand science or its impact on society would be at the mercy of technological change, not in control of it.

In the spring of 1980, the Science Council of Canada began a major study of science and education in Canada. By examining the past and present objectives and methods of Canadian science education, Council hoped to stimulate active deliberation on the issues among as many as possible of those who have a stake in the science education enterprise. The aim of these deliberations was to explore future directions for science education in Canada.

---

*T.H.B. Symons, *To Know Ourselves*, Report of the Commission on Canadian Studies, Association of Universities and Colleges of Canada, Ottawa, 1975, Volume 1, p. 162.

Too often, decisions about curriculum change have been made exclusively by educators. These people often follow a highly rational, linear process in assessing needs and developing instructional strategies to meet them. But individual children and society in general have a bewildering variety of what can be called "needs," and the process of making curriculum involves the resolution of conflicting needs, which implies a political decision. This process must be deliberated over, and in a democratic society all who have a stake in the outcome have the right to participate in such deliberations. Those responsible for decisions must weigh conflicting advice to ensure that future directions are not determined by the loudest shout or the most devious political manoeuvre.

For this reason, the deliberations were designed to include individuals both inside and outside the system: students, teachers, university professors, school board members and employees of the ministries of education on the one hand, and parents, scientists, industrialists, government officials and members of the general public on the other.

What are the Problems?

To pinpoint the problems facing Canadian science education, specialists from different fields were asked to provide their perspective on science teaching in Canada today. Council published their views as a series of discussion papers to stimulate debate.

In *A Canadian Context for Science Education,* James Page argues that science education in Canada lacks Canadian content. Page, a specialist in Canadian studies, maintains that if schools are to produce Canadian citizens aware of their cultural heritage, an understanding of science as part of the cultural fabric of Canada is necessary.

In *Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching,* Glen Aikenhead points out that science is now taught as if it were all- and self-sufficient. Aikenhead, himself experienced in both science teaching and curriculum research and development, believes that an educated person should be capable of taking part in and understanding social and political decisions. An understanding of science is but one among many ways of knowing, he says.

"At present, only the skills of the scientist are taught," charges Donald George, a professional engineer and university teacher. In *An Engineer's View of Science Education,* he suggests that schools should produce people capable of solving practical problems.

What is Scientific Thinking? asks Hugh Munby. Munby, an experienced teacher and teacher educator, believes that current teaching practice fails to produce independent thinkers who understand properly the basis of their knowledge.

Marcel Risi, former commercial director of the Centre de recherche industrielle du Québec (CRIQ), thinks that science is taught only as a body of knowlege. In *Macroscole: A Holistic Approach to Science Teaching,* he criticizes schools for not developing educated people with a "sceptical, divergent, questioning and imaginative approach" towards the solution of problems.

Describing how educators can combine all these diverse objectives in the science curriculum is the task undertaken by Douglas Roberts. A professional educator and member of Council's committee on science and education, Roberts outlines his proposals for a comprehensive and balanced curriculum in *Scientific Literacy: Towards Balance in Setting Goals for School Science Programs.*

Still another problem was raised at a workshop conducted by the study committee: science teaching in Canadian schools is not taking sufficient account of the different needs of boys and girls. That this is so is clear from the fact that girls tend to drop science courses much earlier than do boys.

The views expressed in the discussion papers and in the workshop appeared to confirm the earlier criticisms of Symons, Suzuki and Désautels. On further examination, these criticisms were seen to be concerned not so much with the content of science teaching as with the ways in which students are taught and the purposes for which they learn science. For this reason, the research phase of the study focussed on the official objectives and strategies for science teaching.

Four major research projects were undertaken. Together they provided a view of the teaching of science, both at the level of rhetoric (what is said about science education) and at the level of practice (what actually takes place). The projects involved:

- an analysis of science curriculum guidelines issued by ministries of education in the provinces and territories of Canada;
- a descriptive analysis of 34 science textbooks in use in Canadian schools;
- a survey of science teachers and their views about teaching science, involving nearly 7000 teachers in 1227 schools across the country;
- case studies of actual science teaching practice in 8 Canadian schools.

The results of this research, and the questions it raised, are summarized in the following pages.

Curriculum Guidelines: What Do They Prescribe?

A decision made by a teacher about what or how to teach is simply the last in a chain of decisions, many of which have been made outside the school to cover broad categories of situations. Whether they are made at the ministry, school district or school level, these decisions combine to form a context which sets limits within which individual teachers do their specific planning for the day or week.

The first of the decisions in this chain are made by ministries of education. Working (typically) with committees of science educators, ministry officials draw up guidelines covering each subject or course at each level of schooling. Teachers and other insiders have ample opportunity to take part in the process, but parents, industrialists, business people and those outside educational circles are rarely involved. This system produces a tendency to conservatism because the range of value positions represented is rarely wide. The guidelines specify which subjects must be offered, how much time should be spent on each subject, the requirements for graduation, and so on. For each science subject, they also specify aims, content and, to a certain extent, teaching strategies to be implemented in schools.

In all provinces, a basic core of science is taught through elementary and secondary schools. In the early years*science is integrated with other subjects, but it gradually becomes separated during the middle years. Separate courses in physics,

---

*For purposes of the study, the "early years" were defined as including grades one through six (or seven, in two provinces). Similarly, the "middle years" encompass grades seven to nine (or ten, in two provinces), and the "senior years," grades ten (or eleven) to thirteen. "Science" was taken to be those areas of the school curriculum designated in each province and territory as "science." In practice, this meant that mathematics and social studies were excluded from the study, while physical, biological and earth sciences were included, as was a large grey area of subjects such as computer studies, agriculture and technology that are designated differently in different provinces.

chemistry and biology emerge in the senior years in all provinces.

Throughout Canada, students in the early years of schooling have no choice: science is a required part of the curriculum. The same is true, in most places, for the middle years. By the senior years, students may select from a variety of science courses, and different provinces require students to take different numbers of them in order to graduate. In 9 of the 12 jurisdictions, only one science course beyond the end of grade 9 is required. Two are required in Manitoba, while in Prince Edward Island and Nova Scotia none are required. These are minimal requirements for graduation purposes, but individual districts or schools can set higher requirements.

Between them, the curriculum guidelines issued by ministries of education in Canada offer eight answers to the question, "Why teach science?"

*To teach students the basic concepts in science in a way that will enable them to understand and manipulate scientific information.** This aim emphasizes the value of knowing scientific facts rather than how they were developed or might be applied. It is frequently recommended for those who teach in the early years of schooling by those who teach at higher levels, and is a major goal of science education in every province and territory at every level.

To develop skill in using the methods and tools of science. In recent years, teaching students to observe, classify, measure, draw inferences and make hypotheses has become an increasingly popular reason for teaching science. This objective is also common to most provinces at all three levels.

To promote an understanding of the relationship between science and society. This objective is relatively new. It reflects a degree of popular scepticism about the social and economic potential of science, and a greater awareness in recent years of its limitations. It requires teachers to deal with problematic ethical issues such as energy use, genetic engineering and industrial waste. It is more popular in the middle years than in the early or senior years.

---

*This and subsequent statements of objectives are examples taken from actual curriculum guidelines.

To teach students about the nature of science and its value as a way of learning and communicating about the self, the environment and the universe. Here, the goal is to explain how science works as a discipline. This objective makes considerable use of the history of science and is included in secondary school guidelines in most provinces.

To help students develop as autonomous and creative individuals who live in a scientific and technological society. According to this objective, schools teach science in order to promote students' personal growth, both intellectual and moral. This objective is found in curriculum guidelines for the lower grades in all provinces (it disappears from the guidelines for the senior grades), but no directions are given to teachers for achieving it.

To develop in students attitudes characteristic of scientists (intellectual honesty, openmindedness, desire for accurate knowledge) and appropriate attitudes towards science in general (enthusiasm, appreciation, excitement). This is a popular aim for science teaching in the early years.

To expose students to a representative sample of the technological applications of science. There has recently been renewed interest in this aim which, after a period of popularity in the forties and fifties, was displaced by the objective relating to the nature of science.

To prepare students to take advantage of career opportunities in technology, industry, commerce and business. Adopted in many provinces, this aim is hotly debated by those who believe that schools are not for job training.

Overall, there is considerable consensus among ministry guidelines as to the aims of science education in the early years of schooling, where the emphasis is on process skills and attitude development. In the middle years, a distinct shift occurs towards learning science content for its own sake. Process skills are still emphasized, but science-and-society aims become more popular. Guidelines for biology, chemistry and physics suggest there is less consensus about aims at the senior level, though a movement away from aims of personal growth and development of attitudes, in favour of learning about the nature and applications of science, can be noted.

It would appear that the five issues raised in Council's discussion papers are not stressed in policy documents. The guidelines contain only very occasional references to the need for a Canadian context. (There are exceptions to this: programs in the Northwest Territories to help students understand science as it applies to their own unique environment, and agricultural programs in Prince Edward Island, are two examples.) The relationship of science to other curriculum subjects is almost never discussed in the guidelines, and although many middle-years guidelines speak of the need to teach about the interaction of science, technology and society, schools appear to have largely ignored this topic. The guidelines make no mention of the processes of engineering referred to by Donald George, although there are occasional references to technology and the products of applied science. There is no reference, at any level, to the separate needs of boys and girls.

When it comes to suggesting *how* science should be taught, ministry guidelines are strangely mute. Teaching strategies for the early and middle years are limited, for the most part, to injunctions that science programs should be "activity based" or should use "the inquiry approach." There is also little in the way of prescription for the senior years.

Mostly, ministries influence how teachers teach by approving textbooks. The degree of control over the use of specific textbooks varies from province to province. British Columbia, for example, prescribes mandatory use of a very limited range of textbooks at each level, whereas Ontario and Québec have traditionally authorized wide selections of books from which schools have the right to choose.

Issues for Deliberation

- How many different objectives can a program realistically be expected to attain? Are all aims of equal value? If not, what priorities should be established among them? (Not one guideline document sets out an order of priority among the diverse aims.)
- How can teachers teach the content of science as well as attend to some of the other objectives?
- Given that guidelines rarely establish a hierarchy of process skills to be taught, is there a danger that only lowest-level skills will be attended to?
- How can teachers integrate the subject matter of science with that of social studies, mathematics and the technical fields?
- How can teachers impart attitudes characteristic of scientists, and good attitudes towards science in general, without opening themselves to accusations that they are indoctrinating students?
- What methods could teachers use to place their lessons more within a Canadian context, teach practical engineering skills or take account of the separate needs of boys and girls?
- Will existing procedures, which are supported by teachers, allow science curricula with different objectives to be developed, or will new procedures and the participation of different people in the making of policy decisions be needed if change is to occur?

Textbooks: What Do They Teach?

Until recently, single textbooks comprised the entire science program, but the new emphasis on training in the scientific method and the concern for individualizing instruction that emerged during the 1960s prompted ministries to recommend a wider range of textbooks. Today, 174 science textbooks are officially approved across Canada, while surveys show that 250 different books are actually used in science classrooms (most unapproved textbooks are used as supplementary aids at senior levels). Of these, two-fifths were published before 1975, and one-fifth more than 12 years ago. These statistics are significant because it is the newer books which tend to avoid stereotypes and introduce greater Canadian content and social perspective.

Although ministries decide which textbooks *can* be used, and school boards and schools have some say, the final choice of a textbook for use in the classroom rests with the teacher. Across Canada, 6 of every 10 early-years teachers use no science textbooks in their classrooms. (There is considerable variation here, as this statement applies to 90 per cent of Ontario teachers, but to only 3 per cent of Newfoundland teachers.) By contrast, textbooks are used by 75 per cent of teachers in the middle years and 90 per cent of teachers in the senior years. Generally, teachers find textbooks to be the most useful aid in the preparation of science courses, although early-years teachers prefer to use libraries, museums, science fairs and other learning resources.

Teachers' satisfaction with the textbooks they use is generally quite high, particularly in the case of physics, biology and chemistry textbooks used in the senior years. Most teachers give textbooks high marks for their use of illustrations (particularly in textbooks for the early years), readability, suitability for the intellectual maturity of students, and the degree to which textbooks' objectives and priorities agree with their own. Low marks are given for the use of Canadian examples and for accounts of the applications of science. Although most books are judged to be suitable for fast learners, few, if any, are thought suitable for both fast and slow learners.

How well do textbooks fulfil the aims laid down by ministry guidelines? Broadly speaking, textbooks conform rather well to official objectives for science education, although statements of aims within textbooks are sometimes vague or incomplete, and it is not always clear to whom they are addressed. Considerably more attention is given to scientific content and procedures than to the social implications of science and technology, and three of the eight objectives endorsed by ministries — development of science-related attitudes, the study of applied science and technology, and encouragement towards careers — receive little emphasis.* The issues raised by the authors of Council's discussion papers do not seem to be among the priorities of the textbook writers. The point of view of the engineer is almost entirely missing, and the special needs of girls are not given any emphasis (although the crudest stereotypes have been eliminated).

Ninety-five per cent of experiments suggested in the textbooks are highly structured. Students are seldom asked to formulate a question or define a problem. Laboratory manuals used in the senior grades generally ask students to verify laws previously learned in class (the deductive approach) rather than to generalize from information they themselves have collected (the inductive approach). At all three levels, textbooks rarely ask students to work together during laboratory sessions. Although attention is given to acquiring scientific skills, most textbooks confine themselves to the development of fairly elementary skills.

Of the activities suggested by textbooks to help students apply what they have learned, only one-fifth are invitations to direct action in the home or community; the rest are of a reflective nature. A number of texts discuss the effects of science and technology on society (there is rough parity between good and bad effects), but the majority of these discussions occur in the last chapter and are dealt with perfunctorily. Statements concerning the effects of science and technology claim that they:

---

*The study did not analyze the scientific content of textbooks, but rather the context in which that content is presented.

- result in progress which creates pollution, overpopulation, illness and disturbance to the environment;
- invent medicines and techniques for improving health;
- create machines or processes to facilitate work or increase wellbeing;
- discover beneficial new materials and new sources of energy;
- waste energy and resources and create waste disposal problems;
- induce people to conserve resources and energy and take action against pollution.*

Moral problems (for example, the ethics of genetic engineering or whale hunting) and political matters (waste disposal, deforestation, third-world development) receive scant attention.

In terms of offering a Canadian perspective, science textbooks used in Canadian schools teach almost nothing about science and technology in Canada, or about its history and impact on society. Some books contain population statistics for the United States, but none for Canada; list the racial types in the US, but not in Canada; mention American universities as career goals, but ignore Canadian universities — the list is endless. Where Canadian references do occur, they usually concern problems of pollution and energy. Mining is rarely mentioned as an important factor in Canadian life, while the northern character of Canada, its lifestyle and form of government as these relate to science and technology are virtually ignored. The history of science and technology in Canada is also treated inadequately, though references to famous Canadian scientists, such as Sir Sanford Fleming and Sir Frederick Banting, abound. Almost no information is given about career possibilities in science and technology in Canada. The books with the least information on Canada are those used in the early and senior years. Significantly, French translations of American works contain more Canadian content.

---

*Listed in order of decreasing frequency of appearance.

Concerning the nature of science, most textbooks tell students that science represents both a product and a process. Half the textbooks used in the middle and senior years describe the scientific method as including the following steps: definition of the problem, observation, gathering of information, formulation of hypothesis, designing the experiment with controlled variables, verification and communication of results. There are implied suggestions in these accounts that not only is this how scientists do, in fact, work, but that this is how students should work as well.

Though ministries and teachers assign little importance to teaching the history of science, few textbooks ignore this topic altogether. Historical accounts range from simple lists of the names of scientists and the dates of their discoveries to detailed case studies, though these facts are seldom placed in an historical or social context. Few authors explain the importance of learning the history of science, and those who do are not always clear or straightforward in their attempts.

Issues for Deliberation

- What is the distribution of statements in textbooks concerning the social consequences of science and technology telling students? What effect are these messages having on students' developing attitudes?
- Textbooks teach that scientific inquiry is basically inductive in nature and is based on cooperation and communication. Yet laboratory sessions are not organized to favour this approach. How can learning experiences in the laboratory be designed to better reflect science as it is actually practised?
- How can laboratory tasks be designed to teach higher-level process skills?
- If to understand the nature of science is a major educational objective, should not students and teachers be more aware of the messages concerning this subject found in textbooks?
- Is "textbook science" — that version of science which has become standardized, even stereotyped, by repetition in generations of textbooks — an acceptable model? Do policies such as those in Québec, which require authors to prepare textbooks in accordance with prescribed objectives, constitute a step away from this standardization, or are other measures necessary? Is "the child as scientist" a proper model for teaching scientific thinking?
- Because textbooks remain one of the main instruments by which the aims of science curricula are reached, should not educators have a better understanding of their impact on students' learning?

Teachers: Who Are They and What Do They Think?

More than 98 000 people are teaching science in Canadian elementary and secondary schools. Most are between 25 and 45 years of age, hold university degrees and have more than 10 years' teaching experience. Exceptions to the rule include Québec teachers who tend to be older than the norm, and Newfoundland and Alberta teachers who tend to be younger. A small but definite shift is underway towards more male teachers in the early years and more females in the senior years, where males still outnumber females eight-to-one. On average, male teachers are slightly older and significantly more experienced than their female counterparts. Urban teachers are more experienced than rural teachers.

Most science teachers are enthusiastic about teaching science. Those who are not usually cite their lack of qualifications. Generally, the longer they have been teaching science, the more satisfied teachers are with their work.

How do teachers feel about the educational objectives set out in ministry guidelines? Strong support is given by early-years teachers to those objectives that involve attitudes, process skills and social skills. The learning of scientific content is valued more highly by those with less than 10 years' experience than by those with more.

Even more importance is attached to these objectives by middle-years teachers, who also vote strongly on behalf of teaching science content, the relationship between science and society, the practical applications of science, skill in reading and understanding scientific literature, and the value of science for building and expressing students' understanding of the world. These objectives reflect the broader variety of purposes for which science is taught in these years. "Relating science to the needs and interests of both men and women" and "learning about the practice of science in Canada" are both valued more highly as educational objectives by female than by male teachers. These two objectives are also more popular among urban teachers.

Teachers in the senior years, while supporting all official aims for science teaching, find the same group of objectives chosen by middle-years teachers to be the most important. Again, female teachers accord greater importance to objectives dealing with the relevance of science for men *and* women, and the need for a Canadian context.

Teachers' views of individual objectives differ somewhat from those of ministry officials who devise them. Although there is little disagreement about the importance of teaching content, scientific skills and appropriate attitudes towards science, there are still questions about which skills should be taught at which levels and how the teaching of content can be combined with the achievement of other aims. Further, most teachers feel that learning the content of science is more important in the higher grades than in the lower. "Science and Society" objectives are rated high by all teachers, but these same teachers assign little importance to increasing students' awareness of science as it is practised in Canada. On this point at least, teachers, guidelines and textbooks seem to be in agreement. The critics are right: science is *not* taught in schools as part of the cultural fabric of Canadian society.

Objectives that focus on teaching the nature of science receive little support from teachers, who feel that only the brightest students can achieve them. Personal growth objectives are considered important at lower levels, less so at higher levels. Objectives implying that special attention be given to the needs of girls in science education receive little support, indicating that teachers, as well as ministries, are generally unaware of the low participation of women in the professional science community. Both teachers and ministries show ambivalent attitudes towards applied science and technology objectives: aims concerned with the practical applications of science are rated high at all levels, but those dealing with the skills of engineers and technologists are rated low. Teaching science as it relates to the students' conception of the world is regarded as important by teachers at all levels, but preparing students for career opportunities is seen as an important part of science teaching only in the senior years.

In general, teachers believe they are most successful in achieving those objectives they consider most important. There are a few exceptions: teachers in the early years feel they give insufficient attention to the separate needs of boys and girls, while teachers in the middle and senior years feel the "science and society" objectives receive inadequate treatment. Senior teachers also question their success in developing reading skills and students' ability to understand scientific literature. They are unsure about how well they have related scientific explanations to students' conception of the world. These assessments are inevitably subjective. More reliable measurements of teacher effectiveness will have to wait until improved techniques are developed for evaluating how well students learn.

As has already been noted, teachers rely heavily on textbooks (which they generally find to be of acceptable quality) for planning their courses. They make surprisingly little use, however, of ministry guidelines and other materials not produced specifically for teachers. Overall, teachers find that the time allocated for teaching science is sufficient, but some of them (early-years teachers in particular) complain of inadequate physical facilities and equipment, and poor support for their work from schools and school boards. Physical facilities are considerably better in the senior years, where three out of four teachers have a regular laboratory equipped for experiments by students. Teachers at all levels complained of ineffective (or, in the case of early-years teachers, largely nonexistent) inservice training.

Issues for Deliberation

- Because of declining enrolment, many school systems have stopped recruiting teachers; some have laid off their youngest staff members. This factor has contributed to the increasing age and experience of the science-teaching force. But given that younger teachers are among the best qualified and more equally balanced between the sexes, what will be the effect on science teaching if this trend continues?

- As a rule, teachers are becoming better educated, but:
  - half of all science teachers have not taken a university-level course in mathematics or science in the last ten years;
  - more than half of all early-years teachers, and more than a third of middle-years teachers, have never taken mathematics or science at university level.

  In view of these statistics, should the requirements for teacher certification be changed?

- Significant numbers of teachers, especially at the senior level, have had some experience in science outside the academic world. Such experience is a valuable teaching resource. How can such work experience be recognized and encouraged, and how can it best be used for the benefit of students? How can industry become involved in the science education of our children, without diminishing the integrity of teachers and their responsibility towards students?

- Generally, teachers assign low priority to the objectives outlined by the authors of Council's discussion papers. Are the teachers right, or are the critics? What priorities should be established among the objectives for science education? What relative importance should be given to science at each stage of a student's education?

- Are existing resources adequate for objectives to be met? How can other useful materials (such as government publications) be made more accessible to teachers? How can computer technoogy serve as a curriculum resource for teachers? How can the resources available in secondary schools be used to assist science teachers in the middle and early years?

- How can inservice teacher education be made more effective? Can elementary school teachers be given more opportunities to benefit from such training?

- Most teachers believe boys and girls to be equally able and motivated to undertake science courses, but some teachers think that boys in the early years, and girls in the senior years, are more highly motivated. Does science teaching adequately capitalize on the interests and abilities of all students? How can science activities outside the school (which students find interesting) be better related to what students do inside the school? How can teachers ensure that girls, who drop out of science at a higher rate than boys, will take an active interest in science?

Classrooms: How Is Science Actually Taught?

In practice, teachers are concerned with maintaining their credibility, exerting their influence, gaining access to scarce resources, coping with conflicts between outside expectations and the realities of the classroom, coping with a lack of skill to teach science as innovators imagine it should be taught, fulfilling the expectations of authorities and resolving conflicts between students' interests and the demands of the subject.

In the early years of schooling, about 10 per cent of available time is allotted to science. To save time and arouse student interest, some early-years teachers integrate science with related topics; others outside the early years regard such integration with some suspicion as a "softening" of science experience. Curriculum policy documents encourage integration of subjects, but do not say what science topics should be taught or how they should relate to science work that comes later. This leaves early-years teachers free to follow student interests, which may lead to a little science or a great deal of it, depending on the teachers' own inclinations.

For the most part, teachers in the early years tend to be isolated within the school, by circumstance and by tradition. Cooperation seems to be difficult to arrange and maintain. The presence of a science expert appears not to be an effective way of disseminating ideas about the teaching of science.

In the middle years, the emphasis is on covering a considerable body of material in the time available. "Covering the material" means that the "correct" explanation must be included in students' notes. Teachers stress the specialized vocabulary of science, access to which is controlled through notes and activity sheets designed by teachers.

Teachers in the middle years complain that at this level students are not easy to teach: class control is a central concern. They speak ruefully about the lack of student interest and about how hard it is to engage students intellectually. They worry that students have become afraid of science because of teacher attitudes in the early years.

Middle-years teachers emphasize routines, standards of accuracy and thoroughness. For them, accuracy is at the heart of what they believe to be a scientific approach to problems. This emphasis on approved explanations and the right answer is at odds with the process of inquiry and the conceptual and tentative status of knowledge in science. Yet, such predictable activities as note-taking, copying activity sheets and lab procedures are valued because the accumulated information provides a base for work in the next grade, and because they control and channel energies by keeping students busy with routine, unambiguous work. Teachers appear reluctant to introduce into their well-ordered and coherent system any activity that might upset the smooth running of things. These teachers seem to make very restricted use of the potential that science has for general education.

Senior-years teachers view science as a precise method, and as a system of exact numbers, highly organized bodies of information and specialized terminology. Their concern is to provide students with the notes and with the practice in solving problems that will result in high marks on examinations and allow the student to move through high school to university. Work in the lab is geared towards *illustrating* facts and theories presented in the classroom, *confirming* what is discussed in class, obtaining precise facts and getting the right answers to problems. Activities are designed to develop in students habits of diligence, self-reliance and tidiness. Students are encouraged to become systematic and objective.

Alternative approaches, such as those emphasizing the inquiry process or the relation of science to social issues or technology, are not seen as central activities for the science classroom, but as a means of encouraging interest. Similarly, optional work, though interesting, is not essential and uses up time needed to cover the less interesting "real" work. Teachers are aware of the dilemmas inherent in their work, and many are unhappy about the trade-offs they are constantly making. They recognize that an inquiry approach might help students to better understand what they are doing, but they reject such an approach and the use of optional topics for several reasons: "The daily routine does not allow for such reflection"; "That type of work doesn't sink in"; "It's difficult to evaluate"; "There's no academic value in looking at science-and-society issues"; "Nature-of-science topics take away time from content"; "Such an approach isn't efficient."

Perhaps the practice of these teachers in the classroom reflects their views on the nature of their work. Senior-years teachers appear to believe that students find it difficult to infer relationships and explore the implications of theories on their own. They believe that students need to be encouraged to learn, that they want grades as success tokens, need teachers to "boil down" the material for them, and enjoy seeing a definite end product to their work. In their opinion, students are easily distracted, want push-button answers and cannot read or do math. They are convinced that parents want teachers to ensure the success of their students and that universities want students who have been well prepared for post-secondary work. They do not consider themselves competent to lead discussions about subjective issues.

Given these beliefs, would optional work and the inquiry approach be viewed by teachers as any less peripheral if more time for them were, in fact, available?

On the whole, teachers are faced with the task of teaching large numbers of children whose abilities and home support vary considerably, and of doing so not always with scientific training or ample resources in a society that lacks a clear consensus about what schools are for. The demands placed on teachers are enormous. They counter this situation by the way they themselves construe their task and the means they use to perform it. Confronted with uncertainties about subject matter, student behaviour and educational goals, teachers approach their work in ways that will make it less uncertain, thus accommodating to complex situations over which they have no control.

Issues for Deliberation

- Official documents acknowledge nontraditional topics and approaches with a "rhetoric of options." In practice, these approaches are often abandoned under pressure of time. If options are not exercised by teachers, how appropriate is the "core-plus-options" approach to curriculum policy making?

- Teachers who concentrate on inculcating good habits in students set social priorities ahead of the development of intellectual skills, such as the ability to think critically and exercise good judgement. Doubtless, the socialization of students is important, but given the complex role of science in our cultural and political lives, is the emphasis on socialization a wise priority?

- Teachers think that, for students and their parents, getting high grades is all-important. Teachers blame this attitude for their failure to engage students' interest in the subject. But with grades as their objective, how well do students understand what they are doing in the science classroom? Not knowing how knowledge is achieved in science, the social implications of the technology based on that knowledge or the cultural milieu of science, are not students in danger of seeing the isolated laws and facts they learn as no more than pieces in a unfinished jigsaw puzzle?

- How would teaching innovations affect the persistent problems of teachers, especially those who are not science specialists? What would it mean to teachers and students to take a more adventurous view of the subject? What teaching strategies could be used with nontraditional approaches to content? How would these methods be justified to parents and students? What would be the effect of such strategies on class control, motivation, evaluation and grade progression?

Conclusions: Future Directions

Practical problems, such as those in science education, are not resolved simply by collecting research data. As the reader will have noticed, research data raise as many questions as they answer. The resolution of problems in science education comes about through a process of deliberation in which the (possibly conflicting) values of the participants are as significant as the research findings.

The research findings summarized here played an important role in the deliberative conferences that constituted the final phase of the study. From those conferences flowed recommendations for change in science education policy and practice, based on participants' views of the problems confronting them. These conferences and recommendations have provided grist for Council's own deliberations and have contributed to the development of its Report on this subject. However, while Council can write a "final" report, the task of science education goes on. The questions raised by this research are too numerous and too complex for all of them to be resolved at this time. They are included here in the hope that deliberation will continue among all who are concerned for the scientific literacy of Canadians.

Science Education in Canadian Schools*

Volume I — Introduction and Curriculum Analyses (cat. no. SS21-1/52-1-1984E)
by Graham W.F. Orpwood and Jean-Pascal Souque

- Introduction to the Study
  - Focus of the Study
  - Deliberative Inquiry
  - Research for Policy Deliberation
- Analysis of Science Curriculum Policies
  - Science in the School Curriculum
  - The Offical Aims and Strategies of Science Education
- Analysis of Science Textbooks
  - Textbooks in Science Education
  - Descriptive Analysis: Aims and Methodology
  - Descriptive Analysis: Results

Volume II — Statistical Database for Canadian Science Education
(cat. no. SS21-1/52-2-1984E)
by Graham W.F. Orpwood and Isme Alam with the collaboration of Jean-Pascal Souque

- Survey Objectives and Methodology
- Science Teachers
- Objectives of Science Teaching
- Instructional Contexts of Science Teaching
- Physical, Institutional and Social Contexts of Science Teaching
- Concluding Comments: Questions Raised by the Data

Volume III — Case Studies of Science Teaching (cat. no. SS21-1/52-3-1984E)
Edited by John Olson and Thomas Russell

- Themes and Issues: Introduction to the Case Studies
- Teaching Science at Seaward Elementary School
- Science at Trillium: Science Teaching at an Elementary School
- McBride Triptych: Science Teaching in a Junior High School
- Junior Secondary Science at Northend School
- Science at Derrick Composite High School
- Science at Red Cliff High School
- Lavoisier: Science Teaching at an École Polyvalente
- Science at Prairie High School

*Catalogue number SS 21-1/52-1984E (set). Books and prices available February 1984. For further information contact Supply and Services Canada or the Science Council Publications Office.

Order Form

Please Print

Qty.	Catalogue No. or Title	Price	Total

Total ______

Name: ______________________
Firm: ______________________
____
Address: ______________________
City: ______________________
Province ________ Postal Code ________

☐ Account No. ______________________
☐ Enclosed $ ______________________
☐ Visa ______________________
☐ MasterCard ______________________
Expiry Date ______________________
Bank ______________________

Signature ______________________

Orders must be prepaid by postal money order or cheque made to the order of the Receiver General of Canada and addressed to the Canadian Government Publishing Centre, Ottawa, Canada K1A 0S9.

Also available through authorized bookstore agents or your local bookseller. Add 20% to prices for books to be shipped outside Canada. Payable in Canadian funds.

Related Science Council Publications Available Free From:

Publications Office
Science Council of Canada
100 Metcalfe Street,
16th Floor
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5M1

(613) 992-1142

Scientific Literacy: Towards Balance in Setting Goals for School Science Programs
by Douglas A. Roberts
May '83

Macroscole: A Holistic Approach to Science Teaching
by Marcel Risi
December '82

Québec Science Education — Which Directions?
A Proceedings
April '82

What is Scientific Thinking?
by Hugh Munby
March '82

Who Turns the Wheel?
Proceedings from the workshop on the science education of women
January '82

Policy Issues in Computer-Aided Learning
A Proceedings
December '81

The Science Education of Women in Canada: A Statement of Concern
January '82

An Engineer's View of Science Education
by Donald A. George
July '81

Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching
by Glen S. Aikenhead
January '81

A Canadian Context for Science Education
by James E. Page
October '79

Volume

1

Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Volume I

Introduction and Curriculum Analyses

April 1984

Science Council of Canada
100 Metcalfe Street
17th Floor
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5M1

© Minister of Supply and Services, 1984

Available in Canada through
authorized bookstore agents
and other bookstores
or by mail from

Canadian Government Publishing Centre
Supply and Services Canada
Hull, Québec, Canada K1A 0S9

Vous pouvez également
vous procurer la version française,
à l'adresse ci-dessus

Catalogue No. SS21-1/52-1-1984E
ISBN 0-660-11472-0

Price: Canada: $8.00
Other countries: $9.60

Price subject to change without notice.

Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Volume I

Introduction and Curriculum Analyses

Graham W.F. Orpwood
Jean-Pascal Souque

Graham W.F. Orpwood

Graham Orpwood studied chemistry at Oxford University where he received bachelor's and master's degrees. In 1966, following a year at the University of London, he began a teaching career that included appointments at a secondary school in England and at the St. Lawrence College of Applied Arts and Technology in Kingston, Ontario. He returned to postgraduate studies in 1975, this time at the Ontario Institute for Studies in Education. He received an MA and a PhD from the University of Toronto, and served as a research officer at OISE for a further two years.

In 1980, Dr. Orpwood was appointed as science adviser at the Science Council, where he has acted as project officer of the Science and Education study. He has coauthored a book, *Seeing Curriculum in a New Light,* and several articles in the field of science education and curriculum theory. His current interests are the methodology of policy research, federal-provincial relations in education and public attitudes to science.

Jean-Pascal Souque

Jean-Pascal Souque obtained his science baccalaureate, master's degree and advanced studies diploma in mineral chemistry from the Université de Paris VI. His work focussed on the analysis of mineral samples by fluorescence of X-rays. After receiving an education degree from Laval University, Mr. Souque taught science education there and pursued research work at the doctorate level on the epistemological obstacles and the nature of science taught in high schools. Holder of a teaching diploma for the province of Québec, Mr. Souque taught chemistry for eight years at the Collège Jésus-Marie in Sillery. He also sat on many advisory committees on scientific training with the Québec Ministry of Education and Télé-Université of the Université du Québec. Since 1981, Mr. Souque has been a project officer with the Science Council. His specialization is in training problems related to science and technology policy.

Contents

Foreword 15

Acknowledgements 17

Part One – Introduction to the Study 19

I. Focus of the Study 21

Criticisms of Science Education 22

Objectives of the Study 23

Conceptual Basis of the Study's Objectives 25

  Curriculum Emphases: Expressing Educational Aims through Teaching 25

  Theories of Action: Teaching and Talking about Teaching 26

Scope of the Study 28

  Educational Levels 28

  "Science" in Schools 29

II. Deliberative Inquiry 31

Overview of the Strategy 31

- Science Curricula as Policies 31
- Needs Assessment and Discovery of Aims 32
- Stakeholders in the Science Curriculum 33
- Internal and External Stakeholders 35

Details of the Strategy 36

- Phase 1: What are the problems? 37
- Phase 2: What are the facts? 39
- Phase 3: Where do we go from here? 40

III. Research for Policy Deliberation 42

Explanatory Research and Practical Research 43

Research Program Overview 44

- Analysis of Science Curriculum Policies 44
- Analysis of Science Textbooks 45
- Survey of Science Teachers 45
- Case Studies of Science Teaching 46

Part Two – Analysis of Science Curriculum Policies 49

IV. Science in the School Curriculum 51

Methodology 52

Science Course Offerings 53

Science Requirements for Graduation 55

Time Spent on Science 56

The Development of Science Curriculum Policies 56
    Curriculum Guideline Revision 57
    Textbook Selection 58

V. The Official Aims and Strategies of Science Education 60
Content of Science Teaching 61
Aims of Science Teaching 61
    Science Content 62
    Scientific Skills/Processes 62
    Science and Society 63
    Nature of Science 63
    Personal Growth 63
    Science-Related Attitudes 64
    Applied Science/Technology 64
    Career Opportunities 64
Analyzing the Ministry Guidelines 65
    Early Years 65
    Middle Years 65
    Senior Years 68
Strategies of Science Teaching 68
    Early Years 72
    Middle Years 72
    Senior Years 72
Conclusions: Questions for Research and Deliberation 73
    Orientation of Science in Schools 73
    Specific Aims for Science Education 74
    The Study's Themes in Relation to Provincial Science Curriculum Policies 75

Part Three – Analysis of Science Textbooks 77

VI. Textbooks in Science Education 79
Official Policies 79
The Importance of Textbooks to Teachers 81
Science Textbooks and Teacher Satisfaction 82
The Science Textbook Market 85

VII. Descriptive Analysis: Aims and Methodology 87
Selected Features of Science Textbooks 87
  Textbooks as Material Objects 87
  The Science Content 88
  The Structure of the Content 89
  The Context of the Science Content 90
  Pedagogy 92
Goals and Limitations of the Textbook Analysis 93
Methodology 93

VIII. Descriptive Analysis: Results 97
Stated Aims of Science Textbooks 97
Scientific Skills in the Laboratory 103
Science-Technology-Society Interaction 119
  Application of Knowledge 119
  Socioeconomic Category 122
  Political Category 124
  Scientific Responsibility 124
The Canadian Context 125

The Nature of Science; the History of Science and Technology 134
Questions About the Nature of Science Activity 135
Questions About the History of Science and Technology 139

Appendices

A. Science Curriculum Policy Documents 147
B. Science Textbooks 153
C. Teachers' Assessments of Science Textbooks 171
D. Analytical Schemes Used in Textbook Analysis 199

Notes 213
Publications of the Science Council of Canada 221

List of Figures

Figure I.1 – The Link Between Aims and Teaching Strategies 26
Figure I.2 – Two Levels of Reality for Educational Research 28

Figure II.1 – Educational Aims, Teaching Strategies and the Needs of Students 33
Figure II.2 – Schedule of the Study 37

List of Tables

Table I.1 – Distribution of Grades by Province 29
Table II.1 – Summary of Positions Expressed by Discussion Papers 38

Table IV.1 – Science Course Offerings 54
Table IV.2 – Science Requirements for Graduation 55
Table IV.3 – Time Spent on Science 56

Table V.1 – Categories of Aims for Science Education 62
Table V.2 – Aims of Science Education - Early Years 66
Table V.3 – Aims of Science Education - Middle Years 67
Table V.4 – Aims of Science Education - Senior Years (Biology) 69
Table V.5 – Aims of Science Education - Senior Years (Chemistry) 70
Table V.6 – Aims of Science Education - Senior Years (Physics) 71

Table VI.1 – Sales of School Science Textbooks, 1976 86

Table VII.1 – Comparison of Tables of Contents of Two Chemistry Textbooks 88
Table VII.2 – Two Ways of Introducing the Concept of Oxidation-Reduction 89
Table VII.3 – Number and Distribution of Textbooks Analyzed, by Grade Level, Subject and Language 94
Table VII.4 – Textbooks Analyzed 94

Table VIII.1 – Aims of Science Textbooks 98
Table VIII.2 – Examples of the Relative Importance of Textbook Aims 101
Table VIII.3 – Structure and Task Analysis of Laboratory Work 103
Table VIII.4 – Structure and Task Analysis of Laboratory Work: Comparison with the Results of Tamir and Lunetta 115

Table VIII.5 – Number and Types of Messages Inviting Students to Use Their Knowledge of Science and Technology 117

Table VIII.6 – Number of Science-Technology-Society Messages in Categories 2 (Socioeconomic), 3 (Political) and 4 (Responsibility) 120

Table VIII.7 – Number, Type and Length of Messages Relating to the Canadian Context in Science Textbooks 126

Table VIII.8 – Characteristics of Science Textbooks Containing a Canadian Context 132

Table VIII.9 – Characteristics of Science Textbooks Containing Little or No Canadian Context 133

Table VIII.10 – Number of Survey Respondents Using Textbooks With and Without a Canadian Context 134

Table VIII.11 – The History of Science in Science Textbooks 141

Foreword

Excellence in science and technology is essential for Canada's successful participation in the information age. Canada's youth, therefore, must have a science education of the highest possible quality. This was among the main conclusions of the Science Council's recently published report, *Science for Every Student: Educating Canadians for Tomorrow's World.*

Science for Every Student is the product of a comprehensive study of science education in Canadian schools begun by Council in 1980. The research program, designed by Council's Science Education Committee in cooperation with every ministry of education and science teachers' association in Canada, was carried out in each province and territory by some 15 researchers. Interim research reports, discussion papers and workshop proceedings formed the basis for a series of nationwide conferences during which parents and students, teachers and administrators, scientists and engineers, and representatives of business and labour discussed future directions for science education. Results from the conferences were then used to develop the conclusions and recommendations of the final report.

To stimulate continuing discussion leading to concrete changes in Canadian science education, and to provide a factual basis for such discussion, the Science Council is now publishing the results of the research as a background study, *Science Education in Canadian Schools.* Background Study 52 concludes, not with its own recommendations, but with questions for further deliberation.

The background study is in three volumes, coordinated by the study's project officers, Dr. Graham Orpwood and Mr. Jean-Pascal Souque. Volume I, *Introduction and Curriculum Analyses,* describes the philosophy and methodology of the study. Volume I also includes an analysis of science textbooks used in Canadian schools. Volume II, *Statistical Database for Canadian Science Education,* comprises the results of a national survey of science teachers. Volume III, *Case Studies of Science Teaching,* has been prepared by professors John Olson and Thomas Russell of Queen's University, Kingston, Ontario, in collaboration with the project officers and a team of researchers from across Canada. This volume reports eight case studies of science teaching in action in Canadian schools. To retain the anonymity of the teachers who allowed their work to be observed, the names of schools and individuals have been changed throughout this volume.

As with all background studies published by the Science Council, this study represents the views of the authors and not necessarily those of Council.

James M. Gilmour
Director of Research
Science Council of Canada

Acknowledgements

This study has been made possible through the cooperation and assistance of so many individuals and organizations that identification of particular ones is difficult, even perhaps inappropriate. Nevertheless, we wish to express our gratitude especially to certain persons. The Science and Education Committee of the Science Council of Canada, under the chairmanship of Dr. Rocke Robertson and Dr. Lawson Drake, has provided valuable encouragement and guidance. Our colleagues on the science education study — Isme Alam, Paul Dufour, Janet Ferguson, Lise Parks and Nancy Weese — have been a constant source of assistance and good advice. And Colleen Gray's editorial hand has resulted in a much improved final product.

Adeline Toussaint, Marshall Nay and Paul Robinson helped while the textbook analysis frameworks were being designed. Dr. Vincent Lunetta kindly encouraged us to use "The Laboratory Structure and Task Analysis Inventory" instrument for our own purposes. The following researchers contributed to the analysis of science textbooks: Garth Benson, Colette Bertrand, Shirley Brauer, Laurier Busque, Bruce Curtis, Roger Fox, Louise Gaudreau, Arthur Geddis, Sharon Haggerty, Charles Hammill, Anne Lamarche, Oliver Lantz, P. Henk Luyten, James Raffan, Karun Raizada, Michael Shiner, Marcel Thouin and Robert G. Whyte. This collaboration is highly appreciated.

Finally, the study could not have taken place without the cooperation both of the Council of Ministers of Education, Canada (CMEC) (and specifically those individuals in each provincial department or ministry of education who have served as liaison persons) and also of the science teaching professionals, especially the science teachers' organizations in each province and territory. To all of these we are indebted.

Part One

Introduction to the Study

I. Focus of the Study

Science forms part of the curriculum of almost every school in Canada. In all provinces and territories, students are required by ministry/department of education policy to study this subject from their earliest years in the classroom until at least grade 9 or 10. In many of these classrooms, special facilities for use in teaching and learning science are provided; in most, textbooks focussed on science are a major component of the students' experience. Correspondingly, teaching science is an important activity for many teachers. For some, it is their specialty; for others, one subject among several that they teach.

But why do students study science at all? For what purposes are all these provisions made? For what objectives are the textbooks and classroom activities designed? What educational aims are in the minds of those who teach? Furthermore, are these various intentions, purposes, and aims congruent? Are the aims of science education set forth in ministry/department policies reflected in the objectives of teachers, textbooks, and classroom activities? And, most important of all, do all (or any) of these objectives reflect the needs of students in school, who are living and growing as individuals, as members of society and as participants in the Canadian economy, now, to the turn of the century and beyond?

Why is science taught? Although this might seem a trivial question, it is important not just to assure oneself that there are answers — that science is a defensible part of what students are offered — but because the nature of the answer(s) affects what one expects of science education. And, in asking about the aims of science education, we are asking about the health of the enterprise itself and about its relation to the social context. The relationships among the stated aims of science education, the concrete realities of science in schools and the future needs of Canadians are recurrent themes in this study of science education in elementary and secondary schools.

While this background study is bound, for convenience, in three volumes, it is not a series of independent studies. The research program of the overall study consists of a group of interrelated components, all of which are set in the larger context of an overall strategy called a "deliberative inquiry." To assist the reader in appreciating this strategy and the relationships among its various components, part one of this volume contains discussions of the objectives and focus of the study (chapter I), of the overall strategy of deliberative inquiry (chapter II) and of the research program conducted (chapter III). Parts two and three describe in detail analyses of provincial curriculum policies for science and of science textbooks. Volume II contains reports of a survey of science teachers and volume III, case studies of science teaching.

Criticisms of Science Education

In October 1979, the Science Council decided to undertake a study of science education in response to various criticisms that had begun to surface during the previous few years. Criticism of education is nothing new; the school curriculum is a perennial target for critical comment from inside and outside the school system. But, from time to time, criticisms of a particular type come together to generate an especially strong challenge for change. The history of education contains many examples. In the case of science education, the post-Sputnik move towards a greater emphasis on teaching about the nature of science is one such instance. But the present round of criticism is quite different. At issue now is not that students are not learning what science is, nor that they are failing to learn enough of it (although these are both of continuing concern to some critics), but rather that students do not come to appreciate the personal, social or national relevance of science.

A significant influence on the Science Council's decision to conduct the study was Professor Thomas Symons. He observed in the report of the Commission on Canadian Studies:

> "Canadian school children learn of the accomplishments and impact of science in other countries. . . but they learn virtually nothing about the impact of science in their own country. And the reason is that they are not being taught such matters."[1]

Symons was, of course, concerned that science was not being identified for students as part of the "cultural fabric of society."[2] Rather, it was being presented as a body of knowledge and technique, divorced from any national context of practice and application including its historical development in and social implications for the Canadian community. Such a criticism is puzzling, even offensive, to many who are trained in science and who take particular pride in the universality of their discipline. This reaction is a matter to which we shall return.

David Suzuki, himself a member of the Science Council of Canada, is another prominent critic of Canadian science education. He has often suggested that by perpetuating the separation of the two cultures (arts and science), schools "fail to educate."[3] Such an education, he claims, serves neither the country's future scientists nor the general public and their political leaders.[4] On the one hand, potential scientists are not taught that they have a moral responsibility to society, while, on the other, members of the public, even the highly educated public, are shamelessly ignorant about the effects of science and technology on their lives.

While these criticisms were directed towards science education throughout Canada, more specific concerns were also surfacing in some provinces, where more intensive research into the state of science teaching had been conducted. In Québec, for example, Jacques Désautels, in *École + Science = Échec* (School + Science = Failure), strongly challenged current ways of teaching science. He warned:

> "Research results show that students are not developing scientific attitudes. Their interest in science is decreasing instead of increasing. Still worse, because of 'streaming' in schools, science teaching promotes elitism rather than scientific literacy. Not only do our students fail to learn anything; they are miseducated."[5]

Thus, both at the national and at the provincial level, concerns were being expressed about the state of science education in schools.

The Science Council did not accept these criticisms without question. Nevertheless, coming from well-placed observers of the educational system, they were cause for concern. If the assertions were correct, the consequences for Canada and Canadians were serious. In a society increasingly dependent upon science and technology, a public with little or no understanding of science and its impact on society is at the mercy of technological change. Recognizing the seriousness of these criticisms, the Science Council of Canada concluded that the establishment of a study on science education in Canada could be justified as important to the scientific health of the nation and thus as falling within its responsibilities.

Concern over the state of science education is not a uniquely Canadian phenomenon. In the past several years, reviews of science education have been conducted in the United States[6] and in England.[7] And, in the developing countries, the need for revitalizing scientific and technological education is so great that UNESCO recently sponsored a special conference on the subject.[8] Thus, the Science Council's study can be seen as parallel to other national responses to similar concerns about the teaching of science in schools.

Objectives of the Study

The criticisms and concerns have been articulated with sometimes disarming clarity and force. However, it does not follow that a problem amenable to research and policy analysis is equally clearly discernible.[9]

While all the critics agree that science education in Canada needs improvement, they do not observe the same symptoms, diagnose the same ailment or prescribe the same remedy. Suzuki's concern for the lack of a sense of moral responsibility among science specialists would not be affected by Symons's suggestions for greater attention to Canadian science. Nor would Désautels's preferred curriculum solve the problem of inadequately trained human resources for high technology industry, identified by others. It is difficult, therefore, to identify a research problem directly based on these comments without implicitly backing the position of one critic over the others and thus, to some degree at least, anticipating the conclusions of the study.

However, the apparent confusion can be resolved into a series of arguments over the ways students are taught science and the purposes for which students learn science. The critics are arguing that science education is not being directed towards what they regard as the most important objectives or, at least, that science education is not achieving the objectives it claims to be achieving. And, for the most part, they are basing their arguments on assessments of the present or future needs of students. This type of criticism is quite distinct from concern over the content of science education. For example, we have not been hearing in recent years that students should learn more (or less) about, say, magnetism or genetics, but that such topics should be learned so that students come to recognize the social and personal relevance of scientific knowledge.

Based on this interpretation of the thrust of the major critics of science education in Canada, the study was established in the spring of 1980 with three general aims:

- to establish a documented basis for describing the present purposes and general characteristics of science teaching in Canadian schools;
- to conduct an historical analysis of science education in Canada;
- to stimulate active deliberation concerning future options for science education in Canada.

The first of these aims arises from the need to have a factual basis for debating criticisms of the variety discussed earlier. Since Canadian science education generally lacked such a basis, the research reported in this background study was conducted to meet this need. At the time of writing, work on the second aim is still in progress. The historical perspective enables one to understand present practice (including the objectives of the enterprise) in the light of past experience. Very little effort has been made in the past to collect or analyze the historical background of science education in Canada. The third and most important aim follows from the first two. If change is not only to be justified logically but also to be implemented practically, then those responsible for science education in Canada must themselves deliberate over their purposes and practices. Work towards this aim consists of stimulating a process rather than developing a product and will be discussed in more detail in chapter II. For the present, the concept of "purposes of science teaching" must be clarified and linked to concrete targets of research.

Conceptual Basis of the Study's Objectives

Two pieces of theoretical work have been particularly useful in clarifying what we mean by "purposes, aims, or objectives in science teaching," and how we have tried to identify them in practice: Roberts's concept of a "curriculum emphasis,"[10] and Argyris and Schön's analysis of different "theories of action."[11] In this section, we explain these two conceptual components of the study and use them to clarify the relationships among the aims of science education, the practice of science teaching in schools, and the needs of students. The third conceptual component, educational "needs," is more difficult to explore. "Needs" adds a normative or ethical component which changes the nature of the overall problem. It is the key to understanding the methodology of the study and will be discussed in detail in chapter II.

Curriculum Emphases: Expressing Educational Aims through Teaching

The teaching of science, like most other forms of communication, conveys more than one set of messages to its recipients simultaneously. At one level, science teaching communicates scientific information. But, beyond this level of communication, science content is always embedded in a contextual web of intent or purpose. The various contexts in which science topics can be presented can result in correspondingly different learnings on the part of the student. These different "contexts" have been described by Roberts as "curriculum emphases." He explains this term as follows:

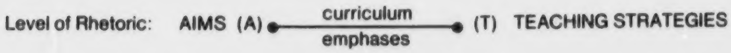
> "A curriculum emphasis in science education is a coherent set of messages to the student *about* science (rather than *within* science). Such messages constitute objectives which go beyond learning the facts, principles, laws, and theories of the subject matter itself — objectives which provide answers to the student question: 'Why am I learning this?' "[12]

And, while part of any science educator's concern is for teaching the content of science to students, another — frequently an even more important part — is that the content be learned for some purpose beyond itself.

The example of separate treatments of the same science topic in two different grade 8 textbooks illustrates the point. In one textbook, all of the information about the methods of heat transfer (conduction, convection and radiation) is set in a context of explanations about how refrigerators and solar heaters work. Photographs and "cut-away" diagrams illustrate these explanations. In the other, the same scientific principles are discussed but, this time, accompanied by an historical comparison of different (and competing) theories to explain thermal phenomena. This account is illustrated with excerpts from 18th-century scientific reports. In each case, the science content being communicated is the same while the contextual communication — the curriculum emphasis — is markedly different. And these different emphases are the concrete representations of each book's different purposes for a student's learning of science.

Considerable research in recent years has shown the "curriculum emphasis" concept to be useful, not only for analyzing textbooks, but also for understanding curriculum policy debate,[13] for developing instructional units[14] and for interpreting different strategies of classroom teaching.[15] In the present context, it provides a conceptual link between two key components of the study, the aims or purposes for science education and the teaching strategies through which those aims are realized in practice. This relationship (see Figure I.1) appears simple when viewed abstractly. However, when one examines, as the study has had to do, both the rhetoric[*] and the practice of science education, its complexity intensifies. For clarification of this conceptual component of the research, we turn to the analysis of Argyris and Schön, whose concern is with how individual professionals think and work within institutional contexts.

Figure I.1 – The Link Between Aims and Teaching Strategies



Theories of Action: Teaching and Talking about Teaching

Relating theory to practice in education — as in most other professional fields — has been a traditionally controversial and seemingly intractable problem. This is not the place to review the variety of attempts at resolving it and the corresponding variety of consequences for research and professional education. The "curriculum emphasis" concept helps one to understand the relationship between the aims of science education and the strategies teachers use in classrooms. But one must also realize that this concept can apply to education in more than one way.

---

[*] Note that "rhetoric" is being used here in its root sense of "language designed to persuade or impress" and not in its more usual, modern sense implying insincerity or emptiness.

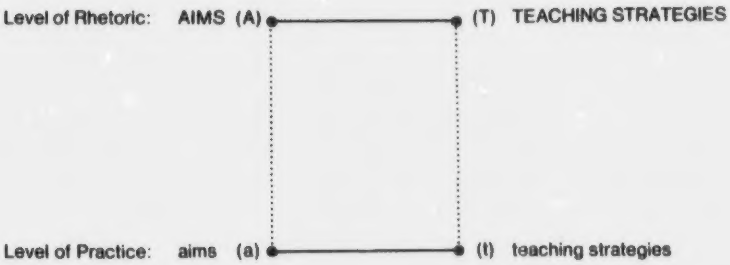
Argyris and Schön, whose work has focussed on the problems of increasing professional competence within organizations, have developed the notion that individuals' behaviours are determined on the basis of personal "theories of action."[16] Such theories are about how to produce intended consequences and thus about human effectiveness.[17] Everyone has a "theory of action" for their deliberate activities, whether or not they have articulated these theories. However, Argyris and Schön point out that people do not necessarily behave congruently with their stated theories of action.

> "When someone is asked how he would behave under certain circumstances, the answer he usually gives is his espoused theory of action for that situation. This is the theory of action to which he gives allegiance and which, upon request, he communicates to others. However, the theory that actually governs his action is his theory-in-use, which may or may not be compatible with his espoused theory; furthermore, the individual may or may not be aware of the incompatibility of the two theories."[18]

Argyris and Schön assert that "although people do not behave congruently with their espoused theories,. . . they do behave congruently with their theories-in-use, and they are unaware of this fact."[19] According to this notion, all professional practitioners, such as doctors, teachers and research scientists, have two sets of theories relating to the various parts of their professional practice. Such an idea is not, of course, a revolutionary one; the gap between practice and theory, between concrete events and the rhetoric concerning them, is well documented in several professional fields. Argyris and Schön's contributions are, firstly, in generalizing the idea and, secondly, in developing proposals for professional improvement on the basis of this idea.

Following Argyris and Schön, our research program addresses two levels of reality (Figure I.2). One level corresponds to the "espoused theories" of educators, described here as the "level of rhetoric." At this level, talk about teaching or about educational aims takes place. Policy statements from ministries/departments of education such as curriculum guidelines, prefaces to textbooks and teachers' talk about the aims and techniques of science teaching all function, by definition, at this level. The second level, the "level of practice," corresponds to teachers' "theories-in-use" and represents the level of educational reality at which science classrooms function. The ways in which teachers actually teach, the real content of textbooks, and the concrete activities in which students participate are all at this level. It must be stressed that recognition of these two levels of reality implies no pejorative attitude towards activity at either level. Practice is not necessarily worse because it does not correspond to rhetoric nor is talk about practice necessarily futile because its outcome cannot be translated directly into action. However, research into science education must be planned to take into account the existence of these two levels (and the inevitable discrepancies between them). Only through such planning can research be expected to increase the common understanding — common, that is, both to practitioners and observers or critics — of science education in Canada.

Figure I.2 – Two Levels of Reality for Educational Research



Scope of the Study

Certain practical limits to the scope of the study were established at the outset. Two, in particular, deserve mention: the levels of education at which the teaching of science was examined; and the definition of "science" stipulated by the study.

Educational Levels

The study is primarily concerned with the teaching of science at the precollege levels only. The main reason relates to the objectives of the study, which are focussed on the purposes or aims of science education. As students grow and move through the educational system (from kindergarten on, even perhaps to graduate school) their reasons or purposes for studying science change and so, correspondingly, do those of the programs and courses. At the highest levels, where students intend to specialize in scientific work for a career, program objectives are relatively few and specific (even if they are not well articulated). By contrast, at the elementary and secondary levels, the numerous and broad objectives correspond to the much broader range of students. At these levels, schools must attend to the needs of all students and science programs must therefore serve a wide variety of purposes. And it is to science education at these levels that the criticisms considered earlier have been directed.

The selection of science education in elementary and secondary schools as the study's major focus does not, of course, preclude consideration of other related activities which impinge on school science: university or college-level science education, science writing, broadcasting and films, museums and science centres, and any activity, organization, publication or event that can have an impact on the teaching or learning of science in school.

Table I.1 – Distribution of Grades by Province

Province/Territory	Early Years	Middle Years	Senior Years
Newfoundland	K-6	7-9	10-11[a]
Prince Edward Island	1-6	7-9	10-12
Nova Scotia	K-6	7-9	10-12
New Brunswick	1-6	7-9	10-12
Québec	K-6	7-9	10-11
Ontario	K-6	7-10	11-13
Manitoba	K-6	7-9	10-12
Saskatchewan	K-6	7-9	10-12
Alberta	K-6	7-9	10-12
British Columbia	K-7	8-10	11-12
Northwest Territories	K-6	7-9	10-12
Yukon	K-7	8-10	11-12

[a] At the time of data collection, Newfoundland had not yet implemented its grade 12 program.

Within the years of elementary and secondary schooling, each province and territory groups its grades into levels for curriculum purposes. Following this practice, we decided to refer to three clusters of grades as "early years," "middle years" and "senior years" within each jurisdiction. However, provinces group their grades in various ways. We therefore followed the grouping of grades encountered in each province rather than imposing a uniform distribution. Table I.1 shows the three levels used throughout the study with the corresponding grades.

"Science" in Schools

The stipulation of what is regarded as "science" in the context of this study has been controversial because it is necessarily arbitrary. The controversy was not readily resolved by using a formal definition of science to distinguish among school programs. Lists of school programs often have administrative rather than philosophical significance. Yet school people know what they mean when they talk of "science" programs as distinct from other school program areas. And since the school science curriculum is the focus of the study, such school convention has also appeared to be the best basis for a stipulated definition of "science." The study has therefore examined those areas of the school curriculum designated in each province and territory as "science."

Concretely, this has meant that physical, biological and earth sciences have been included and mathematics and social studies have been excluded from the major focus of the study. However, the effect of these latter subjects on the teaching and learning of science has also been considered. This leaves a number of subjects, such as computer studies, agriculture and technology in a poorly defined "grey area." In provinces where these subjects are considered to be science subjects, they have been included.

II. Deliberative Inquiry

Overview of the Strategy

In this study, we take the position that discussions concerned with changing the school curriculum inevitably possess both a rational and a political character. While much of what follows in this three-volume background study is an account of apparently conventional research, the rational/political character of the context in which it was conducted is crucial to understanding its significance. It is thus worthwhile to explain the position in some detail in order to clarify the study's overall strategy whose very name, deliberative inquiry, is intended to convey its eclectic nature. There are essentially three grounds upon which this position rests.

Science Curricula as Policies

That a study focussed on the teaching of science in Canadian schools has both a rational and a political character derives, first, from the view that the school curriculum is itself a form of policy. This is not the conventional view. The traditional view sees the process of curriculum change as being highly rational and frequently linear. Aims are first identified, sometimes on the basis of so-called needs assessments; then instructional strategies are developed as the means of reaching those aims. One of us has argued at length elsewhere[1] that such a view is inadequate. Curricula should not be regarded as though they were mere artifacts, things that can be made. If that were the case, the rational planning models might indeed be appropriate. However, a curriculum decision represents more than just a rational conclusion to include topic X or method Y in a curriculum document. It represents a commitment on the part of an individual or a group to act in a specific manner in a given context (defined in terms of both time and place). And that is a political judgement as well as a rational one.

An example may clarify the point. Suppose the coordinator of science for a school board has made the decision to include in the grade 7 science program for the board a unit on energy to be taught with a curriculum emphasis on its social relevance. And suppose, also, that this decision has been endorsed by the director of education; it then becomes part of the board's official program, which teachers of grade 7 science in that jurisdiction are required to teach. The decision is, or should be, a rational one — the coordinator should be able to defend it with reasons, presumably based on students' prior knowledge, their future needs, the topic's place in the discipline, the social context of education and so on. But the decision also has political impact; it requires people (mostly teachers) to act in certain ways — to teach energy with the approved emphasis — when placed in specific circumstances: this board, this grade, this year and so on. If the decision-making process has failed to take into account this duality of character, the chances of effecting a defensible change are small. If the coordinator acts only in a rational manner and fails to consider the impact of the new requirement on the teachers involved, the decision, however defensible in principle, will likely be resented and very possibly not implemented. If, by contrast, the coordinator acts in a purely political manner and disregards the substantive merits of the decision, he has failed to live up to a professional responsibility to seek ways of improving the board's science program.

Curricula are therefore regarded as a type of policy[2] involving rules, plans or guides for the determination of what shall be taught in specific situations. They are therefore distinct from curriculum resources such as textbooks that are developed for general and voluntary use. A curriculum is both a product of reason and a commitment of will. It has political force as well as rational content. A study of science curricula in Canadian schools must take this duality into account, particularly if that study seeks to recommend changes to those curricula.

Needs Assessment and Discovery of Aims

It is sometimes suggested that the key to curriculum planning is to begin with a systematic empirical assessment of what students ought to learn.[3] Indeed, we have acknowledged that arguments about what ought to be taught in science classes and criticisms of what is taught are usually based on assumptions concerning the needs of students either now or in the future. But the future is by no means clear. And the problem is that both children and the society in which they live have a bewildering variety of what can be called needs, each suggesting a different direction for the curriculum. As Len Berk points out:

> "We have no standard procedure for resolving disputes over who needs how much of what. In fact, the individual needs that can, in principle, be met through schooling can also, in principle, be obviated by altering some feature of our public life. . . . Because we

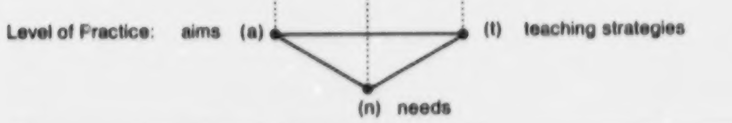
> cannot assume our public life is beyond question, any attempt to determine what students need is liable to be contentious."[4]

Berk refers to an earlier wave of enthusiasm in the United States for "scientific curriculum-making," as it was actually called in the 1920s. His conclusion is disarmingly clear:

> "As a procedure resembling inquiry more than deliberation, needs assessment seems to supply a dodge in the face of disagreement; it would permit us to discover the aims of schooling instead of our having to decide them. Franklin Bobbitt also hoped to discover the aims of schooling and was, properly, roasted for it. Then as now deliberation about aims seemed risky, unmanageable, and subject to contamination by politics. So it is. Discovery of aims (or of the needs that produce them) seemed systematic, authoritative, and politically antiseptic. This is a delusion."[5]

While educational needs and the corresponding aims or objectives are important for the assessment or determination of science curricula at the levels of both rhetoric and practice (see Figure II.1), they cannot be discovered from the research literature. They must be deliberated over and, in a democratic society, all who have a stake in the outcome have the right to participate in such deliberations.

Figure II.1 – Educational Aims, Teaching Strategies, and the Needs of Students



Stakeholders in the Science Curriculum

The proponents of empirical research as the means of determining the curriculum assume that there is in reality a social consensus on the goals of education and that the problem lies in uncovering that consensus. By contrast, in this study we view society as containing value conflicts over educational goals and regard the problem as one of consensus-building.[6]

Talk of value conflicts implies the existence of interest groups and consensus-building among different interest groups in society implies a process of political deliberation. Of course, the specifics of the curriculum are not often the focus of formal political debate nor do they usually form planks in political platforms at election time. However, the needs of students in school, the orientation of the school curriculum and the concrete activities of the classroom can be regarded as the product of reasoned debate among definite and distinct interest groups.

Time has not altered this process, as a reading of Aristotle's *Politics* shows. As he cites what we would call the school curriculum as a paradigm of a political problem, he writes:

> "As things are, there is disagreement about the subjects. For mankind are by no means agreed about the things to be taught. . . . The existing practice is perplexing, no one knows on what principle we should proceed – should the useful in life, or should virtue, or should higher knowledge be the aim of our training, all three options have been entertained."[7]

The contemporary relevance of the nature of the controversies is striking. Yet, as we have noted already, such a political view of the curriculum has not been common in the literature.

In a recent article, Connelly and his colleagues suggested that the concept of "stakeholders" can help in explaining the roles of the many individuals and groups who hold views about the school curriculum and desire to influence curriculum decisions correspondingly.[8] As they point out, everyone has some stake in the school curriculum.

> "This claim may be direct and immediate, or it may be tenuous or obscure — but it is always there, whether strident or passively silent. The school is the creature of society, shaping it and being shaped by it, reflecting its characteristics and responding to its needs, and in so doing, it — and the teacher — cannot disregard the stakeholders."[9]

Students, teachers, parents, school trustees, the scientific community, industry, the labour movement and many other groups and institutions all hold stakes in the science curriculum. The critics of science education whose comments were outlined earlier are all stakeholders and their stakes are as different as their backgrounds and viewpoints. In recognizing a variety of stakeholders in the science curriculum, we are not necessarily imputing to such individuals or groups any improper motivation or intent to subvert the schools to their own purposes. We merely recognize a reality whose existence must be of key importance in planning a study on science education in Canadian schools.

A study in which many stakes in the science curriculum are seen as legitimate is likely to have a significantly different outcome than one dominated by one or a narrow group of stakeholders. For example, in the post-Sputnik era, the science curriculum (especially in the US) changed — at least at the level of rhetoric — from an emphasis on the domestic and industrial application of science (dominant in the curricula of the 1940s and 1950s) to a more abstract and intellectually sophisticated emphasis on the nature of science, its structure and processes. It was no coincidence that this reorientation was influenced by scientists in the academic community and funded (in the US at least) by the National Science Foundation. Current concerns over the lack of relevance of such curricula to society and to students' own experience of life are demonstrating the effect of allowing one group of stakeholders to have an overriding voice in determining the curriculum.

The strong commitment of individual stakeholders to certain curriculum emphases often results in their viewing other emphases (equally strongly promoted by other stakeholders) as distractions, as watering down the curriculum or as downright misleading. The resistance of some members of the scientific community to Symons's suggestions that science be placed in a Canadian context is a case in point. Decision makers must weigh the conflicting advice and ask who are the relevant stakeholders and what are their stakes. If these questions are not attended to, the future direction of science education in Canada can be determined by the loudest shout or the most devious political manoeuvre. However, if the questions can be answered, then the issues can be settled deliberatively with regard to the reasons for action.[10] The process should therefore be both political and rational.

Internal and External Stakeholders

Not all stakeholders are equal, however. The "internal stakeholders" are politically or professionally accountable for the choices made in science education. They are ministers of education and school trustees who have political responsibility and accountability and their officials, administrators and teachers, who are accountable by virtue of their employment in ministries or school systems. All others are, by definition, "external stakeholders" — university professors, persons in business and industry, members of the public, parents and of course the Science Council of Canada itself. They have stakes in the curriculum but are not politically or professionally accountable for it. This combination of having a stake in education and freedom from accountability gives them the privilege of criticizing the work of education — and many do, often and vigorously. However, if external stakeholders are to contribute to the improvement of education, they must observe and accept certain ethical principles* governing their relationship to the internal stakeholders.[11] A specific instance of this relationship appears below.

During the course of the study, comments were made concerning the propriety of a federally chartered and funded agency such as the Science Council of Canada being involved in a study of science education in elementary and secondary schools, clearly an area of provincial jurisdiction. The Science Council recognizes provincial authorities as internal and itself as external to the system of science education, but argues that its mandate gives it an unquestionable stake in the enterprise. Moreover, the Council of Ministers of Education, Canada (CMEC), in a formal vote at its meeting in September 1980, approved cooperation with the Science Council in the study, subject to certain conditions concerning the scope and day-to-day conduct of the study.

---

* These principles will be discussed in the context of their application in the specific and different parts of the study.

Finally, what of the Science Council of Canada's own stake in science education? Since it has never declared itself on the subject in its past reports, no "position" can be assumed in advance. Indeed, the study can be regarded as the means by which the Science Council has determined the nature of its stake in the educational system. Its final report of the present study is the statement from which its stake can be inferred.* During the course of the study, Council has been concerned to listen to others, to conduct its own research, and to facilitate deliberations among a wide variety of stakeholders.

Details of the Strategy

The third aim of the study, "to stimulate active deliberation concerning future options for science education in Canada," is the major one because both of the other aims are intended to contribute to its achievement. The following outlines the means by which this goal has been reached.

The name "deliberative inquiry" is intended to convey the idea of two processes taking place in an integrated and mutually informing manner throughout the study: inquiry into the present (and past) objectives and methods of science education in schools, and deliberation over future directions in the field. Considered from another perspective, these two processes each embody, though to differing extents, the rational and political characteristics essential to a study focussed on the school curriculum. Indeed, it is possible at various stages of the study to understand its activities in terms of their rational and political functions.

To accomplish the aims of the study, deliberative inquiry must generate three components:

- a continuing commitment to deliberation and possible change on the part of all stakeholders in Canadian science education, particularly on the part of insiders;
- a reliable database about the context in which any proposed change in science education must take place;
- a range of issues and alternative courses of action to form the substance of deliberation.

Since these components are interrelated, all three required simultaneous attention. However, at any given time, one component occupied centre stage. The study's progress comprised three overlapping phases, lasting for some three and one half years (see Figure II.2).

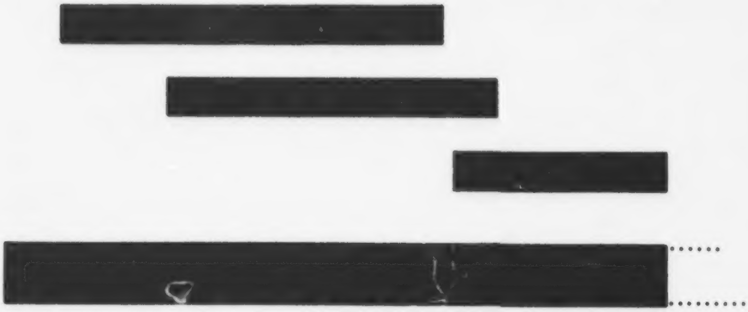
---

* See Report 36, *Science for Every Student: Educating Canadians for Tomorrow's World*, Science Council of Canada, Ottawa, 1984.

1. Issue identification (May 1980 to August 1982)
2. Data collection (January 1981 to December 1982)
3. Problem resolution (September 1982 to December 1983)

The following summary of the study's activities makes clear how each phase contributes to each of the three components.

Figure II.2 – Schedule of the Study



Phase 1: What are the problems?

James Page's discussion paper, *A Canadian Context for Science Education*, marked the beginning of the first phase, issue identification. This paper was the first of a series of discussion papers, in which authors, from their various perspectives as individual stakeholders, offered their particular critical but constructive commentary on science education.[12] Each paper can be analyzed according to the view of the educated person its author portrays and therefore according to what the author perceived to be the learner's needs and the desirable aims for science education (see Table II.1 for our interpretation of the papers based on this analysis). From their various perspectives, the authors criticized existing practices of science education and suggested alternatives.

Some issues were more amenable to identification through workshops than through discussion papers. The Science and Education Committee sponsored three workshops and published their proceedings.[13] These papers and workshop proceedings were disseminated free of charge to all who requested them. The study has also encouraged discussion by teachers, policymakers and other insiders. Supporting the publications were bulletins sent out to a large mailing list of interested individuals and speaking engagements undertaken by project staff throughout the country. A number of media interviews, magazine articles and reviews in professional journals helped to bring the study's themes to the attention of the science education profession.

These forms of communication, especially the publications, from which the others are derived, served three purposes. They stimulated the insiders' awareness of criticisms of their enterprise and of the need for them to participate in deliberations over future directions. The task of stimulating deliberation was time-consuming and arduous, especially in a country with the geographical, political and linguistic character of Canada. However, science educators in all provinces and territories received the communications and were actively involved in all aspects of

Table II.1 – Summary of Positions Expressed by Discussion Papers

	Positions Expressed		
Author/Title	Selected Features of the Educated Person	Needs of Learners and Implied Aims for Science Education	Critique of Present Practice
James Page, *A Canadian Context for Science Education*	A Canadian citizen, aware of his/her cultural heritage	To understand science as a part of the cultural fabric of Canada	Lack of a Canadian context in science education
Glen Aikenhead, *Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching*	A person capable of participating in and understanding social and political decisions	To understand science as one way of knowing among many	Science taught as all- and self-sufficient
Donald George, *An Engineer's View of Science Education*	A solver of practical problems	To develop skills such as those of the engineer	Only the skills of the scientist taught
Hugh Munby, *What is Scientific Thinking?*	An independent thinker	To understand the basis for one's knowledge	Teaching encourages intellectual dependence
Marcel Risi, *Macroscole: A Holistic Approach to Science*	A creative contributor to industry and society	To develop a sceptical, divergent, questioning and imaginative approach towards problem situations	Science taught only as a body of knowledge
Douglas Roberts, *Scientific Literacy: Towards Balance in Setting Goals for School Science Programs*	A scientifically literate individual	To reach a broad spectrum of goals through science education	An imbalance of aims

the study. This political function also had a rational component in that debate and argument were undertaken wherever the papers were studied, and particularly in faculties of education. Out of these discussions has developed a keener sense of some of the problems of science education in Canadian schools, as viewed by both internal and external stakeholders.

The discussion papers and workshops also contributed substantive themes for the data-collection phase and furnished ideas about new directions for the final deliberative phase of the study.

Phase 2: What are the facts?

As mentioned earlier, critics of science education (including the authors of discussion papers) have frequently made claims about the existing state of science education, for which there is no factual basis. Clearly, the study needed to establish such a basis, if for no other reason than to validate or invalidate these claims.

But beyond this need, deliberation over future directions also required a database about the present aims and practices of science education. And the second phase of the study, the research or data-collection phase, developed such a base. Not all types of empirical research on science education are necessarily of value in building this database, however. This research effort is not theory-oriented since its ultimate goal is not that of acquiring knowledge but of informing the process of deliberation. Action-oriented research is a less well understood or developed art (see chapter III for more details).

One of the constraints on research by outsiders such as the Science Council in areas of insiders' responsibility is the need for both researchers and practitioners to work cooperatively. The Science Council and the CMEC agreed upon general conditions at the outset. Both the ministers and the CMEC secretariat were represented by observers at meetings of the Science and Education Committee to advise on overall directions of the study and to act as an official channel of communication between the Committee and the CMEC. Furthermore, we did not conduct research within any province without first consulting the corresponding ministry/department of education. Finally, we sent copies of all reports to ministries/departments of education sufficiently in advance of publication to allow for comments and criticisms.

No doubt, some will regard such negotiation and consultation negatively, as threats to the independence and validity of the research. However, we view the matter differently — insiders such as ministries and teachers can contribute to the research and by doing so increase its validity and their commitment to its results. The dual nature of the study is again evident, where even this most rational of the study's activities has its political aspect.

Phase 3: Where do we go from here?

In deliberative inquiry, conclusions are not deduced from theory nor induced from experience. They are deliberated over using both research data and value positions. As Schwab outlines:

> "Deliberation is complex and arduous. . . . It must generate alternative solutions. . . . It must then weigh the alternatives and their costs and consequences against one another, and choose, not the *right* alternative, for there is no such thing, but the *best* one."[14]

Deliberations are limited to developing solutions that are the "best" (under the circumstances) because those solutions have to be implemented in real schools by real teachers. Sometimes, programs for educational reform are developed on the basis of an ideal, what might be if one could build a school system from scratch. However, rarely, if ever, is one building from scratch without constraints. Implementing such programs sometimes distorts them beyond recognition.

The Science Council's study is concerned with science education in the schools that we have now and with how these can be improved, not replaced. Whether or not a program can be feasibly implemented must therefore be a constraint on the deliberative process. This is one of the reasons why deliberative conferences were held separately, in each province and territory, during the third phase of the study. In each of these jurisdictions, invitational conferences included a cross-section of stakeholders, both insiders and outsiders, to debate, in the light of the Council's publications and research, the future needs and opportunities for science education.

While specific agendas for each conference were developed locally, all of them had three general objectives:

- to review (a) the themes of the Science Council's study as set out in published discussion papers and workshop proceedings and (b) the research data developed by the study, as these were relevant to the province;
- to identify desirable new directions for science education in the province together with structural and other changes required to implement these new directions;
- to develop suggestions for consideration by the Science Council of Canada's Committee on Science and Education for the preparation of their final report.

Again, in this final phase, the rational and political character of the process is evident. While the deliberations attended to the reasons for action, their broad representativeness (in terms of the array of stakeholders) enhanced the political credibility of the outcome. For while rationally argued-for solutions may be convincing intellectually, they must also be politically acceptable if change is to take place. In summary, three ingredients are essential for successful deliberations.

1. People committed to finding or at least searching for solutions to problems confronting science education. These must include

insiders, those responsible for and professionally engaged in science education, as well as an array of outsiders, those with a stake in but no responsibility for the enterprise.

2. Information about the enterprise at hand, and about its aims and teaching strategies in particular. This three-volume background study contains a major part of this information; however, participants in deliberation each have a personal base of equally valuable information.
3. A set of issues and options for future action is the third and key ingredient for deliberation. Again these are of two types: the themes raised by the study through discussion papers and workshops; and local issues of particular importance and concern.

No deliberative process can be precisely mapped in advance. And while the Science Council's role in the process is necessarily limited both in scope and duration, the deliberations themselves need not be so constrained. When the formal activities of the study are completed, it is hoped and intended that the momentum of deliberations in each province will be such that they continue.

III. Research for Policy Deliberation

Deliberations concerning the future orientation of science education clearly need to be grounded in a firm base of knowledge about its present state. However, what is less easily determined in advance is the specific information required for such a process and thus the type of research program which should be mounted in the context of a deliberative inquiry such as the present study. To some extent, the answers to these questions have been anticipated in the first two chapters where, first, the focus and, second, the overall strategy of the study have been discussed. Two major features of the study from these earlier discussions (the focus on aims of science education and the purpose of informing deliberation) are reviewed briefly here to set the stage for the rationale and overview of the research program which follow.

Figure I.2 (see p. 28) represents science education as the interplay of four elements — the aims of science education and the corresponding teaching strategies, as these two function in both the rhetoric and practice of science teaching. These elements are designated for convenience A,T,a,t. The "curriculum emphasis" concept has been described as the means by which aims can be combined with science subject matter in curriculum materials and instruction (A—T) or by which curricular aims or intentions can be inferred from observations of curriculum materials and instruction (t—a). The relation between the levels of rhetoric and practice (A—a; T—t) is more problematic as research concerning how teachers translate curricula into practice or theorize about their own experience is still relatively new. This study may shed some light on this important problem area, although that theoretical goal is not, of course, its primary one.

The major purpose of this research program, as set out in the study's three overall objectives and discussed in the previous chapter, is informing the deliberative process about the context of any changes being contemplated. For this reason, it is important that information be collected, not just about the four elements described earlier which are of central interest to the study, but also about the broader contexts in which these elements are set. Five such contexts can be identified as being particularly important in this regard:

1. policy context (curriculum guidelines, textbook authorizations, teacher certification, etc.);
2. professional context (backgrounds, qualifications and experience of teachers, etc.);
3. instructional context (textbooks and other instructional resources; also students, their abilities and interests, etc.);
4. institutional context (physical facilities, scheduling, class size, etc.);
5. social context (attitudes of peers, school principals, parents, school trustees, industry, universities, etc.).

These contextual factors are identified here to indicate the range of matters about which information is required for deliberations where changes in aims or teaching strategies are being contemplated.

The goal of this research — informing the deliberative process — is sufficiently distinct from that of most science education research that some reflection on the range of research strategies available and on their relative appropriateness is warranted in order to justify our particular choice of a research program.

Explanatory Research and Practical Research

Research for deliberation is not necessarily equivalent to science education research in general. Certain forms or techniques of research may be more appropriate than others. Although all research is directed towards the generation of knowledge, it is necessary to determine which forms of knowledge (and therefore, which tools for knowledge generation) can best serve the function of informing deliberation. The following piece of conceptual analysis that contrasts two distinct functions of research shows how we resolved this issue.

Most research activity in science education – as in other disciplines – is designed to explain phenomena and events. Stephen Toulmin speaks of the "explanatory ambitions" of scientists[1] and a glance at any recent program of the National Association for Research in Science Teaching or its journal, the *Journal of Research in Science Teaching*, shows this clearly. This aim, however, is not the only valid one.*

When teachers and policymakers make decisions in their classrooms or jurisdictions, they usually draw upon a very different form of knowledge than this formal explanatory type. They use what Freema Elbaz calls "practical knowledge"[3] or what Geoffrey Vickers describes as an "appreciation of the situation."[4] While Elbaz refers particularly to the personal, intuitive knowledge of a situation possessed by an individual teacher, we shall adapt the concept of "practical knowledge" to refer to the totality of information about a situation that one assembles prior to making a decision. And practical research is, then, the process of gathering information for use in such decision making.

---

* We hasten to add that, in the case of research in education, explanatory knowledge is often intended to assist and improve educational practice. That this intention is frequently unrealized has itself been an issue of growing concern in recent years; it has been the object of reflection and explanation in the literature.[2] A systematic account of this matter is beyond the scope of the present work.

These two types of research are crucially different in another way. The results of explanatory research must be generalizable. Other researchers must be able to replicate the research and show that the results do not depend on the time or place but are true generally. By contrast, the results of practical research must be directly relevant to the unique situation at hand. For the teacher or policymaker, the same data may have vastly different significance. Data concerning an atypical school principal may be dismissed as "error" by one but be of key importance and interest to the other.

In the present study, it was clearly practical research that was needed to inform the deliberative process. It is inconsequential that this research cannot be applied to other countries or other times. The knowledge had to be relevant to each province and territory in which deliberative conferences took place during 1983. And since the Science Council of Canada's final report is national in scope, the knowledge had to be relevant to the country as a whole.

Research Program Overview

Four principal projects and a number of additional ones have been undertaken in the context of the study. The relationship of the following major projects to the scope and purpose of the research as a whole is explained below (for a detailed account of the methodology and results of each project, see the appropriate section or volume).

1. Analysis of Science Curriculum Policies (volume I, part two)
2. Analysis of Science Textbooks (volume I, part three)
3. Survey of Science Teachers (volume II)
4. Case Studies of Science Teaching (volume III)

Analysis of Science Curriculum Policies

In every province and territory of Canada, the aims, content and (sometimes) teaching strategies for school science programs are the subject of policies established by the corresponding ministry/department of education. Curriculum guides or guidelines contain statements of these policies and they represent an important though limited part of the database for describing science education in Canadian schools. Such policy statements contain aims for science education at the level of rhetoric (A, see Figure I.2). The major purpose of this research project was to analyze these documents to determine what types of aims are required for science programs.

Science programs do not exist in a policy vacuum. They are set in the context of the complete school curriculum. It was therefore important to gather as much information as possible about the policy context in each jurisdiction to understand each particular science curriculum policy and to compare the policies of different provinces for science teaching. This project thus comprised two subprojects which together provided information about the policy context of science education in Canadian schools. One examines the place of science as a subject in the curriculum and the other, the aims of specific science programs.

Analysis of Science Textbooks

One of the aspects of teaching strategy (T, Figure I.2), often the subject of policy regulation, is the selection of textbooks for use by students. This regulation reflects an assumption on the part of the authorities that one of the principal ways in which the aims of a science program are implemented in practice is through the use of a textbook. Research from many countries tends to support this assumption and data are presented later that indicate the Canadian situation is, generally speaking, no different in this regard.

This being the case, it was important to determine the explicit aims (A) of the textbooks in frequent use, together with their actual curriculum emphases (t). From this information the implicit aims (a) of the books were inferred. A comparison was then made among three versions of aims for science education: A (guidelines), A (textbooks, explicit), and a (textbooks, inferred from t). From such a comparison, an assessment was made of the extent to which the aims stated for teaching science are being realized in practice.

In addition to using the general categories of aims from the policy analysis project, aims based on the criticisms of science education voiced in the discussion paper series were also used as categories for analysis. Interpretive information gathered through interviews, survey data and other research sources supplemented the reports of the policy and textbook analyses. These additional sources are made clear in each instance.

Survey of Science Teachers

For an adequate appreciation of science education in Canada, the study needed to go beyond the documentary analysis of policies of ministries/departments of education and of the textbooks used in schools. It had to gather the opinions of those most intimately involved in the professional practice of science education, namely, the teachers of science. A survey was conducted to determine:

- science teachers' beliefs concerning the importance of various aims of science education;

- science teachers' perceptions of the effectiveness of their teaching in enabling students to achieve the various aims of science education;
- obstacles to the achievement of the various aims of science education.

In short, we asked science teachers about their aims for teaching science (A) (and thus implicitly about the official aims). We also asked about their approaches to teaching (T) and thus about the achievement of their aims. And we asked for information about several of the contexts in which these aims and teaching strategies function, especially about the professional, instructional, institutional and social contexts.

Case Studies of Science Teaching

It is always difficult for research to go beyond the level of rhetoric in describing the state of a practical art because most of the information comes from written or oral accounts by practitioners that are necessarily reflections on their practice. However, case studies in education conducted by trained observers have, in recent years, been increasingly used to penetrate the level of rhetoric and approach more closely the level of practice. In the science education enterprise, studies directed by Bob Stake and Jack Easley for the National Science Foundation in 1977 clearly established the legitimacy and potential value of this type of research.[5] Volume III of this background study presents a series of case studies that provide information about the actual teaching strategies (t) used in classrooms, about the corresponding aims (a) and about the ways in which teachers perceive their instructional, institutional and social contexts.

In their proposal for coordinating this research project, John Olson and Tom Russell are quite clear about the value of such a research strategy.

> "One of the advantages of the case-study method is that the *setting* in which events occur can be portrayed in detail. This detail is essential for helping those who work outside the classroom to appreciate and to assess interpretations of events that occur there. And such appreciation is necessary for informed deliberation about any complex matters of social policy."[6]

Case study research always draws upon any available sources of data to gain a richer and deeper understanding of the phenomena under investigation, and this is also true for the entire research program. During the course of the study, many informal or semiformal interchanges have taken place among Science Council staff and science educators at all levels. From these encounters, much has been learned to help us interpret and understand the data generated by the primary research projects. Wherever possible, our use of such information in these volumes is indicated.

In addition to the four major projects, there are two research projects whose state of progress at the time of writing prevents their inclusion in the present background study. It is intended that two additional studies, one reviewing historical aspects of science education in Canada, and the other documenting statistical trends in enrolment in science courses will ultimately be published. Both of these have obvious though quite distinct contributions to make to deliberations on the future direction of science education.

One of the most intriguing possibilities for a major research program is the preparation of integrated accounts of the results. It might be possible, for example, in the present study, to use the various themes of the study, such as the "Canadian context" theme or the "science education of women" theme, as foci for integrating results from each of the four components of the research program.[7] While the present publication does not attempt such integrated analyses on a thematic basis, the Council's final report on science education does, since policymakers and teachers attend to such themes in their entirety and not in the unintegrated manner in which multiple research projects must perforce treat them.

Part Two

Analysis of Science Curriculum Policies

IV. Science in the School Curriculum

Teaching is a sufficiently complex and important activity that the need to prepare and plan carefully for it is generally acknowledged. Of course, the "curriculum" actually experienced by students in a classroom is not always exactly the one that was planned. Nevertheless, the expectation is that, by making certain strategic decisions in advance, classroom events will have an overall shape and purpose they might otherwise lack. The final curriculum planner is clearly the individual teacher who must plan for each lesson in the light of the specific circumstances at hand. But the substance of a teacher's lesson plan is rarely created *de novo* for each occasion by the teacher working independently from scratch. The decision by teacher X to teach subject-matter topic A using strategy B on a particular day is simply the last in a chain or network of decisions made on previous occasions.

Some of these earlier decisions may have been the teacher's own, made, for example, in the course of planning work for the year or week. But others are likely to have been made elsewhere and intended to cover many similar situations. And whatever the level at which those decisions are made — ministry of education, school district or school — they combine to form a context that limits the scope of the individual teacher's specific planning. All of these limit-setting decisions can be regarded as curriculum policies. However, the policies that have particular impact on the substance of teaching are those issued by ministries of education[1] as curriculum guidelines covering each subject or course at each level of schooling.

More specifically, two types of ministry policies exist both of which affect the teaching and learning of science. One is concerned with general matters — which subjects must be offered in schools, the amount of time to be spent on each subject, the requirements for a student's graduation from high school, and so on. This type of policy sets the policy context within which individual science programs are developed and is the focus of this chapter. The second deals with specific matters — the aims, content and teaching strategies for science programs in schools — and is the focus of analysis and discussion in chapter V.

Policy analyses are important to this study for two main reasons. The major focus of the study is the aims and objectives of science education in Canada, and ministry policies set out the official aims and objectives for science programs in schools. All instructional decisions including the selection of textbooks and classroom activities can, in principle, be assessed by reference to these policies.* Secondly, the analysis of official policies for science education can help to assess the validity of the criticisms of science education. This analysis can help shape deliberation concerning future aims for science education.

Methodology

The subject matter of two other reports is closely related to that of the present one. Both have been prepared for the CMEC and both are used extensively in this study.[2] The first, *Secondary Education in Canada: A Student Transfer Guide*, now in its third (1981) edition, was designed, as its name suggests, to assist secondary schools in placing students newly arrived from another province. It provides a useful overview of general curriculum policies of each province and brief descriptions of secondary school courses in each subject. *Science: A Survey of Provincial Curricula at the Elementary and Secondary Levels*, is one of a series of reports designed to assess the level of uniformity within Canadian curricula. As it examines the science curriculum guidelines of all provinces, it is closely related to the focus of the present study and has been useful as a cross-reference document.

The CMEC reports have their limitations. Neither of the reports includes the territories. Since the Science Council's study includes both provinces and territories, certain additional inquiries were required.** Also, because *Science: A Survey of Provincial Curricula at the Elementary and Secondary Levels* has a purpose and emphasis different from ours, we had to review curriculum guidelines in a different way.

Given this background, project staff followed a four-step procedure to ensure the accuracy of the information in this study. First, ministries in all provinces and territories were requested to send to the Science

---

* This analysis of the official aims for science education was also used in the analysis of science textbooks (part three of this volume) and in the survey of science teachers (volume II).

** It should be pointed out here that the Northwest Territories follows the general curriculum policies of Alberta; they have also developed, within that policy context, science programs at all levels to meet the particular needs of their students. Similarly, the Yukon Territory follows the curriculum policies of British Columbia but has its own science program at the elementary level.

Council copies of all policy documents relating to science curricula.[3] These were collected during the period February to October 1980. The second step involved summarizing the contents of each and analyzing them using a common set of categories (November 1980 to February 1981).[4] Third, we prepared a draft interim report and circulated it to provincial officials for comment and correction of errors (fall 1981). This process led to a final review and updating of the information for the present study (August 1982).

This study, like all studies of this type, reflects the policies in force at the time at which the documents were collected. Curriculum policies, like other policies, change from time to time and it is both impossible and undesirable to freeze such change for the duration of a study. The CMEC study, though published in 1981, was based on documents collected in June 1979. And our study, published in 1984, is based on documents collected to May 1982. Over one-quarter of the approximately 120 documents that we examined were published during the intervening three years (1979 to 1982).

More specific information about the methodology of each analysis of the documents is provided with the summary results. The remaining sections of this chapter contain information about the range of science courses offered in each province, the requirements for student graduation (with respect to science), the amount of time specified by provincial policy to be spent on science courses, and the processes by which science curriculum policies are developed in each province.

Science Course Offerings

Table IV.1 contains a summary of the science courses available in each province and territory for each of the three levels of schooling.[5] In all provinces, a basic core of science is offered throughout school, beginning with an integrated program in the early years, continuing with a gradual move towards separate science courses during the middle years, and concluding with separate courses in physics, chemistry and biology in the senior years. In addition, each province or territory offers a variety of alternative courses at the senior level. One cannot tell without course enrolment statistics which courses are taken by most students. For example, in the Northwest Territories, it has been pointed out that many more students take a general science course in grade 10 — one specially designed for students in the North — than physics, chemistry and biology courses.

The mere existence of a science course communicates little about the substance of that course. While each ministry requires that science be taught at various levels, local school districts, schools and teachers are expected to interpret and implement such a mandate. Thus, the degree to which science is actually offered depends on many factors. However, ministry policies indicate more than simply which courses are to be offered. Policies also set down graduation requirements for students.

Table IV.1 – Science Course Offerings

Province/Territory	Nfld	PEI	NS	NB	Qué	Ont	Man	Sask	Alta	BC	NWT	YT
Early Years:												
Science[a]	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Middle Years:												
Science[b]	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X[d]
Senior Years[c]:												
Biology	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X[e]	X[d]
Chemistry	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X[e]	X[d]
Physics	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X[e]	X[d]
General Science	X	X		X[f]			X[g]		X		X	
Earth Science/Geology	X		X			X				X		X[d]
Physical Science	X[g]	X	X	X			X					
Environmental Science	(h)			X		X						
Ecology/Conservation		X					X					
Oceanography	(h)	X	X									
Agriculture		X						(i)	(i)	(i)		

[a] In the early years, science is frequently taught not as a separate subject but in an integrated manner along with other parts of the curriculum.

[b] In Alberta and Saskatchewan, life science is taught at grade 7, earth science at grade 8 and physical science at grade 9. Elsewhere, each year's program contains topics from several branches of science.

[c] Only courses considered by ministries of education as science courses are listed. Other courses in the school curriculum may, of course, contain a science component, such as Health Education, Technological Studies, and 'People and Their Technology.' See also note i.

[d] The Yukon follows British Columbia curricula for these courses.

[e] The Northwest Territories follows Alberta curricula for these courses.

[f] Course is offered at vocational/practical level only.

[g] Courses are designed for students of lower ability. Not all such courses are listed.

[h] To be implemented in 1983-84.

[i] Agriculture is offered but not as part of a science program. In Saskatchewan, it is part of a Saskatchewan Studies program; British Columbia and Alberta have separate agriculture programs.

Science Requirements for Graduation

In the early years of school in all provinces and territories, students do not choose what to study. Science is mandatory. Table IV.2 shows that this is also the case for most jurisdictions in the middle years. However, at the senior years, where extensive course selection is permitted, different provinces require students to take different numbers of science courses to graduate. In practice, this means that in seven of the 12 jurisdictions, one science course beyond the end of grade 9 is required for graduation. In Manitoba two science courses are required, while Prince Edward Island and Nova Scotia do not require any science courses beyond the grade 9 level for graduation. Québec's new minimum requirements (currently being implemented) include mandatory science courses in grades 7 and 9 followed by one more course at the senior level. In Ontario, beginning in 1984, one science course beyond grade 9 will be required.

Table IV.2 – Science Requirements for Graduation

Province/Territory	Middle Years	Senior Years
Newfoundland	Grades 7, 8, & 9 required	1 course (2 credits)
Prince Edward Island	Grades 7, 8, & 9 required	None required
Nova Scotia	Grades 7, 8, & 9 required	None required
New Brunswick	Grades 7, 8, & 9 required	1 course required
Québec	Grades 7 & 9 required[a]	1 course required[a]
Ontario	Grades 7, 8, & 9 or 10[b]	None required
Manitoba	Grades 7, 8, & 9 required	2 courses required
Saskatchewan	Grades 7, 8, & 9 required	1 course required
Alberta	Grades 7, 8, & 9 required	1 course (3 credits)
British Columbia	Grades 8, 9, & 10 required	None required
Northwest Territories	Grades 7, 8, & 9 required	1 course required
Yukon Territory	Grades 8, 9 & 10 required	None required

[a] In the process of implementation, 1982-86.
[b] Under review, 1982-83.

Listed here are the minimum requirements for graduation, as stated by ministry policy. Individual school districts or schools often have local norms or expectations that raise the minimum requirements. In addition, because most ministries define their complete requirements for graduation in terms of numbers of credits, courses or electives, it may, in practice, be very difficult for a student to meet these requirements without taking a science course beyond those that are formally compulsory.*

---

* For a more complete understanding of the degree to which science courses are taken beyond the minimum requirements, the reader should consult the course enrolment statistics (forthcoming).

Time Spent on Science

In most jurisdictions, ministries of education specify the amount (or proportion) of instructional time to be spent on each subject or course. Table IV.3 summarizes policies of this type. Again, local factors may affect the actual allotment of time, particularly at the early-years level. To draw conclusions from the data at this stage would be premature and inappropriate. The focus of the study is on the aims of the science programs and the table is included to provide a background or context for the analysis of curriculum guidelines (see chapter V).

Table IV.3 – Time Spent on Science

	Minimum Time Required by Provincial Policy (Hours per Year)[a]		
Province/Territory	Early Years	Middle Years	Senior Years[b]
Newfoundland	35 - 100	100	110 - 120
Prince Edward Island	No stated policy	No stated policy	140 - 150
Nova Scotia	100	100	120
New Brunswick	60	80	140 - 150
Québec	40 - 60[c]	100	135 - 150
Ontario	No stated policy	70 - 110[d]	110 - 120
Manitoba	50 - 100	100 - 110	110 - 120
Saskatchewan	100	105	100 - 120
Alberta	50 - 66	100	75 - 125
British Columbia	47 - 66	100	100 - 120
Northwest Territories	50 - 66	100	75 - 125
Yukon Territory	47 - 66	100	100 - 120

[a] Where necessary, calculated from policy statements on the basis of 180 to 200 instructional days per school year.

[b] Times shown here are hours per course. A student may choose to take several such courses.

[c] First cycle (grades 1-3) = 40 hours; second cycle (grades 4-6) = 60 hours.

[d] Grades 7 and 8 = 70 hours; grades 9 and 10 = 110 hours.

The Development of Science Curriculum Policies

It is natural enough that when people are not content with present policies they not only try to change them directly, they often question the process by which they were generated. Sometimes this questioning may arise from the conviction that a process yielding results of which they disapprove must be flawed in some respect. Alternatively, it may simply be that the process by which policies are developed is not well understood and that the means of influencing the process in preferred directions is therefore unclear. Curriculum policy development, including textbook selection, is a case in point. In recent times, there have been calls for reviews of these processes by individuals and groups with openly declared interests in seeing specific policy decisions made (such as creationist groups and textbook authors whose books have not been approved for use in schools). We have, therefore, felt some obligation in this study to describe the processes used at the provincial level to determine science curriculum policies and to select textbooks.

A word of caution before proceeding. The idea of two levels of reality — a level of rhetoric and a level of practice — is even more applicable to an understanding of policymaking than teaching. How people actually make policy and how they say they make policy are often quite different. And this is not necessarily because the individuals are dishonest but because policymaking processes are notoriously difficult to describe in the sort of detail that enables one to understand how and why particular policies emerge.[6] Case studies would probably provide the clearest insight into these processes but to date no such studies of provincial curriculum policy development have been published. The data collected in this study consist of general information about curriculum guideline revision gathered through informal interviews with ministry officials in each province, together with inferences drawn from the policy documents themselves.

Curriculum Guideline Revision

Curriculum guides at all levels have been undergoing revision during the past few years in most provinces. These new documents often represent radical revisions of former policy documents that had remained substantially unchanged for 10 to 15 years. This latest round of changes is seen in some provinces to be the beginning of a new system of cyclical revision, in which documents are scheduled to be used, reviewed, revised, tested and reissued on a regular three, four or five-year basis. British Columbia, Alberta, Manitoba and Nova Scotia have all reported using this approach. In most other provinces, revisions are irregular responses to perceived needs and the resulting policies remain in force until circumstances demand and resources enable fresh revision.

Rarely do ministry officials act alone in revising guideline documents. Usually an *ad hoc* committee involving teachers is struck to develop a draft document. Saskatchewan and British Columbia, for example, report using school board trustees or officials on these committees, while several provinces involve university scientists and science education faculties. Manitoba has a standing "K-12 science working party," consisting mostly of teachers, that maintains an overview of all science curriculum policy development, appoints *ad hoc* committees and recommends guideline documents to the ministry hierarchy. In Alberta, a "curriculum policies board," reporting to the Minister and including individuals from several different areas of provincial life, supervises policy development in all subject areas. It probably has the most comprehensive mandate of any such provincial committee in the country, facilitating policy coordination among different areas of the curriculum. In other provinces, such coordination is provided by inhouse resources, usually at the assistant deputy minister or branch director level.

The degree to which parents, industrialists, the business community or other outside stakeholders can become directly involved in science curriculum policy deliberation is, in general, very small. There is ample opportunity for teachers and other insiders to make input, since the processes are open. Such processes have the advantage of being fairly simple to manage but the disadvantage of being conservative since few outsiders or even radical insiders become involved.

Policy development involves a complex blending of values with information about the context in which the policies are to function. The use of committees ensures debate over value positions, but their restricted membership means that the range of value positions is rarely very broad. Information about the context — in this case, about the provincial science education system — can be introduced in two ways. Either the participants pool their collective experience or they use systematic data collection. The former can be adequate where the province is small (e.g., Prince Edward Island) or where the participants are carefully selected to reflect the province's diversity (i.e., linguistic groups, economic regions, urban/rural distribution, etc.). The latter process, carefully controlled, can provide more useful information. The clearest example of its use is in British Columbia, where students' learning and teachers' opinions are assessed on a regular basis and the results fed into the curriculum policy process. Some other provinces report the use of some systematic data. However, the majority depend upon the personal resources of their committee members.

In nearly every province, the development of a draft policy document is followed by a limited period of "validation" during which it is sent out to a large number of interested individuals for comment (e.g., Ontario) or for "trial use" (e.g., Manitoba). Following this evaluation process, revisions are made (where necessary) before final approval by the minister.

Textbook Selection

One of the key decisions to be made within the context of determining a new science curriculum policy is concerned with the selection of textbooks for student use. Textbooks (see part three) are a key component of any curriculum and the process of their selection is of obvious educational significance. But as textbooks are professional as well as commercially profitable products, their selection is a matter of professional and commercial interest to authors and publishers.

Every province uses some form of listing of textbooks for student use. In some cases, lists prescribe mandatory texts. In others, the listing indicates that schools are able to obtain a price break on a particular book if it is purchased through the ministry. Some provinces list only one or two books for a particular course or level; others (e.g., Québec and Ontario) list many books from which schools or teachers may choose (see chapter V and part three for more detail).

Although most provincial officials will state that textbooks should be used as "resources to support a particular course and not as the course of study itself," the curriculum guidelines themselves vary considerably in their application of this principle. At one end of the scale, the guideline identifies no textbook; the content topic headings and aims of science education have been developed with no particular textbook in mind. Subsequently (and in the cases of Ontario and Québec in a separate policy document) textbook resources are listed for the course. Here, the process is one of defining aims and topics first and selecting textbooks second. At the other end of the scale, curriculum guidelines identify one or more textbooks at the outset and the topics and aims in the guidelines correspond directly to those textbooks. Here one must assume that textbook selection was the controlling decision and that enumeration of aims and topics has followed. These examples are, of course, the extremes. In many instances, textbook selection and decisions about the aims of science education are made together.

We wish to stress that we are not in any way advocating one process rather than another. Often, extra-educational factors dictate the choice of process. For example, when a new guideline is issued in Ontario, commercial publishers contract authors to write textbooks to correspond to the new guideline. These are then submitted for provincial approval and listing. The province is large enough for the operation of a relatively free market, which is further stimulated by a ministry policy of not listing books authored or published outside Canada unless suitable Canadian books are unavailable. In many smaller provinces, however, because the potential market is too small for normal commercial production and competition, the significance of the ministry's curriculum decisions is severely restricted. In some situations (e.g., in Newfoundland, early years), only one book is listed and a commercial publisher is given a monopoly in exchange for preparing a special edition for the province. In Québec, through the intervention of its "Direction du matériel didactique," the Québec ministry commissions textbooks from publishers to fit its new curriculum guidelines. Elsewhere, textbooks are selected from various sources by a committee or by ministry officials.*

---

* Several recent studies of educational textbook publishing in Canada give further information on this complex topic.[7]

V. The Official Aims and Strategies of Science Education

While the policy context in which science curricula are developed is of obvious importance to practitioners, the chief focus of the present study is the substance of these science curriculum policies. What are the aims and objectives for which science is being taught and how are teachers expected to achieve these aims? At least, what are the *official* aims and strategies that ministries of education intend to be implemented?

Science curriculum guidelines from each province contain ministry policy in regard to three key components of the science curriculum.

• Content of science teaching:	*What to teach in science?* or Which science topics are teachers expected to cover in their courses?
• Aims of science teaching:	*Why teach science?* or What are mandated as the purposes or objectives of science courses?
• Strategies of science teaching:	*How to teach science?* or Which methods, textbooks, or instructional techniques are approved (or prescribed) for teaching science courses?

Curriculum guidelines may also contain other information, such as time to be spent on individual parts of a course or guidelines for student evaluation. Sometimes these additional topics have the force of policy, sometimes they are simply advisory. In any case, all science guidelines contain the three components noted above and our first task in analyzing provincial science guidelines was to separate these logically distinct parts. (Appendix A lists the guidelines analyzed in this study.)

Content of Science Teaching

We decided not to examine the area of "content" any further for two principal reasons. First and most important, the issue of which science topics are taught at each level of school is not central to the objectives of the study. The study's objectives are concerned with aims and purposes and with strategies for reaching these aims rather than with the science topics which form the substance of school programs.

The second reason for setting the "content" category aside was that the CMEC study, *Science: A Survey of Provincial Curricula at the Elementary and Secondary Levels,*[1] contains detailed content summaries for each of the three levels. On the basis of their examination of this component of the curriculum guidelines, that study's authors, Haggerty and Hobbs, conclude that, while "substantial similarity" in course content exists in the early years, there is "even greater commonality" at the middle years, "the trend continuing to greater commonality" in the senior years.[2] They also point out that the existence of "local options" in many cases means that one cannot infer from the general conclusion (of commonality of topics in guidelines) that common topics are actually being taught in schools across Canada. The present study can endorse this qualification on the basis of our general experience (and on the basis of the case studies in volume III).

Aims of Science Teaching

As we examined the many statements of aims for science education in the guidelines of the various ministries of education, two features became immediately obvious. First, as a group they are diverse. They represent as broad a range of objectives as one is likely to encounter in the practice or literature of science education, at least in North America. Second, many statements, while superficially different in form, appear to represent similar ideas. The diversity of statements called for a system of classification that would permit sorting prior to identifying general conclusions.

Eight categories were used for this classification — a large enough number for reasonably precise definition, but not so large as to make the task impossibly difficult. While the eight categories were derived inductively from an examination of the guidelines themselves, there is a strong correspondence between them and the sets of categories used by other researchers in the field.[3] Table V.1 lists the eight categories, together with an example illustrating an objective from each category. Because these categories of aims occupy a central place in several components of the research program, some further comments on each appear below.

Science Content

Some of the aims for science education most frequently encountered at the level of practice, if not at the level of rhetoric, are that students should know, understand and, in various ways, be able to manipulate the substance of scientific knowledge.[4] Such aims stress the value of a command of the products of scientific endeavour rather than the processes of its development and application. This is frequently held to be important by teachers at higher levels of schools and by colleges for teachers at lower levels. The importance of scientific knowledge both for its own sake and for (later) study or use is stressed here.[5]

Table V.1 – Categories of Aims for Science Education

Category	Illustrative Example
1. Science Content	"To increase the student's knowledge of basic concepts in life, earth, and physical sciences" (Manitoba)
2. Scientific Skills/Processes	"To develop facility in using the methods and tools of science" (New Brunswick)
3. Science and Society	"To promote an understanding of the role that science has in the development of societies and the impact of society upon science" (Alberta)
4. Nature of Science	"To develop student appreciation of science as a way of learning and communicating about the self, the environment and the universe" (Saskatchewan)
5. Personal Growth	"To develop as an autonomous and creative individual who will live in a scientific and technological society" (Québec)
6. Science-Related Attitudes	"Create an enthusiasm for the method of thinking that uses observed facts as data in a logical method of solving problems" (British Columbia)
7. Applied Science/Technology	"Students should be exposed to a representative sample of the technological applications of science — communications, transportation, scientific research, medicine, architecture, computers, household appliances, energy" (Newfoundland)
8. Career Opportunities	"To relate science to career opportunities in technology, industry, commerce, business, medicine, engineering, education, research and other areas in which science plays a role" (Ontario)

Scientific Skills/Processes

In recent years, aims concerned with developing so-called "process skills" have become very popular among science educators. This involves developing the skills of the scientist (best exemplified, perhaps, by the elementary science program, *Science – A Process Approach*[6]) such as observing, classifying, measuring, inferring, hypothesizing and so on. The CMEC report on science curricula cites a list of process skills from the Manitoba middle-years guideline, but nearly all provinces issue similar lists, and many curriculum projects and textbooks in recent years have claimed to provide for the development of process skills. Munby's discussion paper[7] urges science educators to reflect critically on the important objective of scientific thinking.

Science and Society

Aims concerning science content have presumably always been present in curriculum guidelines and those focussed on skills and processes have been popular for over a decade. However, objectives in the "science and society" category are newer as popular faith in the social and economic potential of science has waned. Aims in this category focus on the interaction between science and society and particularly on such ethically problematic areas as energy, genetic engineering and the problems of industrial waste. As yet, few curriculum materials have aims in this area as their primary focus[8] but the importance of such aims for an informed citizenry has been increasingly stressed.[9] James Page's concern for a "Canadian context" for science education falls within this category.

Nature of Science

These aims stress the processes of scientific inquiry rather than its products. However, unlike the category of skills and processes, these aims intend the student to understand how science, as a discipline, "works." Topics from the history of science are often used here to help the student understand some point about, for example, the development of theories, the use of evidence or the nature of scientific discovery. The series of secondary school science curricula developed in the 1950s and 1960s as a result of funding by the (US) National Science Foundation – *PSSC Physics, CHEMStudy* and *BSCS Biology* – are classic examples of this type of curriculum.

Personal Growth

For some people, all teaching and learning of school subjects, including science, is justified in terms of individual, intellectual, moral and social growth – goals of education common to all subjects. This presents the problem for science educators: "How can learning science contribute to the attainment of these goals?" Several ministry guidelines show a variety of attempts to deal with this problem. Aims in this category stress the development of such qualities as creativity, autonomy, cooperation, teamwork, a sense of responsibility and even patriotism. As "science content" aims are silent about the ultimate purposes of learning science, so "personal growth" aims are equally silent about how science teaching is expected to contribute to a student's personal growth.

Science-Related Attitudes

Aims involving the development of various "attitudes" abound in ministry guidelines, textbooks and curriculum projects. There are least two major groups of these attitudes. The first comprises attitudes held to be characteristic of scientists — "intellectual honesty, humility, open-mindedness, willingness to investigate, desire for accurate knowledge"[10] and the like. The second consists of attitudes which students are intended to develop towards science, scientists or scientific activity, such as interest, enthusiasm, appreciation or excitement. For the purposes of the present analysis, we have grouped both of these together while recognizing that, pedagogically, it is probably not useful to do so.[11]

Applied Science/Technology

These aims focus upon informing the student of the uses of science in industry, medicine or other technological fields. Having been very popular in secondary school science education in the 1940s and 1950s, such aims were largely displaced by those relating to the nature of science. Recently, however, there seems to be a renewed interest in these practical aims. The category is broad, ranging from such aims as those advocated by Donald George in his discussion paper, *An Engineer's View of Science Education*,[12] to those contained in the series of chemistry textbooks called *ALCHEM*, which describes the applications of chemistry in industrial processes.[13] Another aspect of the "Canadian context" theme is involved here of course. Aims which stress the application of science in technology can do so using Canadian examples and thus fulfill both aims simultaneously.

Career Opportunities

The potential for science education to contribute to the eventual employability of students is often interesting to the students themselves. It is of even more general concern at times of economic recession or when technological advances seem to be overtaking the former employment prospects of many people, especially women. Aims in this area tend to be contentious and hotly debated by academics who do not see job training as a proper function for their institutions. However, ministries of education do state such objectives and, while nobody seriously contends that high schools are primarily job-training institutions, it would appear equally simplistic to argue that they have no responsibilities in preparing students for future careers. The potential for science education to contribute to this function of school thus gives rise to this category of objective.

Analyzing the Ministry Guidelines

These eight categories of aims for science education are the tool with which we analyzed the statements contained in ministry guidelines. This analysis is not an exact scientific classification. Analyzing with categories such as these is a [illegible]nce of what Max Black calls "reasoning with loose concepts."[14] [illegible] categories themselves are not precise or well defined; they cannot b[illegible] is a matter of judgement when one assigns a "border-line" objective to a particular category, and we have used our best judgement and have been aided by the critical commentary of ministry officials. The analysis is simply intended to be useful. The three levels of schooling — early, middle and senior — are the basis for separate analyses (see Tables V.2 to V.6). Note that New Brunswick has two columns in each of the tables, corresponding to the independently developed English and French programs.

Early Years

Table V.2 shows the results of analyzing the aims of science education set out in the early-years guidelines according to the eight categories of aims. There appears to be a consensus regarding aims at this level among all provinces and territories. Four categories of aims appear in all guidelines at this level: science content, scientific skills and processes, personal growth and science-related attitudes. Three categories — nature of science, applied science/technology and career opportunities — do not appear in any guideline. Some difference of opinion exists over the science and society aim; five jurisdictions include aims of this type. However, aims referring to such matters as the development of a concern for the environment were classified as science and society, and several provinces include environmental studies as part of the content of the early-years course. This analysis therefore confirms the trend, identified by Haggerty and Hobbs, that the general goals of science education at the early years stress "process skills and attitude development."[15]

Middle Years

The science curriculum guidelines for the middle years are more recent than those for the early years. With one exception, all guidelines have been revised within the past five years. Table V.3 shows the results of the analysis of the aims for this level. There is a distinct shift in priorities from those of the early years. Science content is learned for its own sake although process skills are also stressed and science and society aims appear in every guideline. Science-related attitudes, while they appear in

Table V.2 – Aims of Science Education – Early Years

Province/Territory	Nfld	PEI	NS	NB(E)	NB(F)	Qué	Ont	Man	Sask	Alta	BC	NWT	YT
Year of Guideline	1978	(*)	1978	1982	1977	1980	1975	1979	1971	1980	1981	1978	1978
Science Content	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Scientific Skills/Processes	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Science and Society	X					X	X			X		X	
Nature of Science													
Personal Growth	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Science-Related Attitudes	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Applied Science/Technology													
Career Opportunities													

* Document undated.

Table V.3 – Aims of Science Education – Middle Years

Province/Territory	Nfld	PEI[b]	NS	NB(E)	NB(F)	Qué	Ont	Man	Sask	Alta	BC[c]	NWT	YT[d]
Year of Guideline	1980	([a])	1977	1980	1979	1980	1978	1979	1979	1978	1982	1979	
Science Content	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Scientific Skills/Processes	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Science and Society	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Nature of Science	X			X			X		X	X	X		
Personal Growth			X			X					X		
Science-Related Attitudes	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
Applied Science/Technology	X	X				X	X				X	X	
Career Opportunities							X			X			

[a] Document undated.
[b] Aims are not stated explicitly.
[c] Draft document only.
[d] Yukon follows BC program.

nine guidelines, are not stressed to the same degree as at the early years. Finally, a number of guidelines stress the applications of science. It is clear that programs at this level are intended to achieve a wider variety of aims than those at the early level, and that a fair degree of consensus exists among the various ministries concerning what those aims should be.

Senior Years

Since biology, chemistry, and physics are offered at the senior-years level in every province, we decided to analyze only the guidelines corresponding to these courses. The reader should consult enrolment figures for an appreciation of the degree to which these courses are representative of the science taken by most students at this level, but these are probably the chief options for most Canadian students. Tables V.4, V.5 and V.6 show the results of analyzing guidelines in biology, chemistry and physics. Two immediate patterns are evident. There is less agreement about aims at the secondary level and there is a broader range of aims than for either of the other two levels. An increased concern for learning about the nature and applications of science is notable. Correspondingly, there is less emphasis on aims concerning "personal growth" and the development of attitudes. The inclusion of "science and society" aims seems to be related to the date of the guidelines: these aims appear more frequently in the most recently published documents.

A number of questions arise from the results of this analysis but since several involve both the aims themselves and the strategies recommended for their attainment, they are discussed after the review of ministry policies concerning textbooks and teaching strategies.

Strategies of Science Teaching

To achieve a variety of education aims, a corresponding variety of teaching strategies is required.[16] Therefore, the study examined curriculum guidelines that prescribed strategies for the achievement of the stated aims. In general, guidelines provide few strategies for teachers; those that appear are reviewed briefly below.

The chief policy instrument used by all ministries to control or influence teaching strategies is the prescription, authorization or approval of textbooks for student use. The degree of regulation varies from province to province. Some provinces (such as British Columbia) make mandatory a very limited range of textbooks at each level. Other provinces (such as Ontario and Québec) authorize a very wide selection from which schools or teachers may choose. Elsewhere, guidelines list from two to six approved books and schools or teachers may use any of these they choose. In some jurisdictions, other (unlisted) books may be used, although the cost of such books may be higher (if listed books are sold through the ministry at special rates).

Table V.4 – Aims of Science Education – Senior Years (Biology)

Province/Territory	Nfld	PEI[a]	NS	NB(E)	NB(F)	Qué	Ont[a]	Man[b,e]	Sask[c,e]	Alta[e]	BC[c]	NWT[d]	YT[d,f]
Year of Guideline	1982		1978	1980	1972	1971		1981	1971	1977	1974		
Science Content	X		X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		
Scientific Skills/Processes	X		X	X	X	X		X	X	X			
Science and Society	X		X			X		X		X			
Nature of Science	X			X	X	X		X		X			
Personal Growth			X										
Science-Related Attitudes			X	X	X								
Applied Science/Technology	X		X	X									
Career Opportunities													

[a] Guidelines being revised; no analysis possible.
[b] Pilot program.
[c] No aims stated in guideline.
[d] NWT follows Alberta program; Yukon follows BC program.
[e] Science as a foundation for further study is emphasized.
[f] Additional aims (in categories 5, 6, and 7) are specified in an overview of aims of secondary school science.

Table V.5 – Aims of Science Education – Senior Years (Chemistry)

Province/Territory	Nfld	PEI[a]	NS[e]	NB(E)	NB(F)	Qué	Ont[a]	Man[b]	Sask[c]	Alta[f]	BC[c]	NWT[d]	YT[d]
Year of Guideline	1982		1977	1979	1980	1976		1981	1976	1977	1978		
Science Content	X		X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		
Scientific Skills/Processes			X		X	X		X		X			
Science and Society	X				X	X		X	X	X			
Nature of Science	X		X		X	X		X	X	X			
Personal Growth													
Science-Related Attitudes			X		X	X							
Applied Science/Technology	X		X		X	X		X	X	X			
Career Opportunities								X		X			

[a] Guidelines being revised; no analysis possible.
[b] Pilot program.
[c] Aims not stated explicitly in guideline.
[d] NWT follows Alberta program; Yukon follows BC program.
[e] Science as a foundation for further study is emphasized.
[f] Additional aims (in categories 5 and 6) are specified in an overview of aims of secondary school science.

Table V.6 – Aims of Science Education – Senior Years (Physics)

Province/Territory	Nfld	PEI[a]	NS[d]	NB(E)	NB(F)	Qué	Ont[a]	Man[b]	Sask	Alta[e]	BC	NWT[c]	YT[c]
Year of Guideline	1982		1977	1979	1974	1980		1981	1976	1977	1981		
Science Content	X		X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		
Scientific Skills/Processes	X		X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		
Science and Society	X			X		X		X	X	X	X		
Nature of Science	X			X		X		X	X	X	X		
Personal Growth													
Science-Related Attitudes	X		X		X			X	X	X	X		
Applied Science/Technology	X		X		X			X	X		X		
Career Opportunities								X		X			

[a] Guideline being revised; no analysis possible.

[b] Pilot program.

[c] NWT follows Alberta program; Yukon follows BC program.

[d] Science as a foundation for further study is emphasized.

[e] Additional aims (in categories 5 and 7) are specified in an overview of aims of secondary school science.

Appendix B contains a list of 174 textbooks listed by ministries of education (in the most recent documents available). This list only includes textbooks for student use which cover a complete course or a large part of one (i.e., not kits of equipment, audiovisual packages or single-topic books). This list does not necessarily reflect all books in use in Canadian schools. In some schools, books formerly listed but now officially dropped are still used. Schools in some provinces have the right to use books not approved by the ministry. General comments about the selection of textbooks approved for use at each level follow. (For a detailed discussion of individual textbooks, their usage and content, see part three.)

Early Years

Ministry guidelines prescribe almost no teaching strategies at this level except for general injunctions that the program should be "activity-based" or that teachers should use the "inquiry approach." In Alberta, the latter term is defined in terms of students developing and practising "process skills." Elsewhere this term is often used but not elaborated on. In most guidelines, the content is divided into small units and, occasionally, student activities are suggested for teaching this content. However, strategies for teaching are never cross-referenced to specific aims and it is generally assumed that decisions in this area are best left to the teacher.

A total of 36 textbooks are listed for use at the early-years level across Canada, 20 of which appear on more than one provincial list (see Appendix B for more details). Their use may be significantly different from the pattern of ministry listings. Information about this was collected through a survey of teachers and is reported in part three. Part three also discusses the aims and characteristics of those books identified as being used most frequently.

Middle Years

As in the early years, the curriculum guidelines prescribe few teaching strategies, leaving these decisions to the teacher. Again, several guidelines stress an "activity approach." Some 53 textbooks are listed across the country, 21 of these appear in more than one list, and only 9 in more than two. It was therefore difficult to compile a comprehensive and representative list (see Appendix B for the complete list and individual provincial documents for more specific provincial lists).

Senior Years

Mere topic listing and textbook prescriptions are the norm here. In biology, 23 books are listed, 13 appearing more than once; in chemistry, 29 are listed, 16 more than once; and in physics, 32 are listed, and 10 appear more than once (see Appendix B for detailed listings of these books).

Conclusions: Questions for Research and Deliberation

During the course of analyzing the ministry policy documents, a series of questions emerged about the study's overall goal of stimulating deliberation about the future directions of science education. Most of these questions cannot be answered definitively at this stage. More research may be required. Also many of the questions involve value issues that require a position to be taken rather than an answer calculated — they must be responded to through deliberation in each jurisdiction.

The questions are classified into groups. The first two questions concern the overall orientation of science in schools; numbers 3 to 6 focus on specific aims for science education; and number 7 discusses the themes brought out in the Science Council's study in relation to provincial science curriculum policies.

Orientation of Science in Schools

1. The number, variety and balance of aims for science education : How many different objectives can a science program be expected to reach? As we examined a number of the provincial documents, this question arose in our minds frequently. Some documents specify as many as 10 different aims for a single science program. Guidelines at the middle and senior years often stipulate a broad range of aims (see Tables V.3 to V.6, pp. 67-71). Can a program enable students to achieve many objectives or can only a few be achieved thoroughly? No guideline document sets out any order of priority of aims. Can one assume therefore that all of the stated aims are equally important? If not, what is the proper balance for many varied aims? These issues call for clearer resolution than is provided in most ministry policies.

The problem becomes of particular practical significance when one considers whether instructional resources are adequate to meet many varied objectives in science education.* In other words, is the range of textbooks listed by ministries adequate to meet the range of stipulated objectives — as distinct from the range of content topics — specified in the guidelines? What additional provisions are schools and teachers expected to make to ensure that opportunities exist for the attainment of the broad arrays of aims?

One way of approaching answers to these difficult questions is to ask: "What practical difference to the day-by-day teaching of science would it make if each one of a ministry's aims were separately dropped?" If the honest answer, in any given instance, is that no difference would result, one may indeed question the function of that particular aim. The insertion of an aim in a guideline for rhetorical purposes – because, like motherhood, one cannot be against it – is not only useless window dressing, it serves to blunt and confuse what could be an incisive direction to science teachers. Moreover, in some guidelines, an impressive set of general aims for a program is followed by sets of course objectives that, even taken together, do not amount to the overall aims. As we have noted earlier, the aim or purpose of a science program can be of great significance for the students. If there are too many different aims, if they are vague or carelessly stated or if those specified are not perceived by teachers to be attainable, then they will likely be ignored. Ministries of education will then have little control over the direction of resulting programs.

---

* For an examination of the objectives of the specific textbooks most often used see part three.

2. *The relation of science to other subjects*: A number of guidelines for the early years refer to the need to relate science to social studies. The inclusion of environmental studies at this level provides an excellent opportunity for this integration to take place. At the middle years in Atlantic Canada and Ontario, science is integrated with other subjects, whereas in western Canada, life science, earth science and physical science are presented in separate years. Apart from these two instances, the relation of science to other subjects in the curriculum is almost never discussed. How then is the teaching of science supposed to relate to the teaching of social studies (at higher levels of school, especially), to the teaching of mathematics and to the teaching of so-called technological (or technical) subjects? These questions need resolution in practice and at present there appears to be little ministry-level direction.

Specific Aims for Science Education

3. *The learning of science content as an objective*: Not surprisingly, perhaps, the aim most frequently encountered in guidelines at all levels was for students to learn something of the content of science. Clearly, in a science course, science content must be present. But often, especially at the early years, one hears the claim that the chief function of content is to act as a vehicle for reaching other educational goals. Yet, as even a brief examination of many guidelines can demonstrate, the detailed arrangement of the science topics to be learned frequently occupies most of the document. Science educators must ask themselves carefully and critically what is the real balance of importance between the learning of content and other objectives. This is of practical significance on a day-to-day basis when teachers and, increasingly, ministries also attempt to evaluate students' achievement.

4. *Process skills*: If learning science content is the aim most often encountered, then the development of "process skills" is a close second. As indicated earlier, several lists of these skills exist in various guidelines but

rarely, if ever, is any advice provided stating which skills are feasible for a given level. Consequently, a list which includes as diverse a collection of skills as "observing," "controlling variables" and "theorizing" is appended to guidelines for programs at all levels for students at various stages of intellectual development. Clearly, some skills cannot be developed at the elementary level while others are likely redundant at the senior level. Yet, rarely is a hierarchy of skills cross-referenced to different grades, ages or developmental levels. Such a casual approach to objective setting can result in only the lowest-level skills being attended to or the total neglect of higher-level inquiry skills. It would appear that the justification for including this objective at the senior-years level — that the development of such skills can enhance the student's ability to "solve problems" in life generally — should be particularly questioned. Marcel Risi's discussion paper[17] moves one to doubt the validity of such a claim.

5. Science-related attitudes as objectives : This category incorporates two different types of attitude: attitudes held to be characteristic of scientists and attitudes towards science, scientists and scientific activity. Aims designed to develop both types of attitudes are encountered at all levels without any indication as to how a teacher should engender such attitudes. It has even been suggested[18] that developing an attitude towards something entails taking a value position towards it, and that deliberately causing students to take up a position of, say, valuing science must involve indoctrination on the part of the teacher. The argument concludes that if the process cannot be a rational one, then it is unethical to conduct it as part of public education. While the reader may not find such an argument entirely convincing, he or she may nevertheless ask how such aims can in fact be achieved in a defensible manner.

6. Science and society and applied science/technology objectives : Several critics of science education complained that not enough attention was paid to the interaction of science and society. As well, popular wisdom in schools often regards ministry policies as following rather than leading curriculum change. But aims dealing with understanding aspects of the interactions among science, technology and society are clearly appearing more often in ministry guidelines. How can we explain this paradox? Are textbooks lacking in this area, do teachers not rate these aims as important or are the critics and popular wisdom wrong?

The Study's Themes in Relation to Provincial Science Curriculum Policies

7. Issues from the study's discussion papers and workshops : During this analysis, we were concerned to see whether the issues raised by the discussion paper series and their implicit criticisms of science education (see

Table II.1) appeared in the guidelines. The issue of a Canadian context for science education appeared only occasionally. For example, the Northwest Territories provides programs designed to help students understand science as it applies to their unique northern environment; Prince Edward Island has an agriculture component in its middle-years science program. No guidelines referred to the processes of engineering though some mentioned technology and the products of applied science. And no guideline at any level made any statements concerning the needs of both girls and boys. Apparently, ministry policy statements do not generally consider these important. Whether or not they are important is clearly a matter for deliberation within each province.

Further issues for deliberation are set out in the textbook analysis (part three), the survey of teachers (volume II) and case studies (volume III). But while research may clarify the issues, the task of deciding and choosing must rest with those in each jurisdiction who are charged with responsibility for developing policy. It is their task that the process of deliberation is intended to facilitate.

Part Three

Analysis of Science Textbooks

VI. Textbooks in Science Education

The aims of science teaching, as set out in official policies, are either in harmony or conflict with two other sets of intentions, namely those of teachers (see volume II) and those found in textbooks. Part three of the study focusses on textbook aims and summarizes the degree of overlap with those of teachers and policy documents. Of course, an account of the intentions expressed by authors of science textbooks, however complete, is an inadequate basis for us to evaluate the ways in which textbooks affect educational practice. Textbooks, as we shall demonstrate, are still one of the principal ways of reaching the aims of science curricula; the present analysis therefore examines the opportunities textbooks provide for students to achieve these aims. Finally, this section will enable the reader to determine the extent to which certain criticisms of science education in general are specifically applicable to science textbooks.

In order to make clear the importance of textbooks both as a tool in science teaching and also as an economic commodity, discussion of the methodology and results of the analysis is prefaced by a few comments on the place given to textbooks in official guidelines, their role in science classes and their place in the educational publishing market.

Official Policies

Despite the upheavals science education has gone through in the last 20 years, the textbook has continued to play an important part in the enterprise. Its function, however, has changed. Not long ago, the textbook was not only the sole reference work available to students — it was, for all practical purposes, the entire program. Since the beginning of the 1960s, the shift of emphasis towards training in the scientific method and a concern for individualized instruction have led educational authorities to recommend the use of several textbooks rather than a single one. The following excerpt from an official document of the Ontario ministry of education illustrates this trend:

> "There is need to recognize the trend away from the use of a single text per grade as the principal instrument of instruction, and towards the use of a variety of books in any subject area. Educational research has confirmed the fact that the rate and degree of pupil growth and maturity vary. Teachers must be provided with an ever-increasing selection of books and instructional materials in order to be able to choose those that meet the different needs and aptitudes of their pupils.
>
> "Similarly, children must have access to an ample variety of print materials if they are to develop facility in choosing those appropriate to their immediate needs."[1]

The Québec ministry of education has recently begun a radical revision of the role of the textbook. In the policy statement and plan of action, "The Schools of Québec," the following illustrates clearly how certain provinces are moving towards a textbook-centred program:

> "The present situation obliges the Ministère to take steps to restore the textbook to its primary role among teaching materials and to emphasize its value as a basic teaching tool."[2]

The Saskatchewan department of education, in its directives concerning textbooks, after discussing the advantages and disadvantages of a single textbook, suggests a compromise:

> "Although the single textbook option is not the most highly recommended approach, it may be a reasonable starting point. Working with their own copies of the other textbooks, teachers will find which ones are most useful and can accumulate, year by year, additional copies for student use. In this way, a gradual transition to the multi-textbook approach can be achieved."[3]

Thus, whatever their position regarding the number of textbooks to be used, ministries of education agree that textbooks play an important role as a teaching tool.

Whether or not a particular textbook is used in a given science classroom depends on a number of factors, the most important being the approval, authorization or prescription of ministry policy. This factor, although essential, is not by itself sufficient. Intermediary bodies (school board and/or school) also have a say in the matter, and this includes financial considerations. And in the end, the teacher usually has the final choice. For the purposes of our study, we examined the considerable variety of science textbooks in use in Canadian schools. Appendix B lists 174 titles prescribed, approved or authorized by ministries. Even allowing for a reduction in this number to account for the existence of both French and English versions of the same text, the list remains impressive. Furthermore, our survey shows that the more than 4000 respondents use roughly 250 different titles, some of which do not even appear in official policies.

The Importance of Textbooks to Teachers

The survey of science teachers asked three questions about textbooks: their use in classes, their usefulness in course preparation and who, according to teachers, should be responsible for their selection. Both the questions and the detailed results are found in volume II. Here we merely indicate the broad trends that emerge from the responses.

Textbook use by students varies greatly from province to province. For example, in Canada as a whole, about six out of 10 teachers in the early years indicate that their students do not use a science textbook. In itself this information is hardly significant unless we add that this proportion varies from about 3 per cent in Newfoundland to about 90 per cent in Ontario. In the middle and senior years the differences between provinces decrease: the proportion of science teachers whose students use a science textbook rises from about 75 per cent in the middle years to 90 per cent in the senior years.

While many students do not use science textbooks during instruction, their instructors and teachers do use them to prepare their lessons. The survey asked respondents to appraise the relative usefulness of 13 teaching aids in the preparation of science lessons. The replies of teachers in the early years differ from those of their colleagues at higher levels. Curriculum resources from the school library were rated as fairly or very useful by 80 per cent of early-years teachers while 65 per cent of these teachers feel the same way about curriculum materials prepared in their school or school board. Finally, 62 per cent agree that the textbooks approved at the provincial level are fairly or very useful in lesson preparation.

At the middle-years level, 77 per cent of science teachers find textbooks other than the approved ones to be fairly or very useful; 73 per cent feel this way about approved textbooks and 70 per cent share this view about materials from the library.

At the senior-years level, 83 per cent and 78 per cent of science teachers consider textbooks other than the approved ones fairly or very useful in preparing their lessons; 78 per cent rated approved textbooks in this way; and 70 per cent of them feel this way about materials such as science magazines, journals and newsletters.

For a detailed presentation of the responses to these questions, see volume II. Here we focus on curriculum resources that most teachers find useful in lesson preparation. It is interesting to note that teachers view textbooks (both those approved and others) as useful aids in the preparation of science courses, that agreement on this point increases with grade level, that curriculum resources from the school library are considered less and less important from primary to the end of secondary school, and that textbooks other than the approved ones are perceived to be useful in course preparation, more useful in fact than the approved ones.

The survey also asked science teachers to indicate which of six listed authorities should be responsible for selecting textbooks. At all three levels, the teachers, in a proportion varying from 44 per cent to 52 per cent, support the proposal that a committee of teachers at the school-board level should be given the responsibility for selecting textbooks. All other authorities receive less than 14 per cent support. Fully half the teachers, therefore, want to be responsible for choosing textbooks and want this responsibility to be exercised at the school-board level (see volume II for more information).

None of this can show us how textbooks are actually used in practice. If textbooks really are used, how are they used? The reader will find answers to some of these questions in the series of case studies undertaken during the fall of 1981 in eight Canadian schools (see volume III).

Science Textbooks and Teacher Satisfaction

In section 3 of the questionnaire, the teachers were asked whether a science textbook was used by the students in the class that they taught most often in 1981 to 1982. Out of 4206 respondents, 2631 answered in the affirmative; of these, 1927 teachers evaluated the following 10 aspects of the textbooks they were using:

1. appropriateness of the science content for the grade level taught;
2. relationship of the text's objectives with the teacher's priorities;
3. readability for students;
4. illustrations, photographs, etc.;
5. suggested activities;
6. Canadian examples;
7. accounts of the applications of science;
8. appropriateness for slow students;
9. appropriateness for bright students;
10. references for further readings.

Respondents were also asked to give their overall impressions of the textbook used (see volume II).

In this section, we examine in greater detail the results of an analysis of 50 textbooks (or series of textbooks) that, according to the survey data, are the ones most frequently used in Canadian schools (see Appendix C for tabular results). The tables show a number of significant trends. First, teachers are generally quite satisfied with their textbooks. Of the 50 textbooks, 36 are considered completely or fairly adequate by two-thirds or more of their users. This is the case for all the physics textbooks and almost all the biology and chemistry textbooks used at the senior-years level. Moreover, only three textbooks are considered completely inadequate, two of which were evaluated by only five or six respondents. The rest of the textbooks (11 out of 50) were rated as mediocre or fair. All but two of the French-language textbooks fall into this category, but in view of the small number of respondents who evaluated these textbooks, it would be premature to attempt to draw any definitive conclusion.

With one exception, the most frequently used textbooks are also those which create the best overall impression. At first sight, therefore, it does not appear that teachers are often forced to use textbooks with which they are not satisfied.

In Appendix C, the features of textbooks that were evaluated are ranked by degree of adequacy, making it possible to determine quite quickly which features are considered adequate or inadequate by the largest number of respondents. For example, the presence of illustrations is the most appreciated feature of almost all the early- and middle-years biology textbooks, while, at the other extreme (for these same textbooks), appropriateness for the slow student is the least adequate feature (this was ranked last 10 times out of 13). Indeed, this feature is inadequate in almost all textbooks; it is ranked tenth (least adequate feature of all) for 24 of the textbooks and ninth for 18 others. So teachers are saying that their textbooks are of little use in helping students with learning difficulties.

Since our study is particularly concerned with the aims of science teaching, one particularly interesting feature is the correspondence between a textbook's objectives and the educational priorities of the teachers using it. For 28 of the 50 textbooks, at least three out of four teachers believe that the textbook's objectives correspond with their educational priorities completely or fairly well. These features are widely used — 28 textbooks are used by 1300 out of a total of 1700 respondents, that is, 75 per cent of the respondents. Here again, very few (four) of the textbooks are seen as having an unsatisfactory correspondence between their objectives and teachers' priorities. Since each of these textbooks was evaluated by between five and seven teachers only, no firm conclusion is made. But, for only a few textbooks is the correspondence between their objectives and the teachers' priorities considered their most satisfactory feature.

Efforts made in recent years to increase the readability of science textbooks have, it appears, met with some success. Only nine textbooks are considered inadequate in this respect by at least 50 per cent of the users. These include the first editions of the following programs: *CHEM-Study* (two textbooks), *PSSC* (one textbook and its French translation) and *ISP* (French version of *IPS*). According to the francophone respondents, *Les chemins de la science* (the French version of *STEM*) and *La chimie: expériences et principes* are less readable than the original English-language versions. It is reasonable to suppose that the readability of the English original is difficult to preserve in translation. At present, it is hard to say whether this is the only factor that can explain such a difference.

Teachers also evaluated the activities suggested in science textbooks. Those activities contained in eight of the textbooks are considered completely or fairly adequate by at least 80 per cent of their users. These activities, however, are practically never the primary source of satisfaction. At the other extreme, the activities suggested in nine textbooks are considered marginally or not at all adequate by at least 60 per cent of their users. Curiously, this group contains seven of the 15 biology textbooks (see Appendix C for more details).

The results on the "Canadian examples" section were puzzling. In particular, two textbooks that had no Canadian content were nevertheless considered adequate in this respect. It could be that teachers consider Canadian content unimportant; in that case, they would consider textbooks satisfactory even though they contain few or even no Canadian examples. However, even though the teachers do not consider an awareness of scientific activity in Canada a very important objective, the absence of Canadian examples in the textbooks seems to trouble them. For half of the textbooks, this feature is ranked ninth or tenth (least adequate feature). It is also noteworthy that those textbooks that do contain Canadian examples are considered adequate in this regard. This is the case for *Understanding Living Things* and *ALCHEM*, for which Canadian examples represent a major source of user satisfaction.

The degree of satisfaction regarding applications of science varies, but rarely reaches a high level. On the whole, the senior-years teachers do not consider science textbooks satisfactory in this respect.

At the beginning of this section, we pointed out that the teachers are dissatisfied with the suitability of the textbooks for slow students. Generally speaking, most of the textbooks are considered very suitable for bright students, particularly at the senior-years level, where this feature is listed as the primary source of satisfaction for 13 out of 26 textbooks. However, a textbook that is adequate for bright students is often considered inadequate for slow students. Very few textbooks are considered adequate for both of these groups; amongst these exceptions are *Fundamentals of Physics* and, to a lesser extent, *STEM* and *ALCHEM*. Four textbooks are considered (by over 50 per cent) to be inadequate for bright students. Are these textbooks then adequate for slow students? The answer is "no" for two of the textbooks in question and "yes" for the other two. Since the number of respondents is small in three of the four cases, it is once again difficult to draw any firm conclusions. Nevertheless, on the whole, the science textbooks used in Canada are considered by teachers to be much more appropriate for bright students than for slow students.

Another feature which the survey respondents evaluated was the number of references to other relevant books. Since we had not specified to whom these references were to be relevant (students or teachers), the evaluation must be interpreted very generally. Fully 50 per cent or more teachers are satisfied with this feature for 24 of the 50 textbooks. Senior-years biology textbooks are considered the most adequate in this respect. Lastly, we note that these relevant references are not necessarily found in the student's textbook. For example, although one chemistry textbook, *Foundations of Chemistry*, has a 73 per cent adequacy rating with regard to relevant references, the student's text contains no such references. It must be supposed that these references are all found in the teacher's edition of the book.

The final feature evaluated by respondents is the suitability of the scientific content for the intellectual maturity of the students. According to the teachers, the great majority of the textbooks are adequate in this respect; indeed, 39 of the 50 textbooks are considered fairly or completely satisfactory by at least two-thirds of their users. This is particularly true for practically all textbooks intended for use in the senior-years level.

In conclusion, the survey indicated that the teachers are generally satisfied with their textbooks, finding them well illustrated, easy to read, and generally well suited to the intellectual maturity of their students. Teachers feel the textbooks have little to offer the slowest students but do meet the requirements of the bright students. Is it possible to develop a textbook which meets the requirements of both groups equally well? The fact that many of the textbooks do not contain Canadian examples or descriptions of science applications causes a certain amount of dissatisfaction among the teachers. And finally, the teachers consider that science textbook objectives correspond adequately to their own priorities. This finding is not too surprising, as elsewhere in the questionnaire the teachers state that they view the science textbooks as very important tools in the preparation of their lessons.

The Science Textbook Market

The Science Council's study is not primarily directed towards the problems of publishing science textbooks for use in the primary and secondary schools of Canada. Few studies have been devoted to this matter. However, figures dating from 1976 and relating to the position occupied by science textbooks in school textbook publishing are summarized in Table VI.1.

From kindergarten to grade 13, the net sales of science textbooks for the year 1976 amounted to $1 972 198. In the same year, the net sales of all school textbooks intended for these grades came to $41 962 525. Thus, science textbooks constitute 4.7 per cent of the publishing market. In terms of numbers of copies sold, the 415 218 science textbooks represent 3.6 per cent of the total 11 630 244 textbooks. One may wonder at the existence of so many different titles in such a small market. According to data provided by Statistics Canada, the volume of sales of textbooks fluctuates considerably from one year to the next. We cannot therefore infer a clear trend, either upward or downward. However, any trend, if there is one, would be important because a consistent drop in the sale of textbooks would mean that teachers are using worn-out or out-of-date books. Concerned at this possibility, the Ontario Teachers' Federation, in cooperation with the school group of the Canadian Book Publishers' Council commissioned a study on textbooks in Ontario classrooms. The author of the final report, Doris Ryan, notes that:

- about two-fifths of the books that teachers currently use in their classes were published before 1975. Slightly more than one-fifth of these books were published twelve or more years ago;
- 40 per cent of the teachers surveyed teach a class or subject in which the textbooks available for student use are out-of-date;
- among subject areas, out-of-date textbooks are in use most often by teachers of history and geography, science, and English.[4]

Table VI.1 – Sales of School Science Textbooks, 1976

	Copies Sold		Net Sales	
Teaching Level	English	French	English	French
			$	$
Early Years	81 913	43 134	370 749	192 407
Middle Years	75 774	15 712	374 916	108 586
Senior Years	172 670	26 015	772 048	153 492

Source: Statistics Canada, *Book Publishing: School Textbooks, 1976*. Cat. no. 87-603, Statistics Canada, October, 1979.

Our own survey shows that a good number of science textbooks currently in use in Canadian schools are getting old. This is of little importance for the scientific content which, as we will indicate later, is fairly standard. However, features such as avoidance of stereotypes, increased Canadian content, a social perspective and some original scientific content appear mostly in the newer textbooks (published since 1975). Deliberation over future directions for science education should take into account the aging of science textbooks.

VII. Descriptive Analysis: Aims and Methodology

The analysis of textbooks is included in the strategy of deliberative inquiry to provide a database for informing the deliberations concerning the directions of science teaching. Thus, we are not concerned with evaluating science textbooks, but rather with describing some of their significant features. Initially we examined the general properties of science textbooks, then selected certain features for more detailed study, on the basis of the general aims of the study and the specific objectives of this textbook analysis.

Selected Features of Science Textbooks

Five features of science textbooks were considered: textbooks as material objects, their science content, the structure of this content, its context, and their suggested teaching methods.

Textbooks as Material Objects

Textbooks have all the characteristics of other printed works. Their material quality can be judged by such criteria as layout, the presence of illustrations, the use of colour, legibility, readability, etc. Price, availability and country of origin may also influence the choice of a textbook. And, like any other material object, a textbook may cause different reactions in those who use it. An example of this may be the security that some parents, teachers or students feel as a result of having it in the classroom.[1]

The Science Content

Content consists of all the facts, laws and theories that constitute what may be called the rhetoric of science. Here are a few random examples from various textbooks:

> "Work is produced when a force is applied to a body and causes this body to move in the direction of motion of the force."
>
> "Mutualism is the association of two species where both species benefit from this association."
>
> "$A + B \xrightarrow{AB} AB$ and $[AB] = k \times [A] \times [B]$."
>
> "The statement that all matter consists of atoms is called the atomic theory."

The Structure of the Content

Authors can hold different opinions concerning the choice of concepts to be introduced in the course and the order of their presentation. In Table VII.1, two tables of contents from chemistry textbooks recommended for the same school years in the same province illustrate the point. Not only are the concepts presented in a different order; they are introduced in a different way. Table VII.2 illustrates two ways of introducing the concept of oxidation-reduction.

Table VII.1 – Comparison of Tables of Contents of Two Chemistry Textbooks

Textbook A[a]	Textbook B[b]
1. Chemistry, an experimental science	1. Introduction to the experimental method
2. The atomic theory	2. Mixtures, compounds and the elements
3. Principles of chemical reactions	3. Metallic and non-metallic elements
4. The gas phase: An introduction to kinetic theory	4. The behaviour of matter
5. Liquids and solids: An extension of the kinetic theory	5. The atom
6. Solutions, solubility, and ions	6. The electron universe
7. Order among atoms	7. The periodic table of elements
8. Composition of the atom and radioactivity	8. Solids
9. Electrons in atoms	9. The physical behaviour of gases
10. Chemical bonding	10. Chemical reactions and molar ratios
11. Energy in chemical and nuclear reactions	11. The liquid phase and solutions
12. The rates of chemical reactions	12. The thermal aspect of chemical reactions
13. Chemical equilibrium	13. Reaction rate

Table VII.1 – continued from previous page

Textbook A[a]	Textbook B[b]
14. Aqueous acids and bases	14. The state of equilibrium
15. Oxidation and reduction	15. Solubility, a case of equilibrium
16. The chemistry of carbon compounds	16. Acids and bases of equilibrium cases
17. Chemical bonding in gases, liquids and solids	17. Oxidation-reduction, a case of equilibrium
18. The halogens	18. Chemistry, the environment and pollution
19. The fourth row transition elements	

[a] Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, D.C. Heath, Toronto, p. viii.

[b] René Lahaie *et al.*, *Éléments de chimie expérimentale*, Éditions HRW, Montréal, 1976, p. v (our translation).

Table VII.2 – Two Ways of Introducing the Concept of Oxidation-Reduction

Textbook C[a]	Textbook A[b]
1. The nature of burning	1. The chemistry of electrochemical cells
2. Oxidation	2. Redox reactions in a beaker
3. Characteristics of oxygen	3. Competition for electrons
4. Activity of oxygen	4. Volts, amperes, and coulombs
5. Requirements for burning	5. The voltage of an electrochemical cell and the tendency to accept electrons
6. Oxidizing agents	6. Predicting redox reactions
7. Reduction and reducing agents	7. Storage batteries and electrochemical cells
8. Electrons and oxidation	8. Corrosion of iron, an undesirable redox reaction
9. Electrochemistry	9. The electrolysis process, a nonspontaneous redox reaction
10. Current and voltage	10. Quantitative relations in electrolysis
11. Using electrode potentials	11. Balancing oxidation-reduction equations
12. Predicting cell potentials	12. Oxidation numbers
13. Prediction of reactions between oxidizing and reducing agents	13. Review
14. Balancing redox equations	
15. Oxidation numbers	
16. Historical background	

Table VII.2 – continued from previous page

Textbook C[a]	Textbook A[b]
17. Balancing redox equations with oxidation numbers	

[a] A. Mason and C.T. Sears, *Inquiries in Chemistry*, Allyn & Bacon, Toronto, 1977, pp. 393-428.

[b] Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, D.C. Heath, Toronto, pp. 310-343.

Obviously, the intent is the same — to teach students how to predict the redox reaction and balance the oxidation-reduction equations properly. However, textbook C prefers to start with the combustion phenomenon (oxidation as the process of combining with oxygen), whereas textbook A uses electron transfer as the guiding thread of the chapter.

Authors may employ one or more of the following criteria to structure content:

- the historical sequence of the growth of knowledge;
- the logical order of a modern reconstruction of a discipline (the structure of a discipline);
- a hierarchical model of learning;
- the cognitive level of the student and his prescientific ideas;
- the desire to present scientific activity from different points of view (cultural, social, technological, etc.);
- the aim of the course (preparation for higher studies or general education);
- force of habit (standardization of textbooks).

The Context of the Science Content

Authors enjoy considerable latitude in choosing the context in which they present the science content. The context may be defined briefly as the sum of all the information not included in the science content as described above. For the purposes of the study we identified four components of this context.

1. *Messages about science*: The author states his concept of the nature of science. This is the "rhetoric *about* science." Consciously or otherwise, the author adopts one or more philosophical points of view. Here are some examples:

> "In this book you will see some examples of rules in science that have been shown to be wrong. They have been replaced by new rules. Someday these new rules may have to be changed too. This method of trying to create explanations that fit all the facts has led to such wonderful successes as polio vaccine and the propulsion of rockets to the moon."[2]
>
> "What can we do while we wait for science and technology to discover the new sources of energy we so desperately need?"[3]

> "It is characteristic of today's researchers that they accept the obligation to publish their results world-wide through the medium of specialized periodicals and congresses, so that their colleagues can discuss them and profit from them in the interest of hastening new discoveries."[4]

2. *The physical component*: This component represents the physical framework (or the absence of one) in which an author chooses to set the subject matter. The following example shows how a piece of scientific information can be imparted without any distinct framework:

> "*Effect of pH:* The action of all enzymes is influenced by the pH of the solution in which they are operating. For every enzyme there is an *optimal pH* at which the rate of reaction is at its maximum. If there is a departure from this pH in either direction the rate of reaction decreases rapidly and soon reaches zero. Again, the explanation lies in the denaturation of the enzyme at pH values some distance away from the optimal."[5]

Here is an example where a physical context is present:

> "A much better way to prevent corrosion of iron involves bringing a stronger reducing agent than iron into the system. A metal such as zinc or magnesium in close contact with iron becomes the anode, forcing iron to act as a cathode. The zinc or magnesium piece is oxidized, releasing electrons. The iron bar does not corrode. Ship hulls are protected in this fashion. Large blocks of zinc metal are bolted to the steel hulls. The zinc oxidizes, largely preventing loss of iron from the hull."[6]

Authors describe physical contexts in several ways, using photographs, maps, diagrams, etc.

3. *The historical component*: We defined the historical component as the sum total of information concerning the history of science and technology, including relevant social and cultural considerations. This component contributes to the historical "depth" with which the author endows his work.

4. *The sociocultural component*: This component comprises the following elements that are situated on the periphery of scientific activity:

- information on technological processes and products and their links with science;
- the social impact of science and technology;
- the economic and political aspects of science and technology;
- ethical and legal considerations;
- information about careers in science and technology.

The presence of a context, or more accurately of a "contextual web" depends both on the aims of science teaching and on the author's intentions. This relationship is emphasized by one of us (G.O.) specifically in reference to the Canadian context, but the line of reasoning applies also to other aspects of the sociocultural content.

> "One of the consequences of choosing new goals for any enterprise is that, in the process, other goals, equally legitimate in principle, are inevitably discarded. In this case, goals concerned with the relevance of science to issues of personal, social, and national importance were down-rated in favour of those concerned with the 'structure of the discipline.' And goals embodying such notions as the 'processes of inquiry' in particular transcend national boundaries; they are essentially universal in their nature. Given a commitment to such goals, references to Canada, Canadians, and Canadian issues become not only unnecessary; they may even be distractions from the overall direction of the curriculum."[7]

The existence of a particular context may also be justified by various pedagogical objectives. Thomas Russell has this to say about the historical context:

> "Why, then, do we teach the history of science? As noted earlier, arguments have been advanced on two main fronts in the 1955-1975 period. Some seek to improve student interest in and appreciation of science; others seek to have students understand the methods of science."[8]

Contextual analysis of a science textbook, therefore, cannot be divorced from the aims for science education prevailing at the time these textbooks are in use.

Pedagogy

The difference between a school textbook and any other printed work containing the same information lies in its educational purpose. A textbook is a teaching tool. As such, it must therefore incorporate instructional strategies designed to create learning situations for students. These strategies usually take the following forms:

- questions included in the text with varying style, frequency and placement;
- questions, exercises and problems of application, generally placed at the end of a chapter;
- practical activities to be carried out in the laboratory, outlined either in the textbook or in a separate laboratory manual;
- less frequently, a series of projects to be undertaken outside the school.

These strategies are intended to make it possible for the student to attain the general aims of science education — the acquisition of factual knowledge, skills and a set of desirable attitudes.

Which strategies authors choose depend on their educational ideals, their view of the world and of science in particular and their theories of teaching and learning.

Goals and Limitations of the Textbook Analysis

This analysis was intended to help us answer two questions:

- to what extent do the content and suggested activities of science textbooks enable students to reach the overall aims of science education?
- to what extent are contemporary criticisms of science education applicable to the textbooks currently in use?

The selection of aims is based on the results of the analysis of ministry guidelines. For all provinces and territories the most common aims are those associated with science content, the acquisition of scientific skills and the development of an awareness of the relationship between science and society. Since we decided not to examine the science content of courses or textbooks, it is not referred to here. The analysis followed the general aims of the study, focussing primarily on the context in which the science content is presented and on what students may learn from this context. The selection of criticisms is based on those outlined in chapter I of this study.

In summary, we selected the following aims for analysis purposes:

- acquisition of scientific skills;
- the science-technology-society interaction.

Of the issues raised by criticisms of science education we selected the following:

- the Canadian context of science education;
- images of science conveyed by textbooks;
- attitudes towards careers in science and technology.

Finally, an examination of the stated aims of textbooks enabled us to get a general — though still incomplete — idea of the educational priorities of authors.

Methodology

The textbook analysis revolved around six themes: the stated aims of science textbooks, the acquisition of scientific skills, a growing understanding of the interaction between science, technology and society, the Canadian context in science teaching, the image of scientific activity conveyed by science textbooks and the encouragement to pursue careers in science and engineering.* Appendix D contains original analytical schemes for five of these themes. For the sixth, we used an instrument developed by M. Fuhrman, V. Lunetta, S. Novick and P. Tamir,[9] whereby the practical activities specified in the laboratory manual for students to undertake in laboratory classes can be classified according to their degree of complexity. These six analytical schemes were appraised by independent experts and tested before being used for the analysis itself.

---

* The data collected concerning careers was insufficient for a complete section in this report. The relevant information has therefore been integrated with other analyses.

We used the results of the survey of science teachers to draw up a list of textbooks to be analyzed. Two criteria were used to select each textbook to be analyzed: the number of teachers mentioning its use in their classes and the number of provinces in which it is used to a significant extent. Geographical and linguistic considerations were also taken into account. Table VII.3 indicates the distribution of textbooks selected for analysis and Table VII.4 provides a complete list.

Table VII.3 – Number and Distribution of Textbooks Analyzed, by Grade Level, Subject and Language

Subject	General Science		Physical Sciences		Biology Ecology		Chemistry		Physics		Total	
	E	F	E	F	E	F	E	F	E	F	E	F
Early Years	2	2									2	2
Middle Years	3	0	2	2	4	3					9	5
Senior Years					5	0	5	1	3	1	13	2

Note: E: English, F: French

Table VII.4 – Textbooks Analyzed

Early Years

01. *Les Chemins de la science*, Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*, translated and adapted by Fernand Séguin, Éditions du renouveau pédagogique, 1978 (volume 5).

02. *Les Chemins de la science*, Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*, translated and adapted by Fernand Séguin, Éditions du renouveau pédagogique, 1978 (volume 6).

03. *Laidlaw Exploring Science Program*, Milo K. Blecha *et al.*, Doubleday Canada Ltd., 1977 (Red Book, Grade 6).

04. *Space, Time, Energy, Matter (STEM)*, Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*, Addison-Wesley, 1977 (grade 5).

Middle Years

Biology

11. *Biological Sciences: An Introductory Study*, William Andrews *et al.*, Prentice-Hall, 1980.

12. *Biologie humaine*, Charles Désiré *et al.*, Centre Éducatif et Culturel, 1968.

13. *Les êtres et leur milieu*, M. Poirier *et al.*, Brault et Bouthillier, 1970.

14. *Focus on Life Science*, C.H. Heimler and J.D. Lockard, Charles Merrill, 1977.

15. *Focus on Science: Exploring the Natural World*, Doug Gough and Frank Flanagan, D.C. Heath, 1980.

16. *Introduction à la biologie: perspective écologique*, Paul Thibeault et R. D'Aoust, Éditions Hurtubise HMH, 1970.

17. *Life Science: A Problem Solving Approach*, Joseph L. Carter *et al.*, Ginn, 1974.

Table VII.4 – Continued from previous page

Physical Science

21. *Exploring Matter and Energy*, Milo K. Blecha *et al.*, Doubleday Canada, 1978.

22. *Initiation aux sciences physiques*, U. Haber-Schaim *et al.*, translated and adapted by J.M. Chevrier, Institut de recherches psychologiques, 1969.

23. *Physical Science: An Introductory Study*, William Andrews *et al.*, Prentice-Hall, 1978.

24. *Science physiques: Matière, énergie, interactions*, R.R. McNaughton and R.W. Heath, translated and adapted by J. Bergeron and M. Mercure, Centre Éducatif et Culturel, 1977.

General Science

31. *Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy, Prentice-Hall, 1979.

32. *Introducing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy, Prentice-Hall, 1977.

33. *Scienceways*, (Blue Level), John McBean *et al.*, Copp Clark Pitman, 1979.

Senior Years

Biology

41. *Biological Science: An Ecological Approach* (BSCS Green), Biological Sciences Curriculum Study, Rand McNally, 1978.

42. *Biology* J.W. Kimball *et al.*, Addison-Wesley, 1978.

43. *Modern Biology*, J.J. Otto and Albert Towle, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1969.

44. *Understanding Living Things*, John Reimer and W. Wilson, D.C. Heath, 1977.

Chemistry

51. *ALCHEM*, Frank Jenkins *et al.*, J.M. LeBel, 1978.

51a. *ALCHEM Elective:* Ethylene and Its Derivatives, Frank Jenkins *et al.*, J.M. LeBel, 1979.

51b. *ALCHEM Elective*: Solar Energy, Solar Education for the 80's, Frank Jenkins *et al.*, J.M. LeBel, 1980.

52. *Chemistry Today*, R.L. Whitman and E.E. Zinck, Prentice-Hall, 1976.

53. *Chemistry: Experimental Foundations*, Robert W. Parry *et al.*, Prentice-Hall, 1975.

54. *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, D.C. Heath, 1977.

55. *Éléments de chimie expérimentale*, René Lahaie *et al.*, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1976.

56. *Keys to Chemistry*, E. Ledbetter and J. Young, Addison-Wesley, 1977.

Physics

61. *Fundamentals of Physics*, R.W. Heath *et al.*, D.C. Heath, 1979.

62. *Matter and Energy*, J.H. MacLachlan *et al.*, Clarke, Irwin, 1977.

63. *Physics (PSSC)*, U. Haber-Schaim *et al.*, D.C. Heath, 1965.

64. *Les sciences par objectifs de comportement: physique*, Le groupe SO_2, Éditions du Renouveau Pédagogique, 1974.

The task of examining such a large number of textbooks, intended for different populations, from so many different viewpoints, far surpassed the capacity of any single individual. For this reason, Council appointed a team of 18 science education specialists who, following an intensive training period, examined the textbooks from April to June of 1982. The detailed technical reports of each analyst will be rearranged and published later. Chapter VIII offers a synthesis of the results. The analysis is descriptive — the researchers made no evaluative judgements. Rather they raised a series of questions, suggested by the data, for discussion at the deliberative conferences.

VIII. Descriptive Analysis: Results

This chapter provides a general view of certain features of the textbooks used in Canadian schools, arranged by the three teaching levels used in the study. It is not a comparative analysis, and the discussions and questions are less concerned with individual books than with the group of the most frequently used science textbooks.

The results are presented in tabular form in order to give the reader the primary data on which our discussions are based. This format facilitates reading of the data and ready identification of trends. Each section of the analysis is accompanied by questions for deliberation.

Table VII.4 (see p. 94) lists the titles of the textbooks that were analyzed. To simplify the tables in this chapter, each book is referred to by its code number, which is also used in both discussion and questions.

Stated Aims of Science Textbooks

Authors express their intentions in various ways. Sometimes, these are addressed to the student, at other times to the teacher. Some are worded according to norms for the construction of behavioural objectives, while others are worded very vaguely. In order to express this diversity clearly we have used the following symbols:

X - the authors suggest one or more general aims in a given category;
O - the authors suggest one or more specific aims (generally in the form of a behavioural objective) in a given category;
? - the authors indicate a partial, limited, or vague intention in a given category.

The categories of aims correspond to those used elsewhere in the study (see chapter V). Table VIII.1a-b shows aims stated by science textbook authors, listed by textbook and category of aim.

Table VIII.1a – Aims of Science Textbooks

Early Years (00); Middle Years, Biology (10), Physical Science (20), General Science (30)

Textbook code	01	02	03	04	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	21	22	23	24	31	32	33
Science Content	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Scientific Skills/Processes	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Science and Society	o	X	X	o	X	o	X	X	X	X		X		X	X	X	X	X
Nature of Science	X	X		X	?	0		X	X		?	0	X	?		X	X	
Personal Growth	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X		X		X	X	X	X
Science-Related Attitudes			X		X					X		X		X	X		?	X
Applied Science and Technology	0	0		0				?	X			X		0				0
Career Opportunities			X	X			X	X	?			X						

Practically all the textbooks contain aims associated with the acquisition of science content and scientific process skills. This is not surprising. With regard to these two categories at least, ministries of education and the authors of textbooks have the same aims. With regard to the third category, science and society, 28 of the 34 textbooks in our sample state this as one of their aims. Ministry guidelines — at least at the middle years — also contain aims relating to the interaction between science, technology and society. Of the 14 textbooks intended for this level, 12 state aims belonging to this category. Interestingly, the two textbooks stating no science and society aims (textbooks 17 and 22) contain an emphasis on the discovery of scientific concepts. Like other textbooks of this kind, such a context often contains very few or no messages other than those concerning the nature of science.

The number of stated aims belonging to the fourth category, the nature of science and the history of science and technology, is also high; however, some of these aims are not very clearly stated. Aims relating to the history of science alone are very few, but the history of science is not necessarily ignored when there is no stated intention regarding it.

According to their authors, science textbooks are intended to contribute to the personal growth of students. A few examples illustrate the confidence and optimism of certain authors in this area. The authors' intentions vary greatly, ranging from the development of democratic attitudes and behaviour (61) to the development in students of a healthy scepticism that takes account of the opinions of others and encourages them to have confidence in their own views (02), thus building independence and self-confidence (56).

Less than half the textbooks contain aims relating to the students' attitudes towards science. These aims generally have to do with those characteristics that one would like to see students develop: an interest in science, excitement, stimulation and so on. In certain textbooks, however, the wording of aims in this category was puzzling:

- to furnish a base for the development of positive values and attitudes vis-à-vis science in everyday life (03);
- to develop a positive attitude towards science and a lively interest in its various aspects (21).

The concern we felt is derived from an impression of manipulation that appears implicit in the wording of these aims. Even when the authors of the second example develop their point with suggestions for students to participate in a young scientists' club or in science fairs, the idea of a positive attitude towards science, and also the means of measuring it, remain far from clear.

Textbook authors do not generally regard the study of applied science and technology as being important. While the majority of physics and chemistry textbooks mention applications of science here and there, only a few of them consider applied science and technology a sufficiently important subject of study to justify stating an aim for it. In

Table VIII.1b — Aims of Science Textbooks

Senior Years, Biology (40), Chemistry (50), Physics (60)

Textbook code	41	42	43	44	51	51a	51b	52	53	54	55	56	61	62	63	64
Science Content	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0
Scientific Skills/Processes	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0
Science and Society	X		X	0		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	
Nature of Science	X	X		X			?	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0
Personal Growth	X	X		X			X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Science-Related Attitudes									X	X		X	X	X	?	
Applied Science and Technology				0	X	X	X	0	?	X	0	X	X	0	?	0
Career Opportunities	X											?	X		?	

fact, only *ALCHEM* (51) explicitly emphasizes the growing importance of the applied sciences. As well, two optional supplements of the *ALCHEM* program are concerned primarily with applied science: ethylene and its derivatives (51a), and solar energy (51b). We also noted that aims in this category are worded in ways that almost always stress pure science and its applications, and rarely the technological phenomena and their comprehension.

According to the authors of science textbooks, encouraging students to consider careers in science is not an important aim either. Only a few textbooks state this as a specific intention and we shall explain later how this intention is translated into concrete terms.

At first sight, therefore, the variety of aims stated by science textbook authors shows the same diversity and optimism as ministry guidelines. In this sense, the questions we asked at the conclusion of that analysis (see chapter V, p. 60) are still pertinent. However, examining textbooks enables us to get a better idea of authors' priorities. If one looks at lists of behavioural objectives (the abundance of which, since the start of the 1970s, is truly astounding), it is interesting to compare the number of aims relating to science content and scientific processes with the number of aims in other categories (see Table VIII.2).

Table VIII.2 – Examples of the Relative Importance of Textbook Aims

Textbook code number	02	21	44	55	61
Number of aims relating to the acquisition of content and scientific processes	167	97	95	419	29
Number of aims relating to the social implications of scientific and technological activity	5	31	5	15	4

This still provides only a partial picture. With respect to the total number of aims, some authors appear more specific than others. Moreover, the information and activities designed to give concrete expression to the aims relating to the interaction among science, technology and society are situated, in at least three out of the five textbooks taken as examples, in the very last chapters of the book. These chapters tend to be less systematically studied than the earlier ones.

Although this study of the explicit intentions of science textbooks identifies their priorities, it furnishes only a partial picture which the rest of this analysis must supplement. The aims are expressed in many different ways and breaking up general aims into a number of very specific behavioural objectives is a strong trend. While the aims that relate to science content and scientific processes seem to lend themselves to such fragmentation, we may well ask ourselves whether those belonging to other categories, such as the development of attitudes or values, are equally amenable to such a process, and, if so, how this can be done.

Secondly, the intentions of the textbooks are addressed sometimes to teachers, sometimes to students and sometimes to both with no apparent reason for the difference. No doubt students and their parents would like to know the nature and extent of the preparations for later life that a particular textbook offers.

Finally, as with the analysis of ministry guidelines, the issues raised by our discussion papers do not seem to be among the priorities of science textbook authors. The *ALCHEM* program is one exception. Its authors emphasize that it is in line with the recommendations of the Symons Report concerning a Canadian context in science textbooks. However, the point of view of the engineer, advocated by Donald George, is, for all practical purposes, absent from textbooks. Only textbook 21 devotes a few pages to the engineer's art. Even it, however, defines engineering as follows:

> "Engineering is the changing of scientific discoveries into technology. Or, to state it another way, it is putting science to use in making new things or providing new services."[1]

Clearly, this textbook ranks the engineer below the scientist — a point of view which is implicit in the other textbooks we examined. The engineering perspective, however, is systematically dealt with in the booklets of the *ALCHEM* program.

Although the special needs of girls with regard to scientific training are rarely the subject of an author's stated intentions, textbooks have slowly but surely evolved towards eliminating the crudest sex stereotypes. This follows both ministry guidelines and publishers' own policies.[2,3] In general, illustrations are modified to show more girls or women, and, where possible, in nonstereotyped roles. Also, certain passages are amended to take girls into account. For example, in the first edition of the *PSSC Physics* textbook, only boys jumped, spun around and rode in wagons to illustrate the laws of dynamics. In the latest edition, girls are doing the same thing.[4]

One physical science textbook (21) discusses scientific careers in detail. While the rest of this textbook depicts roughly equal numbers of boys and girls in the illustrations, those in the section on scientific careers are almost all of men. On one hand, this may represent a reality — the underrepresentation of women in science and technology. On the other hand, it leads one to wonder about the impact of implicit messages conveyed by such illustrations.

This examination of the stated aims of science textbooks needs to be complemented by a description of the means provided by authors for achieving some of their aims. That is the subject of the next part of this report.

Scientific Skills in the Laboratory

The laboratory manual, or the section of the textbook that contains instructions for laboratory work, plays an important part in providing for aims relating to the acquisition of scientific process skills. The laboratory is the place where the student can acquire these skills, this scientific know-how, by working directly with materials.

We studied the kinds of tasks demanded of students in the laboratory in order to determine what sort of skills a student might acquire and to see to what extent the textbook was helping students in this respect. We used an instrument developed by M. Fuhrman *et al.*[5], after consulting a number of articles on the subject.[6,7,8] However, unlike the originators of this instrument, who systematically analyzed all the experiments suggested in one manual, we analyzed only those experiments usually carried out during a school year. The latter figure is often much smaller than the former but it is more realistic. In order to construct an equivalent sampling of experiments each analyst contacted a teacher who was using the manual in question. In some cases, the analysts obtained the number and names of the experiments actually completed; in others, they only obtained the number and had to exercise their own judgement to construct the sample. Although we realized that two teachers using the same manual were not necessarily giving the same set of experiments, we also assumed that, if all the experiments involve similar tasks, similar conditions for developing the same skills would be provided. Otherwise, skills that are different in kind or degree may be developed. In view of these difficulties, the results can at best only indicate trends. However, we consider that these trends are themselves interesting.

Table VIII.3a-e presents the results of our analysis of laboratory activities. Again a code number identifies each textbook (see Table VII.4). The figures in the table represent the percentage of experiments in which the task in question is demanded of the student at least once.

Table VIII.3a – Structure and Task Analysis of Laboratory Work – Early Years (00) – percentages

Textbook code	01	02	03	04
Number of experiments analyzed	49	50	38	49
Structure				
a.1 High structure	76	88	97	98
a.2 Low structure	24	12	3	2
a.3 Inductive approach	82	84	87	98
a.4 Deductive approach	18	26	13	2
Cooperative mode				
b.1 Students work on a common task and pool results	18	6	0	12
b.2 Students work on different tasks and pool results	10	4	0	0
b.3 Postlab discussion required	0	14	0	4

Table VIII.3a – continued from previous page

Textbook code	01	02	03	04
Number of experiments analyzed	49	50	38	49
Task categories				
1.0 Planning and Design				
1.1 Formulates a question or defines a problem to be investigated	0	0	0	0
1.2 Predicts experimental result	22	2	13	14
1.3 Formulates hypothesis to be tested in this investigation	4	18	0	0
1.4 Designs observation or measurement procedure	10	6	0	2
1.5 Designs experiment	2	12	0	0
2.0 Performance				
2.1a Carries out qualitative observation	90	86	90	84
2.1b Carries out quantitative observation or measurement	34	40	24	18
2.2 Manipulates apparatus; develops technique	63	66	13	47
2.3 Records result, describes observation	33	12	26	22
2.4 Performs numeric calculation	2	14	5	4
2.5 Interprets, explains or makes a decision about experimental technique	14	18	3	2
2.6 Works according to own design	2	12	0	0
3.0 Analysis and Interpretation				
3.1a Transforms result into standard form (other than graphs)	4	2	13	6
3.1b Graphs data	2	2	0	0
3.2a Determines qualitative relationship	82	38	61	74
3.2b Determines quantitative relationship	21	22	18	18
3.3 Determines accuracy of experimental data	0	4	0	0
3.4 Defines or discusses the limitations or assumptions that underlie the experiment	4	24	0	0
3.5 Formulates or proposes a generalization or model	8	12	16	4
3.6 Explains a relationship	25	16	50	29
3.7 Formulates new questions or defines problem based upon the results of investigation	0	0	0	0

Table VIII.3a – continued from previous page

Textbook code		01	02	03	04
Number of experiments analyzed		49	50	38	49
4.0	*Application*				
4.1	Predicts based upon the results of this investigation	8	12	26	27
4.2	Formulates hypothesis based upon the results of this investigation	2	34	8	0
4.3	Applies experimental technique to new problem or variable	0	18	3	0

Table VIII.3b – Structure and Task Analysis of Laboratory Work – Middle Years, Biology (10) – percentages

Textbook code		11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Number of experiments analyzed		20	18	49	107	18	19	20
Structure								
a.1	High structure	100	83	100	94	78	79	100
a.2	Low structure	0	17	0	6	22	21	0
a.3	Inductive approach	30	0	57	95	39	21	100
a.4	Deductive approach	50	100	61	5	11	79	0
Cooperative mode								
b.1	Students work on a common task and pool results	0	0	0	18	6	0	0
b.2	Students work on different tasks and pool results	0	0	4	0	0	0	0
b.3	Postlab discussion required	0	0	4	2	0	0	100
Task categories								
1.0	*Planning and Design*							
1.1	Formulates a question or defines a problem to be investigated	0	0	0	0	0	0	20
1.2	Predicts experimental result	5	0	2	0	0	0	5
1.3	Formulates hypothesis to be tested in this investigation	0	0	6	0	0	11	5
1.4	Designs observation or measurement procedure	0	0	2	0	6	0	5
1.5	Designs experiment	0	0	0	0	0	0	15

Table VIII.3b – continued from previous page

Textbook code		11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Number of experiments analyzed		20	18	49	107	18	19	20
2.0	*Performance*							
2.1a	Carries out qualitative observation	75	83	80	73	100	90	75
2.1b	Carries out quantitative observation or measurement	35	0	51	26	28	47	30
2.2	Manipulates apparatus; develops technique	80	33	84	47	83	32	85
2.3	Records result, describes observation	85	67	67	26	83	11	75
2.4	Performs numeric calculation	30	0	22	10	0	5	30
2.5	Interprets, explains or makes a decision about experimental technique	10	0	12	36	33	5	30
2.6	Works according to own design	5	0	2	0	6	0	20
3.0	*Analysis and Interpretation*							
3.1a	Transforms result into standard form (other than graphs)	65	44	33	15	61	42	0
3.1b	Graphs data	5	0	8	2	0	5	10
3.2a	Determines qualitative relationship	50	44	16	29	44	53	40
3.2b	Determines quantitative relationship	25	0	14	11	0	26	30
3.3	Determines accuracy of experimental data	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.4	Defines or discusses the limitations or assumptions that underlie the experiment	5	0	2	3	0	5	5
3.5	Formulates or proposes a generalization or model	10	0	0	29	17	0	10
3.6	Explains a relationship	50	22	2	37	33	5	20
3.7	Formulates new questions or defines problem based upon the results of investigation	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table VIII.3b – continued from previous page

	Textbook code	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
	Number of experiments analyzed	20	18	49	107	18	19	20
4.0	*Application*							
4.1	Predicts based upon the results of this investigation	40	0	0	7	33	0	20
4.2	Formulates hypothesis based upon the results of this investigation	15	0	4	36	50	0	25
4.3	Applies experimental technique to new problem or variable	15	0	10	1	6	0	10

Table VIII.3c – Structure and Task Analysis of Laboratory Work – Middle Years, Physical Sciences (20) and General Science (30) – percentages

	Textbook code	21	22	23	24	31	32	33
	Number of experiments analyzed	24	43	24	22	58	33	18
Structure								
a.1	High structure	100	86	100	0	100	100	72
a.2	Low structure	0	14	0	0	0	0	28
a.3	Inductive approach	25	70	42	95	98	0	39
a.4	Deductive approach	75	30	42	0	2	100	17
Cooperative mode								
b.1	Students work on a common task and pool results	0	16	17	0	16	6	0
b.2	Students work on different tasks and pool results	0	2	0	0	0	3	0
b.3	Postlab discussion required	8	2	38	0	0	0	0
Task categories								
1.0	*Planning and Design*							
1.1	Formulates a question or defines a problem to be investigated	0	0	0	0	0	0	39
1.2	Predicts experimental result	0	21	13	0	5	12	6
1.3	Formulates hypothesis to be tested in this investigation	0	7	4	5	0	0	6
1.4	Designs observation or measurement procedure	0	5	13	0	0	3	17
1.5	Designs experiment	4	0	0	0	0	0	6

Table VIII.3c – continued from previous page

Textbook code		21	22	23	24	31	32	33
Number of experiments analyzed		24	43	24	22	58	33	18
2.0	*Performance*							
2.1a	Carries out qualitative observation	92	67	42	100	85	91	56
2.1b	Carries out quantitative observation or measurement	4	72	58	64	52	49	56
2.2	Manipulates apparatus; develops technique	46	91	79	27	85	88	95
2.3	Records result, describes observation	21	40	92	100	98	91	89
2.4	Performs numeric calculation	4	42	38	50	36	6	17
2.5	Interprets, explains or makes a decision about experimental technique	0	26	13	5	85	9	17
2.6	Works according to own design	0	2	4	0	0	0	11
3.0	*Analysis and Interpretation*							
3.1a	Transforms result into standard form (other than graphs)	17	2	17	5	31	6	72
3.1b	Graphs data	4	7	29	18	5	6	11
3.2a	Determines qualitative relationship	42	54	25	100	74	79	11
3.2b	Determines quantitative relationship	4	56	21	68	48	36	39
3.3	Determines accuracy of experimental data	0	7	0	5	0	0	0
3.4	Defines or discusses the limitations or assumptions that underlie the experiment	0	9	8	50	0	3	44
3.5	Formulates or proposes a generalization or model	4	14	8	27	93	9	17
3.6	Explains a relationship	25	21	29	36	40	52	6
3.7	Formulates new questions or defines problem based upon the results of investigation	0	2	0	36	2	0	0

Table VIII.3c – continued from previous page

Textbook code		21	22	23	24	31	32	33
Number of experiments analyzed		24	43	24	22	58	33	18
4.0	*Application*							
4.1	Predicts based upon the results of this investigation	4	5	4	64	95	73	33
4.2	Formulates hypothesis based upon the results of this investigation	0	7	4	41	0	3	17
4.3	Applies experimental technique to new problem or variable	0	2	0	9	0	18	6

Table VIII.3d – Structure and Task Analysis of Laboratory Work – Senior Years, Chemistry (50) – percentages

Textbook code		51	52	53	54	55	56
Number of experiments analyzed		11	14	19	23	24	31
Structure							
a.1	High structure	100	100	95	78	96	87
a.2	Low structure	0	0	5	22	4	16
a.3	Inductive approach	9	93	58	83	21	58
a.4	Deductive approach	36	7	47	17	91	48
Cooperative mode							
b.1	Students work on a common task and pool results	0	0	11	9	0	0
b.2	Students work on different tasks and pool results	0	7	21	0	0	3
b.3	Postlab discussion required	9	93	100	57	4	0
Task categories							
1.0	*Planning and Design*						
1.1	Formulates a question or defines a problem to be investigated	0	0	0	0	0	0
1.2	Predicts experimental result	36	7	5	4	0	3
1.3	Formulates hypothesis to be tested in this investigation	0	0	0	4	0	0
1.4	Designs observation or measurement procedure	0	0	0	13	4	13
1.5	Designs experiment	0	0	0	4	0	0

Table VIII.3d – continued from previous page

Textbook code		51	52	53	54	55	56
Number of experiments analyzed		11	14	19	23	24	31
2.0	*Performance*						
2.1a	Carries out qualitative observation	91	64	79	100	83	84
2.1b	Carries out quantitative observation or measurement	55	43	63	57	58	55
2.2	Manipulates apparatus; develops technique	91	86	68	70	79	84
2.3	Records result, describes observation	73	93	90	96	92	100
2.4	Performs numeric calculation	36	43	42	39	25	19
2.5	Interprets, explains or makes a decision about experimental technique	9	50	21	48	8	16
2.6	Works according to own design	0	0	0	9	4	16
3.0	*Analysis and Interpretation*						
3.1a	Transforms result into standard form (other than graphs)	36	43	21	22	63	48
3.1b	Graphs data	0	14	11	9	13	16
3.2a	Determines qualitative relationship	27	21	42	44	58	68
3.2b	Determines quantitative relationship	18	50	42	44	58	16
3.3	Determines accuracy of experimental data	0	29	26	4	0	3
3.4	Defines or discusses limitations or assumptions that underlie the experiment	0	7	5	17	0	3
3.5	Formulates or proposes a generalization or model	9	21	21	52	25	29
3.6	Explains a relationship	18	7	53	35	13	29
3.7	Formulates new questions or defines problem based upon the results of investigation	0	21	0	17	0	3
4.0	*Application*						
4.1	Predicts based upon the results of this investigation	18	50	37	44	38	29

Table VIII.3d – continued from previous page

Textbook code		51	52	53	54	55	56
Number of experiments analyzed		11	14	19	23	24	31
4.2	Formulates hypothesis based upon the results of this investigation	0	7	26	9	8	26
4.3	Applies experimental technique to new problem or variable	0	14	5	17	0	10

Table VIII.3e – Structure and Task Analysis of Laboratory Work – Senior Years, Biology (40) and Physics (60) – percentages

Textbook code		41	42	43	44	61	62	63	64
Number of experiments analyzed		24	20	67	27	58	60	25	21
Structure									
a.1	High structure	100	100	98	89	100	100	100	0
a.2	Low structure	0	0	2	11	0	0	0	0
a.3	Inductive approach	96	30	39	78	98	93	0	57
a.4	Deductive approach	4	70	61	44	2	15	100	15
Cooperative mode									
b.1	Students work on a common task and pool results	29	10	6	30	2	3	0	0
b.2	Students work on different tasks and pool results	8	0	0	11	0	0	0	5
b.3	Postlab discussion required	83	0	0	26	0	0	16	0
Task categories									
1.0	*Planning and Design*								
1.1	Formulates a question or defines a problem to be investigated	4	0	0	15	0	0	0	0
1.2	Predicts experimental result	13	0	0	26	2	0	68	0
1.3	Formulates hypothesis to be tested in this investigation	33	0	0	41	0	0	4	0
1.4	Designs observation or measurement procedure	8	0	0	37	0	2	4	0
1.5	Designs experiment	8	0	0	15	0	0	0	5
2.0	*Performance*								
2.1a	Carries out qualitative observation	75	90	79	85	72	53	16	100
2.1b	Carries out quantitative observation or measurement	46	60	21	59	52	65	84	81

Table VIII.3e – continued from previous page

Textbook code		41	42	43	44	61	62	63	64
Number of experiments analyzed		24	20	67	27	58	60	25	21
2.2	Manipulates apparatus; develops technique	71	85	81	63	100	100	92	100
2.3	Records result, describes observation	79	80	85	74	100	100	96	100
2.4	Performs numeric calculation	33	30	8	52	48	37	76	76
2.5	Interprets, explains or makes a decision about experimental technique	58	10	15	59	5	2	28	38
2.6	Works according to own design	8	0	3	19	0	0	0	5
3.0	*Analysis and Interpretation*								
3.1a	Transforms result into standard form (other than graphs)	29	60	69	33	27	0	72	62
3.1b	Graphs data	25	15	5	16	16	10	36	38
3.2a	Determines qualitative relationship	67	75	25	82	55	50	36	100
3.2b	Determines quantitative relationship	42	50	22	52	38	50	80	71
3.3	Determines accuracy of experimental data	0	5	0	15	10	5	12	24
3.4	Defines or discusses limitations or assumptions that underlie the experiment	58	10	2	59	9	7	24	24
3.5	Formulates or proposes a generalization or model	50	40	12	37	38	52	44	38
3.6	Explains a relationship	88	45	45	78	17	23	44	62
3.7	Formulates new questions or defines problem based upon the results of investigation	21	5	0	15	0	2	52	0
4.0	*Application*								
4.1	Predicts based upon the results of this investigation	67	30	8	44	24	28	40	14
4.2	Formulates hypothesis based upon the results of this investigation	92	0	3	44	7	3	4	19
4.3	Applies experimental technique to new problem or variable	0	0	76	4	3	2	4	0

The data in Table VIII.3 point to two sets of conclusions. The first set concerns the structure of the laboratory exercises. The figures show that laboratory exercises are almost always highly structured. In both the middle and senior years, in only one instance (out of 28) does the proportion of relatively less-structured experiments exceed 25 per cent of the total. Of the 28 textbooks examined, 18 contain experiments, 95 per cent of which are highly structured. A further question concerns the approach chosen for the experiments. Are students encouraged to make generalizations from the information collected (the inductive approach) or must they verify laws previously learned in class (the deductive approach)? While the inductive approach is more popular for the early years (for obvious reasons), this is not the case in the later years. And, while most textbooks suggest both approaches, some of them clearly favour one or the other. In terms of the aims chosen for science education, one approach may be more appropriate than the other. The question then is whether this affects the choice of textbooks. Finally, at all three levels, students are neither frequently nor strongly encouraged to work together during laboratory work or to share results.

The second set of conclusions relates to what students really do in the laboratory, assuming that both teachers and students follow the directions in the laboratory manuals. It is striking to note that out of 32 textbooks examined, 28 of them never ask the student to formulate a question or define a problem to be solved, and the student is only rarely asked to plan the observation or measurement procedure, to determine the accuracy of the results, and even more rarely to plan the experiment. Only three books in our sample contain such directions. On the other hand, students are very often asked to observe, to use apparatus or apply techniques, to establish relationships and to compile the results. In the senior years, they are asked somewhat more often to explain relationships and formulas or to suggest a generalization or model, but even then, this rarely occurs in more than half the experiments. Moreover, students are seldom invited to make predictions from the results of the investigation in more than half the total number of experiments we examined. Finally, students have almost no opportunity to apply the experimental technique in the case of a new problem or a new variable.

Having said this, a few additional details will help to clarify these conclusions. Firstly, the instrument we used was applied to the analysis of laboratory manuals by 18 different individuals. Although these analysts were trained in the use of the instrument and performed their analyses very carefully, one cannot assume the instrument to be completely reliable. However, the differences in interpreting statements in order to classify them were small enough that we can have confidence in the quality of the results. For example, the differences related to predictions and hypotheses that could not easily be assigned with complete certainty to one or another of the categories. Secondly, we expected that the vague wording of some instructions in the laboratory manuals would complicate the analysis. This question was raised by Lunetta and Tamir,[9] citing the ambiguity of the following question from the *PSSC Physics Laboratory Manual*:

"Could you make a 'lens' that would focus rolling balls?"[10]

Fortunately, this sort of problem hardly ever arose. Generally speaking, the instructions for the laboratory operations are clearly drafted and easy to understand. Incidentally, subsequent editions of the *PSSC Laboratory Manual* have been revised and this question no longer appears. This suggests to us another reason for interpreting the conclusions cautiously. The multiple revisions that science textbooks undergo sometimes take the form of omitting certain experiments and/or adding new ones. Highly complex tasks may thus replace quite simple ones. However, the opposite may also occur. Finally, the various ways teachers select a specific number of experiments for the year from among those recommended by the authors will largely determine the nature, complexity and variety of the tasks that will be set for students. For certain textbooks, a different sampling from the one reported in Table VIII.3 might have produced a more or less favourable picture. The latitude given to teachers to choose from among a large number of experiments plays a role that should be examined more thoroughly.

We conclude, then, by raising some questions based on the information derived from the laboratory manuals. All ministries of education include in their guidelines (for all levels of schooling) aims concerning the development of scientific process skills. At the end of our analysis of these guidelines, we emphasized that all the scientific skills (observing, stating hypotheses, verifying experimentally, etc.) appear regularly at all levels. But most of the textbooks chiefly provide opportunities for developing only the more elementary skills. Should the wording of the guidelines be more modest, or should laboratory tasks be designed with a view to developing all the desired skills, including the high-level ones? In selecting textbooks, do teachers pay sufficient attention to the variety and adequacy of the tasks that students are expected to perform in the laboratory? In planning their instruction, are teachers taking this into consideration? Should authors of textbooks suggest such a large number of experiments to teachers without informing them of the consequences of the choices they must make?

Let us now consider the category of aims relating to the nature of science. Can a student, working in a narrowly circumscribed way, following "recipes" in the textbook, not sharing results and planning virtually nothing of an original nature, really be acquiring a concept of science consistent with that proposed in the guidelines?

Hugh Munby in his discussion paper, *What is Scientific Thinking?*, advocates teaching science for the sake of stimulating intellectual independence. If this is a desirable goal for science education, are the instructions in laboratory guides adequate?

These are all questions which arise from our data regarding laboratory manuals. In real life, however, acquiring a skill is more complicated than merely following instructions. Ultimately, the teacher must impart a fuller meaning to laboratory work. All the same, not all laboratory manuals help teachers develop the set of scientific skills called for in ministry guidelines.

In this study, we have avoided comparing individual textbooks and recommending one over another, for one important reason. We cannot claim, on the basis of the methodology we have used, that all the differences observed between different textbooks are truly significant. Our purpose was to identify trends to inform discussions about future directions in science education, and this has been done. To illustrate the difficulty of bringing out significant differences between various textbooks, Table VIII.4 compares selected data collected by Tamir, Lunetta *et al.* for three senior-years textbooks with our own findings. Two factors are obvious. Firstly, the particular sample of experiments selected can substantially affect the variety and level of the tasks demanded of students. Secondly, some of the differences may also be due to something other than the sampling; in particular, some analysts took account of instructions appearing in the teacher's book, whereas Tamir, Lunetta *et al.* confined themselves to instructions given to students.

Table VIII.4 – Structure and Task Analysis of Laboratory Work: Comparison with the Results of Tamir and Lunetta – Senior Years, Physics and Chemistry – percentages

Textbook Code		*PSSC**	*63*	*CHEMStudy O'Connor**	*54*	*CHEMStudy Parry**	*53*
Number of experiments analyzed		47	25	46	23	39	19
Structure							
a.3	Inductive approach	0	0	95.7	83	0.0	58
a.4	Deductive approach	0	100	28.3	17	12.8	47
Cooperative mode							
b.2	Students work on different tasks and pool results	2.1	0	2.2	0	5.1	21
b.3	Postlab discussion required	0.0	16	0.0	57	2.6	100
Task Categories							
1.0	*Planning and Design*						
1.1	Formulates a question or defines a problem to be investigated	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0
1.2	Predicts experimental result	14.9	68	8.7	4	10.3	5
1.3	Formulates hypothesis to be tested in this investigation	0.0	4	0.0	4	0.0	0

Table VIII.4 – continued from previous page

Textbook Code		PSSC*	63	CHEMStudy O'Connor*	54	CHEMStudy Parry*	53
Number of experiments analyzed		47	25	46	23	39	19
1.4	Designs observation or measurement procedure	2.1	4	8.7	13	7.7	0
1.5	Designs experiment	2.1	0	8.7	4	5.1	0
2.0 Performance							
2.2	Manipulates apparatus; develops technique	97.9	92	95.7	70	97.4	68
2.3	Records result, describes observation	97.9	96	89.1	96	79.5	90
2.6	Works according to own design	0.0	0	15.2	9	2.6	0
3.0 Analysis and Interpretation							
3.1a	Transforms result into standard form (other than graphs)	53.2	72	56.4	22	4.3	21
3.1b	Graphs data	34.0	36	13.0	9	15.4	11
3.2a	Determines qualitative relationship	93.6	36	71.7	44	84.6	42
3.2b	Determines quantitative relationship	74.5	80	50.0	44	35.9	42
3.3	Determines accuracy of experimental data	23.4	12	11.4	4	20.5	26
3.4	Defines or discusses limitations or assumptions that underlie the experiment	4.3	24	2.2	17	17.9	5
3.5	Formulates or proposes a generalization or model	34.0	44	6.5	52	10.3	21
3.6	Explains a relationship	53.2	44	50.0	35	46.2	53
4.0 Application							
4.1	Predicts based upon the results of this investigation	23.4	40	15.2	44	28.2	37
4.2	Formulates hypothesis based upon the results of this investigation	23.4	4	6.5	9	12.8	26

**Source:* P. Tamir and V. Lunetta, "Inquiry Related Tasks in High School Laboratory Handbooks," *Science Education*, 1981, vol. 65, no. 5, pp. 477-484.

Table VIII.5a – Number and Types of Messages Inviting Students to Use their Knowledge of Science and Technology – Early Years (00); Middle Years, Biology (10), Physical Science (20), General Science (30)

Textbook code	01/03	02	04	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	21	22	23	24	31	32	33
Direct action																	
home	0	1	0	4	9	2	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	12	2	0	0
school	0	0	0	2	0	3	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	5	2	1	0
community	0	2	0	1	2	0	0	0	0	4	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
Gathering of information																	
home	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	2	0	0	4
school	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	1	0	0	0
community	1	2	1	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	3
Reflection																	
home	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	8	16	0	0	6
school	0	1	0	1	0	22	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	6	2	0	1
community	2	5	0	1	0	0	0	0	2	1	0	0	1	6	2	0	1
Total	3	12	1	12	11	27	0	4	2	9	0	0	14	22	10	3	15

Table VIII.5b – Number and Types of Messages Inviting Students to Use their Knowledge of Science and Technology – Senior Years; Biology (40), Chemistry (50), Physics (60)

Textbook code	41	42	43	44	51	51a	51b	52	53	54	55	56	61	62	63	64
Direct action																
home	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
school	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0
community	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
Gathering of information																
home	3	0	0	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0
school	0	0	0	6	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0
community	0	0	0	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	3	0	0	0	0
Reflection																
home	18	1	0	2	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	22	1	0	0
school	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	5	5	0	0	0	0
community	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	8	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0
Total	22	1	0	18	0	0	2	9	0	0	9	12	25	3	0	1

Science-Technology-Society Interaction

To determine if the resources provided by the authors of science textbooks enable students to reach aims relating to the social impact of science and technology, we collected the relevant messages and divided them into four categories (see Appendix D): the application of knowledge category, the socioeconomic category, the political category and the scientific responsibility category.

Application of Knowledge

These messages invite students to make use of their knowledge of science and technology in ways beneficial to themselves or their communities. Table VIII.5a-b indicates the number and distribution of these messages. The suggested activities are divided into three types: direct action, gathering of information and reflection; they are situated in three locations: school, home and community.

According to the information given in this table, the authors of science textbooks provide few or no activities involving the application of scientific or technological knowledge in society. When such activities are present in quantity (13, 24, 41, 61, for example), they are mainly reflective in nature. The total number of invitations to direct action (60) constitutes about one-fifth of the total number of activities, and these are addressed chiefly to middle-years students. In general, students are asked to conduct these activities at home and in the community rather than at school. The activities tend to be individual rather than collective (this latter trait is not indicated in the table). Note also that seven of the nine textbooks containing no messages about the application of knowledge do, nevertheless, contain an aim concerning the interaction between science, technology and society.

We have not attempted a systematic determination of the content of each message in this category. However, each analyst has picked out one or two examples of activities requested of the student. Out of 50 examples, 27 concern the environment or energy.

Table VIII.6a-b presents data concerning the messages in the other three categories. Messages in the socioeconomic category inform students of the beneficial or detrimental effects of science and technology on society at the national and international levels. The numbers and distribution of messages are accompanied by: the beneficial or detrimental character of the effects (according to the authors), whether or not there is a discussion and the context (national or international) in which the effect in question occurs. This latter information is also available for the other categories of messages. Messages belonging to the political category have a bearing on the ways in which a society exploits scientific and technological knowledge to solve national or international problems. The number of messages is accompanied by the number of solutions deemed certain and the number considered doubtful. Finally,

Table VIII.6a – Number of Science-Technology-Society Messages in Categories 2 (Socioeconomic), 3 (Political) and 4 (Responsibility) – Early Years (00); Middle Years, Biology (10) and Physical Science (20)

Textbook code	01	02	03	04	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	21	22	23	24
Socioeconomic Category															
Number of messages	5	18	9	5	8	2	13	4	15	9	5	2	0	2	13
Beneficial effects[a]	1	8	9	2	7	2	8	2	15	7	4	1	0	0	12
Detrimental effects	5	10	5	3	1	0	5	2	0	2	1	1	0	2	1
Discussion present	3	16	9	5	8	2	6	1	7	4	3	2	0	1	3
No discussion	2	2	0	0	0	0	7	3	6	5	2	0	0	1	10
National context	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1[c]	1	2	4	1	0	0	4
International context[b]	3	17	9	5	8	2	13	3	14	8	1	1	0	2	9
Political Category															
Number of messages	0	5	6	4	5	0	6	4	17	2	1	3	0	2	1
Solution certain	0	4	5	4	2	0	4	4	12	2	0	3	0	2	1
Solution doubtful	0	1	3	0	3	0	1	0	5	0	1	0	0	0	0
National context	0	0	0	0	3	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1
International context[b]	0	5	6	4	3	0	6	3	16	1	1	2	0	2	1
Responsibility Category															
Number of messages	1	10	1	1	3	1	6	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1
Ethical type	1	5	1	1	3	1	2	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
Legal type	0	5	0	0	0	0	4	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1
National context	0	0	0	0	3	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
International context[b]	1	10	1	1	0	1	5	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
Total number of messages	6	33	16	10	16	3	25	8	33	11	7	5	0	5	15

[a] An effect may be considered simultaneously beneficial and detrimental. It is then counted in both categories.

[b] The context may occasionally show both characteristics and is then counted twice.

[c] Africa.

Table VIII.6b – Number of Science-Technology-Society Messages in Categories 2 (Socioeconomic), 3 (Political) and 4 (Responsibility) – Middle Years, General Science (30); Senior Years, Biology (40), Chemistry (50), Physics (60)

Textbook code	31	32	33	41	42	43	44	51	52	53	54	55	56	61	62	63	64
Socioeconomic Category																	
Number of messages	8	4	11	23	17	3	1	3	10	4	2	27	6	5	2	0	0
Beneficial effects[a]	8	4	3	11	16	0	0	2	3	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0
Detrimental effects	1	0	7	12	6	3	1	1	7	4	2	26	5	4	1	0	0
Discussion present	8	1	5	17	15	0	0	0	10	1	2	21	1	4	1	0	0
No discussion	0	3	5	6	2	3	1	3	0	3	0	6	5	1	1	0	0
National context	2	1	10	12	9	3[c]	1	2	0	1[c]	0	3	1[c]	1	1	0	0
International context[b]	6	3	1	10	8	0	0	2	10	3	2	24	5	4	1	0	0
Political Category																	
Number of messages	1	3	11	8	6	2	1	0	3	8	3	8	4	9	4	0	0
Solution certain	1	3	7	8	3	1	1	0	2	5	0	6	4	9	3	0	0
Solution doubtful	0	0	4	0	3	1	0	0	1	4	3	2	0	0	1	0	0
National context	1	0	9	4	0	1[c]	1	0	1	1[c]	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
International context[b]	0	3	2	4	6	1	1	0	2	7	3	8	4	8	4	0	0
Responsibility Category																	
Number of messages	1	0	4	8	6	0	1	0	2	2	0	11	0	2	1	0	0
Ethical type	1	0	3	8	6	0	0	0	2	2	0	6	0	1	1	0	0
Legal type	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	5	0	1	0	0	0
National context	1	0	4	4	2	0	1	0	1	0	0	2	0	1	0	0	0
International context[b]	1	0	0	4	5	0	0	0	1	2	0	9	0	1	1	0	0
Total number of messages	10	7	26	39	29	5	3	3	15	14	5	46	10	16	7	0	0

[a] An effect may be considered simultaneously beneficial and detrimental. It is then counted in both categories.

[b] The context may occasionally show both characteristics and is then counted twice.

[c] United States.

messages in the category of scientific responsibility deal with the moral and legal aspects of scientific and technological activity.

The socioeconomic category contains the most messages (55 per cent of the total), the political category follows (30 per cent) and the scientific responsibility category (15 per cent) contains the fewest. With few exceptions, this pattern is true for every textbook. Three of the 32 textbooks in the sample contain none of these messages and seven contain five or fewer. For the set of textbooks as a whole, the number of beneficial effects of science and technology recorded is equal to the number of detrimental ones. In this respect, we can distinguish three kinds of textbooks: those that are optimistic and for which the impact of science and technology is seen as more often beneficial than detrimental (eight out of 32), those that are pessimistic and for which the perceived impact is more detrimental than beneficial (seven of 32) and those that present an equal number of beneficial and detrimental effects. In two-thirds of the cases, the beneficial or detrimental character of the effects is the subject of discussion and very few textbooks present effects without any discussion. When science and technology are called upon to solve societal problems, the solutions are seen as certain two times out of three and uncertain only once in three times. When the authors do introduce material about scientific responsibility, they are more apt to illustrate the moral rather than the legal aspect. They do either, however, only rarely. Finally, the messages are presented generally in an international or, at any rate, not specifically Canadian context. On some occasions, the context is clearly both Canadian and American.

Counting the number of messages, however, provides only partial information. Possibly a small number of very pertinent messages (relating to the official guidelines) are more effective than a great many messages of lesser interest. Our purpose at this point is not to discuss the relevance or quality of the messages, even though we recognize that such a discussion is essential.

Socioeconomic Category

Some 230 messages of this category, taken from the 32 textbooks and two supplementary booklets, in which the good or bad consequences of science and technology for society were expressed, were divided into five major groups of varying size. One message is given to represent each group and is accompanied by the number of messages contained in that group.

Group A: "Growth or progress resulting from science and technology creates pollution, causes illness and disturbs the ecosystem." This group contains 98 messages, slightly fewer than half the total number of socioeconomic messages. It includes nearly everything that has made headlines during the last 15 years: water, air and soil pollution; heavy-metal poisoning; the problems due to the use of DDT and chemical fertilizers; and the destruction of the environment as a result of mining activity, the construction of dams, intensive agriculture and urbanization.

Group B: "Science and technology have created medicines and techniques for improving public health and combatting malnutrition." This group, the second in size, contains 55 messages that appear primarily in biology textbooks. The consequences they describe are broadly beneficial: from pasteurization to the application of x-rays, from synthesizing new foods to genetic engineering.

Group C: "Science and technology have created machines or processes to facilitate work or increase the wellbeing of the population." This group contains 27 messages, just over 10 per cent of the total number. They point to the improvement of living conditions made possible by electricity, anti-pollution devices and improved transportation methods. The beneficial effect of space exploration gets a single mention, as does the introduction of data processing. Only two messages deal with the benefits brought by telecommunications.

Group D: "Science and technology have made possible the creation of beneficial new materials and new sources of energy." In this group 23 messages mention cheaper, more readily available synthetic materials to meet people's needs. Students also learn about the usefulness of nuclear and solar energy.

Group E: "Growth or progress resulting from science and technology entails the squandering of energy and resources and gives rise to problems of waste management." This group contains 20 messages.

Group F: This last group contains seven messages, summarized as follows: "science and technology, by their effects on society, are inducing people to conserve resources and energy, and to take action against pollution."

We shall confine ourselves here to a few comments on the results of this analysis. At first glance, according to textbook authors, pollution and the waste of resources are the most important consequences of science and technology. This conforms fairly well with the temper of the times during the 1970s. According to our sample, the benefits of science and technology appear to come almost exclusively from medical research. Finally, the effects of data processing and telecommunications, phenomena that are likely to change the society of the 1980s, are conspicuous by their absence in the physics, general science and physical science textbooks we have examined.

What is the message implied in this distribution of the social consequences of scientific and technological activity? What are its likely effects on the development of attitudes towards science and technology?

Political Category

What kinds of social problems can science and technology be called upon to solve? Our analysis discerned about 40, scattered throughout the 34 books examined. World hunger and diseases (about 30 messages) and, oddly enough, those created by science and technology such as pollution and the need for new sources of energy (about 30 messages) are mentioned most often. The others to which science and technology can offer solutions are quite diverse: for example, weather prediction, prevention of natural disasters by the construction of models, purification of drinking water. Each of these is mentioned only once in our sample.

Scientific Responsibility

The moral problems associated with science and technology and focussed upon in science textbooks are: personal attitudes to pollution and waste (about 10 messages, one-fifth of the total); questions concerning life in society (such as the use of drugs), genetic engineering and genetic counselling (about seven messages); a variety of other problems, each mentioned only once, such as the decision to undertake mining operations, deforestation and whaling. The legal problems associated with scientific and technological activity that are mentioned are again those concerning pollution and waste (about two-thirds of the 20 messages).

Before concluding, we must again utter a word of caution. Firstly, the textbooks containing most messages relating to the interaction of science, technology and society do not necessarily offer the greatest variety of messages. Textbook 55, for example, which contains 46 messages, the largest number of all the textbooks, concentrates almost all of them in the last chapter (5 per cent of the book's pages) entitled "Chemistry, environment and pollution." Likewise, textbook 41's 39 messages are found in the last chapter, "Humans in the Web of Life" (6 per cent of the book's pages). Does this mean that it is essential to know everything that precedes this material in the textbook before being introduced to the social effects of science and technology, or does it mean, rather, that the place given these effects in the book reflects the priorities of the authors? Interestingly, other textbooks follow an opposite course. For example, textbook 31 starts out as follows:

> "In recent years you have probably heard a great deal about energy. You may have read about rising fuel prices and further shortages of energy. You have been warned about an energy crisis and told to conserve energy."[11]

In this textbook the chapter containing most messages relating to the interaction between science, technology and society, "How Our Use of Energy Affects Our World," is the tenth of 29 chapters, about 5 per cent of the book. However, the trend towards introducing a social perspective into science textbooks is fairly recent and, as we have just seen, this process is being carried out in a variety of ways depending on the importance given to it by authors.

Secondly, the number of messages does not truly reflect the importance given by science textbook authors to the interaction between science, technology and society. Very few of the messages are long or documented as well as one might wish. In fact, most of them are short, call for discussion or require additional information. About 200 messages out of 230 occupy from one to 10 per cent of a chapter. Only textbooks 31 and 42 offer messages occupying from 20 to 100 per cent of a chapter. Two of these messages, the longest ones, deal with the rational utilization of energy and the effects of science and technology on human ecology.

Furthermore, this says little directly about educational practice. Indeed, even if teachers do use textbooks for preparing their lessons, they may be inspired by certain parts of them to introduce a social perspective. However, our survey shows that the introduction of this perspective is not a priority for the majority of teachers.

We have presented a somewhat sketchy picture of the interaction of science, technology and society in science textbooks. We have described the aspects of this interaction that are most often mentioned in the textbooks and have shown the spread that exists between textbooks in this regard. Generally speaking, on the basis of the number of messages, general science textbooks and biology textbooks show more social context than textbooks of the physical sciences. Some textbooks provide no opportunities for students to reach goals in this area; others provide very few. Given the prevailing ministry guidelines, it is extremely difficult to determine how much social context and of what kind is sufficient to realize these aims.

The Canadian Context

Table VIII.7a-c indicates the number, type and length of messages that make up the Canadian context in the science textbooks examined. The analytical scheme (reproduced in Appendix D) was intended to enable us to determine the extent to which a Canadian context is present, this being defined as the total number of messages in a textbook that are unequivocally linked to the Canadian reality in all its aspects. The scheme was also intended to enable us to count the situations in which the Canadian context is unnecessarily replaced by a foreign one.

The messages were assigned to four categories: physical (geographic), historical, sociocultural and foreign. In Table VIII.7a-c, the number of messages is accompanied by the number of supportive photographs, illustrations or diagrams and by the (approximate) number of lines of text devoted to these messages. Each part of the table contains notes intended to give details about the data presented.

Table VIII.7a – Number, Type and Length of Messages Relating to the Canadian Context in Science Textbooks – Early Years (00); Middle Years, Physical Science (20), General Science (30)

Textbook code	01	02	03	04	21	22	23	24	31	32	33
Physical Dimension											
Total number of messages	7	6	2	7	4	0	2	6	100[c]	12	15
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	5	4	1	5	3	0	1	1	10[b]	5	3
Total number of lines	16	7	7	16	23[e]	0	17	100[d]	600[d]	60[d]	40[d]
Historical Dimension											
Total number of messages	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5	0	3
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2
Total number of lines	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	15[d]	0	25[d]
Sociocultural Dimension											
Total number of messages	0	0	7	0	0	0	2	2	30[c]	1	10
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	3	0	5
Total number of lines	0	0	35	0	0	0	4	40[d]	180[d]	3	70[d]
Foreign Context											
Total number of messages	6	0	0	0	2	0	4[g]	0	1	4	2
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	4[a]	0	0	0	2[f]	0	0	0	0	2	1
Total number of lines	10[b]	0	0	0[b]	2	0	80[d]	0	2	50[d]	1

[a] Photographs of geological formations mostly taken in the United States.

[b] Apparently the illustrations vary with the editions. On page 279 of the *STEM* text, 5th year (1977 ed.) and on the same page of its translation, *Les chemins de la science*, 5th year (1978 ed.), a set of photographs taken on the earth and on the moon are shown for the children to think about. The English edition retains the American flag, while the French edition replaces it with a Canadian flag.

[c] Minimum.

[d] Approximate.

[e] Discussion of the adaptation of S.I. system to Canada.

[f] Photograph of a nuclear power station in the United States.

[g] Regular reference to North America rather than Canada.

Table VIII.7b – Number, Type and Length of Messages Relating to the Canadian Context in Science Textbooks – Middle and Senior Years, Biology (10 & 40)

Textbook code	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	41	42	43	44
Physical Dimension											
Total number of messages	29	2	51	3	15	12	0	8	3	1	35
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	20[a]	1	14	2	4	34	0	5	3	0	14
Total number of lines	800[a]	3	120[b]	4	26	70[b]	0	20[b]	35[b]	23	800[b]
Historical Dimension											
Total number of messages	1[c]	0	0	0	2	0	1	0	1[h]	0	14
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	6
Total number of lines	4	0	0	0	18	0	2	0	29	0	400[b]
Sociocultural Dimension											
Total number of messages	3	0	3	0	5	3	0	0	2	0	14
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	2
Total number of lines	14	0	7	0	30[b]	20[b]	0	0	18	0	300[b]
Foreign Context											
Total number of messages	8	0	2[e]	10[f]	0	10	2	17[g]	8	14[g]	1
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	1	([d])	0	2	0	7	1	7	2	4	0
Total number of lines	40[b]	0	20[b]	15[b]	0	50[b]	30[b]	100[b]	50[b]	300[b]	40[b]

[a] Minimum.

[b] Approximate.

[c] The potato famine led to the Irish immigration to Canada in 1885.

[d] All the photographs in this human biology textbook were taken in France.

[e] Canada overlooked as a world producer of wheat.

[f] All the examples come from the United States.

[g] Examples taken from the United States.

[h] Development of the McIntosh apple in Canada.

Table VIII.7c – Number, Type and Length of Messages Relating to the Canadian Context in Science Textbooks – Senior Years, Chemistry (50), Physics (60)

Textbook code	51	51a	51b	52	53	54	55	56	61	62	63	64
Physical Dimension												
Total number of messages	8	9	6	3	0	0	13	1	21	22	0	0
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	2	3	5	2	0	0	10	0	16	9	0	0
Total number of lines	70[b]	160[b]	2	70[b,c]	0	0	15	2	60[b]	120[b]	0	0
Historical Dimension												
Total number of messages	0	2	0	3	3[d]	1[d]	2	0	5	1[f]	0	0
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	7	0	0	0
Total number of lines	0	25	0	90[b]	15	30	13	0	110[b]	6	0	0
Sociocultural Dimension												
Total number of messages	0	3	1	2	0	0	4	2	40	10	0	0
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	9	0	0	0
Total number of lines	0	16	2	40[c]	0	0	40[b]	2	300[b]	70[b]	0	0
Foreign Context												
Total number of messages	0	0	1	0	11	10[e]	1	4	4	7	0	0
Photographs, illustrations, etc.	0	0	1	0	1	3	0	4	2	4	0	0
Total number of lines	0	0	0	0	100[b]	50[b]	1	5	20[b]	30[b]	0	0

[a] Minimum.

[b] Approximate.

[c] Mainly Atomic Energy of Canada Ltd.

[d] The scientists mentioned are Gillespie and/or Bartlett.

[e] All the examples are from the United States.

[f] Rutherford.

The absence of Canadian context in science textbooks used in Canada was noted in the Symons Report[12] and was the subject of a discussion paper written by James Page.[13] As the analysis of the guidelines in chapter 5 indicated, the presence of such a context is not, with rare exceptions, the subject of special mention in the science curricula. Moreover, as the responses to the survey show (see volume II), the teachers assign practically no importance to the acquisition of an awareness of the practice of science in Canada as an aim of science instruction. The presence of a Canadian context in science textbooks is clearly a matter for deliberation.

The textbooks examined fall into two main categories (see Table VIII.7). The first comprises textbooks devoid of Canadian context – those that, at worst, contain not a single message relating to the Canadian reality and, at best, only a few meagre geographical, historical or sociocultural references. All four textbooks at the early-years level (01, 02, 03 and 04), the middle-years biology texts (12, 14 and 17), physical science books of the middle years (21, 22 and 23), chemistry textbooks of the senior years (53, 54 and 56) and biology and physics textbooks of the senior years (41, 42, 43, 63 and 64) fall into this group. These textbooks make up about 60 per cent of the sample examined. This category can be divided into two subcategories. The first contains the textbooks that have very little or no Canadian or foreign context (01, 02, 03, 04, 12, 17, 21, 22, 23, 56, 63 and 64). In some, a few indications here or there betray their foreign origin and their adaptation to the Canadian market (for example, flags and other illustrations). The second subcategory shows a foreign context (in most cases a US context), where Canadian examples would also have been appropriate. Here are a few examples of this subcategory cited by the analysts.

Textbook 14:

> "The metric system came into use in France in 1840. By 1878 its use had spread to Belgium, Greece, Spain, Germany, and Sweden. The metric system has been legal in the United States since 1866."[14]
>
> "Most people in the United States live in cities."[15]

Textbook 41: Students learn here the course of the mortality rate in the United States during the twentieth century, the emigration and immigration rates in the United States from 1911 to 1940 and the population densities of Rhode Island and Maine, but nothing of a comparable nature about their own country.[16] The same textbook proposes a professor at the University of California at Berkeley[17] as a career model, but nowhere does it refer to a Canadian scientist or university.

Textbook 42: Here again the population statistics are given for the United States and the acid rain phenomenon does not seem to apply to Canada.[18]

Textbook 43: The student learns the maximum quantities of alcohol that US drivers may imbibe before driving.[19] The percentage of racial types are given for the United States (blacks and whites), Sweden, Japan, Hawaii, China, the aborigines of Australia and the native people in North America, but not for Canadians.[20]

Textbook 53:

> "Imagine that a telegram is to be sent on a winter night from New York City to a rancher who lives near the top of a mountain in Nevada."[21]
>
> "Over 20 million lbs. of aspirin, or about 155 5-grain tablets for every person, are manufactured each year in the United States alone."[22]

Textbook 54:

> "A dam such as the Hoover Dam on the Colorado River stores water. It also can be said to store energy. Explain."[23]

It is noteworthy that the French version of this textbook contains the following exercise:

> "A dam such as the Manic 5 Dam on the Manicouagan River stores water. It also can be said to store energy. Explain."[24]

Examination of the French versions of American textbooks showed that, in the majority of cases, translation had been accompanied by adaptation to take account more effectively of the Canadian reality and to eliminate obviously foreign references. In its French version, textbook 54 would be more appropriately included in the first subcategory: little Canadian or foreign context. We take this opportunity to emphasize the difficulty of assigning a textbook clearly to one category or another in the absence of definite criteria for determining Canadian context. Do such criteria exist? If not, should some such criteria be established?

The second category of textbooks (11, 13, 15, 16, 24, 31, 32, 33, 44, 51, 52, 55, 61 and 62) contains a certain amount of Canadian context. This may vary from one textbook to another and may be of varying importance, but it is there and students may learn a little, at least, about their own country. On the whole, these textbooks give many physical and geographical references. Some are frankly regional in tone and thus offer much information about British Columbia (31), Alberta (51 and supplements), Ontario (44) and Québec (almost all the French-language textbooks are written or adapted for this province). The sociocultural dimension is given less prominence than the physical, but more than the historical, which is the most neglected of the three. The collection of messages constituting the Canadian context is very varied and difficult to summarize. We shall try to illustrate this variety by giving a few examples of the historical and sociocultural dimensions.

As stated above, the history of science and technology in Canada is almost completely ignored by science textbooks. Rutherford's experiments at McGill University (1889-1907) are often cited as an example of Canadian science (textbooks 61 and 62). Neil Bartlett is mentioned in three textbooks (31, 53 and 54) for his synthesis of Xenon hexafluoride at the University of British Columbia and R.J. Gillespie of McMaster University is mentioned in one textbook (53) for his theory of molecular structure. In another field, Sir Sandford Fleming is honoured for his proposal to establish time zones and his role in the construction of the first trans-Canadian railroad (31). Sir Frederick Banting is mentioned once for the isolation of insulin (52). The historical role of Atomic Energy of Canada is more or less recognized in three instances (52, 61 and 62). One booklet in the *ALCHEM* program (51a) mentions the history of the petrochemical industry in Canada, and of polyethylene in Alberta. Textbook 44 contains the most historical content. References abound in it: for example, the role of Alexis St-Martin in the study of digestion, the study of heliotropism by Kevan of the University of Newfoundland, the study of the Dionne quintuplets. However, this biology textbook, like all the others, ignores the basic role of Brother Marie-Victorin both as the scientific editor of "La flore Laurentienne" (Laurentian Flora) and as a promoter of science in French Canada.

Sociocultural messages predictably relate largely to matters of pollution and the management of energy as these affect Canada (15, 23, 24, 33, 44, 52, 55, 61 and 62). Only one textbook (33) deals with mining as an important factor in Canadian life. In others (11, 15), it is rarely mentioned. The northern character of Canada in relation to science and technology is mentioned only very occasionally: the cold climate (31, 44), the forests (03, 15, 16, 44), the water (32) and the fauna (13, 16, 44). Only one textbook (31) deals with the Canadian lifestyle, especially the diet and its deleterious effects in the light of medical and dietary discoveries and the exhortatory and regulatory role of governments. Finally, some 10 textbooks in our sample touch on students' career plans and only eight of these offer the student detailed information about careers in science and technology. Of the eight, seven were written in the United States and they are the ones that give most career information.

In conclusion, we can say that Thomas H.B. Symons and James Page were right. Generally speaking, the science textbooks in use in Canadian schools teach almost nothing about science and technology in Canada, or about its history and impact on society. Teachers who wish to inform their students on these matters must look for relevant sources of information elsewhere.

Table VIII.8 – Characteristics of Science Textbooks Containing a Canadian Context – Early Years (00); Middle Years, Biology (10), Physical Sciences (20), General Science (30); Senior Years, Biology (40), Chemistry (50), Physics (60)

Textbook code	11	13	15	16	24[a]	31	32	33[b]	44	51	52	55[c]	61	62
Authors														
Number	5	2	2	2	2	2	2	6	2	10	2	3	3	4
Canadians	5	1	2	2	2	2	2	6	2	10	2	3	3	4
Americans														
Others														
Not identified		1												
Publishers														
Canadian[d]		X		X	X			X		X				X
Subsidiary[e]	X		X			X	X		X		X	X	X	
Foreign														
Printed in														
Canada	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
United States														
Other														
Not determined														

[a] Textbook no. 24 is a French translation of a Canadian textbook published by a subsidiary and printed in Canada.

[b] Textbook no. 33 has been translated into French.

[c] Textbook no. 55 has been translated into English and is the first science textbook written by Québec authors to have been so translated into English.

[d] Canadian ownership. Of the six publishing houses in this line, three are Québec publishers (13, 16, 24), two are Ontarian (33, 62), and one is Albertan (51).

[e] Canadian subsidiary of a multinational publishing company.

Table VIII.9 – Characteristics of Science Textbooks Containing Little or No Canadian Context – Early Years (00); Middle Years, Biology (10), Physical Sciences (20), General Science (30); Senior Years, Biology (40), Chemistry (50), Physics (60)

Textbook code	01[a]	02[a]	03	04[b]	12	14	17	21	22[a]	23[b]	41	42	43[b]	53	54[b]	56[b]	63[b]	64
Authors																		
Number	4	8	5	4	3	2	4	3	5	3	(g)	1	3	4	5	2	3	6
Canadians			2[e]		1					3								6
Americans	4	8	3	4		2	4	3	5		(g)	1	2	4	5	2	3	
Others				2[f]														
Not identified													1					
Publishers																		
Canadian[c]	X	X			X				X									X
Subsidiary[d]			X	X		X	X	X		X		X	X	X	X	X	X	
Foreign											X							
Printed in																		
Canada	X	X					X			X								X
United States				X		X					X		X	X	X	X	X	
Not identified			X		X			X				X						

[a] Textbooks nos. 01, 02 and 22 are French translations of American texts.

[b] There are French translations of texts nos. 04, 23, 43, 54, 56 and 63 in use in the Francophone schools of Canada.

[c] Canadian ownership; the 5 entries in this line are Québec publishing houses.

[d] Canadian subsidiary of a multinational publishing company.

[e] British Columbia.

[f] France.

[g] The 1978 edition of this textbook lists more than 50 collaborators, all of them Americans.

However, a very few textbooks do succeed in providing both teacher and student with a science content in a Canadian context. What are the characteristics of the authors and editors of these texts? Table VIII.8 clearly shows that when a Canadian context is present the textbook has been written by Canadians. On the other hand, the fact that the authors are Canadian does not necessarily predict the presence of a Canadian context (see Table VIII.9). The authors of 14 out of the 18 textbooks that have little or no Canadian context are American; and the existence of a US context in several of the textbooks shows that no effort has been made to adapt them to the Canadian reality. This is confirmed by the fact that seven of these textbooks were written and printed in the United States. In this category, English-language publishers are not represented, unlike their Québec counterparts, who publish French translations of American works. Tables VIII.8 and VIII.9 also show that the textbooks that offer the least information on science and technology in Canada and on its history and social impact are used primarily in the early and senior years. To supplement the data and to assess the relative importance of textbooks with and without Canadian context, Table VIII.10 indicates the extent of their utilization by the respondents to our survey.

Table VIII.10 – Number of Survey Respondents Using Textbook With and Without a Canadian Context

	Textbooks with Canadian Context	Textbooks without Canadian Context	Others (with or without context)
Early Years	0	705	94
Middle Years	332	168	307
Senior Years			
Biology	7	154	110
Chemistry	60	64	143
Physics	82	53	65

The Nature of Science; the History of Science and Technology

This textbook analysis contains a section on the nature of science for two reasons. Firstly, official guidelines contain objectives relating to the nature of science, such as: "to understand how science operates." Secondly, the views of critics of science education justified such an inclusion. For example, Jacques Désautels stated in his book, *École + Science = Échec* (School + Science = Failure):

> "A first analysis of the popular view of science and engineering and their relationship to the development of scientific knowledge, shows that an inaccurate view of reality is being conveyed, one that

keeps myths alive. Teaching based on this view serves to alienate the student."[25]

We are immediately faced, then, with a number of questions. The first stems from the very nature of the study and asks what opportunities textbook authors give students to understand the nature of science. The second asks how the history of science is introduced and used by authors to illustrate the nature of science. These questions seem rather technical, but we soon realized that concepts such as the history of science and the nature of science have different meanings for different authors, and that messages about these concepts are often unstated. Again, our study is not a normative one, and for this reason, we could not very well start from one generally accepted definition of the nature of science (if, in fact, one existed) and compare it with those given, implicitly or explicitly, by authors. Rather, this study presents a descriptive analysis of a multifaceted and complex reality that can be called simply "textbook science." But what exactly is textbook science? This question is difficult to answer, especially since there has been very little research on the subject. Moreover, the image of science that a textbook portrays is only one of many the student has access to. In fact, any image of the nature of science that a student has is likely to be developed from a blending of his own preconceptions with "spontaneous philosophies" of science held by his teacher and by textbook authors. It is therefore difficult to infer anything about a student's concept of science from messages contained in textbooks.

At first glance, "textbook science" appears to operate on two levels. At the level of rhetoric, this is apparent from the definitions that the authors give. At the level of practice, it can be discerned by examining the type of activities required of the student (if, in fact, the authors want students to work like "real" scientists), by reading the textbooks' messages that suggest to the student that "science operates this way" and by determining why and how authors refer to the history of science. These historical references generally give the student, either implicitly or explicitly, an idea of the nature of science. Even for one textbook, this is a considerable task. We have restricted ourselves to a cursory overview for the purposes of this analysis, and more work needs to be done. Though limited in number, our data nevertheless enabled us to raise several questions for deliberation.

Questions About the Nature of Science Activity

Messages about the nature of science often appear in the form of definitions of science and the scientific method. Almost all textbooks contain some information of this sort. This is especially true of early-years textbooks which, although not including anything for students' use, provide teachers with messages such as the following:

> "The program is designed to help children become skilled at applying other processes such as: observing, measuring, recording, interpreting data, using numbers, predicting, classifying, communicating, formulating hypotheses."[26]

This is also the case, occasionally, with textbooks used in later years, whose authors view science as a collection of facts, discoveries and so on, to be "transmitted" to students:

> "As was the case with the cell, the authors wish to point out, in these as in all the other chapters, the latest discoveries in science and to have students read about them in accounts that are clear and straightforward."[27]

The vast majority of textbook authors tell the student that science represents both a product and a process, even though this is expressed in various ways. Most give a definition of science (or of their own subdiscipline — biology, chemistry, physics, etc.) followed by a definition of scientific method as a means to resolve problems and add to the general body of scientific knowledge.

Our analysis has shown that authors of six of the 14 textbooks used in the middle years and seven of the 14 books used in the senior years give a schematic description of the scientific method that includes the following steps (though not necessarily in the same order): definition of problem, observation, gathering of information, formulation of hypothesis, designing of experiment with controlled variables, verification, and communication of results. This method appears in all three subjects (physics, chemistry and biology). Some middle-years textbooks (17, 31 and 33) do not contain such a description but instead emphasize the control of variables to ensure successful experimentation. Here, the significant question is not "how do you explain a phenomenon?" but rather, "what does such a phenomenon depend on?" In the senior years, only one chemistry textbook fails to give a schematic definition of science (51). The textbooks do, however, contain implicit messages. On the whole, physics textbooks stress observation and experimentation as the driving elements of scientific activity, with model and theory construction the expected outcome. Only one biology textbook (43) includes not only a traditional description of scientific method but also one for "technological method," which involves following a procedure to the letter, observing carefully and transcribing all data.

Several of the authors who do list the steps involved in the scientific method, nevertheless, do so with reservations:

> "In practice, a scientist might not use all the steps listed. Studies of the work of successful scientists show that problem solving is not a step-by-step process. Scientists are creative people. They solve problems in many ways. Creativity, luck, hard work, and intelligent guessing are all part of scientific problem solving."[28]
>
> "The traditional form of the scientific method is first observing nature, then seeking the regularities in the observations (etc.). This is

> a good method and it may be acceptable to some scientists. However, any method which is a combination of curiosity and imagination and which uses experimentation to look for regularities in nature will be an acceptable method for scientists to use."[29]

In any case, we have to ask ourselves why such a description of the scientific method (often followed by laboratory or historical examples) appears so frequently in science textbooks. It certainly does provide information; according to the authors, this is the way scientists work and this is the method to be described. To this, authors bring several implicit scientific and pedagogical assumptions: not only do scientists work this way, but this is the way students *should* work:

> "Your study of physics will in some ways imitate the steps by which more accurate knowledge of the world has been gradually won."[30]

One author maintains that, once the steps involved in the scientific method are mastered from the beginning, then the rest will follow more easily:

> "Once [these processes] have been mastered by the students, they are used in all subsequent units to introduce and develop the content of science."[31]

Defining science as both a product and a process, therefore, has two aims: it shows the student how to work; and it shows that scientists do, in fact, work this way themselves. However, we have already seen, from analyzing laboratory exercises, that very seldom is the entire range of skills involved in the scientific method ever brought into play. In addition, we ask: to what extent do textbooks demonstrate that science does, in reality, conform to the procedural description given in the initial chapters? On the whole, authors make some effort to prove this claim, though never compromising on the amount of content that they must cover for a school year. This explains why theoretical entities are introduced in textbooks as if their discovery were self-evident:

> "Then in 1932 the *neutron* was discovered. This is a particle with a mass almost the same as that of the proton (actually it is just slightly heavier), but it has no electrical charge."[32]

When one reads science textbooks from an epistemological perspective, one gains the uncomfortable feeling that perhaps they were not written with the intention of shedding light on the nature of science at all. Instead, this notion appeared fairly recently when the concept of "science as process" became a dominant theme in science education. Or, indeed, is the science course the place to teach about the nature of scientific activity? As has been shown by Orpwood and Roberts,[33] and in greater detail by Factor and Kooser,[34] this can occur, almost involuntarily, without either the student or the teacher being aware of the model being suggested. To make explicit what is implicit about the nature of science would remedy only part of the problem. The question remains: what view of science should be taught? Scientific activity, as described in most of the textbooks we examined, is essentially inductive in nature. However, the way in which content and laboratory sessions are organized does not favour this approach (see analysis of laboratory exercises). One can ask, as do Factor and Kooser, if this habit of describing explicitly the nature of science does not represent an element of what they call the "standardization" of textbooks.[35]

Apart from this inductivism, other characteristics that authors attribute to the nature of science include cooperation and communication:

> "The fourth activity of science is, in many ways, the most important one of all. It is only through communicating ideas to others that a strong framework can be provided for science. Experimental results must be confirmed and explanations must be tested by others."[36]

From examining science textbooks, it is obvious that, on the one hand, the only act of communication asked of the student is for a laboratory report to be handed in. Usually, this entails no cooperation with classmates and at no time does the student have any original publication to look at or discuss as evidence of scientific communication. Moreover, only one textbook, *ALCHEM 10* (51), gave a different account of scientific communication than that mentioned earlier. It implicitly states: a) scientists share information in order to advance theoretical development; b) several scientists working independently may discover the same thing; and c) scientists taking part in a competition may withhold information for personal or national reasons.

The final characteristic of the nature of science that we considered was its essentially dynamic quality: the products of science continually change.

> "Over the centuries, man has very often altered his views about the structure of matter. Theories are not necessarily truths, but instead are only temporary explanations."[37]

Generally, science has been successful in rectifying inaccurate representations. However, the ideas that a student has prior to science courses ("prescientific representations"[38]) are completely ignored. A textbook will state, for example, that "the novice has no prior basis for believing that the atom is planetary,"[39] when, in fact, children are widely exposed to this model in popular science programs, comic strips, advertising slogans and so forth.

The questions raised by the preceding remarks focus on the priority that should be given to knowledge about the nature of science and on ways to acquire it. In any case, it is very difficult to escape the need to determine the true nature of science. As Factor and Kooser state:

> "If science is indeed part of the search for truth and if truth seeking is its paramount internal value (as many writers say it is), then is there not a more truthful account of the nature of science itself?"[40]

In the meantime, it may be worthwhile examining in greater depth the suppositions implicit in textbook authors accounts of how scientific knowledge is developed, even though this is a difficult task and few researchers have ventured into this area.[41]

Questions About the History of Science and Technology

The use of history of science in textbooks is particularly interesting, for although history objectives appear to have no particular importance for either ministries of education or teachers, very few textbook authors (except at the early years) choose to disregard the history of science completely. Historical messages range between two extremes: the first consists only of the names of scientists and the dates of their discoveries; the second features detailed case studies from the history of science. On the whole, authors rarely state objectives concerning the history of science and, when they do, they are not always set out in a clear and straightforward manner.

> "Students should recognize the contributions made by various people to scientific knowledge."[42]
>
> "To provide some historical perspective for the development of the science."[43]
>
> "To show you some of the great ideas of science that have changed the world in the past and will again in the future."[44]
>
> "Understanding the historical development of biological concepts and their dependence on the nature of society and technology of each age."[45]
>
> ". . . so students can better understand the significance of the recent discoveries in biology if they first learn the classical statements of the problem."[46]
>
> ". . . to demonstrate that progress in science is not always easily achieved and is usually the result of modifying a theory to accommodate new information."[47]
>
> "We suggest that teachers should provide examples of the properties of a model that are both concrete and set in an historical context."[48]
>
> "We have taken time to present [. . .] in its historical context for several reasons. Perhaps the most important reason is so that you can appreciate the nature of science as a human activity."[49]

There are several reasons for introducing the history of science: a) it is interesting in itself; b) it presents certain pedagogical advantages that help in the understanding of concepts; and c) it illustrates the human aspect of science and the nature of scientific activity. However, only one textbook mentions the inherent attractiveness of the history of science to students:

> "Historical narratives are used to create interest in a topic."[50]

Another chooses to downplay any historical reference:

> "*Chemistry: Experiments and Principles* presents chemistry as it is today."[51]

Table VIII.11a-d presents data on the use of science history in textbooks. The information we sought centred both on the two extreme cases mentioned earlier (from the number of scientists mentioned to the number of case studies) and on examples in between (the names of scientists associated with a collaborative effort or with a particular methodology, for example). The table shows that all the textbooks used in the middle and senior years (except one) mention the names of scientists, with usually more names mentioned in the senior-years textbooks. Of 22 textbooks, 16 mostly use names merely to identify a fact, law or theory. In only six textbooks was the proportion of scientists, whose work was described according to a systematic account of the scientific method, greater than 50 per cent. Most often, the student is told of discoveries made by scientists but not the reasons why they were studying the particular phenomenon. Moreover, these scientists generally were not placed in any historical or social context.

Finally, despite the lip-service authors pay to scientific communication, their textbooks rarely mention the research team or communication network within which scientists work. The most representative case in this regard is the account of the development of the atomic model given in five chemistry textbooks[52] at the senior-years level. In each book, the student sees the development of this model from J.J. Thomson to Niels Bohr, including the corrections made by Ernest Rutherford and James Chadwick. At no time is the student given any indication that these men knew each other (and knew each other well) or that the atmosphere at the Cavendish Laboratory at Cambridge University contributed to these achievements (J.J. Thomson was director of the laboratory from 1884 to 1919 and Rutherford his student as of 1895, replacing him as director in 1919). Nor is there any mention that Niels Bohr had been a student of Thomson at Cambridge and of Rutherford at Manchester, and that Chadwick had worked under Rutherford at Cambridge. This is a prime example of "textbook science" in which historical events are presented outside their context and the scientists generally portrayed (often in biographies) as solitary geniuses who had the right idea at the right time.

This example raises another issue — the standardization of textbooks. None of the five textbooks differed significantly in describing the development of the atomic model. Moreover, we easily found other examples of how extensive this standardization was. All the textbooks, for example, used the Haber process for synthesizing ammonia to illustrate chemical equilibrium in the gaseous state, or its applications. What explanation can there be for this unanimous choice of examples? We also found it curious that textbook authors do not usually acknowledge their sources used in preparing their textbooks; *ALCHEM* is a rare exception to this. However, new editions of American textbooks such as *PSSC*, *CHEMStudy* and *BSCS*, do indicate that they are based on the original edition. Is it unreasonable to assume that these unacknowledged sources

Table VIII.11a – The History of Science in Science Textbooks – Middle Years, Biology (10)

Textbook code	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Aims							
Inclusion of objective concerning history of science	X	?			X		
Scientists							
Total number of scientists mentioned	27	24	14	32	23	0	6
% of scientists mentioned merely to qualify a law, theory, etc.	19	46	100	46	57	0	100
% of scientists whose work is described according to "scientific method"	67	8	0	38	43	0	100
% of scientists associated with an historical or social context	56	4	0	16	13	0	100
% of scientists mentioned associated with a research team, information network, etc.	74	0	0	6	17	0	100
% of women scientists mentioned	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Case Studies							
Case studies cited	X[a]	X[b]					
Illustrations or publications associated with history of science	0	0	0	1	1	0	7

[a] Spontaneous generation and cell theory.

[b] Discovery of a vitamin deficiency.

Table VIII.11b – The History of Science in Science Textbooks – Middle Years, Physical Sciences (20), General Science (30)

Textbook code	21	22	23	24	31	32	33
Aims							
Inclusion of objective concerning history of science	X			X[c]			
Scientists							
Total number of scientists mentioned	13	14	17	35	33	6[g]	8
% of scientists mentioned merely to qualify a law, theory, etc.	62	57	41	43	27	100	25
% of scientists whose work is described according to "scientific method"	15	43	59	22	6	33	75
% of scientists associated with an historical or social context	15	7	24	0	73	33	75
% of scientists mentioned associated with a research team, information network, etc.	0	14	6	0	0	0	0
% of women scientists mentioned	8	7	0	0	3[e]	0	0
Case Studies							
Case studies cited		X[a]	X[b]	X[d]	X[f]		
Illustrations or publications associated with history of science	0	2	1	1	0	0	6

[a] Law of definite proportions, development of periodic table, spectral analysis, discovery of radioactivity.

[b] Abandonment of caloric theory, measuring the speed of light, thermal energy and its conversions.

[c] Several of the great scientific ideas that have helped shape the world and will continue to do so.

[d] The structure of matter, the nature of heat.

[e] Marie Curie.

[f] Periodic classification and atomic model (partial treatment).

[g] About three sentences devoted to each scientist.

Table VIII.11c – The History of Science in Science Textbooks – Senior Years, Biology (40), Physics (60)

Textbook code	41	42	43	44	61	62	63	64
Aims								
Inclusion of objective concerning history of science	X	X				X		X
Scientists								
Total number of scientists mentioned	61	125	82	91	66	49	89	11
% of scientists mentioned merely to qualify a law, theory, etc.	62	30	65	16	41	84	30	82
% of scientists whose work is described according to "scientific method"	26	70	26	36	15	10	0	0
% of scientists associated with an historical or social context	8	33	34	14	0	0	0	18
% of scientists mentioned associated with a research team, information network, etc.	3	39	21	31	44	6	0	0
% of women scientists mentioned	12	5	1	6	3	2	2	0
Case Studies								
Case studies cited		X[a]	X[b]	X[c]			X[d]	
Illustrations or publications associated with history of science	3	1	3	0	34	0	31	0

[a] Origin of life, photosynthesis, Mendel, evolution, etc.

[b] Many biographies included.

[c] Evolution and natural selection.

[d] Solar system, forces and movement, photoelectric effect, etc.

Table VIII.11d – The History of Science in Science Textbooks – Senior Years, Chemistry (50)

Textbook code	51	52	53	54	55	56
Aims						
Inclusion of objective concerning history of science	([a])	X			X	X
Scientists						
Total number of scientists mentioned	26	61	69	50	30	35
% of scientists mentioned merely to qualify a law, theory, etc.	72	62	30	56	60	33
% of scientists whose work is described according to "scientific method"	28	33	29	24	40	16
% of scientists associated with an historical or social context	12	2	68	2	37	66
% of scientists mentioned associated with a research team, information network, etc.	12	20	38	18	0	20
% of women scientists mentioned	0	3	1	4	3	0
Case Studies						
Case studies cited	X[b]	X[c]			X[d]	X[e]
Illustrations or publications associated with history of science	2	0	0	0	6	2

[a] Many historical references and biographies of famous scientists are found throughout the program.

[b] History of the periodic table, development of the atomic model, Lavoisier and the beginnings of quantitative chemistry.

[c] Modern theory of combustion, discovery of radioactivity.

[d] Atomic model and periodic table (partial treatment).

[e] Atomic theory.

were usually other science textbooks and that this practice leads to textbook standardization?

We also wanted to know if any authors included case studies as part of their historical references, basing our definition of case study on the criteria proposed by Watson and Klopfer (see Appendix D). Table VIII.11 gives some idea of the use of case studies in textbooks and, consequently, of the extent to which students are offered a view of science different from "textbook science." In general, authors offer students case studies that do not necessarily conform to the criteria chosen (development of the atomic model is one example of this). The textbook with the most case studies is *Project Physics* (formerly *Harvard Project Physics*) by J. Rutherford *et al.* There is also a Canadian version by D. Paul *et al.* with large passages taken from the US version. It is interesting to note that Fletcher Watson, whose criteria we used to identify case studies, is one of this book's authors.

Table VIII.11 also shows that authors rarely include any illustrations or facsimiles of original publications. The woman scientist most often cited is Marie Curie. Very few Canadian scientists are mentioned, except in one biology textbook (44), which devotes several lines to a total of 14. Among the Canadian scientists mentioned in other books are Pierre Dansereau (13), Neil Bartlett (31 and 54), Sir Frederick Banting (52), R.J. Gillespie and Gerhard Herzberg (53), Sir Sandford Fleming (31) and Hans Selye (42).

In conclusion, if understanding the nature of science is one of the main objectives of science teaching, then should students and teachers not be well aware of the various messages concerning the nature of science found in textbooks? Is this "textbook science," which stems from a secondary textbook objective (the first being to convey science content) and from a general standardization of textbooks, an acceptable model? Do new policies such as the one in Québec – which requires authors to prepare textbooks in accordance with prescribed objectives – constitute a step away from standardization, or are other measures necessary? Is the "child as scientist" a proper model for teaching scientific thinking?

We are well aware that these questions are rather broad in scope, as might be expected when dealing with the problem of the nature of science as represented in textbooks. Perhaps much of the problem stems from an evident lack of interest on the part of researchers to study science textbooks partly because of its apparent difficulty and partly because in North America, textbooks sometimes suffer from the emphasis placed on "active" teaching methods and on the individualization of teaching, in which the textbook's role is not considered essential.[53] The survey, however, as well as our examination of what occurs in science classrooms, show that the textbook does play an important role, and we believe that a greater understanding of its impact on students and on their learning is important for both educational policymaking and practice.

Appendices

Appendix A – Science Curriculum Policy Documents

All ministries of education supplied the study with policy documents concerning their science programs. However, only those required for analysis purposes are listed here. The list does not, therefore, represent a complete inventory of all provincial science program documents.

Early Years

Newfoundland
Philosophy and Objectives for Science Education in Newfoundland Schools, Grades K-11 (1978)
Elementary Science Course Description (1978)

Prince Edward Island
A Style for Every Child: Program of Studies and Related Information for the Schools of Prince Edward Island (1977-78) (amended — 1978)
Science Activities in the Elementary School, Years I-VI

Nova Scotia
Science in the Elementary School: A Teaching Guide (1978)

New Brunswick
Program in Elementary School Science (1977)
Programme-cadre, sciences à l'élémentaire (1977)
Guide pédagogique, sciences à l'élémentaire, Premier cycle (1970); *Deuxième cycle* (1977)

Québec
L'école québecoise, énoncé de politique et plan d'action (1979)
Programme d'étude, primaire, sciences de la nature (1980)

Matériel didactique agréé par le ministère de l'Éducation pour les écoles primaires de langue française (1979); *Supplément* (1981)
Educational materials approved by the ministère de l'Éducation for use in English-language elementary schools (1979); *Supplement* (1981)

Ontario
The Formative Years (1975)
Circular 14: Textbooks (1982)

Manitoba
K-6 Science (1979)

Saskatchewan
Division I Science Program (1971)
Curriculum Guide for Division II Science (1971)

Alberta
Curriculum Guide for Elementary Science (1980 — interim)

British Columbia
Elementary Science: Curriculum Guide (1981)
Prescribed and Authorized Learning Materials: Grades K-XII (1979)

Northwest Territories
Elementary Science Program: Interim Edition (1978)

Yukon Territory
The Exploring Science Program Teacher's Guide (1978)

Middle Years

Newfoundland
Philosophy and Objectives for Science Education in Newfoundland Schools, Grades K-11 (1978)
Junior High Science Curriculum Guide (1980)

Prince Edward Island
A Style for Every Child: Program of Studies and Related Information for the Schools of Prince Edward Island (1977-78, amended 1978)
Levels Seven, Eight, Nine Science Discovery Approach: A Suggested Program for P.E.I. Schools

Nova Scotia
Science in the Junior High School (1977)

New Brunswick
Junior High Science (1980)
Sciences, secondaire, premier cycle (1979)

Québec
Programme d'étude, secondaire
Écologie 176-113
Initiation à la biologie humaine 175-133 (documents de travail, 1980)
Matériel didactique agréé par le ministère de l'Éducation pour les écoles secondaires de langue française (1979); *Supplément* (1981)
Educational materials approved by the ministère de l'Éducation for use in English-language secondary schools (1979); *Supplement* (1981)

Ontario
Intermediate Division Science (1978)
Circular 14: Textbooks (1982)

Manitoba
7-9 Science (1979)

Saskatchewan
A Curriculum Guide for Division III Science (1979)

Alberta
Curriculum Guide for Junior High School Science (1978)

British Columbia
Junior Secondary Science, Curriculum/Resource Guide, 8-10 (Draft, 1982)

Northwest Territories
Middle Years Science (1979)

Senior Years

Newfoundland
Philosophy and Objectives for Science Education in Newfoundland Schools, Grades K-11 (1978)
High School Biology Curriculum Guide (1979)
Biology 2201 (1981)
Biology 3201 (1982)
Chemistry 2202 (1982)
High School Physics Course Description (1979)
Physics 2204 (1981)
Physics 3204 (1982)

Prince Edward Island
A Style for Every Child: Program of Studies and Related Information for the Schools of Prince Edward Island (1977-78, amended — 1978)

Nova Scotia
Biology 010, 310, 012, 312 — A Teaching Guide (1978)
Chemistry 011, 012, 311, 312 — A Teaching Guide (1977)
Physics 011, 012, 311, 312 — A Teaching Guide (1977)

New Brunswick
Biology 102-101 (1980)
Biology 103 (1977)
Biology 122 (1977)
Chemistry 111-121 (1979)
Chemistry 112-122 (1979)
Physics 111-121 (1969)
Physics 112-122 (1979)
Plans d'études:
Biologie 102-122 (1972)
Chimie I and II (1980)
Physique 112-122 (1974)

Québec
Programmes d'études des écoles secondaires, Biologie 422 (1971)
Chimie 270-442, 270-462, 270-562 (1976)
Physique 181-643, 181-653 (1980)
Matériel didactique agréé par le ministère de l'Éducation pour les écoles secondaires de langue française (1979); *Supplément* (1980)
Educational materials approved by the ministère de l'Éducation for use in English-language secondary schools (1979); *Supplement* (1980)

Ontario (no senior-years guidelines available)
Circular 14: Textbooks (1982)

Manitoba
Biology 200-300 — pilot program (1981)
Chemistry 200-300 — pilot program (1981)
Physics 200-300 — pilot program (1981)

Saskatchewan
Biology 20,30 (1971); *Supplement* (1979)
Chemistry 20,30 (1976)
Physics 20,30 (1976); *Supplement* (1979)

Alberta
Biology 10-20-30 (1977)
Chemistry 10-20-30 (1977)
Physics 10-20-30 (1977)

British Columbia
Biology 11 and 12 (1974)
Chemistry 11: Learning Outcomes and Resource Guide (1977)
Chemistry 12: Learning Outcomes and Resource Guide (1978)
Physics 11: Curriculum Guide (1981)
Prescribed and Authorized Learning Materials: Grades K-11 (1979)

Appendix B – Science Textbooks

Books listed here are those listed by ministry documents as prescribed, approved or authorized for use by students. Only books and series are listed (i.e., not "kits" of equipment or audiovisual packages). Also only those that cover a significant proportion of a course are identified (not, for example, single-topic books). Owing to the co-existence of more than one edition of certain texts, only the dates of the first and the most recent editions are specified. Books are listed in alphabetical order by titles within each of the following sections:

A. Early Years

B. Middle Years

C. Senior Years: C1. Biology
C2. Chemistry
C3. Physics

Where a book is listed or used for more than one level or subject, it is placed at the level (and subject) where it is most often used and marked with an asterisk.

For each book listed, the following information is provided in the five numbered columns on the right-hand side:

1. The number of provinces listing the book;
2. The number of provinces in which survey respondents have reported the book as being in use;
3. The number of survey respondents reporting the book as being in use;
4. X indicates that teacher assessments of the book have been collated;
5. X indicates that the book has been analyzed as part of the study.

A. Early Years	1	2	3	4	5
Apprentissage de la pensée scientifique (Collection APS) American Association for the Advancement of Science Traduit, Bureau de recherche et de consultation en éducation Beauchemin, 1971	1	1	11		
Les chemins de la science V. Rockcastle et coll. Traduit et adapté, F. Séguin Éditions du Renouveau Pédagogique, 1978	6	7	54	X	X

	1	2	3	4	5
Concepts in Science P. Brandwein *et al.* Longman, 1968-1980 (3 eds.)	1	4	21	X	
Elementary Science Study (ESS) Education Development Center McGraw-Hill, 1967-70	3	0	0		
Energy Literacy Series S.E.E.D.S. Foundation SRA, 1981	4	0	0		
ESS (Collection) Education Development Center (traduit) McGraw-Hill, 1967-71	2	0	0		
Étude de ton environnement J.-C. MacBean et coll. Traduit, I. Sabourin Adapté, R. Gervais et D. Sénécal Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1973-77 (2 eds.)	2	0	0		
*Étudie ton milieu** F. Miron et coll. McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1974	3	0	0		
L'éveil de l'enfant par les activités scientifiques R. Tavernier Bordas Dunod, 1976-78 (2 eds.)	1	0	0		
Examining Your Environment (EYE) J.C. MacBean *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1977	5	2	2		
Experiences in Science H.E. Tannenbaum *et al.* McGraw-Hill, 1966	1	0	0		
Heath Science Series H. & N. Schneider Copp Clark, 1968	2	4	13	X	
Investigating Science Series L.A. Cole *et al.* The Book Society of Canada, 1962	1	0	0		

	1	2	3	4	5
J'observe la nature (Collection) A. Bultreys Traduit, J. Razée Granger Frères, 1976	1	0	0		
Laidlaw Exploring Science Program M.K. Blecha *et al.* Doubleday, 1977-79 (3 eds.)	4	5	121	X	X
Laidlaw Modern Science, Levels 1-6 H.A. Smith and M.K. Blecha Doubleday, 1976	2	1	7		
Modern Elementary Science A.S. Fischler *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1971	2	2	8		
Modular Activities Program in Science/ MAPS C. Berger *et al.* Houghton Mifflin, 1974-77 (2 eds.)	2	2	11	X	
*Le monde qui t'entoure** S. Rouleau et M. Demers Guérin, 1976	2	0	0		
Our Science Program R.H. Horwood *et al.* Gage, 1969-77	2	0	0		
Science 5/13 (Learning Through Science) L. Ennever, Project Director MacDonald Educational/GLC, 1973-81	4	3	3		
Science Curriculum Improvement Study (SCIS) W. Thier *et al.* Gage, 1978	3	0	0		
Science in Action I. Woolley, editor McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1975-76	3	3	3		
Science Involvement Program D. Gladstone and J.R. Gladstone Maclean-Hunter Learning Materials, 1972	1	0	0		
Science Reader 3-9 F.M. Branley Reader's Digest, 1974	1	0	0		

	1	2	3	4	5
Science - A Process Approach (SAPA) American Association for the Advancement of Science Xerox-Ginn, 1974-77 (2 eds.)	2	0	0		
Science: Understanding Your Environment G.G. and J.B. Mallinson *et al.* Silver Burdett, 1978	1	1	11		
Le secret des choses: Initiation aux sciences (SCIS) Traduit et adapté, J.-M. Chevrier et coll. Institut de Recherches Psychologiques, 1970-79	1	1	8		
Self-Paced Investigations For Elementary Science (SPIES) G. Katagiri *et al.* Silver Burdett/GLC, 1976	1	0	0		
Space, Time, Energy, Matter (STEM) V. Rockcastle *et al.* Addison-Wesley, 1977-80 (2 eds.)	10	11	529	X	X
Wedge Resources C. Anastasiou, Director Western Educational Development Group, 1973-79	1	0	0		
Young Scientist Series J.G. Navarra and J. Zafforoni Harper & Row/Fitzhenry & Whiteside, 1971	1	0	0		

B. Middle Years

	1	2	3	4	5
Biological Sciences: An Introductory Study W. Andrews *et al.* Prentice-Hall, 1980	3	3	49	X	X
Biologie humaine C. Désiré et coll. Centre Éducatif et Culturel, 1968	1	1	6	X	X
Biologie humaine P. Thibault Éditions Hurtubise HMH, 1979	1	1	4		

	1	2	3	4	5
Challenges to Science: Earth Science R.L. Heller *et al.* McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1976	2	1	9		
Challenges to Science: Life Science W.L. Smallwood McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1972	2	1	11	X	
Challenges to Science: Physical Science R.L. Heller *et al.* McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1979	2	0	0		
Concepts and Challenges in Science A. Winkler *et al.* Gage, 1979	6	9	13	X	
Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy Prentice-Hall, 1968-79 (2 eds.)	2	2	109	X	X
*Earth Science** W.L. Ramsey *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1978	2	2	10	X	
Écologie E.P. Odum Éditions HRW, 1976	1	0	0		
*Écologie, initiation à la biologie** É. Magnin McGraw-Hill, 1975	3	0	0		
Energy, Matter and Change R.D. Townsend and P. Hurd Scott, Foresman, 1973	2	2	4		
Les êtres et leur milieu M. Poirier et G. Viscasillas Brault et Bouthillier, 1970	1	3	10	X	X
Exploring Matter and Energy M.K. Blecha *et al.* Doubleday Canada, 1978	1	6	35	X	X
Exploring Science Series W.A. Thurber and R.E. Kilburn Macmillan, 1977	5	7	75	X	X

	1	2	3	4	5
*Extending Science Concepts in the Laboratory** W.H. Rasmusson and M.C. Schmid, editors Prentice-Hall, 1970	2	2	98	X	
Focus on Earth Science M.S. Bishop *et al.* Charles E. Merrill, 1976-1981 (4 eds.)	2	4	7		
Focus on Life Science C.H. Heimler and J.D. Lockard Charles E. Merrill, 1977-81 (4 eds.)	1	3	15	X	X
Focus on Physical Science C.H. Heimler *et al.* Charles E. Merrill, 1969-81 (4 eds.)	1	0	0		
Focus on Science: Exploring the Natural World D. Gough and F. Flanagan D.C. Heath, 1980	4	2	7		X
Focus on Science: Exploring the Physical World F. Flanagan D.C. Heath, 1979	4	2	3		
From Nature to Man B.L. Barrett and J.N. Stratton Wiley, 1976	1	0	0		
Ideas and Investigations in Science H. Wong and M. Dolmatz Prentice-Hall, 1978-82 (2 eds.)	2	3	4		
Individualized Science Instructional System (ISIS) E. Burkman Ginn, 1980	3	2	13		
Initiation aux sciences physiques (ISP) U. Haber-Schaim et coll. Traduit et adapté, J.M. Chevrier et coll. Institut de Recherches Psychologiques, 1969-78 (2 eds.)	3	2	12	X	X
Interactions of Earth and Time N. Abraham *et al.* Rand McNally, 1979	1	1	2		

	1	2	3	4	5
Interaction of Man and Biosphere N. Abraham *et al.* Rand McNally, 1969	1	2	3		
Introducing Science Concepts in the Laboratory M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy Prentice-Hall, 1973-77 (2 eds.)	3	2	91	X	X
*Introduction à la biologie** P. Thibeault et R. D'Aoust Éditions Hurtubise HMH, 1970	4	2	15	X	X
Introduction aux sciences expérimentales M. Noiseaux Éditions Sciences et Culture, 1971-78 (2 eds.)	1	0	0		
Introduction aux sciences physiques W.A. Andrews *et al.* Traduit et adapté, J. Deschênes Éditions Études Vivantes, 1979	2	0	0		
Introductory Physical Science U. Haber-Schaim *et al.* Prentice-Hall, 1967-82 (4 eds.)	2	2	2		
Investigating Life Science M. O'Flanagan and G. Connelly Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1980	1	0	0		
Investigating Physical Science M. O'Flanagan Holt, Rinehart, & Winston, 1981	1	0	0		
Investigating the Earth American Geological Institute Houghton Mifflin, 1973-81 (7 eds.)	4	3	7		
Investigations in Science: A Modular Approach J.K. Olson *et al.* Wiley, 1974-77 (2 eds.)	1	2	3		
Life Science W.L. Ramsey *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1978	1	1	1		

	1	2	3	4	5
Life Science: A Problem Solving Approach J.L. Carter *et al.* Ginn, 1974-77 (2 eds.)	1	3	10	X	X
Methods of Science Today G. Erwin *et al.* Clarke, Irwin, 1979	1	2	34	X	
Modern Life Science F.L. Fitzpatrick and J.W. Hole Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1974	1	1	1		
Modern Physical Science G.R. Tracy *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1970	1	1	1		
*Pathways in Science** J.M. Oxenhorn Globe/Modern, 1978	3	4	15		
Physical Science W.L. Ramsey *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1978	1	1	5		
Physical Science: A Basis for Understanding J.E. Garden and M.J. Gadsby Wiley, 1980	1	0	0		
Physical Science: A Problem Solving Approach J.L. Carter *et al.* Ginn, 1974	2	3	10	X	
Physical Science: An Introductory Study W. Andrews *et al.* Prentice-Hall, 1978	5	5	87	X	X
Physical Science: Interaction of Matter and Energy R.W. Heath and R.R. McNaughton D.C. Heath, 1976	4	4	8		
Physical Science Investigations C.L. Bickel *et al.* Houghton Mifflin, 1973-79 (2 eds.)	2	0	0		
*Précis de biologie humaine** T.F. Morrison *et al.* Traduit, A. Décarie Éditions HRW, 1977	2	1	1		

	1	2	3	4	5
Principles of Science C.H. Heimler and C.D. Neal Charles E. Merrill, 1975-83 (4 eds.)	1	3	9		
Reading About Science C. Anastasiou *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1970	2	1	3		
Science Networks: Biology O.J. Mardall *et al.* Globe/Modern, 1981	2	0	0		
Sciences physiques J.-M. Chevrier *et coll.* Institut de Recherches Psychologiques, 1971-73 (2 eds.)	1	0	0		
Sciences physiques et biologiques H. Wong Traduit, N. Boudreau Éditions Hurtubise HMH, 1973	1	0	0		
Sciences physiques: matière, énergie, interactions R.R. MacNaughton et R.W. Heath Traduit et adapté, J. Bergeron et M. Mercure Centre Éducatif et Culturel, 1977	3	2	3		X
Scienceways J. MacBean *et al.* Copp Clark Pitman, 1979-80	4	3	46	X	X
*Searching for Structure** D.H. Pike, General Editor Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1974-78	4	3	93	X	
Spaceship Earth J.J. Jackson and E.D. Evans Houghton Mifflin, 1973-80 (2 eds.)	2	1	1		

C. Senior Years

C1. Biology

	1	2	3	4	5
Biological Science D. Galbraith *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1978	1	1	7		

	1	2	3	4	5
Biological Science W.H. Gregory and E.H. Goldman Ginn, 1971	1	1	2		
Biological Science: An Ecological Approach Biological Sciences Curriculum Study Rand McNally, 1963-78 (4 eds.)	6	5	57	X	X
Biological Science: An Inquiry Into Life Biological Sciences Curriculum Study Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich/Longman, 1963-80 (4 eds.)	2	4	8	X	
Biological Science: Molecules to Man Biological Sciences Curriculum Study Houghton Mifflin, 1973	1	2	12	X	
Biologie L. Cournoyer et O. Garon Éditions Hurturbise HMH, 1969	2	0	0		
Biologie 412 & 422 G. Llull Guérin, 1973	2	0	0		
Biologie 5^e et 6^e J.-P. Astolfi et coll. Librairie Bélin, 1978	1	0	0		
Biologie, des molécules à l'homme Biological Sciences Curriculum Study Traduit, J.L. Tremblay Leméac, 1966	1	1	2		
Biology J.W. Kimball *et al.* Addison-Wesley, 1965-78 (4 eds.)	2	2	20	X	X
Biology: An Inquiry into the Nature of Life S.L. Weinberg Allyn & Bacon, 1966-81 (5 eds.)	1	1	1		
Biology: Living Systems R.F. Oram *et al.* Charles E. Merrill, 1969-83 (4 eds.)	1	2	36	X	
Bodyworks: Your Human Biology H.R. Scarrow Globe/Modern, 1979	2	0	0		

	1	2	3	4	5
Foundations of Biology W. McElroy *et al.* Prentice-Hall Canada, 1968	6	5	34	X	X
L'homme dans son milieu P. Couillard et coll. Guérin 1968	2	0	0		
Inquiries into Biology H.M. Lang *et al.* Gage, 1974	1	0	0		
Investigations in Biology G. Benson *et al.* Addison-Wesley, 1977	1	0	0		
Investigations of Cells and Organisms P. Abramoff and R. Thomson Prentice-Hall Canada, 1968	6	1	1		
Living Things H.E. Teter, T.D. Bain, and F.L. Fitzpatrick Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1977	1	2	3		
Modern Biology J.J. Otto and A. Towle Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1965-82 (6 eds.)	5	5	70	X	X
*Pathways in Biology** J.M. Oxenhorn Globe/Modern Curriculum Press, 1977	2	4	6		
Les sciences par objectifs de comportement, biologie Le Groupe SO_2 Éditions du Renouveau Pédagogique, 1976-78	2	1	1		
Understanding Living Things J. Reimer and W. Wilson D.C. Heath, 1977	2	2	6	X	X

C2. Chemistry

	1	2	3	4	5
A la découverte de la chimie E. Ledbetter et J. Young Traduit, B. Sicotte Éditions du Renouveau Pédagogique, 1975	2	2	4		
Action Chemistry K. Ashcroft The Book Society of Canada, 1974	2	1	1		
ALCHEM F. Jenkins *et al.* J.M. LeBel, 1978	4	2	14	X	X
Basic Modern Chemistry S. Madras McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1965-78 (3 eds.)	2	1	1		
Chemistry G.R. Choppin *et al.* Silver Burdett/GLC, 1935-78 (12 eds.)	1	0	0		
Chemistry: A Modern Course R. Smoot *et al.* Charles E. Merrill, 1962-83 (6 eds.)	1	1	2		
Chemistry: An Experimental Science G. Pimentel *et al.* W.H. Freeman, 1963	1	3	8	X	
Chemistry: An Investigative Approach F.A. Cotton *et al.* Houghton Mifflin/Nelson, 1970-80 (2 eds.)	1	2	2		
Chemistry: Experimental Foundations R.W. Parry *et al.* Prentice-Hall, 1970-82 (3 eds.)	4	5	23	X	X
Chemistry: Experiments and Principles P.R. O'Connor *et al.* D.C. Heath, 1968-82 (4 eds.)	6	6	26	X	X
Chemistry Today R.L. Whitman and E.E. Zinck Prentice-Hall Canada, 1976-82 (2 eds.)	3	3	30	X	X

	1	2	3	4	5
Chimie, apprentissage individualisé F. Morin et B. Joseph Éditions Hurtubise HMH, 1976-78	1	1	1		
La chimie en action K. Ashcroft et coll. The Book Society of Canada, 1981	1	0	0		
La chimie: Science expérimentale G. Pimentel et coll. Traduit, G. Plante et coll. Leméac, 1966	1	1	6		
La chimie: Expériences et principes P.R. O'Connor et coll. Traduit, J. Leclerc Centre Éducatif et Culturel, 1974-79 (3 eds.)	2	1	7	X	
Éléments de chimie expérimentale R. Lahaie et coll. Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1974	2	2	15	X	X
Éléments de chimie moderne G. Hall et S. Madras Traduit, J.-P. Gravel McGraw-Hill, 1965-81 (3 eds.)	3	4	6		
Elements of Experimental Chemistry R. Lahaie *et al.* Translated, N. Ouzounian *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1978	2	1	1		
Foundations of Chemistry E.R. Toon and G.L.Ellis Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1973-78 (2 eds.)	4	4	30	X	
Inquiries in Chemistry A.M. Turner and C.T. Sears Allyn & Bacon, 1974-77 (3 eds.)	4	3	40	X	
Interaction of Matter and Energy N. Abraham *et al.* Rand McNally, 1979	1	3	8	X	
Introductory Experimental Chemistry M.B. Messer *et al.* Prentice-Hall, 1977	1	1	1		

	1	2	3	4	5
Investigative Science J. Hand *et al.* Gage, 1977-78	1	0	0		
Keys to Chemistry E. Ledbetter and J. Young Addison-Wesley, 1977	5	6	14	X	X
MAC: A Modular Approach to Chemistry D.A. Humphreys and A.C. Blizzard Wiley, 1976-78	1	0	0		
Modern Chemistry J. Metcalfe *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1958-82 (6 eds.)	1	5	21	X	
The Nature of Matter D. Courneya and H. McDonald D.C. Heath, 1976	4	1	8		
Outlines of Chemistry R.P. Graham and W.A.E. McBryde Clarke, Irwin, 1978	1	1	3		
Les sciences par objectifs de comportement, chimie Le Groupe SO_2 Éditions du Renouveau Pédagogique, 1978	3	0	0		

C3. Physics

	1	2	3	4	5
Basic Physics for Secondary Schools H.L. Eubank *et al.* Gage, 1963	2	0	0		
Concepts in Physics F. Miller *et al.* Academic Press, 1974-80 (3 eds.)	1	0	0		
Éléments de physique M. Benoit et coll. Beauchemin, 1963-66 (2 eds.)	1	2	2		
Fundamentals of Physics R.W. Heath *et al.* D.C. Heath, 1979	6	5	53	X	X

	1	2	3	4	5
Ideas of Physics D.C. Giancoli Academic Press, 1978-81	1	0	0		
Matière et énergie J.H. MacLachlan et coll. Traduit et adapté, P. Marcotte Guérin, 1981	1	0	0		
Matter and Energy J.H. MacLachlan *et al.* Clarke, Irwin, 1977	1	1	26	X	X
Modern Physics C.E. Dull *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1963-80 (6 eds.)	1	0	0		
Modern Physics J.E. Williams *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1972	1	0	0		
Physics D.C. Giancoli Prentice-Hall, 1980	2	0	0		
Physics (PSSC) U. Haber-Schaim *et al.* D.C, Heath, 1960-81 (5 eds.)	6	6	48	X	X
Physics: A Human Endeavour D. Paul *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1976-77	7	5	36	X	X
Physics: A Practical Approach A.J. Hirsch Wiley, 1981	1	0	0		
Physics: An Energy Introduction G. Laundry *et al.* McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1979	1	0	0		
Physics: Its Methods and Meaning A. Taffel Allyn & Bacon, 1969-81 (3 eds.)	1	1	4		
Physics: Principles and Problems J.T. Murphy and R.C. Smoot Charles E. Merrill, 1972-82 (3 eds.)	2	2	3		

	1	2	3	4	5
Physics: The Fundamental Science O.C. Barton and R.J. Raymer Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1967	2	2	5		
Physique R. St-Laurent Éditions Science Moderne, 1975	1	0	0		
La physique au secondaire par objectifs opérationnels M. Do et R. Descoteaux Guérin, 1976-77	2	0	0		
La physique en classe laboratoire M. Benoit et coll. Beauchemin, 1974	1	0	0		
Physique HPP J. Rutherford Traduit et adapté, L. Sainte-Marie Institut de Recherches Psychologiques, 1978-79	1	1	2		
La physique par la redécouverte dirigée J. Desautels et P.-L. Trempe Éditions Sciences et Culture, 1972	1	0	0		
Physique (PSSC) U. Haber-Schaim et coll. Traduit et adapté, P. Tougas Centre Éducatif et Culturel, 1974-75 (2 eds.)	1	3	8	X	
Physique. . . mais c'est simple P.-L. Trempe Éditions Sciences et Culture, 1971	1	0	0		
Physique: Science de l'univers O.C. Barton et R.J. Raymer Éditions HRW, 1970-79 (2 eds.)	1	1	1		
Physique, science expérimentale J. Désautels et coll. Éditions Sciences et Culture, 1968-1970	1	0	0		
Project Physics J. Rutherford *et al.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1971	3	2	8	X	

	1	2	3	4	5
Les sciences par objectifs de comportement, physique Le Groupe SO_2 Éditions du Renouveau Pédagogique, 1974	2	0	0		
Sciences physique II Équipe IPS Traduit et adapté, équipe IRP Institut de Recherches Psychologiques, 1976	1	0	0		
Secondary Physics Outlines E.O. James A. Wheaton/Pergamon, 1975	1	0	0		
The World of Physics R.I. Hulsizer and D. Lazarus Addison-Wesley, 1972	1	0	0		
Thèmes Vuibert (physique) H.F. Boulind et coll. Librairie Vuibert, 1974	1	0	0		

Appendix C – Teachers' Assessments of Science Textbooks

Detailed Results of Assessment

For each textbook in the sample, the reader will find the following information: title, author(s), publisher, the number of users responding to the survey and their geographical distribution. To facilitate reading of the assessment results, we have made a few editorial changes in the data presentation. For each of the 10 features listed below teachers were asked to respond using a number from 1 to 4 to represent their assessment:

1. Completely inadequate
2. Fairly inadequate
3. Fairly adequate
4. Completely adequate

We have combined these responses to produce two judgements as follows:

1 + 2 = I (Fairly or Completely Inadequate)
3 + 4 = II (Fairly or Completely Adequate)

Each line of the assessment table contains the following information (from left to right):

1. The feature being assessed (lines 1-10) and an overall impression (line 11);
2. the number of respondents assessing this feature;
3. percentage of responses in category I (inadequate);
4. percentage of responses in category II (adequate);
5. the ranking of this feature (R) on an "adequacy scale" from 1 (most adequate feature) to 10 (least adequate feature).

As the reader will see, the number of respondents assessing each feature (N) varies considerably from book to book (from a low of 5 to a high of 408). It is not, therefore, possible to claim that this assessment of some of the textbooks is representative of all teachers in Canada who use the books.

Title: *Les chemins de la science*
Author(s): Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*, French version of *STEM*, translated and adapted by Fernand Séguin
Publisher: Éditions du Renouveau Pédagogique
Number of users responding to survey: 54
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (11), Qué. (8), Ont. (6), Man. (15), Sask. (3), Alta. (9), NWT (2)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	49	33	67	4
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	50	24	76	3
Readability for students	50	68	32	8
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	50	18	82	2
Suggested activities	50	36	64	5
Canadian examples	49	39	61	6
Accounts of the applications of science	50	40	60	7
Appropriateness for slow students	50	76	24	10
Appropriateness for bright students	50	10	90	1
References for further reading	50	74	26	9
Overall impression	50	48	52	

Comment: The assessment of the French version by francophone respondents differs significantly from that of the English version assessed by anglophone respondents.

Title: *Concepts in Science*
Author(s): Paul Brandwein, W. Yasso and D. Brovey
Publisher: Longman
Number of users responding to survey: 21
Geographical distribution of respondents: Man. (3), Sask. (2), Alta. (15), BC (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	16	44	56	5
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	16	25	75	1
Readability for students	16	50	50	7
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	16	25	75	1
Suggested activities	16	37	63	4
Canadian examples	16	56	44	9
Accounts of the applications of science	16	50	50	7
Appropriateness for slow students	16	62	38	10
Appropriateness for bright students	16	31	69	3
References for further reading	16	44	56	5
Overall impression	16	50	50	

Title: *Heath Science Series, Science in Your Life, Science in Your World*
Author(s): H. & N. Schneider
Publisher: Copp Clark
Number of users responding to survey: 13
Geographical distribution of respondents: PEI (1), NS (3), Man. (1), Sask. (8)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	12	42	58	3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	11	54	46	5
Readability for students	11	45	55	4
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	11	36	64	1
Suggested activities	11	36	64	1
Canadian examples	11	91	9	10
Accounts of the applications of science	11	64	36	8
Appropriateness for slow students	11	73	27	9
Appropriateness for bright students	11	54	46	5
References for further reading	11	54	46	5
Overall impression	11	45	55	

Title: *Laidlaw Exploring Science Program*
Author(s): Milo K. Blecha *et al.*
Publisher: Doubleday Canada Ltd.
Number of users responding to survey: 121
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (2), Sask. (8), Alta. (11), BC (76), YT (24)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	96	13	87	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	96	25	75	3
Readability for students	96	26	74	4
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	96	10	90	1
Suggested activities	96	27	73	5
Canadian examples	94	42	58	9
Accounts of the applications of science	91	34	66	8
Appropriateness for slow students	93	61	39	10
Appropriateness for bright students	92	31	69	7
References for further reading	92	30	70	6
Overall impression	91	16	84	

Comment: This assessment covers a series of six books designed for students from grade 1 through grade 7.

Title: *Modular Activities Program in Science (MAPS)*
Author(s): Carl Berger *et al.*
Publisher: Houghton Mifflin
Number of users responding to survey: 11
Geographical distribution of respondents: Man. (8), Alta. (3)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	8	25	75	7
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	7	29	71	8
Readability for students	6	33	67	9
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	7	14	86	5
Suggested activities	7	0	100	1
Canadian examples	6	0	100	1
Accounts of the applications of science	7	0	100	1
Appropriateness for slow students	8	50	50	10
Appropriateness for bright students	7	0	100	1
References for further reading	6	17	83	6
Overall impression	7	14	86	

Title: *Space, Time, Energy, Matter (STEM)*
Author(s): Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*
Publisher: Addison-Wesley
Number of users responding to survey: 529
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld. (162), NS (52), NB (49), Qué. (3), Ont. (2), Man. (42), Sask. (46), Alta. (91), BC (36), YT (1), NWT (45)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	408	19	81	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	407	23	77	4
Readability for students	404	26	74	6
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	405	16	84	1
Suggested activities	403	24	76	5
Canadian examples	382	44	56	8
Accounts of the applications of science	393	30	70	7
Appropriateness for slow students	398	50	50	10
Appropriateness for bright students	398	21	79	3
References for further reading	390	44	56	8
Overall impression	402	19	81	

Comment: This assessment covers a series of seven books designed for students from kindergarten through grade 6.

Title: *Biological Science: An Introductory Study*
Author(s): William Andrews *et al.*
Publisher: Prentice-Hall
Number of users responding to survey: 49
Geographical distribution of respondents: NB (5), Ont. (40), BC (4)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	43	12	88	3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	43	19	81	5
Readability for students	43	19	81	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	43	7	93	1
Suggested activities	43	16	84	4
Canadian examples	41	32	68	7
Accounts of the applications of science	42	40	60	8
Appropriateness for slow students	43	91	9	10
Appropriateness for bright students	43	9	91	2
References for further reading	43	46	54	9
Overall impression	43	14	86	

Title: *Biologie Humaine*
Author(s): Désiré, Marchal and Bélanger
Publisher: Centre Éducatif et Culturel
Number of users responding to survey: 6
Geographical distribution of respondents: Qué. (6)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	6	50	50	3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	6	67	33	5
Readability for students	6	67	33	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	6	0	100	1
Suggested activities	6	83	17	7
Canadian examples	6	83	17	7
Accounts of the applications of science	6	50	50	3
Appropriateness for slow students	6	83	17	7
Appropriateness for bright students	6	33	67	2
References for further reading	6	100	0	10
Overall impression	6	83	17	

Title: *Challenges to Science: Life Science*
Author(s): W.L. Smallwood
Publisher: McGraw-Hill Ryerson
Number of users responding to survey: 11
Geographical distribution of respondents: Alta. (11)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	9	11	89	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	8	12	86	3
Readability for students	8	12	86	3
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	8	0	100	1
Suggested activities	8	62	38	7
Canadian examples	9	78	22	9
Accounts of the applications of science	9	33	67	6
Appropriateness for slow students	7	86	14	10
Appropriateness for bright students	8	25	75	5
References for further reading	8	75	25	8
Overall impression	8	12	88	

Title: *Concepts and Challenges in Science*
Author(s): Alan Winkler *et al.*
Publisher: Gage
Number of users responding to survey: 9
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld. (1), PEI (2), Qué. (1), Man. (2), Alta. (1), NWT (2)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	7	14	86	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	7	29	71	4
Readability for students	7	14	86	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	7	14	86	1
Suggested activities	7	29	71	4
Canadian examples	6	67	33	9
Accounts of the applications of science	7	43	57	7
Appropriateness for slow students	7	29	71	4
Appropriateness for bright students	7	57	43	8
References for further reading	7	71	29	10
Overall impression	7	14	86	

Title: *Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*
Author(s): M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy
Publisher: Prentice-Hall
Number of users responding to survey: 109
Geographical distribution of respondents: BC (108), YT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	89	12	88	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	89	16	84	3
Readability for students	88	19	81	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	87	14	86	2
Suggested activities	86	16	84	3
Canadian examples	85	25	75	7
Accounts of the applications of science	87	29	71	8
Appropriateness for slow students	87	70	30	10
Appropriateness for bright students	86	20	80	6
References for further reading	82	52	48	9
Overall impression	86	12	88	

Title: *Earth Science*
Author(s): W.L. Ramsey *et al.*
Publisher: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
Number of users responding to survey: 10
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld. (6), Sask. (4)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	9	11	89	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	9	22	78	2
Readability for students	9	22	78	2
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	9	33	67	4
Suggested activities	9	33	67	4
Canadian examples	10	60	40	9
Accounts of the applications of science	9	67	33	10
Appropriateness for slow students	10	50	50	6
Appropriateness for bright students	8	50	50	6
References for further reading	9	56	44	8
Overall impression	8	37	63	

Title: *Les êtres et leur milieu*
Author(s): M. Poirier and G. Viscasillas
Publisher: Brault et Bouthillier
Number of users responding to survey: 10
Geographical distribution of respondents: NB (2), Qué. (6), Man. (2)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	10	50	50	5
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	10	40	60	3
Readability for students	10	60	40	8
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	10	10	90	1
Suggested activities	10	50	50	5
Canadian examples	10	40	60	3
Accounts of the applications of science	10	50	50	5
Appropriateness for slow students	10	100	0	10
Appropriateness for bright students	10	20	80	2
References for further reading	10	70	30	9
Overall impression	10	40	60	

Title: *Exploring Matter and Energy*
Author(s): Milo K. Blecha *et al.*
Publisher: Doubleday
Number of users responding to survey: 35
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld. (1), NS (1), NB (17), Sask. (1), Alta. (7), BC (8)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	26	42	58	6
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	26	46	54	8
Readability for students	25	16	84	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	25	24	76	3
Suggested activities	25	20	80	2
Canadian examples	23	30	70	4
Accounts of the applications of science	24	37	63	5
Appropriateness for slow students	24	42	58	6
Appropriateness for bright students	24	62	38	10
References for further reading	24	50	50	9
Overall impression	24	33	67	

Title: *Exploring Science Series*
Author(s): W.A. Thurber and R.E. Kilburn
Publisher: Macmillan of Canada Ltd.
Number of users responding to survey: 75
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld. (20), PEI (15), NS (28), Man. (7), Alta. (1), BC (3), YT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	62	48	52	3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	61	59	41	6
Readability for students	63	62	38	7
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	63	40	60	1
Suggested activities	63	52	48	3
Canadian examples	63	84	16	10
Accounts of the applications of science	63	63	37	8
Appropriateness for slow students	63	81	19	9
Appropriateness for bright students	63	40	60	1
References for further reading	62	55	45	5
Overall impression	63	65	35	

Comment: In two cases (f and h), the number of "completely inadequate" responses exceeded the number of responses in other categories.

Title: *Extending Science Concepts in the Laboratory*
Author(s): M. Schmid *et al.*
Publisher: Prentice-Hall
Number of users responding to survey: 98
Geographical distribution of respondents: BC (97), YT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	87	32	68	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	86	51	49	4
Readability for students	85	73	27	7
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	86	70	30	6
Suggested activities	85	53	47	5
Canadian examples	85	79	21	8
Accounts of the applications of science	85	85	15	9
Appropriateness for slow students	85	89	11	10
Appropriateness for bright students	85	40	60	2
References for further reading	83	48	52	3
Overall impression	85	65	35	

Title: *Focus on Life Science*
Author(s): C.H. Heimler and J.D. Lockard
Publisher: Charles E. Merrill
Number of users responding to survey: 15
Geographical distribution of respondents: Ont. (1), Man. (7), Sask. (7)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	8	12	88	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	8	12	88	2
Readability for students	8	25	75	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	8	0	100	1
Suggested activities	8	25	75	5
Canadian examples	8	62	38	9
Accounts of the applications of science	8	25	75	5
Appropriateness for slow students	8	75	25	10
Appropriateness for bright students	8	12	88	2
References for further reading	8	25	75	5
Overall impression	8	25	75	

Title: *Initiation aux sciences physiques*
Author(s): U. Haber-Schaim *et al.*, translated and adapted by J.M. Chevrier
Publisher: Institut de recherches psychologiques
Number of users responding to survey: 12
Geographical distribution of respondents: Qué. (11), Man. (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	12	33	67	5
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	12	25	75	2
Readability for students	12	50	50	6
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	12	25	75	2
Suggested activities	12	25	75	2
Canadian examples	12	92	8	8
Accounts of the applications of science	12	67	33	7
Appropriateness for slow students	12	92	8	8
Appropriateness for bright students	12	17	83	1
References for further reading	12	100	0	10
Overall impression	12	17	83	

Title: *Introducing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*
Author(s): M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy
Publisher: Prentice-Hall
Number of users responding to survey: 91
Geographical distribution of respondents: BC (90), YT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	72	6	94	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	71	21	79	3
Readability for students	72	26	74	4
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	72	37	63	6
Suggested activities	71	20	80	2
Canadian examples	71	44	56	7
Accounts of the applications of science	71	70	30	9
Appropriateness for slow students	72	76	24	10
Appropriateness for bright students	72	33	67	5
References for further reading	71	62	38	8
Overall impression	72	14	86	

Title: *Introduction à la biologie: perspective écologique*
Author(s): P. Thibault and R. D'Aoust
Publisher: Editions Hurtubise HMH
Number of users responding to survey: 15
Geographical distribution of respondents: NB (3), Qué. (12)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	15	40	60	4
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	15	40	60	4
Readability for students	15	40	60	4
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	15	27	73	2
Suggested activities	15	60	40	8
Canadian examples	15	33	67	3
Accounts of the applications of science	14	57	43	7
Appropriateness for slow students	15	73	27	9
Appropriateness for bright students	15	20	80	1
References for further reading	14	79	21	10
Overall impression	15	47	53	

Title: *Life Science, A Problem Solving Approach*
Author(s): Joseph L. Carter *et al.*
Publisher: Ginn
Number of users responding to survey: 10
Geographical distribution of respondents: Sask. (1), Alta. (7), NWT (2)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	9	11	89	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	9	22	78	2
Readability for students	9	33	67	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	9	22	78	2
Suggested activities	9	22	78	2
Canadian examples	8	38	62	6
Accounts of the applications of science	9	78	22	8
Appropriateness for slow students	9	89	11	10
Appropriateness for bright students	9	44	56	7
References for further reading	8	88	12	9
Overall impression	9	11	89	

Title: *Methods of Science Today, Physical Science 3-4*
Author(s): George Erwin *et al.*
Publisher: Clarke, Irwin
Number of users responding to survey: 34
Geographical distribution of respondents: Ont. (33), NWT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	30	37	63	4
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	30	50	50	5
Readability for students	30	33	67	2
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	30	27	73	1
Suggested activities	29	34	66	3
Canadian examples	28	54	46	7
Accounts of the applications of science	29	52	48	6
Appropriateness for slow students	31	68	32	9
Appropriateness for bright students	28	61	39	8
References for further reading	29	76	24	10
Overall impression	28	46	54	

Title: *Physical Science: A Problem Solving Approach*
Author(s): Joseph L. Carter *et al.*
Publisher: Ginn
Number of users responding to survey: 10
Geographical distribution of respondents: Ont. (2), Alta. (7), NWT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	9	33	67	3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	9	44	56	6
Readability for students	9	33	67	3
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	9	33	67	3
Suggested activities	9	22	78	1
Canadian examples	9	67	33	9
Accounts of the applications of science	9	22	78	1
Appropriateness for slow students	9	67	33	9
Appropriateness for bright students	9	44	56	6
References for further reading	9	44	56	6
Overall impression	9	33	67	

Title: *Physical Science: An Introductory Study*
Author(s): William Andrews *et al.*
Publisher: Prentice-Hall
Number of users responding to survey: 87
Geographical distribution of respondents: PEI (5), Ont. (32), Man. (2), Sask. (37), Alta. (11)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	77	13	87	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	76	18	82	4
Readability for students	76	17	83	3
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	76	18	82	4
Suggested activities	76	11	89	1
Canadian examples	71	52	48	8
Accounts of the applications of science	76	51	49	7
Appropriateness for slow students	76	75	25	9
Appropriateness for bright students	76	25	75	6
References for further reading	75	75	25	9
Overall impression	76	16	84	

Title: *Scienceways*
Author(s): John MacBean *et al.*
Publisher: Copp Clark Pitman
Number of users responding to survey: 46
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (2), NB (43), NWT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	31	29	71	4
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	32	37	63	5
Readability for students	32	37	63	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	32	19	81	1
Suggested activities	32	22	78	2
Canadian examples	32	41	59	7
Accounts of the applications of science	29	41	59	7
Appropriateness for slow students	32	56	44	10
Appropriateness for bright students	32	22	78	2
References for further reading	28	46	54	9
Overall impression	31	35	65	

Comment: This series is made up of two books, "Green Level" and "Blue Level."

Title: *Searching for Structure*
Author(s): D.H. Pike (General Editor)
Publisher: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
Number of users responding to survey: 93
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld (84), PEI (1), NS (8)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	80	14	86	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	80	15	85	2
Readability for students	80	29	71	6
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	80	18	82	3
Suggested activities	80	24	76	5
Canadian examples	78	32	68	7
Accounts of the applications of science	77	39	61	9
Appropriateness for slow students	79	58	42	10
Appropriateness for bright students	79	23	77	4
References for further reading	78	36	64	8
Overall impression	79	15	85	

Title: *Biological Science: An Ecological Approach* (BSCS Green)
Author(s): Biological Sciences Curriculum Study
Publisher: Rand McNally
Number of users responding to survey: 57
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (3), Ont. (1), Sask. (16), Alta. (2), BC (34), YT (1).

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	50	32	68	3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	48	33	67	4
Readability for students	48	21	79	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	47	23	77	2
Suggested activities	48	50	50	7
Canadian examples	47	94	6	10
Accounts of the applications of science	47	64	36	8
Appropriateness for slow students	49	65	35	9
Appropriateness for bright students	48	48	52	6
References for further reading	46	41	59	5
Overall impression	47	34	66	

Title: *Biological Science: An Inquiry Into Life* (BSCS Yellow)
Author(s): Biological Sciences Curriculum Study
Publisher: Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich, Inc./Longman
Number of users responding to survey: 8
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (1), Ont. (5), Man. (1), Alta. (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	7	14	86	3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	7	14	86	3
Readability for students	7	14	86	3
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	7	0	100	1
Suggested activities	7	43	57	6
Canadian examples	7	86	14	10
Accounts of the applications of science	7	71	29	8
Appropriateness for slow students	7	71	29	8
Appropriateness for bright students	7	0	100	1
References for further reading	7	43	57	6
Overall impression	7	14	86	

Title: *Biological Science: Molecules To Man* (BSCS Blue)
Author(s): Biological Science Curriculum Study
Publisher: Houghton Mifflin
Number of users responding to survey: 12
Geographical distribution of respondents: Qué. (1), Man. (11)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	11	9	91	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	11	9	91	2
Readability for students	11	9	91	2
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	11	9	91	2
Suggested activities	11	36	64	8
Canadian examples	11	82	18	9
Accounts of the applications of science	11	27	73	6
Appropriateness for slow students	11	82	18	9
Appropriateness for bright students	11	0	100	1
References for further reading	11	27	73	6
Overall impression	11	9	91	

Title: *Biology*
Author(s): John W. Kimball *et al.*
Publisher: Addison-Wesley
Number of users responding to survey: 20
Geographical distribution of respondents: Ont. (10), Alta. (10)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	15	7	93	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	15	13	87	4
Readability for students	15	33	67	6
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	15	7	93	2
Suggested activities	14	71	29	8
Canadian examples	13	85	15	9
Accounts of the applications of science	15	53	47	7
Appropriateness for slow students	15	93	7	10
Appropriateness for bright students	15	0	100	1
References for further reading	15	27	73	5
Overall impression	15	20	80	

Title: *Biology: Living Systems*
Author(s): R.F. Oram *et al.*
Publisher: Charles E. Merrill
Number of users responding to survey: 36
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld. (35), Ont. (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	28	7	93	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	28	7	93	1
Readability for students	28	29	71	7
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	28	11	89	3
Suggested activities	28	25	75	6
Canadian examples	28	86	14	9
Accounts of the applications of science	28	54	46	8
Appropriateness for slow students	28	86	14	9
Appropriateness for bright students	28	14	86	4
References for further reading	27	15	85	5
Overall impression	28	11	89	

Title: *Foundations of Biology*
Author(s): W.D. McElroy *et al.*
Publisher: Prentice-Hall Canada
Number of users responding to survey: 34
Geographical distribution of respondents: NB (8), Alta. (1), BC (22), YT (2), NWT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	28	39	61	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	28	46	54	5
Readability for students	28	46	54	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	28	39	61	2
Suggested activities	27	78	22	8
Canadian examples	27	93	7	9
Accounts of the applications of science	28	57	43	7
Appropriateness for slow students	28	93	7	9
Appropriateness for bright students	28	25	75	1
References for further reading	28	43	57	4
Overall impression	28	54	46	

Title: *Modern Biology*
Author(s): J.H. Otto *et al.*
Publisher: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
Number of users responding to survey: 70
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (28), Ont. (4), Sask. (19), Alta. (16), NWT (3)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	63	8	92	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	63	22	78	3
Readability for students	63	19	81	2
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	64	25	75	4
Suggested activities	64	61	39	8
Canadian examples	63	86	14	10
Accounts of the applications of science	63	57	43	7
Appropriateness for slow students	63	68	32	9
Appropriateness for bright students	63	33	67	6
References for further reading	63	29	71	5
Overall impression	63	22	78	

Title: *Understanding Living Things*
Author(s): J. Reimer and W. Wilson
Publisher: D.C. Heath
Number of users responding to survey: 6
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (2), Ont. (4)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	5	80	20	7
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	5	80	20	7
Readability for students	5	60	40	3
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	5	80	20	7
Suggested activities	5	60	40	3
Canadian examples	4	25	75	1
Accounts of the applications of science	5	40	60	2
Appropriateness for slow students	5	80	20	7
Appropriateness for bright students	5	60	40	3
References for further reading	4	75	25	6
Overall impression	5	80	20	

Title: *ALCHEM*
Author(s): Frank Jenkins *et al.*
Publisher: J.M. LeBel
Number of users responding to survey: 14
Geographical distribution of respondents: Alta. (13), BC (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	14	21	79	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	14	21	79	2
Readability for students	14	7	93	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	14	43	57	9
Suggested activities	14	36	64	8
Canadian examples	14	7	93	1
Accounts of the applications of science	14	21	79	2
Appropriateness for slow students	14	50	50	10
Appropriateness for bright students	14	29	71	6
References for further reading	14	29	71	6
Overall impression	14	29	71	

Title: *Chemistry: An Experimental Science*
Author(s): G. Pimentel *et al.*
Publisher: W.H. Freeman
Number of users responding to survey: 8
Geographical distribution of respondents: Qué. (1), Man. (1), Sask. (6)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	7	29	71	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	7	29	71	1
Readability for students	8	75	25	10
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	7	43	67	3
Suggested activities	7	43	67	3
Canadian examples	7	71	29	8
Accounts of the applications of science	6	50	50	6
Appropriateness for slow students	7	71	29	8
Appropriateness for bright students	6	33	67	3
References for further reading	6	67	33	7
Overall impression	6	33	67	

Title: *Chemistry: Experimental Foundations*
Author(s): Robert W. Parry *et al.*
Publisher: Prentice-Hall Canada
Number of users responding to survey: 23
Geographical distribution of respondents: Qué. (1), Ont. (7), Man. (3), Sask. (10), Alta. (2)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	20	0	100	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	20	15	85	3
Readability for students	20	35	65	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	20	20	80	4
Suggested activities	20	40	60	6
Canadian examples	20	95	5	10
Accounts of the applications of science	20	80	20	8
Appropriateness for slow students	20	90	10	9
Appropriateness for bright students	20	10	90	2
References for further reading	20	65	35	7
Overall impression	20	15	85	

Title: *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*
Author(s): Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*
Publisher: D.C. Heath
Number of users responding to survey: 26
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld. (7), NS (1), Qué. (3), Ont. (2), Man. (3), Alta. (10)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	22	18	82	3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	22	18	82	3
Readability for students	22	14	86	2
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	22	18	82	3
Suggested activities	22	36	64	6
Canadian examples	22	91	9	9
Accounts of the applications of science	22	54	46	7
Appropriateness for slow students	22	95	5	10
Appropriateness for bright students	22	9	91	1
References for further reading	22	82	18	8
Overall impression	22	18	82	

Title: *Chemistry Today*
Author(s): R.L. Whitman and E.E. Zinck
Publisher: Prentice-Hall
Number of users responding to survey: 30
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (13), Qué. (3), Ont. (14)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	23	17	83	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	23	17	83	1
Readability for students	23	17	83	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	23	35	65	4
Suggested activities	23	56	44	8
Canadian examples	23	48	52	6
Accounts of the applications of science	23	48	52	6
Appropriateness for slow students	23	65	35	10
Appropriateness for bright students	23	43	57	5
References for further reading	23	61	39	9
Overall impression	23	17	83	

Title: *La chimie: expériences et principes*
Author(s): Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, translated by J. Leclerc
Publisher: Centre Éducatif et Culturel
Number of users responding to survey: 7
Geographical distribution of respondents: Qué. (7)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	7	57	43	5
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	7	43	57	3
Readability for students	7	57	43	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	7	29	71	2
Suggested activities	7	43	57	3
Canadian examples	7	86	14	9
Accounts of the applications of science	7	71	29	7
Appropriateness for slow students	7	100	0	10
Appropriateness for bright students	7	0	100	1
References for further reading	7	71	29	7
Overall impression	7	57	43	

Title: *Éléments de chimie expérimentale*
Author(s): R. Lahaie *et al.*
Publisher: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
Number of users responding to survey: 15
Geographical distribution of respondents: Qué. (14), Ont. (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	15	27	73	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	15	47	53	5
Readability for students	15	40	60	2
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	15	40	60	2
Suggested activities	15	60	40	7
Canadian examples	15	47	53	5
Accounts of the applications of science	15	60	40	7
Appropriateness for slow students	15	73	27	9
Appropriateness for bright students	15	27	73	1
References for further reading	15	87	13	10
Overall impression	15	47	53	

Title: *Foundations of Chemistry*
Author(s): E.R. Toon and G.L. Ellis
Publisher: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
Number of users responding to survey: 30
Geographical distribution of respondents: Ont. (11), Man. (2), BC (15), YT (2)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	22	5	95	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	22	9	91	4
Readability for students	22	5	95	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	22	23	77	6
Suggested activities	22	23	77	6
Canadian examples	22	73	27	9
Accounts of the applications of science	22	14	86	5
Appropriateness for slow students	21	86	14	10
Appropriateness for bright students	22	5	95	1
References for further reading	22	27	73	8
Overall impression	22	5	95	

Title: *Inquiries in Chemistry*
Author(s): A.M. Turner and C.T. Sears, Jr.
Publisher: Allyn & Bacon
Number of users responding to survey: 40
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (1), NB (11), BC (28)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	38	18	82	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	38	45	55	6
Readability for students	37	16	84	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	37	32	68	3
Suggested activities	37	57	43	7
Canadian examples	35	77	23	10
Accounts of the applications of science	35	71	29	8
Appropriateness for slow students	36	72	28	9
Appropriateness for bright students	37	38	62	5
References for further reading	35	37	63	4
Overall impression	37	32	78	

Title: *Interaction of Matter and Energy*
Author(s): N. Abraham *et al.*
Publisher: Rand McNally
Number of users responding to survey: 8
Geographical distribution of respondents: NB (1), Sask. (5), BC (2)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	7	0	100	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	7	29	71	6
Readability for students	7	14	86	5
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	7	0	100	1
Suggested activities	7	0	100	1
Canadian examples	7	100	0	10
Accounts of the applications of science	7	71	29	8
Appropriateness for slow students	7	71	29	8
Appropriateness for bright students	7	0	100	1
References for further reading	7	43	57	7
Overall impression	7	14	86	

Title: *Keys to Chemistry*
Author(s): Elaine Ledbetter and Jay Young
Publisher: Addison-Wesley
Number of users responding to survey: 14
Geographical distribution of respondents: Ont. (2), Man. (2), Alta. (4), BC (4), YT (1), NWT (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	13	31	69	5
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	13	23	77	3
Readability for students	13	8	92	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	13	31	69	5
Suggested activities	13	46	54	7
Canadian examples	13	69	31	10
Accounts of the applications of science	13	46	54	7
Appropriateness for slow students	13	62	38	9
Appropriateness for bright students	12	17	83	2
References for further reading	13	23	77	3
Overall impression	13	38	62	

Title: *Modern Chemistry*
Author(s): J. Metcalfe *et al.*
Publisher: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
Number of users responding to survey: 21
Geographical distribution of respondents: PEI (8), NS (4), NB (1), Sask. (7), Alta. (1)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	16	19	81	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	16	31	69	3
Readability for students	16	44	56	4
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	16	50	50	5
Suggested activities	16	56	44	6
Canadian examples	16	87	13	9
Accounts of the applications of science	16	62	38	7
Appropriateness for slow students	16	87	13	9
Appropriateness for bright students	16	19	81	1
References for further reading	16	62	38	7
Overall impression	16	31	69	

Title: *Fundamentals of Physics*
Author(s): R.W. Heath *et al.*
Publisher: D.C. Heath
Number of users responding to survey: 53
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (3), Qué. (1), Ont. (17), Sask. (13), BC (19)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	45	7	93	4
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	45	4	96	3
Readability for students	45	2	98	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	45	2	98	1
Suggested activities	45	18	82	5
Canadian examples	42	26	74	6
Accounts of the applications of science	43	28	72	7
Appropriateness for slow students	43	40	60	9
Appropriateness for bright students	44	29	71	8
References for further reading	42	74	26	10
Overall impression	45	7	93	

Title: *Matter and Energy*
Author(s): J.H. MacLachlan *et al.*
Publisher: Clarke, Irwin
Number of users responding to survey: 26
Geographical distribution of respondents: Ont. (26)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	15	7	93	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	15	13	87	2
Readability for students	15	20	80	4
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	15	40	60	5
Suggested activities	15	73	27	9
Canadian examples	15	47	53	6
Accounts of the applications of science	15	60	40	7
Appropriateness for slow students	15	87	13	10
Appropriateness for bright students	15	13	87	2
References for further reading	15	67	33	8
Overall impression	15	33	67	

Title: *Physics (PSSC)*
Author(s): U. Haber-Schaim *et al.*
Publisher: D.C. Heath
Number of users responding to survey: 48
Geographical distribution of respondents: NS (1), Qué. (6), Ont. (18), Man. (10), Sask. (6), BC (6)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	41	10	90	2
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	41	20	80	3
Readability for students	41	59	41	7
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	41	20	80	3
Suggested activities	41	41	59	6
Canadian examples	41	98	2	10
Accounts of the applications of science	41	73	27	8
Appropriateness for slow students	41	93	7	9
Appropriateness for bright students	41	5	95	1
References for further reading	41	32	68	5
Overall impression	41	22	78	

Title: *Physics: A Human Endeavour*
Author(s): D. Paul *et al.*
Publisher: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
Number of users responding to survey: 36
Geographical distribution of respondents: Nfld. (15), NS (4), NB (8), Ont. (1), Alta. (8)

Feature	N	I	II	R
		%	%	
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	33	18	82	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	33	30	70	3
Readability for students	33	18	82	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	33	33	67	4
Suggested activities	33	33	67	4
Canadian examples	33	48	52	8
Accounts of the applications of science	33	42	58	6
Appropriateness for slow students	33	67	33	10
Appropriateness for bright students	33	42	58	6
References for further reading	33	61	39	9
Overall impression	33	33	67	

Title: *Physique (PSSC)*
Author(s): U. Haber-Schaim *et al.*, translated and adapted by P. Tougas
Publisher: Centre Éducatif et Culturel
Number of users responding to survey: 8
Geographical distribution of respondents: Qué. (6), Ont. (1), Man. (1)

Feature	N	I %	II %	R
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	6	33	67	4
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	6	17	83	3
Readability for students	6	67	33	7
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	6	0	100	1
Suggested activities	6	50	50	5
Canadian examples	6	83	17	9
Accounts of the applications of science	6	67	33	7
Appropriateness for slow students	6	100	0	10
Appropriateness for bright students	6	0	100	1
References for further reading	6	50	50	5
Overall impression	6	17	83	

Title: *Project Physics*
Author(s): J. Rutherford *et al.*
Publisher: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
Number of users responding to survey: 8
Geographical distribution of respondents: Alta. (6), NWT (2)

Feature	N	I %	II %	R
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	6	17	83	1
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	6	50	50	6
Readability for students	6	17	83	1
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	6	17	83	1
Suggested activities	6	33	67	5
Canadian examples	6	67	33	8
Accounts of the applications of science	6	50	50	6
Appropriateness for slow students	6	83	17	10
Appropriateness for bright students	6	17	83	1
References for further reading	6	67	33	8
Overall impression	6	33	67	

Appendix D – Analytical Schemes Used in Textbook Analysis

A slightly revised version of the document provided for the analysts appears below. It was accompanied by a response sheet on which the information was collected in a standard format.

1. Stated Intentions of Science Textbooks
2. Canadian Context in Science Textbooks
3. Science-Technology-Society Interactions in Science Textbooks
4. Nature of Science (and the History of Science and Technology)
5. Careers
6. Scientific Skills/Processes

Analysis Scheme No. 1

Stated Intentions of Science Textbooks

The purpose of this part of the textbook analysis is to identify and classify the intentions stated by the authors of textbooks. These are normally to be found in the preface, but it is often necessary to look elsewhere. You will, therefore, have to study the first chapter of the textbook, which sometimes contains answers to the question: "Why study science?," a list of learning goals (if one exists), the table of contents and, indeed, any part of the book likely to contain an explicit message from the authors regarding the goals of science teaching that they wish students to attain. You should also examine the teacher's manual.

It should be noted that the absence of a stated goal is no guarantee that the author does not provide opportunities to attain one. However, here we are only interested in those types of intentions that the authors consider sufficiently important to state explicitly.

Once you have identified the stated intentions, they should be classified according to the following eight categories:

1. Science Content
2. Scientific Skills/Processes
3. Science and Society
4. Nature of Science (including the history of science and technology)
5. Personal Growth
6. Science-Related Attitudes
7. Applied Science/Technology
8. Career Opportunities

A number of criteria follow, together with examples that will facilitate the classification.

1. *Science Content*: Include here all goals that are directly related to learning the facts, laws and theories that make up what is commonly called "science content." For example:

> "Its main purpose is to provide you with knowledge about the physical world."[1]
>
> "There are two major aims in studying biology. One aim is to become acquainted with scientific facts and with ideas that are built on them."[2]

It is worth noting that the method of expressing an intention varies from author to author. The intentions may involve the book, the teacher, or the student and are not always phrased in such a way as to identify observable behaviour. Sometimes they are simply phrased as statements.

2. *Scientific Skills/Processes*: Include here goals connected with the intellectual processes promoted by the author as a way of acquiring scientific knowledge. This would include the scientific method, investigation, aptitudes such as creativity, hypothesizing, experimental verification and so on. For example:

> "To acquaint you with the scientific method of inquiry."[3]
>
> "It is hoped that during this course you will develop a more inquiring attitude, and that you will think more clearly. Perhaps you will be able to communicate more positively than to say 'well, like, it sort of went green.' "[4]

3. *Science and Society*: The goals to be listed here include those that mention explicitly the social impact of science and technology. We mean by "social impact," changes affecting the individual and the community in such areas as health, work, communications, lifestyle, the economy, politics and the total environment. For example:

> "The basic aim of this unit is to enable students to understand energy sufficiently for them to make wise decisions about the use of energy in the future and the conservation of energy in the present."[5]
>
> "We have therefore taken the trouble to give examples [. . .] which illustrate the social implications, be they good or bad, of scientific progress."[6]

4. *Nature of Science (including the history of science and technology)*: List here: a) those goals in which the authors express their point of view on what science is; b) the authors' goals regarding the history of science and technology. For example:

> "To help students see physics as the wonderfully many-sided human activity that it really is. This means presenting the subject in historical and cultural perspective."[7]

> "We will see the nature of science by engaging in scientific activity. We will see the nature of chemistry by considering problems which interest chemists."[8]

5. *Personal Growth*: List here intentions related to the student's general development (cognitive, psychomotor and affective). It is often difficult to identify them and they are not always present. For example:

> "This particular science book is designed to give you the opportunity to think clearly and act responsibly in dealing with your environment and your life."[9]
>
> "So children are encouraged to respect the knowledge and opinions of others — scientists and writers, teachers and parents, and also other children."[10]

6. *Science-Related Attitudes*: List here the authors' intentions regarding the attitudes that students should acquire towards science: enthusiasm, respect, caution, curiosity, interest and so on. For example:

> "To develop students' attitudes of curiosity, of wonderment about and involvement with phenomena in their natural environment; to develop an appreciation for the contributions of science to daily living; and to develop the value and inclination towards solving problems in a scientific manner."[11]

7. *Applied Science and Technology*: List here the intentions expressed by the authors regarding a knowledge of technology and of applications of science. If these intentions include social considerations, they should be entered under category 3. For example:

> "Time should also be spent discussing the chemical industry and organic reactions."[12]

8. *Career Opportunities*: List here the intentions expressed by the authors concerning careers in science and technology. For example:

> "To make students aware that many careers are directly related to science and that a knowledge of science is helpful in people's work and in their daily life."[13]

Analysis Scheme No. 2

Canadian Context in Science Textbooks

The goal of this part of the study is to measure the extent to which a Canadian context is present in science textbooks. The initial problem facing us is the definition of what we understand by "Canadian context." As we pointed out in the rationale for the study, the scientific *content* of a textbook represents the sum total of the scientific facts, laws and theories. The *context* is defined as the sum total of all the information that does not form part of the content. The Canadian context is, therefore, that part of the general context that makes reference to Canada in each of the following aspects: physical, historical and sociocultural.

The term "Canadian context" raises the question of nationalism in science teaching. We have no desire to enter into the debate over the universality and unity of science, nor to discuss what constitutes an acceptable quantity of Canadian context. These questions have already been the subject of extended debate and continue to generate heated discussion. Our aim here is to furnish data for these debates and discussions. For the purposes of this analysis, we will use the following definition of the Canadian context in science textbooks: *The body of the information contained in the textbook that is unequivocally related to Canadian circumstances in all forms, and to whatever is unique therein.*

Our preliminary research has revealed that the Canadian context, when it is present, takes a wide variety of forms and cannot be entirely determined from the table of contents or from the index. In that it is generally very unevenly distributed, it is impossible to give a rigorously valid account through an analysis of a random sample of chapters or pages. This analysis must, therefore, consider each page in detail.

The analytical scheme is composed of a series of questions, the answers to which will enable us to:

- determine the degree to which a Canadian context is present;
- quantify passages in which the Canadian context is replaced by a foreign context for no compelling reason.

The degree to which a Canadian context is present will be determined using three dimensions of the context: physical, historical and sociocultural.

1. Physical Dimension: This dimension is composed of all the messages that include a reference to the Canadian geographic environment. These may be illustrations (photographs, drawings or graphics) or phrases such as:

> "In California, for example, is magnetic north east or west of true North? In Québec, on which side of true north is magnetic north? In Florida? In Newfoundland?"[14]

2. Historical Dimension: This dimension involves all the messages concerning the history of scientific or technological activity in Canada. Below are some examples:

> "In 1879, an outstanding Canadian engineer, Sir Sandford Fleming, suggested dividing the earth into time zones."[15]
>
> "The first reactor in operation outside of the U.S. is the ZEE (Zero Energy Experimental Pile) which started up on September 5, 1945 at Chalk River, Ontario."[16]

3. Sociocultural Dimension: The analyst should compile all those messages that bear on the impact of scientific and technological activity on the economic, political, social and cultural aspects of Canadian life. One example:

> "More and more Canadians are buying processed foods because they are easier to prepare. However, processing food can remove vitamins from it. In Canada, we add some vitamins to many processed foods to replace those that are lost during the processing. This is called enriching the foods."[17]

The Foreign Context

In 1973, the Ontario Royal Commission on publishing in Canada concluded as follows:

> "Let it be clear that we would never advocate the artificial incorporation of the Canadian content where this would be irrelevant to the purpose of a book. What we do call for is the presentation of subject matter from a Canadian perspective whenever the alternative is a foreign perspective."[18]

To what extent do science textbooks continue to give preference to a foreign perspective in Canadian schools? In order to answer this question, we must examine those aspects of the context which present a *non-Canadian* point of view when a Canadian point of view would have been more appropriate and possible. Below is an example:

> "And if we wait, what should be done about the serious power shortage that now exists in the Northeastern United States, and that threatens to become a problem for the entire nation?"[19]

Analysis Scheme No. 3

Science-Technology-Society Interactions in Science Textbooks

Most of the ministries and departments of education in Canada believe that one of the aims of the teaching of science is to make students aware of the social implications of science and technology. The following two examples illustrate this.

Aims of the teaching of natural sciences (Québec, elementary level):

> "To enable the child to develop as an independent, creative individual who is called upon to live in a scientific and technological society."[20]

Goals of the chemistry program (Nova Scotia, senior-high level):

> "Students will acquire the basic chemical knowledge in making decisions required of *participating citizens of a technological nation*. They will develop a realistic as opposed to a hostile or fearful attitude to chemistry.
>
> "This will be accomplished through an understanding of the influences of chemistry and chemical technology on our society, our everyday life and our environment. By becoming aware of the potential uses and abuses of chemical knowledge, students will

question the uses to which chemistry and chemical technology are put."[21]

This tendency to give a social perspective to the teaching of science is not unique to Canada. Glen Aikenhead remarks that "the need for a science and engineering teaching program that takes their interactions with society into account. . . has been spotlighted in Canada, Australia, Great Britain and the United States, and at the international level by UNESCO."[22]

This part of the analysis of textbooks is aimed at determining whether the science textbooks used in Canada contain information or pedagogical strategies designed to present scientific and technological activity in a social light.

Identification of STS Interactions in a Textbook

A preliminary study has enabled us to discern two ways in which the social impacts of science and technology are incorporated in science textbooks:

- by structuring the contents of books on the basis of these impacts and using them as a justification for the teaching of science;
- by mentioning the social consequences of science and technology in passing, for example, by examining the questions raised by nuclear power generation during the study of nuclear reactions in chemistry or physics.

Some authors, for many reasons, do not include any social considerations in their textbooks. Regardless of how the authors may choose to incorporate a social context, we shall define STS interaction in a textbook as follows: *The sum total of messages containing information on the social impact of scientific and technological activity and the sum total of the pedagogical strategies (questions, experiments, projects, etc.) designed to make the student aware of this impact.*

Taking as a basis the works of Glen Aikenhead,[23] John Ziman,[24] and Graham Orpwood and Douglas Roberts,[25] we shall classify these messages according to four categories that, in our view, constitute what is essential for STS interaction for the primary and secondary levels.

1. Messages that invite students to use their scientific and technological knowledge for applications of benefit to themselves or their community;
2. Messages that describe the beneficial or detrimental effects of scientific and technological activity on the welfare of society, at the national and international levels;
3. Messages dealing with the ways in which a society exploits scientific and technological knowledge to solve national or international problems;

4. Messages dealing with the ethical and legal aspects of scientific and technological activity.

Here are several examples of messages taken from a sampling of textbooks and classified according to the four categories.

Category 1:

> "City and community planning is one kind of conservation. Have a member of a government planning commission visit your class to explain how community planning aids the conservation of human resources."[26]
>
> "Make up a menu for one day of foods that you like. It should be worth 38 points. You must show it supplies the right amount of energy, carbohydrates, fats, proteins, vitamins, minerals, fibre and water."[27]

Category 2:

> "What about labour-saving household appliances? Do they really make life easier for the upper- and middle-income families who own them? 'Not much,' says the critic, because the work done by such machines was previously done by servants anyway. Of course industrialization and electrification have created some jobs for people with little training. These jobs may be more attractive than work as a servant, but they still do not pay very well. As a result, many low-income families cannot afford more than one major electrical appliance. The one usually purchased by such families is a television set, which, the skeptics say, is not likely to contribute much to improving the quality of life."[28]

Category 3:

> "Humanity faces the problem of overpopulation. Scientists are trying to find new means of solving the problem of overpopulation. They are looking for ways of: producing more food; controlling harmful organisms and diseases; developing new agricultural regions; designing houses to accommodate greater number of individuals."[29]

Category 4:

> "The use and control of nuclear weapons is a vital issue in the world today. Scientists taking part in the development of the bomb were foremost among those insisting that further bomb testing be halted. The result was a moratorium on atmospheric nuclear testing by several countries in 1963."[30]

Finally, the following criteria are added:

- The passages must be topical in character. Any account of STS interaction in the past will be included in the same analysis of the history of science in science textbooks; and
- mere descriptions of the application of science, e.g. "one or more of the hydrogen atoms of ethylene can be replaced by groups such as -F, -C1, $-CH_3$ or $-COOCH_3$. The resulting products are synthetic polymers with such commercial names as Teflon, Saran, Lucite and Plexiglass"[31] will not be taken as messages about STS interaction. The description of the social impact here, for all practical purposes, is nonexistent.

The analyst must identify messages relevant to STS interaction, classify them according to their categories and, on the basis of a line count, measure the percentage of space they occupy within the chapters from which they have been taken. For each category the analyst must seek the following information.

Category 1: This includes

- the kind of activity called for (personal or collective action and in what environment – home, school, community);
- the nature of this activity (direct action, information gathering or reflection);
- the frequency of these activities.

Indicate the number of activities in the following table:

Category 1: Table

	Direct action	Information gathering	Reflection
School			
Home			
Community			

Number of activities suggesting personal action____________________

Number of activities suggesting collective action____________________

Each analyst should select one or two messages they believe to be representative and copy them out.

Category 2: This includes

- the kind of scientific and technological activity that has consequences for society;
- the beneficial or detrimental nature of these consequences, according to the author;
- the presence of a discussion on the beneficial or detrimental nature of these consequences;

- the location of these consequences (national or international point of view).

Enter these items in the following table:

Category 2: Table

Type of consequence	Consequence considered beneficial/ detrimental	Discussion present yes/no	Location national international	% in the chapter (estimate)
1.				
2.				
3.				
4.				
etc.				

Category 3: This includes

- nature of the problems for which science and technology can provide a solution;
- degree of certainty, according to the author, with which this solution can be found;
- context of the problem (national or international).

Enter these items in the following table:

Category 3: Table

Nature of the problem and description of the solution	Degree of certainty absolute/ doubtful	Context national/ international	% in the chapter (estimate)
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
etc.			

Category 4: This includes

- problems in which ethical considerations are evoked; nature of these problems and context;
- problems in which legal considerations are evoked (regulation, etc.); and nature of these problems and context.

Enter these items in the following table:

Category 4: Table

Problems	Character ethical/legal	Context national international	% in the chapter (estimate)
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
etc.			

Analysis Scheme No. 4

Nature of Science (and the History of Science and Technology)

The ways in which the authors of textbooks present the nature of science and the history of scientific and technological activity, as well as the space they devote to the history of the sciences vary considerably. The reasons why the authors of textbooks introduce a certain historical depth into their works are also very different. At all events, passages relating to the history of the sciences and the nature of scientific activity, when present, are the subject of critical comment.

> "A preliminary analysis of the image of the scientist (the genius) and his role in the evolution of scientific knowledge, shows that only a partial picture of the reality is conveyed, one that tends to perpetuate myths. Now, all pedagogical activity of this kind contributes to the student's alienation. He will assume that these scientific 'whizzes' are responsible for the growth of knowledge and will believe that this field is reserved for an élite, in short he will be in awe of the persons and statements of these scientific geniuses.'"[32]
>
> "Significant discrepancies exist between the historical record of science and historical content often included in science textbooks. The consequences of distorted historical content are particularly significant for that majority of students who do not become scientists."[33]

Thomas Russell, the author of the second quotation, commented that "there is an. . . important need for research which studies *the provision actually made by textbooks and by teaching* for students to develop images of science and scientists."[34] This part of the analysis is in part a response to this recommendation. Its aim, in fact, will be to examine the kinds of steps the authors take to inform students about the history of science and the nature of its activities.

Specifically, the analysis must answer the following two questions:

- To what extent is the history of science presented in the textbook and in what form?
- What concept of the nature of science do the authors advance?

1. History of science

Aims: Copy out the authors' intentions (if stated) regarding the inclusion of historical aspects in their textbooks. (Refer to scheme #1)

Scientists (in the text): Using the index, copy down the names of all the scientists mentioned and the page numbers of the textbooks on which the authors discuss them; then answer the following questions.

- What is the total number of scientists mentioned?
- Of these, how many are mentioned only to characterize a law or theory? (For example: "We can therefore write $P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$. This is called Boyle's law." "In 1887, *Heinrich Herz* discovered a phenomenon called the photoelectric effect.")
- Of the total number, how many of the accomplishments of scientists are described in a manner conforming to a traditional concept of the scientific method (observations, hypotheses, experiments, etc.)?
- Of the total number of scientists counted above, how many are described in an historical and social context?
- Of the total number of scientists, how many are mentioned in connection with a research group or an exchange of information between them and their colleagues?
- Classify the scientists by nationality and determine the percentage for each country.
- What percentage of the scientists are women?

Case Studies: A case study in the history of science, according to Klopfer and Watson:

> "involves the critical study of the development of a major scientific concept. [It] not only involves the final result of the scientific inquiry but stresses the scientists who were involved, the information available to them, their search for better facts and explanations, and the intellectual and social climate in which they worked."[35]

The analysis must answer the following questions:

- Does the textbook include case studies in the history of science that involve all the elements pointed out by Klopfer and Watson? Look for a study *critical* in nature about the development of a major scientific concept that mentions the scientists involved and their relationship, the information available to them, *how* they searched for better facts and explanations and the intellectual and social climate in which they worked.
- If so, how many?

- And on what subjects? Select up to three case studies that show a high degree of breadth and quality.
- The "great men" approach and the "case studies" approach have been selected because they most frequently occur in science textbooks. Does the textbook examined present any particular approach to the history of science that seems original? What seems to be conveyed by this approach? Please illustrate.
- Does the textbook reproduce original illustrations or publications associated with the history of science? If yes, how many?

2. The nature of science

- Copy out the definitions of science (or of a particular discipline: physics, biology, etc.) given by the authors.
- Copy out the descriptions of the scientific method (or scientific approach, scientific thought processes, investigation, etc.) given by the authors.
- Illustrate types of information relevant to the nature of science, i.e., material from which students might reasonably be able to deduce, "Science is like this. . ."
- Estimate the quantity of each of such statements *on average* through the book based on random samples of text.

Analysis Scheme No. 5

Careers

To what extent do the textbooks deal with careers in the fields of science and engineering and invite students to consider these fields? This part of the analysis is intended to provide answers to these two questions. Bear in mind that the analysis is descriptive in its intent. The question of determining whether it is appropriate to invite pre-university students to consider scientific careers, like the question of determining whether science textbooks are the most suitable vehicles for conveying such suggestions, will be discussed at a later time.

The analyst must answer the following questions:

- Does the textbook contain anything about careers in science and engineering?
- If yes, make a list of the careers described in the textbooks.
- For each career answer the following questions: What level of education is required for this career? Pre-university, Bachelor's degree, Master's degree, or Doctoral degree? Is it of a multidisciplinary character? Do the authors mention the names of potential employers? Do the authors indicate the personal skills needed for this type of career? If the career in question is illustrated by photographs, how many of them are of men? of women? Is the student explicitly invited to adopt this career?

Analysis Scheme No. 6

Scientific Skills/Processes

Laboratory work provides students with various occasions to develop particular scientific skills and processes through direct interaction with materials. The laboratory manual is the part of the textbook concerned with these activities and contains instructions to be followed by the student in order to carry out experiments. The instructions translate into specific tasks that will be examined in this analysis by using an instrument (the "Laboratory Structure and Task Analysis Inventory") designed by Marlene Fuhrman, Vincent Lunetta, Shimshon Novick and Pinchas Tamir. Since the complete instrument with instructions for its use has been published elsewhere, only the basic categories are reproduced below.

The goal of this part of the analysis consists of sorting out the types of laboratory activities suggested by textbook writers and identifying the types of intended behavioural outcomes of these activities. At a later stage, we will assess the degree of commonality between the scientific skills/processes expected by ministries of education and those intended to be developed through the use of the laboratory workbooks.

Laboratory Structure and Task Analysis Inventory

Organizational Categories

A. Structure
  a.1 High structure
  a.2 Low structure, open
  a.3 Inductive approach
  a.4 Deductive approach

B. Relation to Text
  b.1 Precedes text
  b.2 Follows text
  b.3 Integrated with text

C. Cooperative Mode
  c.1 Students work on a common task and pool results
  c.2 Students work on different tasks and pool results
  c.3 Postlab discussion required

D. Laboratory Simulations
  d.1 Student performs "dry lab" — data given by authors
  d.2 Student performs task that simulates or models phenomena
  d.3 Student performs experiment by gathering data from a secondary source

d.4 Student performs simulated experiment by interacting with a program

Task Categories

1.0 Planning and Design

1.1 Formulates a question or defines problem to be investigated
1.2 Predicts experimental result
1.3 Formulates hypothesis to be tested in this investigation
1.4 Designs observation or measurement procedure
1.5 Designs experiment

2.0 Performance

2.1a Carries out qualitative observation
2.1b Carries out quantitative observation or measurement
2.2 Manipulates apparatus; develops technique
2.3 Records results, describes observation
2.4 Performs numeric calculation
2.5 Interprets, explains or makes a decision about experimental technique
2.6 Works according to own design

3.0 Analysis and Interpretation

3.1a Transforms results into standard form (other than graphs)
3.1b Graphs data
3.2a Determines qualitative relationship
3.2b Determines quantitative relationship
3.3 Determines accuracy of experimental data
3.4 Defines or discusses limitations and/or assumptions that underlie the experiment
3.5 Formulates or proposes a generalization or model
3.6 Explains a relationship
3.7 Formulates new questions or defines problem based upon results of investigation

4.0 Application

4.1 Makes predictions based upon results of this investigation
4.2 Formulates hypothesis based upon results of this investigation
4.3 Applies experimental technique to new problem or variable

Notes

I. Focus of the Study

1. Thomas H.B. Symons, *To Know Ourselves*, Report of the Commission on Canadian Studies, Association of Universities and Colleges of Canada, Ottawa, 1975, volume I, p. 162.

2. *Ibid.*, p. 142.

3. David Suzuki, " 'Science' Should Start with an R," *Maclean's*, 21 January 1980, p. 4.

4. For example, David Suzuki, "The Impact of Science and Technology on Education," Address at the annual convention of the Canadian Education Association, Vancouver, 24 September 1980.

5. Translated from, Jacques Désautels, *École + Science = Échec*, Québec Science Éditeur, Québec, 1980, p. 11.

6. See, for example, National Science Foundation and Department of Education, *Science and Engineering Education for the 1980s and Beyond*, Report to the President, Washington, D.C., 1980.

7. For example, Association for Science Education, *Education Through Science*, Policy Statement, Hatfield, Herts., 1981.

8. UNESCO, International Congress on Science and Technology Education and National Development, Unesco, Paris, 23 November-2 December 1981.

9. For an analysis of the intellectual moves involved, see Martin Rein and Donald A. Schön, "Problem Setting in Policy Research," in *Using Social Research in Public Policy Making*, edited by Carol H. Weiss, Lexington Books, Lexington, Mass., 1977, pp. 235-251.

10. Douglas A. Roberts, "Developing the Concept of 'Curriculum Emphases' in Science Education," *Science Education*, 1982, vol. 60, no. 2, pp. 243-260.

11. Chris Argyris and Donald A. Schön, *Theory in Practice: Increasing Professional Effectiveness*, Jossey-Bass Publishers, San Francisco, 1974.

12. Douglas A. Roberts, *op. cit.*, p. 245.

13. Douglas A. Roberts, "Curriculum Emphases as a Key Area for Decision Making: The Case of School Science," in *Studies of Curriculum Decision Making*, ed. K.A. Leithwood, OISE Press, Toronto, 1982.

14. Douglas A. Roberts and Graham W.F. Orpwood, *Properties of Matter: A Teacher's Guide to Alternative Versions*, OISE Press, Toronto, 1979.

15. Douglas A. Roberts and Graham W.F. Orpwood, "Classroom Events and Curricular Intentions: A Case Study in Science Education," *Canadian Journal of Education*, 1982, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 1-15.

16. Chris Argyris and Donald A. Schön, *op. cit.*, p. 4.

17. Chris Argyris, *Reasoning, Learning, and Action: Individual and Organizational*, Jossey-Bass Publishers, San Francisco, 1982, p. 83.

18. Chris Argyris and Donald A. Schön, *op. cit.*, p. 7.

19. Chris Argyris, *op. cit.*, p. 85.

II. Deliberative Inquiry

1. Much of this section is based directly on Graham W.F. Orpwood, "The Logic of Curriculum Policy Deliberation: An Analytic Study from Science Education," Unpublished doctoral dissertation, University of Toronto, 1981. (ED 211 372)

2. Cf. Leroi B. Daniels, "The Concept of Curriculum," Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Canadian Society for the Study of Education, Halifax, 1981.

3. For example, K.A. Leithwood *et al.*, *Planning Curriculum Change*, OISE Press, Toronto, 1976; see especially chapter 4.

4. Len Berk, Editorial, *Curriculum Inquiry*, 1976, vol. 6, no. 2, pp. 99-100.

5. *Ibid.*, p. 100.

6. This distinction is taken from Ernest R. House, "Technology versus Craft: A Ten Year Perspective on Innovation," *Journal of Curriculum Studies*, 1979, vol. 11, no. 1, p. 11.

7. Aristotle, *The Politics*, VIII, 2, 1337a(33) — 1337b(1).

8. F. Michael Connelly, Florence G. Irvine and Robin J. Enns, "Stakeholders in Curriculum," in *Curriculum Planning for the Classroom*, edited by F.M. Connelly, A.S. Dukacz and F. Quinlan, OISE Press, Toronto, 1980, pp. 44-55.

9. *Ibid.*, p. 44.

10. The deliberative method for attending to curriculum problems is described by Joseph J. Schwab, *The Practical: A Language for Curriculum*, National Education Association, Washington, D.C., 1970, and "The Practical 3: Translation into Curriculum," *School Review*, August 1973, vol. 81, no. 4, pp. 501-522.

11. Graham W.F. Orpwood, "The Ethics of Involvement by Researchers in Curriculum Policymaking," *Journal of Educational Thought*, December 1983, vol. 17, no. 3, pp. 221-229; also William A. Reid, "Schools, Teachers, and Curriculum Change: The Moral Dimension of Theory Building," *Educational Theory*, Fall 1979, vol. 29, no. 4.

12. Other papers in the series are: Glen Aikenhead, *Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching*; Donald George, *An Engineer's View of Science Education*; Hugh Munby, *What is Scientific Thinking?*; Marcel Risi, *Macroscole: A Holistic Approach to Science Teaching*; Douglas Roberts, *Scientific Literacy: Towards Balance in Setting Goals for School Science Programs*.

13. Workshop proceedings published to date are as follows: *Who Turns the Wheel?*, Proceedings of a workshop on the science education of women, edited by Janet Ferguson; *Québec Science Education: Which Directions?*, edited by Jean-Pascal Souque and Paul Dufour.

14. Joseph J. Schwab, *The Practical: A Language for Curriculum*, National Education Association, Washington, D.C., 1970, p. 36.

III. Research for Policy Deliberation

1. Stephen Toulmin, *Human Understanding*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., p. 153.

2. See, for example, several essays in A. Hugh Munby, Graham W.F. Orpwood and Thomas L. Russell, *Seeing Curriculum in a New Light: Essays from Science Education*, OISE Press, Toronto, 1980; also Donald A. Schön, *The Reflective Practitioner: How Professionals Think in Action*, Basic Books, New York, 1983.

3. Freema Elbaz, "The Teacher's Practical Knowledge: A Case Study," Unpublished doctoral dissertation, University of Toronto, 1980.

4. Geoffrey Vickers, *The Art of Judgment: A Study of Policymaking*, Chapman and Hall, London, 1965, p. 39.

5. Robert E. Stake and Jack A. Easley, Jr., *Case Studies in Science Education*, US Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1978.

6. John Olson and Thomas Russell, "Draft Plans for a Series of Case Studies of Canadian Science Education," Unpublished paper prepared for the Science and Education Committee of the Science Council of Canada, October 1980, p. 3.

7. Sam D. Seiber, "The Integration of Fieldwork and Survey Methods," *American Journal of Sociology*, 1973, vol. 78, no. 6, pp. 1335-1359.

IV. Science in the School Curriculum

1. In English, the term "ministry" is actually used only in Ontario and British Columbia; elsewhere in Canada, "department" is the designation for the branch of the provincial or territorial government responsible for education. In this study, however, we use "ministry" as the generic term and "department" or "ministry" (as appropriate) when referring to specific jurisdictions. In French, the term "ministère" is universally applicable.

2. Part of the agreement between the Science Council of Canada and CMEC was that an undertaking by the Science Council would not duplicate studies already conducted by CMEC. The work described in the following CMEC reports has, therefore, not been verified by us: *Secondary Education in Canada: A Student Transfer Guide*, 3rd edition, Council of Ministers of Education, Canada, Toronto, 1981; *Science: A Survey of Provincial Curricula at the Elementary and Secondary Levels*, prepared by Sharon M. Haggerty and E.D. Hobbs for the Curriculum Committee of the Council of Ministers of Education, Canada, Toronto, 1981.

3. "Science," for the purposes of this study, is that subject area so designated by each province or territory (see chapter I for further discussion on this point).

4. In this area, the work of Paul Dufour, research associate at the Science Council, is gratefully acknowledged.

5. The three levels (early, middle and senior) are defined in chapter I.

6. See Graham W.F. Orpwood, "The Logic of Curriculum Policy Deliberation: An Analytic Study from Science Education," Unpublished doctoral dissertation, University of Toronto, 1981, especially chapter 3.

7. For example, Secretary of State, *English Educational Publishing in Canada* and *French Educational Publishing in Canada*, Supply and Services Canada, Ottawa, 1978.

V. The Official Aims and Strategies of Science Education

1. Sharon M. Haggerty and E.D. Hobbs, *Science: A Survey of Provincial Curricula at the Elementary and Secondary Levels*, Council of Ministers of Education, Canada, Toronto, 1981, pp. 24-34.

2. *Ibid.*, p. 9.

3. For example, the eight "dimensions of scientific literacy" of Lawrence L. Gabel, "The Development of a Model to Determine Perceptions of Scientific Literacy," Unpublished doctoral dissertation, Ohio State University, Columbus, Ohio, 1976; also the seven "curriculum emphases" identified by Douglas A. Roberts, "Developing the Concept of 'Curriculum Emphases' in Science Education," *Science Education*, 1982, vol. 60, no. 2, pp. 243-260.

4. Certainly the first two and possibly higher levels also of Bloom's taxonomy of cognitive objectives fall within this category. See Benjamin S. Bloom,

Taxonomy of Educational Objectives: The Classification of Educational Goals, Hardbook 1: Cognitive Domain, David McKay, New York, 1956.

5. Cf. Roberts's "correct explanations" and "solid foundation" emphases (Douglas A. Roberts, "Developing the Concept of 'Curriculum Emphases' in Science Education," *Science Education*, 1982, vol. 60, no. 2, pp. 247-249).

6. For a discussion of the objectives of this program see, for example, Robert M. Gagné, "Elementary Science: A New Scheme of Instruction," *Science*, 1966, no. 151, pp. 49-53. Canadian research in the area of process skills in science education includes Marshall Nay, "A Process Approach to Teaching Science," *Science Education*, 1971, vol. 55, no. 2, pp. 197-207.

7. A.Hugh Munby, *What is Scientific Thinking?*, Discussion paper, Science Council of Canada, Ottawa, 1982.

8. Exceptions include materials published by the SEEDS Foundation (Edmonton) and by OISE Press (Toronto).

9. For example, Graham W.F. Orpwood and Douglas A. Roberts, "Science and Society: Dimensions of Science Education for the 80s," *Orbit*, February 1980, no. 51; also Glen Aikenhead, *Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching*, Science Council of Canada, Ottawa, 1981.

10. Newfoundland Department of Education, *Elementary Science Course Description*, St. John's, Newfoundland, January 1978, p. 3.

11. See A. Hugh Munby, "An Evaluation of Instruments Which Measure Attitudes to Science," in *World Trends in Science Education*, edited by C.P. MacFadden, Atlantic Institute of Education, Halifax, 1980.

12. Donald A. George, *An Engineer's View of Science Education*, Discussion paper, Science Council of Canada, Ottawa, 1981.

13. Frank W. Jenkins *et al.*, *ALCHEM*, J.M. LeBel, Edmonton, 1979.

14. Max Black, "Reasoning with Loose Concepts, in *Margins of Precision: Essays in Logic and Language*, edited by Max Black, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, NY, 1970, pp. 1-13.

15. Haggerty and Hobbs, *op. cit.*, p. 3.

16. This point is argued in detail in Douglas A. Roberts and Graham W.F. Orpwood, "Classroom Events and Curricular Intentions: A Case Study in Science Education," *Canadian Journal of Education*, 1982, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 1-15.

17. Marcel Risi, *Macroscole: A Holistic Approach to Science Teaching*, Science Council of Canada, Ottawa, 1982.

18. A. Hugh Munby, "An Evaluation of Instruments Which Measure Attitudes to Science," in *World Trends in Science Education*, edited by C.P. MacFadden, Atlantic Institute of Education, Halifax, 1980.

VI. Textbooks in Science Education

1. Ontario, Ministry of Education, *Circular 14: Textbooks*, Toronto, 1981, p. 15.

2. Québec, Ministry of Education, *The Schools of Québec, Policy Statement and Plan of Action*, Québec City, 1979, p. 103.

3. Saskatchewan Education, *Science: A Curriculum Guide for Division III*, Regina, 1979, p. 9.

4. Doris W. Ryan, *Ontario Classroom Textbook Survey*, The School Group of the Canadian Book Publishers' Council in cooperation with the Ontario Teachers' Federation, Toronto, 1982, p. 67.

VII. Descriptive Analysis: Aims and Methodology

1. Sharon M. Haggerty and E.D. Hobbs, *Science: A Survey of Provincial Curricula at the Elementary and Secondary Levels*, Council of Ministers of Education, Canada, Toronto, 1981, p. 3.

2. Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, D.C. Heath, Toronto, 1982, p. vii.

3. R.W. Heath and R. R. MacNaughton, *Physical Science: Interaction of Matter and Energy*, D.C. Heath, Toronto, 1976, p. 197.

4. Thomas F. Morrison *et al.*, *Précis de biologie humaine*, translated by André Décarie, Éditions HRW, Montréal, 1977, p. 4 (our translation).

5. *Ibid.*, p. 188, (our translation).

6. O'Connor *et al.*, *op. cit.*, p. 330.

7. Graham W.F. Orpwood, "Canadian Content in School Texts and Changing Goals of Education," *Education Canada*, Spring 1980, vol. 20, no. 1, p. 19.

8. Thomas Russell, "What History of Science, How Much, and Why?" *Science Education*, 1981, vol. 65, no. 1, p. 56.

9. Marlene Fuhrman *et al.*, *The Laboratory Structure and Task Analysis Inventory - LAI: A User's Handbook*, Technical Report 14, University of Iowa Science Education Center, Iowa City, 1978.

VIII. Descriptive Analysis: Results

1. Milo K. Blecha *et al.*, *Exploring Matter and Energy* (Teacher's edition), Doubleday Canada, Toronto, 1978, p. 160.

2. Québec Ministry of Education, Direction du Matériel Didactique, *Grille d'analyse des stéréotypes discriminatoires dans le matériel didactique*, Québec, 1981.

3. School Group, Canadian Book Publishers' Council, *Textbooks are for Everyone*, Toronto, n.d.

4. U. Haber-Schaim *et al.*, *PSSC Physics*, 5th edition, D.C. Heath, Toronto, 1981, p. 128.

5. Marlene Fuhrman *et al.*, *op. cit.*

6. Vincent N. Lunetta and Pinchas Tamir, "Matching Lab Activities with Teaching Goals," *The Science Teacher*, 1979, vol. 46, no. 3, pp. 22-24.

7. Pinchas Tamir and Vincent N. Lunetta, "Inquiry-related Tasks in High School Science Laboratory Handbooks," *Science Education*, 1981, vol. 65, no. 5, pp. 477-484.

8. Marlene Fuhrman, V.N. Lunetta, and S. Novick, "An Analysis of Laboratory Activities in Contemporary Chemistry Curricula," *Journal of Chemical Education*, in press.

9. Vincent N. Lunetta and Pinchas Tamir, "An Analysis of Laboratory Activities in Two Modern Science Curricula: *Project Physics* and *PSSC*," Paper presented at the National Association for Research in Science Teaching, Toronto, 1 April 1978.

10. U. Haber-Schaim *et al.*, *Physique, guide de travaux pratiques*, 2nd edition, Éditions Leméac/Hachette Canada, Montréal, 1970, p. 19 (our translation).

11. M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy, *Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, 2nd edition, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, 1979, p. 2.

12. Thomas H.B. Symons, *op. cit.*, p. 162.

13. James Page, *A Canadian Context for Science Education*, Science Council of Canada, Ottawa, 1979.

14. Charles H. Heimler and J. David Lockard, *Focus on Life Science*, Charles E. Merrill, Toronto, 1977, p. 15.

15. *Ibid.*, p. 460.

16. Biological Sciences Curriculum Study, *Biological Science: An Ecological Approach* (BSCS Green Version), Rand McNally, Chicago, 1978, pp. 46-53.

17. *Ibid.*, pp. 194-195.

18. J.W. Kimball, *Biology*, Addison-Wesley, Toronto, 1978.

19. J.J. Otto and Albert Towle, *Modern Biology*, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, Toronto, 1969, p. 610.

20. *Ibid.*, p. 140.

21. Robert W. Parry *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experimental Foundations*, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, 1975, pp. 228-229.

22. *Ibid.*, p. 493.

23. Paul O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, D.C. Heath, Toronto, 1977, p. 95.

24. Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, *La Chimie: Expériences et principes*, version française par Jacques Leclerc, Centre Éducatif et Culturel, Montréal, 1974, p. 80 (our translation).

25. Jacques Désautels, *École + Science = Échec*, Québec Science Éditeur, 1980, p. 123 (our translation).

26. Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*, *STEM* (Teacher's Guide), Addison-Wesley, Toronto, 1977, p. T4.

27. Charles Désiré *et al.*, *Biologie Humaine*, Centre Éducatif et Culturel, Montréal, 1968, p. 3 (our translation).

28. Heimler and Lockard, *op. cit.*, p. 4.

29. R.L. Whitman and E.E. Zinck, *Chemistry Today*, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, 1976, p. 5.

30. J.H. MacLachlan *et al.*, *Matter and Energy: The Foundations of Modern Physics*, Clarke, Irwin, Toronto, 1977, p. xii.

31. William A. Andrews *et al.*, *Physical Science: An Introductory Study* (Teacher's Guide), Prentice-Hall, Toronto, 1978, p. xi.

32. J.H. MacLachlan *et al.*, *op. cit.*, p. 282.

33. G. Orpwood and D. Roberts, "Curriculum Emphases in Science Education III: The Analysis of Textbooks," *The Crucible*, 1980, vol. 11, no. 3, pp. 36-39.

34. Lance Factor and Robert Kooser, *Value Presuppositions in Science Textbooks: A Critical Bibliography*, Knox College, Galesburg, Illinois, 1981.

35. *Ibid.*, p. 3.

36. Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, D.C. Heath, Toronto, 1981, p. 2.

37. René Lahaie *et al.*, *Éléments de chimie expérimentale*, Éditions HRW, Montréal, 1976, p. 7 (our translation).

38. See, for example, Gaston Bachelard, *La Formation de l'esprit scientifique*, J. Vrin, Paris, 1967; also Jean-Pascal Souque and Jacques Désautels, "La course d'obstacles du savoir," *Québec Science*, 1979, vol. 18, no. 1, pp. 36-39.

39. Paul O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles* (Teachers' guide), D.C. Heath, Toronto, 1977, p. 149.

40. Factor and Kooser, *op. cit.*, p. 4.

41. See, for example, Brent Kilbourn, "World Views and Science Teaching," in *Seeing Curriculum in a New Light*, edited by A.H. Munby, G.W.F. Orpwood and T.L. Russell, OISE Press, Toronto, 1980; Elijah Babihian, "An Aberrated Image of Science in Elementary School Science Textbooks," *School Science and Mathematics*, 1975, vol. 75, no. 15, pp. 457-460.

42. Jack H. Christopher, *Focus on Science: Exploring the Natural World* (Teacher's manual), D.C. Heath, Toronto, 1980, p. 1.

43. Milo K. Blecha *et al.*, *op. cit.*

44. R.R. MacNaughton and R.W. Heath, *op. cit.*, p. 6.

45. Biological Sciences Curriculum Study, *Biological Science: An Ecological Approach* (Teacher's guide), Rand McNally, Chicago, 1980, p. ii.

46. John Kimball, *Biology*, Addison-Wesley, Toronto, 1977.

47. R.L. Whitman and E.E. Zinck, *op. cit.*

48. R. Lahaie *et al.*, *op. cit.* (our translation).

49. E. Ledbetter and J. Young, *Keys to Chemistry*, Addison-Wesley, Toronto, 1977.

50. W. Andrews *et al.*, *Biological Sciences: An Introductory Study*, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, 1980.

51. Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, D.C. Heath, Toronto, 1981, p. iii.

52. O'Connor, *et al.*, *ibid.* E.R. Toon and G.L. Ellis, *Foundations of Chemistry*, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, Toronto, 1973. A.M. Turner and C. T. Sears, *Inquiries in Chemistry*, Allyn & Bacon, Toronto, 1977. Parry *et al.*, *op. cit.* R. Lahaie *et al.*, *op. cit.*

53. See, for example, Decker F. Walker, "Learning Science from Textbooks: Toward a Balanced Assessment of Textbooks in Science Education," in *Research in Science Education: New Questions, New Directions*, edited by James T. Robinson, Center for Educational Research and Evaluation, Boulder, Colorado, 1981.

Appendix D. Analytical Schemes Used in Textbook Analysis

1. William A. Andrews *et al.*, *Physical Science: An Introductory Study*, Prentice-Hall Canada, 1978, p. xiii.

2. Biological Science Curriculum Study, *Biological Science: An Ecological Approach* (BSCS green version), Rand McNally, 1978, p. 1.

3. William A. Andrews *et al.*, *op. cit.*, p. xiii.

4. Ken Ashcroft, *Action Chemistry*, The Book Society of Canada, 1974, p. 1.

5. Manfred Schmid *et al.*, *Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, Teacher's Guide, Prentice-Hall Canada, 1980, p. 1.

6. R. Lahaie *et al.*, *Élements de chimie expérimentale*, Les Éditions HRW Ltée, Montréal, 1976, p. iii (our translation).

7. Dave Courneya and Hugh McDonald, *The Nature of Matter*, D.C. Heath Canada Ltd., 1976, p. 14.

8. Paul O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, D.C. Heath and Co., 1977, p. 1.

9. John MacBean *et al.*, *Scienceways*, Blue Version, Copp Clark Pitman, 1979, p. viii.

10. Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*, *STEM*, Level 5, Teachers' Edition, Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, 1977, p. T-5.

11. Charles H. Heimler and J.D. Lockard, *Focus on Life Science*, Teacher's Annotated Edition, Charles E. Merrill Publishing Co., 1977, p. 17T.

12. Ken Ashcroft, *op. cit.*, p. ix.

13. Milo K. Blecha *et al.*, *Exploring Matter and Energy*, Teacher's Edition, Doubleday Canada Ltd., 1978, p. T-6.

14. Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*, *STEM*, Teachers' Edition, Addison-Wesley, 1977, p. 99.

15. Manfred C. Schmid and Maureen T. Murphy, *Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, Prentice-Hall, 1979, p. 242.

16. Douglas Paul *et al.*, *Physics: A Human Endeavour. The New Physics*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston of Canada, 1977, p. 97.

17. Schmid and Murphy, *op. cit.*, p. 546.

18. *Canadian Publishers and Canadian Publishing*, Royal Commission on Book Publishing, Queen's Printer for Ontario, 1973.

19. R.D. Townsend *et al.*, *Energy, Matter and Change*, Scott, Foresman and Company, 1973, p. 215.

20. Gouvernement du Québec, Direction générale du développement pédagogique, *Programme d'études, Primaire, Sciences de la Nature*, 1980.

21. Nova Scotia Department of Education, *Chemistry 011, 012, 311, 312, A Teaching Guide*, 1977.

22. Glen Aikenhead, *Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching*, Discussion paper, Science Council of Canada, 1981.

23. Glen Aikenhead, *ibid.*

24. John Ziman, *Teaching and Learning About Science and Society*, Cambridge University Press, 1980.

25. Graham W.F. Orpwood and Douglas A. Roberts, "Science and Society: Dimensions of Science Education for the 80s," *Orbit*, February 1980, no. 51.

26. C.H. Heimler and J.D. Lockard, *Focus on Life Science*, Charles E. Merrill, 1977, p. 459.

27. Manfred C. Schmid and Maureen T. Murphy, *Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, Prentice-Hall, 1977, p. 567.

28. James Rutherford *et al.*, *Project Physics*, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1971.

29. Verne N. Rockcastle *et al.*, *STEM*, Level 6, Addison-Wesley, 1977, p. 305.

30. Douglas Paul *et al.*, *Physics: A Human Endeavour*, Holt, Rinehart & Winston of Canada, 1977, p. 96.

31. Paul R. O'Connor *et al.*, *Chemistry: Experiments and Principles*, D.C. Heath, 1977, p. 371.

32. Jacques Désautels, *École + Science = Échec, Québec Science*, Québec Science Éditeur, Sillery, 1980.

33. Thomas L. Russell, "What History of Science, How Much, and Why?," *Science Education*, 1981, vol. 65, no. 1, pp. 51-64.

34. Thomas L. Russell, *ibid.*

35. Leo E. Klopfer and Fletcher G. Watson, "Historical Material and High School Science Teaching," *The Science Teacher*, October 1957, vol. 24, p. 6.

Publications of the Science Council of Canada

Policy Reports

No. 1. **A Space Program for Canada,** July 1967 (SS22-1967/1, $0.75), 31 p.

No. 2. **The Proposal for an Intense Neutron Generator: Initial Assessment and Recommendation,** December 1967 (SS22-1967/2, $0.75), 12 p.

No. 3. **A Major Program of Water Resources Research in Canada,** September 1968 (SS22-1968/3, $0.75), 37 p.

No. 4. **Towards a National Science Policy in Canada,** October 1968 (SS22-1968/4, $1.00), 56 p.

No. 5. **University Research and the Federal Government,** September 1969 (SS22-1969/5, $0.75), 28 p.

No. 6. **A Policy for Scientific and Technical Information Dissemination,** September 1969 (SS22-1969/6, $0.75), 35 p.

No. 7. **Earth Sciences Serving the Nation – Recommendations,** April 1970 (SS22-1970/7, $0.75), 36 p.

No. 8. **Seeing the Forest and the Trees,** October 1970 (SS22-1970/8, $0.75), 22 p.

No. 9. **This Land is Their Land. . . ,** October 1970 (SS22-1970/9, $0.75), 41 p.

No. 10. **Canada, Science and the Oceans,** November 1970 (SS22-1970/10, $0.75), 37 p.

No. 11. **A Canadian STOL Air Transport System – A Major Program,** December 1970 (SS22-1970/11, $0.75), 33 p.

No. 12. **Two Blades of Grass: The Challenge Facing Agriculture,** March 1971 (SS22-1971/12, $1.25), 61 p.

No. 13. **A Trans-Canada Computer Communications Network: Phase 1 of a Major Program on Computers,** August 1971 (SS22-1971/13, $0.75), 41 p.

No. 14. **Cities for Tomorrow: Some Applications of Science and Technology to Urban Development,** September 1971 (SS22-1971/14, $1.25), 67 p.

No. 15. **Innovation in a Cold Climate: The Dilemma of Canadian Manufacturing,** October 1971 (SS22-1971/15, $0.75), 49 p.

No. 16. **It Is Not Too Late – Yet: A look at some pollution problems in Canada. . . ,** June 1972 (SS22-1972/16, $1.00), 52 p.

No. 17. **Lifelines: Some Policies for a Basic Biology in Canada,** August 1972 (SS22-1972/17, $1.00), 73 p.

No. 18. **Policy Objectives for Basic Research in Canada,** September 1972 (SS22-1972/18, $1.00), 75 p.

No. 19. **Natural Resource Policy Issues in Canada,** January 1973 (SS22-1973/19, $1.25), 59 p.

No. 20. **Canada, Science and International Affairs,** April 1973 (SS22-1973/20, $1.25), 66 p.

No. 21. **Strategies of Development for the Canadian Computer Industry,** September 1973 (SS22-1973/21, $1.50), 80 p.

No. 22. **Science for Health Services,** October 1974 (SS22-1974/22, $2.00), 140 p.

No. 23. **Canada's Energy Opportunities,** March 1975 (SS22-1975/23, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 135 p.

No. 24. **Technology Transfer: Government Laboratories to Manufacturing Industry,** December 1975 (SS22-1975/24, Canada: $1.00, other countries: $1.20), 61 p.

No. 25. **Population, Technology and Resources,** July 1976 (SS22-1976/25, Canada: $3.00, other countries: $3.60), 91 p.

No. 26. **Northward Looking: A Strategy and a Science Policy for Northern Development,** August 1977 (SS22-1977/26, Canada: $2.50, other countries: $3.00), 95 p.

No. 27. **Canada as a Conserver Society: Resource Uncertainties and the Need for New Technologies,** September 1977 (SS22-1977/27, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 108 p.

No. 28. **Policies and Poisons: The Containment of Long-term Hazards to Human Health in the Environment and in the Workplace,** October 1977 (SS22-1977/28, Canada: $2.00, other countries: $2.40), 76 p.

No. 29. **Forging the Links: A Technology Policy for Canada,** February 1979 (SS22-1979/29, Canada: $2.25, other countries: $2.70), 72 p.

No. 30. **Roads to Energy Self-Reliance: The Necessary National Demonstrations,** June 1979 (SS22-1979/30, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 200 p.

No. 31. **University Research in Jeopardy: The Threat of Declining Enrolment,** December 1979 (SS22-1979/31, Canada: $2.95, other countries: $3.55), 61 p.

No. 32. **Collaboration for Self-Reliance: Canada's Scientific and Technological Contribution to the Food Supply of Developing Countries,** March 1981 (SS22-1981/32, Canada: $3.95, other countries: $4.75), 112 p.

No. 33. **Tomorrow is Too Late: Planning Now for an Information Society,** April 1982 (SS22-1982/33, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 77 p.

No. 34. **Transportation in a Resource-Conscious Future: Intercity Passenger Travel in Canada,** September 1982 (SS22-1982/34, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 112 p.

No. 35. **Regulating the Regulators: Science, Values and Decisions,** October 1982 (SS22-1982/35, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 106 p.

No. 36. **Science for Every Student: Educating Canadians for Tomorrow's World,** March 1984 (SS22-1984/36E, Canada $5.25, other countries $6.30).

Statements of Council

Supporting Canadian Science: Time for Action, May 1978
Canada's Threatened Forests, March 1983

Statements of Council Committees

Toward a Conserver Society: A Statement of Concern, by the Committee on the Implications of a Conserver Society, 1976, 22 p.

Erosion of the Research Manpower Base in Canada: A Statement of Concern, by the Task Force on Research in Canada, 1976.

Uncertain Prospects: Canadian Manufacturing Industry 1971-1977, by the Industrial Policies Committee, 1977, 55 p.

Communications and Computers: Information and Canadian Society, by an ad hoc committee, 1978, 40 p.

A Scenario for the Implementation of Interactive Computer-Communications Systems in the Home, by the Committee on Computers and Communication, 1979, 40 p.

Multinationals and Industrial Strategy: The Role of World Product Mandates, by the Working Group on Industrial Policies, 1980, 77 p.

Hard Times, Hard Choices: A Statement by the Industrial Policies Committee, 1981, 99 p.

The Science Education of Women in Canada: A Statement of Concern by the Science and Education Committee, 1982.

Reports on Matters Referred by the Minister

Research and Development in Canada, a report of the Ad Hoc Advisory Committee to the Minister of State for Science and Technology, 1979, 32 p.

Public Awareness of Science and Technology in Canada, a staff report to the Minister of State for Science and Technology, 1981, 57 p.

Background Studies

No. 1. **Upper Atmosphere and Space Programs in Canada,** by J.H. Chapman, P.A. Forsyth, P.A. Lapp, G.N. Patterson, February 1967 (SS21-1/1, $2.50), 258 p.

No. 2. **Physics in Canada: Survey and Outlook, by a Study Group of the Canadian Association of Physicists,** headed by D.C. Rose, May 1967 (SS21-1/2, $2.50), 385 p.

No. 3. **Psychology in Canada,** by M.H. Appley and Jean Rickwood, September 1967 (SS21-1/3, $2.50), 131 p.

No. 4. **The Proposal for an Intense Neutron Generator: Scientific and Economic Evaluation,** by a Committee of the Science Council of Canada, December 1967 (SS21-1/4, $2.00), 181 p.

No. 5. **Water Resources Research in Canada,** by J.P. Bruce and D.E.L. Maasland, July 1968 (SS21-1/5, $2.50), 169 p.

No. 6. **Background Studies in Science Policy: Projections of R&D Manpower and Expenditure,** by R.W. Jackson, D.W. Henderson and B. Leung, 1969 (SS21-1/6, $1.25), 85 p.

No. 7. **The Role of the Federal Government in Support of Research in Canadian Universities,** by John B. Macdonald, L.P. Dugal, J.S. Dupré, J.B. Marshall, J.G. Parr, E. Sirluck, and E. Vogt, 1969 (SS21-1/7, $3.75), 361 p.

No. 8. **Scientific and Technical Information in Canada, Part I,** by J.P.I. Tyas, 1969 (SS21-1/8, $1.50), 62 p.
Part II, Chapter 1, Government Departments and Agencies (SS21-1/8-2-1, $1.75), 168 p.
Part II, Chapter 2, Industry (SS21-1/8-2-2, $1.25), 80 p.
Part II, Chapter 3, Universities (SS21-1/8-2-3, $1.75), 115 p.
Part II, Chapter 4, International Organizations and Foreign Countries (SS21-1/8-2-4, $1.00), 63 p.
Part II, Chapter 5, Techniques and Sources (SS21-1/8-2-5, $1.15), 99 p.
Part II, Chapter 6, Libraries (SS21-1/8-2-6, $1.00), 49 p.
Part II, Chapter 7, Economics (SS21-1/8-2-7, $1.00), 63 p.

No. 9. **Chemistry and Chemical Engineering: A Survey of Research and Development in Canada,** by a Study Group of the Chemical Institute of Canada, 1969 (SS21-1/9, $2.50), 102 p.

No. 10. **Agricultural Science in Canada,** by B.N. Smallman, D.A. Chant, D.M. Connor, J.C. Gilson, A.E. Hannah, D.N. Huntley, E. Mercer, M. Shaw, 1970 (SS21-1/10, $2.00), 148 p.

No. 11. **Background to Invention,** by Andrew H. Wilson, 1970 (SS21-1/11, $1.50), 77 p.

No. 12. **Aeronautics – Highway to the Future,** by J.J. Green, 1970 (SS21-1/12, $2.50), 148 p.

No. 13. **Earth Sciences Serving the Nation,** by Roger A. Blais, Charles H. Smith, J.E. Blanchard, J.T. Cawley, D.R. Derry, Y.O. Fortier, G.G.L. Henderson, J.R. Mackay, J.S. Scott, H.O. Seigel, R.B. Toombs, H.D.B. Wilson, 1971 (SS21-1/13, $4.50), 363 p.

No. 14. **Forest Resources in Canada,** by J. Harry, G. Smith and Gilles Lessard, May 1971 (SS21-1/14, $3.50), 204 p.

No. 15. **Scientific Activities in Fisheries and Wildlife Resources,** by D.H. Pimlott, C.J. Kerswill and J.R. Bider, June 1971 (SS21-1/15, $3.50), 191 p.

No. 16. **Ad Mare: Canada Looks to the Sea,** by R.W. Stewart and L.M. Dickie, September 1971 (SS21-1/16, $2.50), 175 p.

No. 17. **A Survey of Canadian Activity in Transportation R&D,** by C.B. Lewis, May 1971 (SS21-1/17, $0.75), 29 p.

No. 18. **From Formalin to Fortran: Basic Biology in Canada,** by P.A. Larkin and W.J.D. Stephen, August 1971 (SS21-1/18, $2.50), 79 p.

No. 19. **Research Councils in the Provinces: A Canadian Resource,** by Andrew H. Wilson, June 1971 (SS21-1/19, $1.50), 115 p.

No. 20. **Prospects for Scientists and Engineers in Canada,** by Frank Kelly, March 1971 (SS21-1/20, $1.00), 61 p.

No. 21. **Basic Research,** by P. Kruus, December 1971 (SS21-1/21, $1.50), 73 p.

No. 22. **The Multinational Firm, Foreign Direct Investment, and Canadian Science Policy,** by Arthur J. Cordell, December 1971 (SS21-1/22, $1.50), 95 p.

No. 23. **Innovation and the Structure of Canadian Industry,** by Pierre L. Bourgault, October 1972 (SS21-1/23, $4.00), 135 p.

No. 24. **Air Quality – Local, Regional and Global Aspects,** by R.E. Munn, October 1972 (SS21-1/24, $0.75), 39 p.

No. 25. **National Engineering, Scientific and Technological Societies of Canada,** by the Management Committee of SCITEC and Prof. Allen S. West, December 1971 (SS21-1/25, $2.50), 131 p.

No. 26. **Governments and Innovation,** by Andrew H. Wilson, April 1973 (SS21-1/26, $3.75), 275 p.

No. 27. **Essays on Aspects of Resource Policy,** by W.D. Bennett, A.D. Chambers, A.R. Thompson, H.R. Eddy, and A.J. Cordell, May 1973 (SS21-1/27, $2.50), 113 p.

No. 28. **Education and Jobs: Career patterns among selected Canadian science graduates with international comparisons,** by A.D. Boyd and A.C. Gross, June 1973 (SS21-1/28, $2.25), 139 p.

No. 29. **Health Care in Canada: A Commentary,** by H. Rocke Robertson, August 1973 (SS21-1/29, $2.75), 173 p.

No. 30. **A Technology Assessment System: A Case Study of East Coast Offshore Petroleum Exploration,** by M. Gibbons and R. Voyer, March 1974 (SS21-1/30, $2.00), 114 p.

No. 31. **Knowledge, Power and Public Policy,** by Peter Aucoin and Richard French, November 1974 (SS21-1/31, $2.00), 95 p.

No. 32. **Technology Transfer in Construction,** by A.D. Boyd and A.H. Wilson, January 1975 (SS21-1/32, $3.50), 163 p.

No. 33. **Energy Conservation,** by F.H. Knelman, July 1975 (SS21-1/33, Canada: $1.75, other countries: $2.10), 169 p.

No. 34. **Northern Development and Technology Assessment Systems: A study of petroleum development programs in the Mackenzie Delta-Beaufort Sea Region and the Arctic Islands,** by Robert F. Keith, David W. Fischer, Colin E. De'Ath, Edward J. Farkas, George R. Francis, and Sally C. Lerner, January 1976 (SS21-1/34, Canada: $3.75, other countries: $4.50), 219 p.

No. 35. **The Role and Function of Government Laboratories and the Transfer of Technology to the Manufacturing Sector,** by A.J. Cordell and J.M. Gilmour, April 1976 (SS21-1/35, Canada: $6.50, other countries: $7.80), 397 p.

No. 36. **The Political Economy of Northern Development,** by K.J. Rea, April 1976 (SS21-1/36, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 251 p.

No. 37. **Mathematical Sciences in Canada,** by Klaus P. Beltzner, A. John Coleman, and Gordon D. Edwards, July 1976 (SS21-1/37, Canada: $6.50, other countries: $7.80), 339 p.

No. 38. **Human Goals and Science Policy,** by R.W. Jackson, October 1976 (SS21-1/38, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 134 p.

No. 39. **Canadian Law and the Control of Exposure to Hazards,** by Robert T. Franson, Alastair R. Lucas, Lorne Giroux, and Patrick Kenniff, October 1977 (SS21-1/39, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 152 p.

No. 40. **Government Regulation of the Occupational and General Environments in the United Kingdom, United States and Sweden,** by Roger Williams, October 1977 (SS21-1/40, Canada: $5.00, other countries: $6.00), 155 p.

No. 41. **Regulatory Processes and Jurisdictional Issues in the Regulation of Hazardous Products in Canada,** by G. Bruce Doern, October 1977 (SS21-1/41, Canada: $5.50, other countries: $6.00), 201 p.

No. 42. **The Strathcona Sound Mining Project: A Case Study of Decision Making,** by Robert B. Gibson, February 1978 (SS21-1/42, Canada: $8.00, other countries: $9.60), 274 p.

No. 43. **The Weakest Link: A Technological Perspective on Canadian Industry Underdevelopment,** by John N.H. Britton and James M. Gilmour, assisted by Mark G. Murphy, October 1978 (SS21-1/43, Canada: $5.00, other countries: $6.00), 216 p.

No. 44. **Canadian Government Participation in International Science and Technology,** by Jocelyn Maynard Ghent, February 1979 (SS21-1/44, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 136 p.

No. 45. **Partnership in Development: Canadian Universities and World Food,** by William E. Tossell, August 1980 (SS21-1/45, Canada: $6.00, other countries: $7.20), 145 p.

No. 46. **The Peripheral Nature of Scientific and Technological Controversy in Federal Policy Formation,** by G. Bruce Doern, July 1981 (SS21-1/46, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 108 p.

No. 47. **Public Inquiries in Canada,** by Liora Salter and Debra Slaco, with the assistance of Karin Konstantynowicz, September 1981 (SS21-1/47, Canada: $7.95, other countries: $9.55), 232 p.

No. 48. **Threshold Firms: Backing Canada's Winners,** by Guy P.F. Steed, July 1982 (SS21-1/48, Canada: $6.95, other countries: $8.35), 173 p.

No. 49. **Governments and Microelectronics: The European Experience,** by Dirk de Vos, March 1983 (SS21-1/49, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 112 p.

No. 50. **The Challenge of Diversity: Industrial Policy in the Canadian Federation,** by Michael Jenkin, July 1983, (SS21-1/50, Canada: $8.95, other countries: $10.75), 214 p.

No. 51. **Partners in Industrial Strategy: The Special Role of the Provincial Research Organizations,** by Donald J. Le Roy and Paul Dufour, November 1983 (SS21-1/51, Canada: $5.50, other countries: $6.60) 146 p.

Occasional Publications

1976

Energy Scenarios for the Future, by Hedlin, Menzies & Associates, 423 p.

Science and the North: An Essay on Aspirations, by Peter Larkin, 8 p.

A Nuclear Dialogue: Proceedings of a Workshop on Issues in Nuclear Power for Canada, 75 p.

1977

An Overview of the Canadian Mercury Problem, by Clarence T. Charlebois, 20 p.

An Overview of the Vinyl Chloride Hazard in Canada, by J. Basuk, 16 p.

Materials Recycling: History, Status, Potential, by F.T. Gerson Limited, 98 p.

University Research Manpower: Concerns and Remedies, Proceedings of a Workshop on the Optimization of Age Distribution in University Research, 19 p.

The Workshop on Optimization of Age Distribution in University Research:
Papers for Discussion, 215 p.
Background Papers, 338 p.

Living with Climatic Change: A Proceedings, 90 p.

Proceedings of the Seminar on Natural Gas from the Arctic by Marine Mode: A Preliminary Assessment, 254 p.

Seminar on a National Transportation System for Optimum Service: Proceedings, 73 p.

1978

A Northern Resource Centre: A First Step Toward a University of the North, by the Committee on Northern Development, 13 p.

An Overview of the Canadian Asbestos Problem, by Clarence T. Charlebois, 20 p.

An Overview of the Oxides of Nitrogren Problem in Canada, by J. Basuk, 48 p.

Federal Funding of Science in Canada: Apparent and Effective Levels, by J. Miedzinski and K.P. Beltzner, 78 p.

Appropriate Scale for Canadian Industry: A Proceedings, 211 p.

Proceedings of the Public Forum on Policies and Poisons, 40 p.

Science Policies in Smaller Industrialized Northern Countries: A Proceedings, 93 p.

1979

A Canadian Context for Science Education, by James E. Page, 52 p.

An Overview of the Ionizing Radiation Hazard in Canada, by J. Basuk, 225 p.

Canadian Food and Agriculture: Sustainability and Self-Reliance: A Discussion Paper, by the Committee on Canada's Scientific and Technological Contribution to World Food Supply, 52 p.

From the Bottom Up – Involvement of Canadian NGOs in Food and Rural Development in the Third World: A Proceedings, 153 p.

Opportunities in Canadian Transportation:
Conference Proceedings: 1, 162 p.
Auto Sub-Conference Proceedings: 2, 136 p.
Bus/Rail Sub-Conference Proceedings: 3, 122 p.
Air Sub-Conference Proceedings: 4, 131 p.

The Politics of an Industrial Strategy: A Proceedings, 115 p.

1980

Food for the Poor: The Role of CIDA in Agricultural, Fisheries and Rural Development, by Suteera Thomson, 194 p.

Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching, by Glen S. Aikenhead, 81 p.

Entropy and the Economic Process: A Proceedings, 107 p.

Opportunities in Canadian Transportation Conference Proceedings: 5, 270 p.

Proceedings of the Seminar on University Research in Jeopardy, 83 p.

Social Issues in Human Genetics – Genetic Screening and Counselling: A Proceedings, 110 p.

The Impact of the Microelectronics Revolution on Work and Working: A Proceedings, 73 p.

1981

An Engineer's View of Science Education, by Donald A. George, 34 p.

The Limits of Consultation: A Debate among Ottawa, the Provinces, and the Private Sector on an Industrial Strategy, by D. Brown, J. Eastman, with I. Robinson, 195 p.

Biotechnology in Canada – Promises and Concerns, 62 p.
Challenge of the Research Complex:
    Proceedings, 116 p.
    Papers, 324 p.
The Adoption of Foreign Technology by Canadian Industry, 152 p.
The Impact of the Microelectronics Revolution on the Canadian Electronics Industry, 109 p.
Policy Issues in Computer-Aided Learning, 51 p.

1982
What is Scientific Thinking? by Hugh Munby, 43 p.
Macroscole, A Holistic Approach to Science Teaching, by M. Risi, 61 p.

Québec Science Education – Which Directions?, 135 p.
Who Turns The Wheel?, 136 p.

1983
Parliamentarians and Science, by Karen Fish, 49 p.
Scientific Literacy: Towards Balance in Setting Goals for School Science Programs, by Douglas A. Roberts, 43 p.
The Conserver Society Revisited, by Ted Schrecker, 50 p.
A Workshop on Artificial Intelligence, 75 p.

Volume
2

Science Council of Canada
Conseil des sciences du Canada

Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Volume II
Statistical Database for Canadian Science Education

Graham W.F. Orpwood
Isme Alam

Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Volume II

Statistical Database for Canadian Science Education

April 1984

Science Council of Canada
100 Metcalfe Street
17th Floor
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5M1

© Minister of Supply and Services, 1984

Available in Canada through
authorized bookstore agents
and other bookstores
or by mail from

Canadian Government Publishing Centre
Supply and Services Canada
Hull, Québec, Canada K1A 0S9

Vous pouvez également
vous procurer la version française,
à l'adresse ci-dessus

Catalogue No. SS21-1/52-2-1984E
ISBN 0-660-11471-2

Price: Canada: $5.50
Other countries: $6.60

Price subject to change without notice.

Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Volume II

Statistical Database for Canadian Science Education

Graham W.F. Orpwood
Isme Alam
with the collaboration of
Jean-Pascal Souque

Graham W.F. Orpwood

Graham Orpwood studied chemistry at Oxford University where he received bachelor's and master's degrees. In 1966, following a year at the University of London, he began a teaching career that included appointments at a secondary school in England and at the St. Lawrence College of Applied Arts and Technology in Kingston, Ontario. He returned to post-graduate studies in 1975, this time at the Ontario Institute for Studies in Education. He received an MA and a PhD from the University of Toronto, and served as a research officer at OISE for a further two years.

In 1980, Dr. Orpwood was appointed as science adviser at the Science Council, where he has acted as project officer of the Science and Education Study. He has coauthored a book, *Seeing Curriculum in a New Light*, and several articles in the field of science education and curriculum theory. His current interests are the methodology of policy research, federal-provincial relations in education and public attitudes to science.

Isme Alam

Isme Alam earned her honours degree in Biology from Carleton University in 1978. She joined the Science Council of Canada in 1979, contributing to a study of innovation in Canadian industry and later to the Science and Education Study. On both studies, she was primarily engaged in developing surveys for the collection of data relevant to policy formation. Her interest in science policy research and statistical analysis has led her to the Science and Technology Division of Statistics Canada, where she is developing techniques for measuring the extent of scientific and technological activity in Canada.

Contents

Foreword 15

Acknowledgements 17

I. Survey Objectives and Methodology 19

Objectives of the Survey 19

Instrument Development 20

- Instrument Review and Pretest 20

Sample Design and Selection 21

- Target Population 21
- Frame 22
- Sampling Procedure 23

Data Collection 24

Data Processing and Analysis 26

- Editing and Coding 26
- Weighting 27

Sampling Error and Data Reliability 27
Overview of the Report 27

II. Science Teachers 30
Demographic Information 30
Educational Background 35
Attitudes Towards Teaching and Teacher Education 42

III. Objectives of Science Teaching 45
Importance of Objectives: Analysis by Teaching Level 46
  Early Years 46
  Middle Years 48
  Senior Years 52
Importance of Objectives: Analysis by Objective 52
  Science Content 53
  Scientific Skills/Processes 54
  Science and Society 54
  Nature of Science 54
  Personal Growth 54
  Science-Related Attitudes 55
  Applied Science/Technology 55
  Career Opportunities 55
Effectiveness of Teaching: Analysis by Teaching Level 56
  Early Years 56
  Middle Years 56
  Senior Years 56

IV. Instructional Contexts of Science Teaching 60
Curriculum Resources 61
Teachers' Backgrounds and Experiences: Inservice Education 67
Students' Abilities and Interests 70

V. Physical, Institutional and Social Contexts of Science Teaching 73
Physical Facilities 73
Institutional Arrangements 76
Supports for Science Teaching 78

VI. Concluding Comments: Questions Raised by the Data 82
Science Teachers 82
  Trends in the Age of Science Teachers 82
  Preservice Teacher Education 83
  Work Experience Outside of Teaching 83
Objectives of Science Teaching 83
  The Number, Variety and Balance of Objectives 83
  Changes in the Objectives of Science Teaching 83
  Assessing the Effectiveness of Science Teaching 84
Instructional Contexts of Science Teaching 84
  Factors Affecting the Effectiveness of Science Teaching 84
  Curriculum Resources 85
  Processes of Curriculum Development 85
  Inservice Education 85
  Students' Interests and Abilities 85
  Science Teaching for Boys and Girls 85

Physical, Institutional and Social Contexts of Science Teaching 86
Physical Facilities and Equipment 86
Institutional Arrangements 86
Leadership in Science Education 86
Views of the Importance of Science 86
Industrial Involvement in Science Education 86

Appendix A: Questionnaire and Response Sheet 87
Appendix B: Sampling, Estimation and Sampling Error Computations 107

Notes 114
Additional References 115
Publications of the Science Council of Canada 116

List of Figures

Figure II.1 – Ages of Teachers 32
Figure II.2 – Length of Teaching Experience 33
Figure II.3 – Teachers' Level of Education by Sex 36
Figure II.4 – Types of Science-Related Employment Experienced by Teachers 41
Figure II.5 – Teachers' Responses to the Question, "If you had a choice, would you avoid teaching science altogether?" 43

Figure III.1 – Teachers' Assessments of the Importance of Objectives 48

Figure V.1 – Facilities for Science Teaching 74
Figure V.2 – The Role of Industry in Relation to Science Education 81

List of Tables

Table I.1 – Distribution of Grades by Province 22
Table I.2 – School and Science Teacher Populations by Province 23
Table I.3 – School and Science Teacher Samples by Province 24
Table I.4 – Number of Schools and Science Teachers Responding in Each Province 25
Table I.5 – Range of Standard Errors by Teaching Level 27
Table I.6 – Population Size and Number of Respondents by Teaching Level 28

Table II.1 – Sex of Teachers 31
Table II.2 – Ages of Teachers 31
Table II.3 – Ages of Teachers by Sex 32
Table II.4 – Length of Teaching Experience 33
Table II.5 – Length of Teaching Experience by Sex 34
Table II.6 – Length of Teaching Experience by School Location 34
Table II.7 – Teachers' Level of Education 36
Table II.8 – Teachers' Level of Education by Sex 36
Table II.9 – Teachers' Level of Education by Length of Teaching Experience 37
Table II.10 – Teachers' Level of Education in Specific Subjects 38
Table II.11 – Teachers' Level of Education in Specific Subjects by Sex 39
Table II.12 – Time Since Last Postsecondary Course in Specific Subjects 40

Table II.13 – Types of Science-Related Employment Experienced by Teachers 41

Table II.14 – Teachers' Assessments of Their Education 42

Table II.15 – Teachers' Responses to the Question, "If you had a choice, would you avoid teaching science altogether?" 43

Table II.16 – Teachers' Responses to the Question, "If you had a choice, would you avoid teaching science altogether?" by Sex 44

Table II.17 – Reasons for Avoiding Science Teaching 44

Table III.1 – Importance of Objectives: Early Years 47

Table III.2 – Importance of Objectives: Middle Years 49

Table III.3 – Importance of Objectives: Senior Years 51

Table III.4 – Categories of Aims and Objectives 53

Table III.5 – Effectiveness of Teaching: Early Years 57

Table III.6 – Effectiveness of Teaching: Middle Years 58

Table III.7 – Effectiveness of Teaching: Senior Years 59

Table IV.1 – Obstacles to the Achievement of Objectives 61

Table IV.2 – Resources for Planning Instruction 63

Table IV.3 – Use of Textbooks by Students 63

Table IV.4 – Teachers' Assessments of Textbooks 64

Table IV.5 – Responsibilities for Curriculum Development 65

Table IV.6 – Teachers' Participation in Curriculum Development 66

Table IV.7 – Effectiveness of Inservice Education 67

Table IV.8 – Teachers' Participation in Inservice Education 68

Table IV.9 – Teachers' Requirements for Inservice Education 68

Table IV.10 – Value of Inservice Education Experiences 69

Table IV.11 – Teachers' Perceptions of the Attitudes of the Majority of their Students Towards Learning Science 70

Table IV.12 – Teachers' Perceptions of their Students' Backgrounds and Abilities to Undertake Present Science Courses 70

Table IV.13 – Teachers' Perceptions of Differences in Attitudes and Abilities (Relating to Science Courses) Between Boys and Girls 71

Table IV.14 – Male and Female Teachers' Perceptions of Attitudes and Abilities of Boys and Girls 71

Table IV.15 – Early-, Middle- and Senior-Years Teachers' Estimates of the Proportion of their Students Participating in Various Science-Related Extracurricular Activities 72

Table V.1 – Facilities for Science Teaching 74

Table V.2 – Equipment and Supplies for Science Teaching 75

Table V.3 – Quality of Facilities and Equipment 75

Table V.4 – Subjects Taught: (1) All Teachers 76

Table V.5 – Subjects Taught: (2) Senior-Years Teachers Compared by Sex 76

Table V.6 – Number of Different Grades and Classes Taught 77

Table V.7 – Class Size 77

Table V.8 – Early-, Middle- and Senior-Years Teachers' Assessments of the Adequacy of Time Allocated to Science at Their Level 77

Table V.9 – Teachers' Assessments of the Type of Leadership Available at School and School-Board Levels 78

Table V.10 – Views of the Importance of Science 79

Table V.11 – Experience of Industrial Involvement in Science Education 80

Table V.12 – Benefits of Industrial Involvement in Science Education 80

Table V.13 – The Role of Industry in Relation to Science Education 80

Foreword

Excellence in science and technology is essential for Canada's successful participation in the information age. Canada's youth, therefore, must have a science education of the highest possible quality. This was among the main conclusions of the Science Council's recently published report, *Science for Every Student: Educating Canadians for Tomorrow's World*.

Science for Every Student is the product of a comprehensive study of science education in Canadian schools begun by Council in 1980. The research program, designed by Council's Science Education Committee in cooperation with every ministry of education and science teachers' association in Canada, was carried out in each province and territory by some 15 researchers. Interim research reports, discussion papers and workshop proceedings formed the basis for a series of nationwide conferences during which parents and students, teachers and administrators, scientists and engineers, and representatives of business and labour discussed future directions for science education. Results from the conferences were then used to develop the conclusions and recommendations of the final report.

To stimulate continuing discussion leading to concrete changes in Canadian science education, and to provide a factual basis for such discussion, the Science Council is now publishing the results of the research as a background study, *Science Education in Canadian Schools*. Background Study 52 concludes, not with its own recommendations, but with questions for further deliberation.

The background study is in three volumes, coordinated by the study's project officers, Dr. Graham Orpwood and Mr. Jean-Pascal Souque. Volume I, *Introduction and Curriculum Analyses*, describes the philosophy and methodology of the study. Volume I also includes an analysis of science textbooks used in Canadian schools. Volume II, *Statistical Database for Canadian Science Education*, comprises the results of a national survey of science teachers. Volume III, *Case Studies of Science Teaching*, has been prepared by professors John Olson and Thomas Russell of Queen's University, Kingston, Ontario, in collaboration with the project officers and a team of researchers from across Canada. This volume reports eight case studies of science teaching in action in Canadian schools. To retain the anonymity of the teachers who allowed their work to be observed, the names of schools and individuals have been changed throughout this volume.

As with all background studies published by the Science Council, this study represents the views of the authors and not necessarily those of Council.

James M. Gilmour
Director of Research
Science Council of Canada

Acknowledgements

This project could not have been undertaken without the help and cooperation of a large number of people. At every stage of the planning and analysis activities, Vicki Rutledge, Allen Gower and Ruth Dibbs of the Federal Statistical Activities Secretariat, Statistics Canada, have been especially helpful and encouraging. Jim Seidle and Michele Vigder of the Education, Science and Culture Division, Statistics Canada, have provided us with key information, often at short notice. The questionnaire was developed with advice from Dr. Robert Kenzie (Department of Measurement, Evaluation and Computer Applications at the Ontario Institute for Studies in Education) and from teachers at the Ottawa Board of Education, the Carleton Board of Education, and the region of Québec City. The conduct of the survey depended in large measure on the cooperation of many individuals at ministries of education, school boards and schools, and on the interest and enthusiasm of the responding teachers. To all of these we are grateful, but particularly to Dr. David Bateson of the Learning Assessment Branch, British Columbia Ministry of Education. Finally, our colleagues at the Science Council have been of continuing support and help, especially Herman Yeh (computing), Jerry Zenchuk (editorial), Leo Fahey (graphics), Nancy Weese and Lise Parks (secretarial).

I. Survey Objectives and Methodology

Objectives of the Survey

A study of science education would scarcely be complete without serious consideration of the views of those most intimately involved in the day-to-day business of science education, namely the teachers of science at elementary and secondary levels. Their perspective is not the only relevant view, of course (as other sections of this report show), but an appreciation of that perspective was crucial to the achievement of two of the overall aims of the study. Both the documentation of the present purposes of science education and the stimulation of deliberation concerning the future required not only that teachers be consulted and their views sought, but also that they become actively involved in the discussion of issues that arose during the study.

This consultation process took several forms; but the most systematic and comprehensive of them was the survey of science teachers, undertaken as one component of the research program and described in detail in this volume. Data from this survey can be combined with data from other components of the research program (analysis of ministry policies, analysis of textbooks and case studies of science teaching) to provide a composite picture of science education in Canada today and to inform the process of deliberating its future directions.

The survey was designed to determine:

- science teachers' beliefs concerning the relative importance of various aims of science education;
- science teachers' perceptions of the effectiveness of their teaching in enabling students to achieve the various aims of science education;
- obstacles to the achievement of the various aims of science education.

Design of the survey involved developing an instrument (a questionnaire), devising an appropriate sampling technique, planning data collection procedures and developing a strategy for processing and analyzing the data.

Instrument Development

Instrument development began in early December 1980 with the construction of a questionnaire item bank based on recent surveys relating to science education in Canada and the United States. Many items were dropped, others were modified, and still others were constructed to meet the information needs suggested by our objectives and by the issues raised in other parts of the study. All potential items were then sorted into topical areas of interest to the study:

- general information (age, sex, etc.)
- aims of science education
- teachers' backgrounds and experience (preservice and inservice)
- curriculum resources (ministry/department guidelines, textbooks, etc.)
- physical facilities and equipment
- institutional arrangements (time allocation, teaching load, etc.)
- students' abilities and interests
- community and professional support

From each topical group, particular items were selected and arranged in a sequence that would appear logical to the prospective respondent. A preliminary version of the questionnaire was drafted, using this process, by May 1981.

Instrument Review and Pretest

A meeting was held with several expert consultants to assess the instrument on the basis of its substance and technical adequacy. As a result of this meeting, the questionnaire was revised as both objectives and items were refined and clarified. Revisions in the questionnaire involved changes in wording, sequence and layout of questions. Some questions that appeared to be obsolete were dropped entirely and others were added as required. In early June 1981, the revised version was circulated to a wider selection of reviewers, including ministry of education science officials and study committee members.

In the June-July period, both English and French versions of the questionnaire were field tested. The English version was tested by 22 elementary and secondary school science teachers employed by the Ottawa and Carleton Boards of Education. The French version was field tested by six elementary and secondary school science teachers in the Québec City area. In both instances teachers were asked to fill out the questionnaire and complete an evaluation form in which they reported the time taken to answer the questions, identified various problems and commented on the questionnaire generally and on specific items. The French field test was followed by a discussion with teachers about the questionnaire.

On the basis of the pretest analysis and comments by the various reviewers, the instrument underwent another round of revision. By mid-August 1981, the final draft of the instrument was completed. (See Appendix A.) A rationale for the questions was included in an introductory letter on the inside cover of the questionnaire, and each section was further explained in a preamble. The questionnaire was designed to be self-administered. Respondents were directed to circle the appropriate answers on a separate response sheet (also included in Appendix A). In this way, 162 separate pieces of information were collected.

The questionnaires and accompanying materials were printed and organized in packages, which were mailed out in October 1981.

Sample Design and Selection

The sample design and selection procedures were developed in collaboration with survey experts at Statistics Canada. Three important aspects of the sample design were:

1. target population (sampled population);
2. frame (list of all members of the population);
3. sampling procedure (unit sampled, sample size and sample selection methods).

Target Population

The survey was designed for "teachers of science in Canadian schools." The definitions below, which are based on the terms of reference of the overall study, identify this population more precisely.

1. "Science" in the context of the survey is taken to cover those areas of the school curriculum defined by ministries of education as science. This definition usually includes the physical, biological and earth sciences but excludes mathematics, computer science, social sciences, economics and vocational or trade subjects. While this definition may appear to be very vague, operationally it is less so because professional educators have, within any given jurisdiction, a clear sense of what is and is not "science."
2. "Teachers" in this context refers to all who taught science as part, or all, of their teaching assignment during the 1981-1982 school year. Included, therefore, are teachers who teach science as part of an integrated curriculum, those who teach science and other subjects, and science specialists.
3. "Canadian schools" refers to publicly supported elementary and secondary schools under the jurisdiction of provincial and

territorial governments. Excluded are private schools and federally administered schools (such as Indian schools).

4. For the purpose of this survey, teachers were divided into three groups according to the grade level at which they taught. These three levels, called "early," "middle" and "senior" years, correspond to the divisions of science curriculum policies in each province and territory; the complete distribution of grades by teaching level is shown in Table I.1.

Table I.1 – Distribution of Grades by Province[a]

Province/Territory	Early Years	Middle Years	Senior Years
Newfoundland	K-6	7-9	10-11[a]
Prince Edward Island	1-6	7-9	10-12
Nova Scotia	K-6	7-9	10-12
New Brunswick	1-6	7-9	10-12
Québec	K-6	7-9	10-11
Ontario	K-6	7-10	11-13
Manitoba	K-6	7-9	10-12
Saskatchewan	K-6	7-9	10-12
Alberta	K-6	7-9	10-12
British Columbia	K-7	8-10	11-12
Northwest Territories	K-6	7-9	10-12
Yukon Territory	K-7	8-10	11-12

[a] At the time of data collection, Newfoundland had not yet implemented its grade 12 program.

Frame

Having defined the population, we were concerned next to find a sampling frame from which teachers of science could be drawn. Such a complete listing of teachers is not available, and we therefore sampled schools for which complete lists were available. The school lists were obtained from the Education Division of Statistics Canada and from the Ministère de l'Éducation, Gouvernement du Québec. They were found to be complete and to include very few extra schools (private schools, for example).

Table I.2 shows the number of schools and science teachers in each province. The figures for schools have been obtained directly from our sampling lists while those for science teachers have been estimated from the responses. (See Appendix B for calculations.)

Table I.2 – School and Science Teacher Populations by Province

Province	Number of Schools	Number of Science Teachers
Newfoundland	671	5 432
Prince Edward Island	67	465
Nova Scotia	599	4 167
New Brunswick	465	2 766
Québec	2 340	17 840
Ontario	4 530	34 074
Manitoba	715	4 369
Saskatchewan	951	4 682
Alberta	1 391	8 527
British Columbia	1 821	15 504
Northwest Territories	70	434
Yukon Territory	24	144
Canada	13 644	98 404

Sampling Procedure

The following procedure was used to select as representative a sample of science teachers as possible:

1. The country was stratified by region[1] and by province (or territory).
2. Within each region, science teacher sample sizes were calculated separately for each teaching level (early, middle and senior) on the basis of estimated population sizes for each level,[2] the desired degree of regional data reliability,[3] the anticipated response rate,[4] design effects[5] and considerations of cost.[6] (See Appendix B.)
3. The regional samples were proportionally allocated to each province or territory within that region while adjusting provincial sample sizes to ensure the desired provincial data reliability.[7]
4. The lists of schools were stratified as follows: (i) by province and territory; (ii) by school level (elementary/secondary);[8] (iii) by type of school location (urban/rural).[9] Using this figure, the number of science teachers was estimated for every school in a given province.[10]
5. Schools were selected systematically from the list until the appropriate number of science teachers for each sample (as calculated in steps 2 and 3) was obtained.
6. All teachers of science in selected schools were potential respondents to the survey.

The sampling procedure described above was used in the case of all provinces except British Columbia, where the Learning Assessment Branch of the Ministry of Education conducted the sample selection (according to our specifications of sample sizes by teaching level, while ensuring adequate regional representation within the province). In the Yukon and Northwest Territories, and at the secondary school level in Prince Edward Island, a *census* of schools was conducted because the number of science teachers in those jurisdictions was too small to warrant sampling. Table I.3 shows the sizes of the resulting samples.

Table I.3 – School and Science Teacher Samples by Province

Province	Number of Schools	Number of Science Teachers
Newfoundland	135	725
Prince Edward Island	31	186
Nova Scotia	79	504
New Brunswick	69	418
Québec	128	774
Ontario	140	887
Manitoba	70	416
Saskatchewan	118	522
Alberta	153	799
British Columbia	210	1 056
Northwest Territories	70	434
Yukon Territory	24	144
Canada	1 227	6 865

Data Collection

Packages of questionnaires and related materials were mailed to principals of selected schools in October 1981. Each package contained a letter from an official of the provincial ministry of education, a letter from the Science Council of Canada, a control form, an instruction sheet, a postage-paid postcard and envelope, and several questionnaires in unsealed envelopes for teachers. The letter from the ministry of education, which was also included in the teachers' envelopes, indicated the ministry's support for the Science Council's study and encouraged both teachers and principals to participate. The letter addressed to the school principal described the survey and the principal's role in it, stressing that participating schools and teachers would not be identified. The instruction sheet outlined the role of the principal in greater detail. Principals were requested: to return the postcard in order to acknowledge receipt of the materials and to inform us if additional questionnaires were required; to forward questionnaires in unsealed envelopes to teachers teaching science; to collect response sheets sealed in envelopes from teachers; to record the number of questionnaires distributed and returned on the control form; and to enclose and return the control form and sealed teacher envelopes in the larger postage-paid envelope provided. Principals were requested to return the response forms by 31 October.

A week after mailing, we began to receive responses from schools. As each package arrived, the date it was received, the school code and the data on the control form were keypunched onto a computer file and also recorded on a hard-copy listing of sample schools. By the end of October, the school response rate was roughly 33 per cent; this figure almost doubled by mid-November. On 26 November, a thank-you/reminder postcard was mailed out to all sample schools in order to increase response rates further. This procedure had little impact, and we decided in January to conduct a follow-up by phone. Approximately 350 schools across the country were phoned, boosting response rates a further 5 to 10 percentage points.

Table I.4 shows the final number of responding schools and teachers in each province. These responses represent an overall response rate for the national sample of 72 per cent (schools) and 61 per cent (teachers). The teacher response rate was computed by multiplying the average teacher response rate within responding schools (approximately 85

Table I.4 – Number of Schools and Science Teachers Responding in Each Province

Province	Number of Schools	Number of Science Teachers
Newfoundland	84	401
Prince Edward Island	22	117
Nova Scotia	63	364
New Brunswick	54	310
Québec	69	320
Ontario	105	567
Manitoba	54	263
Saskatchewan	87	356
Alberta	105	455
British Columbia	182	798
Northwest Territories	44	206
Yukon Territory	10	49
Canada	879 (72%)	4 206 (61%)

per cent as estimated from control form data) by the overall school response rate (72 per cent).

Response rates of various subgroups in the population were examined in order to determine whether or not there is variation among these subgroups. For example, we analyzed response rates for each province by school level (elementary/secondary) and type of school location (urban/rural). Had we found different response rates for the various subgroups, it would have suggested that certain segments of the population were either over or underrepresented in the sample. However, we found few differences in response rates in either case, indicating that the sample is fairly representative in these respects.

Data Processing and Analysis

Upon receipt, each response form was given a two-digit identifying code (in addition to the four-digit school code already on the school package) so that each responding teacher would have a unique identifier for keypunchers and, subsequently, for computer files.

Editing and Coding

Response sheets, consisting mainly of self-coded answers, were inspected for various problems and then edited manually. For instance, it was necessary to resolve multiple responses to items for which only one response was allowed. In such cases, we had to decide whether there was actually adequate information from other questions to assign a particular answer, or whether to consider the multiple response as missing data. Generally, questions with multiple responses were treated as missing information. One question, which concerned the textbook used by students, was coded from a precoded list of textbooks developed from a list of provincially approved texts.

Edited and coded response forms were then ready to be keyed to magnetic tape. Keypunching errors were checked (by a process called "verification") to reduce errors to less than five per cent. In order to correct for several types of errors resulting from keypunching and from problems in response, a thorough machine cleaning of the data was initiated.

Researchers used a computer to scan the data for illegitimate codes that might have been created by keypunching errors. Next, they identified logical inconsistencies and improbabilities (for example, a teacher says he is not currently teaching science and then, in a subsequent question, says he teaches biology). To resolve these problems, researchers scanned the original response forms. This entire process allowed researchers to acquire high quality data by minimizing errors other than sampling errors.

Weighting

The probability that any given teacher would be selected was not uniform across the country. To ensure high quality samples, we sampled a greater *proportion* of teachers from smaller provinces than from larger provinces; we also sampled a greater proportion of secondary school teachers than elementary school teachers. To counteract this imbalance and to adjust for nonresponse, every teacher's responses were weighted to ensure that the resulting national estimates would reflect the true balance of opinions in the population. The method of calculating weights is described in Appendix B.

Sampling Error and Data Reliability

Sampling error is the error resulting from studying a portion, rather than all members, of a population. It is the difference between the population estimates obtained from repeated samples and the true population value, and depends on the size of both population and sample, the variability of the particular characteristic in the population, the design of the sample and the method of estimation. Generally speaking, as the sample size increases the sampling error decreases. The sampling error is usually expressed as the standard error of an estimate. Details of the method used to estimate standard errors can be found in Appendix B.

Our sampling procedure, as outlined in the previous section, attempted to minimize errors due to sampling by selecting the most feasible and efficient design, taking into account the extent of sampling errors anticipated in the data. These errors have been calculated for estimates on the basis of actual data.

Table I.5 presents (as a general guide) the range of standard errors for national estimates by teaching level. In general, errors appear to be quite small. This implies a fairly narrow confidence interval and therefore a relatively high degree of reliability of our national estimates.

Table I.5 – Range of Standard Errors by Teaching Level[a]

	Early	Middle	Senior
Range of Errors	0.01-3.08	0.01-5.30	0.02-2.43

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Overview of the Report

In general, this report is restricted to national data. Estimates for each province are available in separate provincial supplements to the report. In subsequent chapters, we report the estimates by teaching level (early, middle and senior years). For most chapters, a written text summarizing the highlights of the data is provided, followed by the tables to which the summaries refer. In Chapter III, however, the tables appear in the text for the convenience of the reader. The text of each chapter is divided into various topical sections in which data about a particular subject is discussed. Tables follow a similar pattern; a comment is usually provided to summarize the data in each table.

The major tabulating variables used for data in this report are teaching level, school location, sex, age and length of teaching experience. We have reported all estimates as percentages of science teachers responding to various choices for particular questionnaire items.

Population size (as estimated from data) and number of respondents for each teaching level are compared in Table I.6. In general, estimates are based on the number of respondents to the survey as a whole, and the number of teachers responding to each question is therefore not reported in the data tables in subsequent chapters. Figures do not exactly add up to 100 per cent for such tables, as the proportion of teachers not responding, or responding improperly, to individual questions is not reported. However, in tables where two variables are cross-tabulated, numbers of respondents are shown, and figures for such tables do add up to approximately 100 per cent.

Table I.6 – Population Size and Number of Respondents by Teaching Level

	Early	Middle	Senior	Total
Population	78 699	12 132	7 573	98 404
Sample (Respondents)	1 703	1 346	1 157	4 206

Chapter II presents the demographic characteristics of science teachers such as age, sex and length of teaching experience. Chapter II also presents data relating to the professional and academic background of teachers – degrees, number of courses in mathematics, science and education, and time elapsed since a course was taken in those subjects. Data concerning employment in science-related jobs is described in this chapter as well. Finally, data relating to teachers' attitudes towards science teaching and teacher education is presented.

Chapter III is concerned with teachers' views about the aims of science teaching and with their achievement or nonachievement of those aims.

Chapter IV describes the instructional contexts of science teaching – obstacles to the achievement of aims, textbooks and other curriculum resources used, types of inservice experiences and their value to teachers, and students' abilities and interest in science.

Chapter V presents information concerning the physical, institutional and social contexts of science teaching. "Physical context" refers to the availability and quality of physical facilities and equipment. "Institutional context" refers to the time allotted for teaching science, class size and teaching load. The "social context" includes the attitudes of peers, principals, parents and school trustees to science teaching and teachers. The involvement of industry in science education is also examined here.

Chapter VI contains comments about information in previous chapters. It focusses particularly on questions raised by the data.

Finally, the report contains two appendices. Appendix A provides a copy of the instrument and response sheet, and Appendix B contains technical information concerning estimation procedures, standard errors and the reliability of data.

II. Science Teachers

One of the most important parts of the database for those deliberating over curriculum change is that which describes the teachers of science – who they are, the type of background they bring to their work, their attitudes towards teaching, and so on. Since the respondents to this survey questionnaire were all teachers, all the data reported here can contribute to this information. However, some questions were particularly intended to elicit information about the respondents themselves, and Tables II.1 to II.17 summarize these results. The information given here is of three kinds:

- Demographic information (sex, age, length of teaching experience) (Tables II.1-II.6)
- Educational background (including employment other than teaching) (Tables II.7-II.13)
- Attitudes towards teaching and teacher education (Tables II.14-II.17)

With each table of data is a "comment" which highlights the information contained in the table. In addition, some general observations about the results of each section are given below.

Demographic Information

The results of the survey show that science is taught by a teaching force that (above the early-years level) is predominantly male, is largely in the 26 to 45 age range, and is relatively experienced (10 years or more) in teaching.

The early years are dominated by female teachers in a ratio of 3:1. But a comparison of the ages or years of experience of early-years teachers by sex (Tables II.3 and II.5) shows that a change is taking place. Specifically, 47.2 per cent of female early-years teachers have 14 years of experience or more, compared with 34.7 per cent of male early -years teachers. Thirty-one per cent of female teachers have less than 10 years of experience compared with 38.3 per cent of male teachers. These figures suggest that, at this level, a small but definite shift in the balance between sexes is taking place. A corresponding trend in the other direction can be detected at the senior-years level. There, only 10 per cent of male teachers have fewer than five years of experience, compared with 28.1 per cent of female teachers. These figures suggest that the current balance of males to females (8:1) may be changing, albeit slowly. As noted in the comment on Table II.1, there is considerable provincial variation in these particular figures.

A comparison of Tables II.2 and II.4 shows that the ages and lengths of teaching experience of teachers are related. However, Québec teachers tend to be older, on average, than those in other provinces, especially at the early-years level, where [illegible] per cent of Québec teachers are over 35. By contrast, teachers in Newfoundland and in Alberta are relatively younger, especially at the middle years, where 71.1 per cent (in Newfoundland) and 68.0 per cent (in Alberta) are 35 or younger. Male teachers, in general, are slightly older and significantly more experienced than female teachers. Teachers in urban areas also appear to be relatively more experienced than those in rural areas.

Table II.1 – Sex of Teachers[a]

Sex	Early	Middle	Senior
Male	22.1	69.4	88.0
Female	77.1	30.2	11.9

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

These results will probably surprise no one, but it should be noted that provincial data vary significantly. For example, at the early-years level, 10 per cent of Québec teachers are male, compared with 35 per cent of Manitoba teachers.

Table II.2 – Ages of Teachers[a]

Age (years)	Early	Middle	Senior
Under 26	8.7	7.6	3.6
26-35	42.4	48.7	34.9
36-45	32.6	32.1	40.9
46-55	11.5	8.6	15.7
Over 55	3.8	2.5	4.6
Average Age	36	35	39

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

Teachers at the senior-years level are older than those at the early-years level; those at the middle-years level are the youngest of all.

Figure II.1 – Ages of Teachers

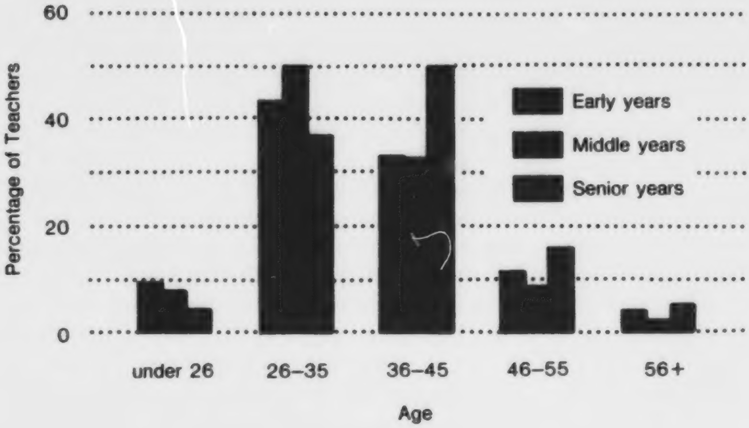


Table II.3 – Ages of Teachers by Sex[a]

	Early		Middle		Senior	
Age	M	F	M	F	M	F
Under 26	3.3	10.3	3.7	16.6	3.4	11.6
26-35	51.6	40.2	53.5	38.1	33.2	41.5
36-45	30.8	33.4	32.2	32.2	43.3	26.8
46-55	9.0	12.3	7.8	10.3	15.3	16.5
Over 55	5.1	3.5	2.6	2.5	4.6	3.3
(N)	(414)	(1 272)	(1 066)	(275)	(1 018)	(139)

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:
Male teachers are somewhat older than female teachers.

Table II.4 – Length of Teaching Experience[a]

Years of Experience	Early	Middle	Senior
1 year	3.1	6.5	2.1
2-5 years	15.2	16.5	9.4
6-9 years	14.4	21.6	15.0
10-13 years	22.7	17.0	22.9
14 years or more	44.0	37.9	50.2

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

More than half of the science teachers have more than 10 years' experience. Teachers at the senior-years level are somewhat more experienced.

Figure II.2 – Length of Teaching Experience

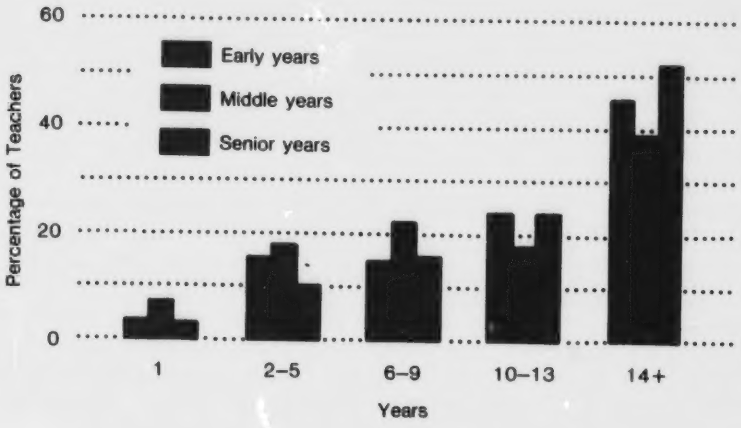


Table II.5 – Length of Teaching Experience by Sex[a]

	Early		Middle		Senior	
Experience	M	F	M	F	M	F
1-5 years	21.1	17.7	17.6	35.9	10.0	28.1
6-9 years	17.2	13.3	23.4	17.4	14.4	17.8
10-13 years	26.8	21.6	16.8	17.9	24.4	13.2
14 years or more	34.7	47.2	42.1	28.6	51.1	40.8
(N)	(411)	(1 272)	(1 065)	(274)	(1 017)	(138)

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

At the middle- and senior-years levels, male teachers are more experienced than female teachers. At the early-years level, female teachers are slightly more experienced.

Table II.6 – Length of Teaching Experience by School Location[a]

	Early		Middle		Senior	
Experience	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural
1-5 years	7.2	18.9	10.9	25.6	9.2	12.9
6-9 years	10.5	13.9	17.8	24.9	13.0	16.0
10-13 years	30.8	20.6	18.2	16.0	22.5	23.7
14 years or more	50.9	46.0	52.3	33.2	55.2	46.7
(N)	(434)	(1 026)	(350)	(617)	(351)	(606)

[a] Figures shown are percentages. No data are included for British Columbia because the urban/rural indicator was unavailable for that province.

Comment:

Teachers in urban areas are somewhat more experienced than those in rural areas.

Educational Background

Tables II.7 to II.13 show evidence of an increasingly highly qualified teaching force (the vast majority of science teachers have university degrees); but, on the other hand, over half the teachers (at all levels) have not taken a university-level course in mathematics or science for over 10 years, if at all.

The trend towards higher academic qualifications for teachers during the past 20 years is demonstrated graphically in Table II.9. At the early-years level, 57.8 per cent of teachers with 14 or more years of experience have university degrees; this proportion increases to 82.8 per cent for teachers with 1 to 5 years of experience (i.e., the younger teachers). However, when teachers' education in specific subjects is examined (Tables II.10, II.11 and II.12), the trend becomes less clearly defined. Over one-third of all middle-years teachers have taken no university-level mathematics or science; over one-half of all early-years teachers have taken no mathematics, and nearly three-quarters of them have taken no science at university level. Even at the senior-years level, where 83.3 per cent of teachers have studied university mathematics and 94.5 per cent have studied university science, it is frequently a long time since those courses were taken. For two-thirds of senior-years teachers, it is more than five years and, for one-third of them, more than 10 years since they last took a university science course. However, a significant number of teachers at all levels appears to have been in touch with the university in the last five years. Over 60 per cent of early-years teachers have taken an education course; one-quarter of these courses have been taken at the graduate level.

But teachers learn about science in more ways than by taking university courses. One of these ways is through employment in areas other than science teaching. Researchers asked about what science-related employment teachers had experienced; the results are reported in Table II.13. It appears that a significant number of teachers, especially in the senior years, have had some science-related experience outside the academic world. Such experience could be important if a teacher is called upon to demonstrate the relationship between scientific knowledge and the practical business of research, development or agriculture.

Table II.7 – Teachers' Level of Education[a]

Level of Education	Early	Middle	Senior
Teacher's college diploma	33.2	10.3	4.1
Bachelor's degree	58.0	70.9	69.1
Postgraduate degree	7.4	18.0	26.0

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

At the middle- and senior-years levels, about 9 out of 10 teachers have a university degree; at the early-years level, two out of three teachers have a university degree.

Table II.8 – Teachers' Level of Education by Sex[a]

	Early		Middle		Senior	
Level of Education	M	F	M	F	M	F
Teacher's college diploma	7.9	41.3	7.0	19.8	4.2	3.7
Bachelor's degree	70.3	55.0	73.7	64.6	68.9	74.0
Postgraduate degree	21.6	3.5	19.1	15.4	26.8	22.1
(N)	(411)	(1 267)	(1 065)	(275)	(1 011)	(139)

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

At the early- and middle-years levels, male teachers tend to be better educated than female teachers, but there is no difference at the senior-years level.

Figure II.3 – Teachers' Level of Education by Sex

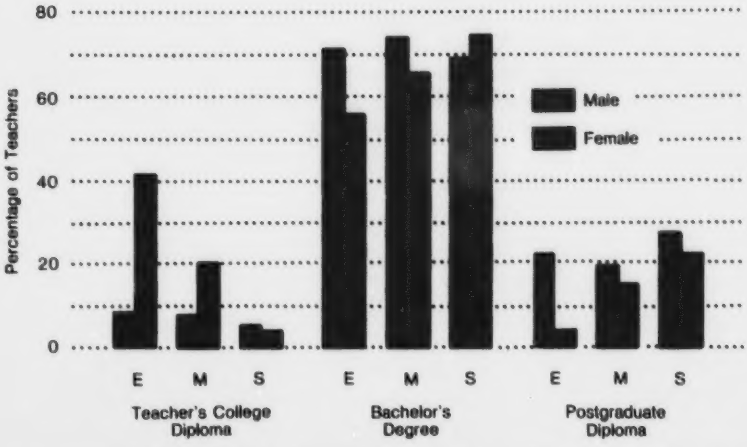


Table II.9 – Teachers' Level of Education by Length of Teaching Experience[a]

Level of Education	1-5 years	6-9 years	10-13 years	14+ years
Early Years				
-Teacher's college diploma	19.1	25.3	35.8	42.0
-Bachelor's degree	75.7	64.9	57.1	49.7
-Postgraduate degree	5.1	9.6	6.9	8.1
-(N)	(435)	(286)	(336)	(618)
Middle Years				
-Teacher's college diploma	2.0	9.6	4.3	20.1
-Bachelor's degree	81.4	82.6	81.5	53.1
-Postgraduate degree	16.5	7.7	14.0	26.7
-(N)	(290)	(296)	(293)	(460)
Senior Years				
-Teacher's college diploma	1.1	1.1	6.2	4.8
-Bachelor's degree	86.9	78.5	59.8	67.1
-Postgraduate degree	11.8	20.2	33.9	27.9
-(N)	(152)	(189)	(258)	(549)

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

Less experienced (i.e., younger) teachers tend to have more education than more experienced teachers.

Table II.10 – Teachers' Level of Education[a]

Level of Education	Mathematics	Pure Science	Applied Science	Education
Early Years				
-No university study	55.2	72.7	85.9	20.5
-Undergraduate level	39.6	23.0	8.5	68.1
-Postgraduate level	1.5	0.4	0.3	7.6
Middle Years				
-No university study	40.4	35.8	65.1	10.0
-Undergraduate level	54.5	59.6	28.8	71.2
-Postgraduate level	1.7	3.6	3.5	17.2
Senior Years				
-No university study	13.7	4.6	61.6	5.3
-Undergraduate level	79.4	78.0	28.7	72.4
-Postgraduate level	3.9	16.5	3.6	20.0

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comments:

1. More than half the early-years teachers have no university-level mathematics.
2. Nearly three-quarters of the early-years teachers have no university-level science.
3. One-third of the teachers at the middle-years level have had no university-level mathematics or science.

Table II.11 – Teachers' Level of Education in Specific Subjects by Sex[a]

	Early		Middle		Senior	
Level of Education	M	F	M	F	M	F
Mathematics						
-No university study	45.8	60.7	32.8	63.0	12.4	24.0
-Undergraduate level	49.6	38.4	64.9	35.8	83.4	73.2
-Postgraduate level	4.4	0.7	2.1	1.0	4.0	2.6
-(N)	(405)	(1 216)	(1 041)	(267)	(995)	(134)
Pure Science						
-No university study	59.7	80.5	27.3	56.4	4.4	5.1
-Undergraduate level	39.5	19.1	68.3	41.4	79.3	77.2
-Postgraduate level	0.6	0.2	4.3	2.1	16.1	17.5
-(N)	(407)	(1 218)	(1 051)	(270)	(1 008)	(139)

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comments:

1. Female teachers tend to be less qualified than male teachers in mathematics and science.
2. There is an 80 per cent chance that a female teacher at the early-years level has not had any science since high school and a 60 per cent chance that she has not had any mathematics since high school.

Table II.12 – Time Since Last Postsecondary Course in Specific Subjects[a]

Time Since Last Course	Mathematics	Pure Science	Applied Science	Education
Early Years				
-Never taken	32.2	45.9	57.2	6.6
-More than 10 years	26.7	26.0	18.4	14.7
-6-10 years	18.1	14.1	11.3	16.1
-1-5 years	19.0	11.2	9.1	46.2
-Currently enrolled	1.8	0.0	0.7	14.6
Middle Years				
-Never taken	31.4	22.9	42.1	5.3
-More than 10 years	26.1	28.1	18.2	15.4
-6-10 years	25.0	28.4	23.3	20.2
-1-5 years	13.6	18.2	13.3	44.6
-Currently enrolled	3.0	1.5	1.3	13.6
Senior Years				
-Never taken	12.6	4.4	46.8	4.5
-More than 10 years	42.3	34.0	23.4	24.3
-6-10 years	24.5	31.7	14.8	28.1
-1-5 years	16.9	27.3	10.8	33.8
-Currently enrolled	1.7	1.6	1.8	7.9

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

Most teachers have not taken a college course in a subject other than education in the last 10 years.

Table II.13 – Types of Science-Related Employment Experienced by Teachers[a]

Type of Employment[b]	Early	Middle	Senior
None	77.2	44.3	37.3
Work in a science library	1.1	1.5	2.1
Routine work in a testing or analysis laboratory	5.1	13.7	24.0
Research or development on methods, products or processes	2.7	10.1	16.0
Basic research in physical, medical, biological or earth sciences	3.8	13.2	19.5
Work in farming, mining or fishing	14.5	26.0	26.1
Other industrial work including engineering	4.2	14.4	20.3

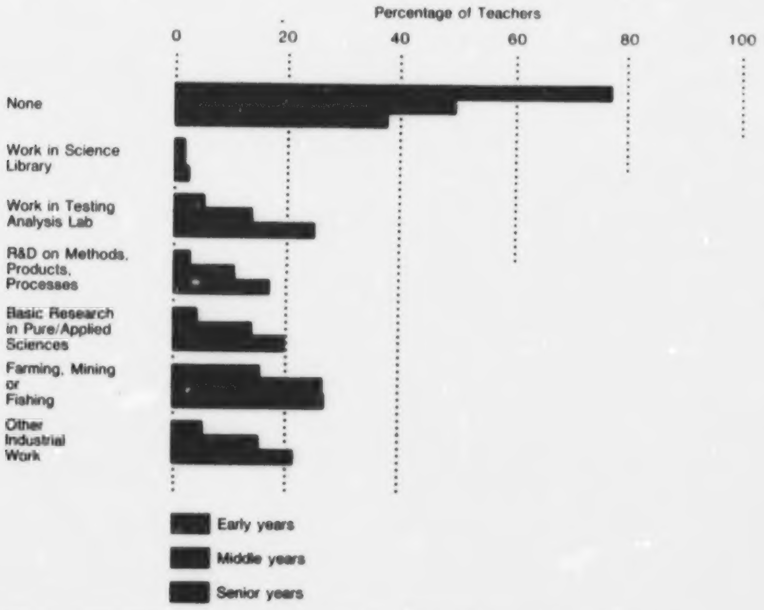
[a] Figures shown are percentages.

[b] Respondents were requested to indicate all categories that applied. The columns do not, therefore, total 100 per cent.

Comment:

More than half of the teachers at middle- and senior-years levels have had some experience of science other than through their school or university courses.

Figure II.4 – Types of Science-Related Employment Experienced by Teachers



Attitudes Towards Teaching and Teacher Education

Teachers' assessments of their education, both in science and as teachers, were sought; Table II.14 presents the results of this inquiry. In general, it appears that teachers' degree of satisfaction with their education in science is roughly proportional to the amount of it they have had. The least satisfied were the early-years teachers and the most satisfied, the senior-years teachers.

Teachers' attitudes to their work were also sought with a question that asked if they would prefer to avoid teaching science altogether. Predictably, the senior-years teachers answered strongly in the negative, but an encouraging number of early-years teachers (63 per cent) did also. It appears that science teachers at all levels are enthusiastic about teaching science. Teachers who wished to avoid teaching science most often cited an inadequate background as the major reason; for example, of early-years teachers giving this as a reason, 83 per cent had had no university science courses.

Table II.14 – Teachers' Assessments of Their Education[a]

Assessment	Early	Middle	Senior
Science Education			
-Very unsatisfactory	17.4	7.4	1.6
-Fairly unsatisfactory	29.2	25.7	7.3
-Fairly satisfactory	43.0	45.4	45.3
-Very satisfactory	8.6	21.1	45.1
Teacher Education			
-Very unsatisfactory	13.1	9.1	8.3
-Fairly unsatisfactory	23.5	21.9	22.2
-Fairly satisfactory	38.4	50.3	45.4
-Very satisfactory	23.1	17.9	23.3

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comments:

1. Senior-years teachers are more satisfied with their education in science than middle- or early-years teachers. Teachers' satisfaction with teacher training is about equal to their satisfaction with the education in science they received.
2. Analysis by level of education shows that teachers who took more science at university are more satisfied with the quality of their education in science than are those who took no university science.
3. Teachers who took more courses in education are not more satisfied with their teacher training than are those who took fewer education courses.

Table II.15 – Teachers' Responses to the Question, "If you had a choice, would you avoid teaching science altogether?"[a]

Response	Early	Middle	Senior
Yes	18.6	9.5	4.5
No	63.1	77.2	87.5
Undecided	9.7	9.6	3.2

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

The majority of science teachers want to teach science; however, at the early-years level, more than 1 in 4 does not, or is undecided.

Figure II.5 – Teachers' Responses to the Question, "If you had a choice, would you avoid teaching science altogether?"

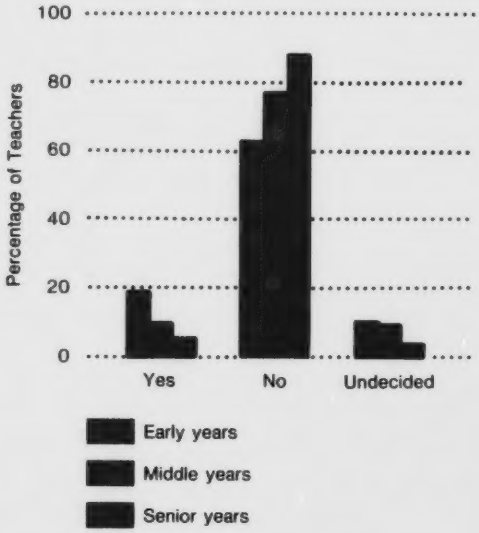


Table II.16 – Teachers' Responses to the Question, "If you had a choice, would you avoid teaching science altogether?" by Sex[a]

	Early		Middle		Senior	
Response	M	F	M	F	M	F
Yes	14.5	21.9	7.6	14.6	5.8	3.8
No	76.8	66.7	84.8	69.5	90.8	92.8
Undecided	8.6	11.2	7.5	15.8	3.3	3.2
(N)	(384)	(1 171)	(1 015)	(257)	(961)	(133)

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

At the early- and middle-years levels, nearly one-third of female teachers would rather not teach science or are undecided.

Table II.17 – Reasons for Avoiding Science Teaching[a]

Reason(s)	Early	Middle	Senior
Lack of Resources	34.7	34.4	25.8
Inadequate Background	54.6	54.8	29.7
Dislike of Science	20.7	27.0	0.0
Working Conditions	23.1	43.4	59.5
Student Attitudes	4.3	17.0	39.4
Other	16.5	21.7	33.4
(N)	(346)	(160)	(53)

[a] Figures shown are percentages. The figures are based only on those respondents who indicated that they would prefer to avoid teaching science. In addition, respondents were requested to indicate all categories that applied; the columns do not therefore total 100 per cent.

Comments:

1. Inadequate background is the reason most often cited by teachers for not wanting to teach science.
2. Of those early-years teachers citing inadequate background as a reason for avoiding science teaching, 83 per cent had not studied pure science at university.

III. Objectives of Science Teaching

The focus of the study (see volume I, chapter I) is on the aims and objectives of science education in Canadian schools. All of the components of the research program were designed to clarify the educational objectives found in the rhetoric and practice of science teaching. Specifically, the survey of science teachers was designed to discover: (1) which objectives teachers consider to be important for the level at which they teach, and (2) which objectives teachers think they are most successful in achieving through their present teaching. This information complements the information obtained about the aims and objectives mandated by ministries of education (volume I, chapter V) and about the educational objectives contained in science textbooks (volume I, chapter VII). It also sheds light, implicitly, on teachers' views of the criticisms of science education expressed in the discussion papers and workshop proceedings, where alternative aims for science education are proposed by the authors.

These three sources – ministry policy documents, textbooks and Council's discussion papers – provided a basis for constructing a list of educational objectives to which teachers were asked to respond. The final instrument (see Appendix A) contained 14 objectives representing all eight categories of aims contained in ministry guidelines and the major themes of the discussion papers (the need for a Canadian context, the need to teach the practical skills of an engineer, the need to take special account of the science education of women, etc.). Respondents were asked to indicate their assessments of the importance of each objective for the level at which they themselves taught. The results therefore correspond to early-years teachers' opinions concerning early-years objectives, middle-years teachers' opinions concerning middle-years objectives and so on.

Respondents were asked to rate each objective as either "of no importance"; "of little importance"; "fairly important"; or "very important." Rather than present a large mass of data corresponding to all of these responses, we have developed, for each level, a rank ordering of objectives based on the sum of those responding "fairly important" and "very important." Consequently, results expressed in this way are less a measure of the importance of each objective (as assessed by teachers), and more a measure of the degree of consensus among teachers that an objective is important. For discussion purposes, however, these two measures can be regarded as identical. The results are analyzed in two ways. First, the assessments are examined by teaching level – early, middle and senior years – to show which objectives are rated as most important for each level. Second, the various assessments of each objective are discussed in order to facilitate comparisons with the analysis of ministry policies and with the claims made by the authors of the discussion papers. The chapter concludes with the results of teachers' assessments of the effectiveness of their teaching in relation to each of the 14 objectives.

Importance of Objectives: Analysis by Teaching Level

Early Years

Table III.1 shows how early-years teachers assess the importance of educational objectives. Examination of these data reveals three distinct clusters with clear discontinuities at 80 per cent and 50 per cent. The first cluster contains three objectives about whose importance there appears to be a very high degree of consensus. These objectives are those involving attitudes, process skills and social skills. The second cluster comprises six objectives about which there is a moderate consensus that they are important. The remaining five objectives are those about which there is least consensus (below 50 per cent) regarding their importance.

In order to probe this notion of consensus somewhat further, we analyzed the assessments of objectives by province, by sex, by length of teaching experience and by school location. In all of these analyses, a significant degree of consensus was found, but with certain interesting differences. The differences in the data presented in Table III.1 are:

1. At the early-years level, significantly more male teachers (76.5 per cent) than female teachers (59.6 per cent) rated the "science content" objective as fairly or very important. Also, the objective "understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed" was rated as fairly or very important by 62.0 per cent of male teachers; only 34.1 per cent of female teachers gave it a similar rating.
2. There is a striking difference in the value attached to "science content" as an objective by teachers having different amounts

of teaching experience. At the early-years level, 59.5 per cent of those with more than 10 years' teaching experience rated "science content" as a fairly or very important objective; only 71.7 per cent of those with less than 10 years' experience so rated it.

3. No significant differences were detected between teachers in urban and rural schools.

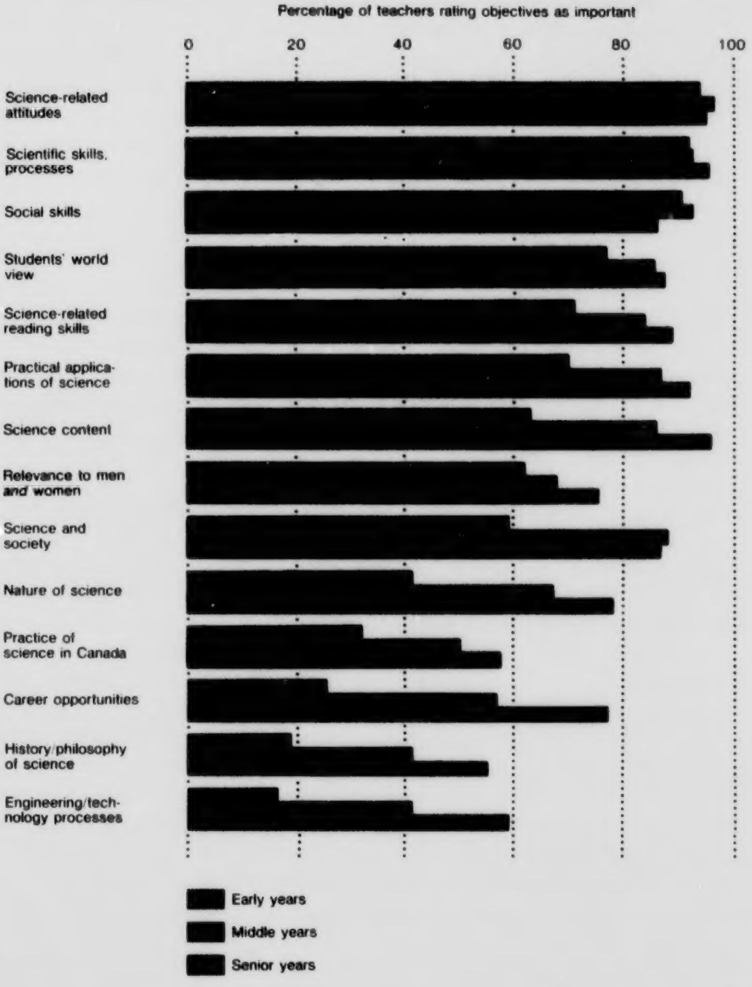
Table III.1 – Importance of Objectives: Early Years[a]

Rank[b]	Objective	Assessment
1.	Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour	94.3
2.	Developing skills and processes of investigation	92.8
3.	Developing social skills	92.2
4.	Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world	77.8
5.	Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials	70.9
6.	Understanding the practical applications of science	70.4
7.	Understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws	63.6
8.	Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women	62.5
9.	Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society	59.6
10.	Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed	40.7
11.	Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada	32.6
12.	Relating science to career opportunities	25.2
13.	Understanding the history and philosophy of science	19.3
14.	Understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity	17.9

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

[b] Objectives are ranked according to the percentage of teachers assessing them to be fairly or very important.

Figure III.1 – Teachers' Assessments of the Importance of Objectives



Middle Years

At the middle-years level, many more objectives are regarded by teachers as important. Again, using the 80 per cent and 50 per cent dividing lines, the 14 objectives can be grouped into three clusters. But in this case the proportions of objectives in each cluster are quite different, as the results in Table III.2 show. In the first group, there are eight objectives about whose importance there is strong agreement. The second group (80 per cent to 50 per cent) contains four objectives, and the third group (below 50 per cent) contains only two. The sequence of objectives in the overall list (with a few exceptions) approximates the order of objectives established by early-years teachers, but what is particularly different is the increased importance attached to every objective.

Table III.2 – Importance of Objectives: Middle Years[a]

Rank[b]	Objective	Assessment
1.	Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour	96.0
2.	Developing skills and processes of investigation	93.4
3.	Developing social skills	92.9
4.	Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society	88.4
5.	Understanding the practical applications of science	87.8
6.	Understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws	86.6
7.	Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world	86.3
8.	Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials	84.2
9.	Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women	68.6
10.	Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed	66.1
11.	Relating science to career opportunities	56.1
12.	Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada	51.4
13.	Understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity	40.8
14.	Understanding the history and philosophy of science	40.7

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

[b] Objectives are ranked according to the percentage of teachers assessing them to be fairly or very important.

The objectives in the first cluster include the three identified by most early-years teachers as important – attitudes, process skills and social skills – but to them are added five more: science and society; practical applications of science; science content; relating science to the student's world view; and the skills of reading and understanding science materials. This broader array of objectives in the first cluster reflects the broader variety of purposes for which science is taught at the middle years. The analysis of ministry guidelines reveals a similar effect. It is interesting to note, moreover, that despite the large array of objectives, there is a high degree of consensus (over 80 per cent of the teachers) concerning the importance of as many as eight objectives.

The shift in importance of specific objectives is discussed in the second part of the analysis. Further analysis of the middle-years consensus by sex, length of teaching experience and school location yields several results of note:

1. There are two objectives which tend to be rated as important more often by female teachers than by male teachers. The objective, "to impart an understanding of the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women" (which implies that these "needs and interests" might be different and that any differences should be taken into account) was assessed as fairly or very important by 78.7 per cent of female teachers but by only 64.3 per cent of male teachers. Also, the objective, "to develop an awareness of the practice of science in Canada" was regarded as important by 67.9 per cent of female teachers but by only 44.3 per cent of male teachers. Concerning other objectives, there was less than a 10 per cent difference between the sexes.
2. Analysis of these results on the basis of the length of respondents' teaching experience shows a number of objectives about whose importance more experienced teachers have opinions which differ from those of teachers with less experience. Again, using a spread of more than 10 per cent as the basis for selection, significantly more teachers with over 10 years' experience rated the following objectives as important than did teachers with less than 10 years' experience:
   - understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws;
   - relating science to career opportunities;
   - understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity;
   - relating science to the student's conception of the world;
   - understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed.

   Of course, because this group of teachers rated no objectives lower than did teachers with less experience, it could be argued that these results indicate a different degree of discrimination on the part of less-experienced teachers. However, the differences exist. They are presented here for discussion purposes.

3. At the middle years, two objectives show a spread greater than 10 per cent when the results are analyzed on the basis of the location of the respondents' school. Urban teachers tend to favour the following two objectives more than do rural teachers:
   - understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women (urban – 71.8 per cent; rural – 61.8 per cent);
   - developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada (urban – 55.5 per cent; rural – 44.5 per cent).

Table III.3 – Importance of Objectives: Senior Years[a]

Rank[b]	Objective	Assessment
1.	Understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws	96.1
2.	Developing skills and processes of investigation	96.1
3.	Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour	95.7
4.	Understanding the practical applications of science	92.2
5.	Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials	89.2
6.	Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society	87.9
7.	Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world	86.9
8.	Developing social skills	86.1
9.	Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed	78.0
10.	Relating science to career opportunities	77.3
11.	Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women	72.8
12.	Understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity	58.9
13.	Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada	58.6
14.	Understanding the history and philosophy of science	54.6

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

[b] Objectives are ranked according to the percentage of teachers assessing them to be fairly or very important.

Senior Years

Table III.3 shows the results of the senior-years teachers' assessments of the importance of objectives. If the two points of division (80 per cent and 50 per cent) are retained, all 14 objectives now fall into the top two clusters. The consensus appears to be that all the objectives are fairly or very important. The consensus is strongest (over 80 per cent) in regard to eight particular objectives, the same set of eight, in fact, that were in the highest cluster at the middle-years level.

1. When these results are analyzed on the basis of the sex of the respondents, female teachers again appear to favour two objectives more than do male teachers:
   - understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of men and women (M - 71.6 per cent; F - 82.3 per cent)
   - developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada (M - 56.8 per cent; F - 72.0 per cent)
2. When analyzed on the basis of length of respondents' teaching experience, only one objective shows a difference greater than 10 per cent:
   - developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada (1 to 5 years' experience – 67.0 per cent; over 14 years' experience – 56.7 per cent)
3. No significant differences could be detected between responses of teachers in urban and rural schools.

In general, there appears to be a uniformly high degree of consensus among senior-years teachers that all the objectives – but particularly the eight in the first cluster – are important. Of course, as was noted earlier, this result can mean two things. On the one hand, teachers may, at the senior years, be striving to reach a very broad array of objectives. On the other hand, senior-years teachers may not be as discriminating as are, for example, early-years teachers concerning what are, in fact, their most important objectives. Consequently, senior-years teachers rate all the objectives as important. In either case, the question is raised as to how many objectives can realistically be pursued. This same question arises from the analysis of ministry of education policy documents (volume I, chapter V). Likewise the trend (noted in volume I, chapter V) towards more objectives as one progresses from early- through middle- to senior-years levels is evident here also. This is hardly surprising in view of the fact that the guidelines documents are usually drafted by committees of teachers (see volume I, chapter IV).

Importance of Objectives: Analysis by Objective

In order to facilitate comparison with the analyses of aims contained in ministry guidelines, the same categories of aims used in that section of the report are used as the basis for the present discussion. Table III.4 compares the 14 objectives used in the survey questionnaire to the eight categories of educational objectives listed by ministries of education (as defined in general terms in volume I, chapter V). The groupings found in Table III.4 may be open to question; they are used here merely as a means of organizing the discussion. No revision of the original set of categories is implied or intended. The results of the teachers' assessments can, however, be compared with the aims endorsed by ministries.

Table III.4 – Categories of Aims and Objectives

Category of Aims	Survey Objective(s)
Science Content	Understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws
Scientific Skills/Processes	Developing skills and processes of investigation
Science and Society	Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society
	Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada
Nature of Science	Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed
	Understanding the history and philosophy of science
Personal Growth	Developing social skills
	Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials
	Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women
	Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world
Science-Related Attitudes	Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour
Applied Science/Technology	Understanding the practical applications of science
	Understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity
Career Opportunities	Relating science to career opportunities

Science Content

The learning of science content is of central importance as an educational objective at the senior-years level, both in the guidelines and in teachers' assessments. At the middle-years level, it is one of the three aims found in every guideline, and it is endorsed by 86.6 per cent of teachers as being of major importance. As was mentioned earlier, all early-years guidelines specify "learning of content" as an aim, but they also point out that this is not the central aim of the program. Teachers clearly share this view; only 63.6 per cent of early-years teachers assessed this objective as fairly or very important. Overall, this objective is evidently not controversial, although the question concerning the desirable balance between teaching content and achieving other aims remains unresolved.

Scientific Skills/Processes

The development of scientific skills is endorsed as an objective by all ministry documents at early- and middle-years levels (as well as by most documents at the senior-years level) and by teachers at all three levels. Aims of this type are uncontroversial, although questions about which skills should be taught at which levels continue to be asked.

Science and Society

One of these objectives – understanding the role and significance of science in modern society – is regarded as very important at both middle-years (88.4 per cent) and senior-years (87.9 per cent) levels. However, the other – developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada – is rated uniformly low at all three levels, ranking 11/14 at the early-years level, 12/14 at the middle-years level, and 13/14 at the senior-years level. These ratings parallel those made implicitly in ministry guidelines. There appears to be an increasing awareness among science educators (especially at the middle years) of the need to teach students about the relationship between science and society, but there is no great concern that this relationship be discussed with reference to Canadian society in particular. The concerns of Thomas Symons and James Page, that science is not portrayed as part of the cultural fabric of Canadian society, would appear to be well founded. The analysis of textbooks (see volume I, chapter VII) tends to confirm this observation.

Nature of Science

These objectives were amongst those regarded as very important during the curriculum reform movement of the 1960s. However, teachers found that only the brightest students could achieve them. The relatively low ratings given to them in this survey attest to their declining popularity. At the senior years, where most guidelines still contain objectives of this type, teachers ranked them 9/14 and 14/14. At other levels, these objectives were assigned even less importance, both in the guidelines and by teachers.

Personal Growth

As explained earlier, this category of objectives is rather broad and diffuse. It involves the development of characteristics or qualities – such as creativity, a sense of responsibility, cooperation – whose relevance or application goes beyond the field of science, being more closely related to the broader goals of education. As Table III.4 shows, this category includes four rather diverse objectives that do not readily fit elsewhere. At the early level, the development of social skills and reading skills is (predictably) important to both ministries of education and to teachers. These objectives become progressively less important at higher levels. (Although the reading and understanding of science-related materials is stressed by senior-years teachers, we assume that their emphasis is less on basic reading skills and more on the need for understanding science-related materials.) The objective implying possible differences among girls and boys in relation to science education has already been discussed in connection with the analysis of responses on the basis of sex. Its relatively low ranking at all levels perhaps reflects a relatively low level of awareness among teachers about the need to encourage girls to study science. Its total absence from ministry guidelines, as noted earlier, tends to confirm this hypothesis. Finally, the objective, "to relate scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world," touches on students' readiness to accept science as a way of understanding the world. Implicit in the objective is the basis for dealing with controversial moral or religious issues such as creation and evolution. Teachers at the early-years level rank this objective high (4/14); at the other levels also there is agreement (86.3 per cent at middle years and 86.9 per cent at senior years) concerning its importance.

Science-Related Attitudes

This objective is uniformly important in both guidelines and teacher assessments at all three levels.

Applied Science/Technology

Objectives in this category are of two types: those having to do with teaching about the practical applications of science (the products of engineering and technology) and those having to do with teaching the "process skills" of the engineer or technologist. The former type of objective is highly rated at all levels, especially at the senior-years level; the latter is rated low at all levels (14/14 at early years, 13/14 at middle years and 12/14 at senior years). As was evident from the analysis of guidelines, ministries of education appear ambivalent concerning these objectives. Teachers' assessments of the importance of these objectives also indicate a certain ambivalence concerning the importance of teaching about technology in "science" education.

Career Opportunities

Predictably, this objective is rated highly only by senior-years teachers, 77.3 per cent of whom consider it to be important – not a very high proportion, given the current recession.

Effectiveness of Teaching: Analysis by Teaching Level

In this question, teachers were presented with the same list of objectives as before and asked, "How effective do you feel that your teaching is at enabling students to achieve each of the following objectives?" Teachers were asked to respond using a four-point scale, ranging from "very ineffective" through "very effective." They were also given the option of indicating that they had not attempted a given objective. In Tables III.5, III.6 and III.7, the total number of teachers responding 3 (fairly effective) and 4 (very effective) to each objective is reported as a percentage of the total number of respondents. The sequence of objectives used in Tables III.1, III.2 and III.3, respectively, is retained.

Early Years

In general, teachers feel that those objectives they consider to be the most important are also those that their teaching is most effective in achieving. The only objective in the first two clusters (objectives 1 to 9) that the majority of teachers considered themselves to have been unsuccessful in achieving is the one involving the needs and interests of both men and women. Most of the objectives in the third cluster have not been attempted by a significant proportion of teachers.

Middle Years

At the middle-years level, teachers' assessments of effectiveness are, again, very similar to their assessments of importance. The most notable exception concerns the "science and society" objective: 88.4 per cent of teachers rate it as an important objective, but only 64.9 per cent of them consider their teaching to be effective in achieving it. By contrast, the objective "understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws" is rated highly on the effectiveness scale.

Senior Years

The close relationship between assessments of importance and effectiveness can be seen at the senior-years level also. Again, the "science and society" objective is thought to be important by a high proportion of science teachers (87.9 per cent), but considered to be effectively achieved by a significantly smaller proportion (69.3 per cent). The same is true for the objective, "developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials" (importance – 89.2 per cent; teaching effectiveness – 67.6 per cent) and for the objective "relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world" (importance – 86.9 per cent; teaching effectiveness – 71.2 per cent). These assessments underscore our concern for the number of objectives which a science program can realistically be expected to attain.

Finally, it should be asked whether teachers can make an accurate assessment of the effectiveness of their own teaching. As more sophisticated systems of learning assessment are introduced by several provinces, it may be possible to "assess" the teachers' assessments. For the present, these assessments are reported here as they were recorded.

There are many reasons why objectives considered by teachers to be important are nevertheless difficult to achieve in practice. The remaining chapters in this part of the report explore some of the obstacles that may keep teachers from attaining educational objectives.

Table III.5 – Effectiveness of Teaching: Early Years

Objective[a]		Assessment[b]
1.	Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour	90.7
2.	Developing skills and processes of investigation	90.2
3.	Developing social skills	92.4
4.	Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world	66.3
5.	Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials	67.9
6.	Understanding the practical applications of science	66.3
7.	Understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws	64.6
8.	Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women	45.0
9.	Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society	49.5
10.	Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed	31.4
11.	Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada	19.6
12.	Relating science to career opportunities	18.6
13.	Understanding the history and philosophy of science	16.6
14.	Understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity	14.1

[a] The order of objectives is the same as in Table III.1.

[b] Percentage of teachers assessing their teaching as fairly or very effective in achieving their objectives.

Table III.6 – Effectiveness of Teaching: Middle Years

Objective[a]		Assessment[b]
1.	Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour	86.0
2.	Developing skills and processes of investigation	88.7
3.	Developing social skills	64.9
4.	Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society	64.9
5.	Understanding the practical applications of science	79.0
6.	Understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws	87.9
7.	Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world	76.8
8.	Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials	71.0
9.	Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women	51.5
10.	Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed	52.2
11.	Relating science to career opportunities	38.8
12.	Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada	28.2
13.	Understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity	26.5
14.	Understanding the history and philosophy of science	35.8

[a] The order of objectives is the same as in Table III.2.

[b] Percentage of teachers assessing their teaching as fairly or very effective in achieving their objectives.

Table III.7 – Effectiveness of Teaching: Senior Years

Objective[a]		Assessment[b]
1.	Understanding scientific facts, concepts and laws	96.1
2.	Developing skills and processes of investigation	89.3
3.	Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour	83.7
4.	Understanding the practical applications of science	79.7
5.	Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials	67.6
6.	Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society	69.3
7.	Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world	71.2
8.	Developing social skills	77.5
9.	Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed	66.3
10.	Relating science to career opportunities	47.7
11.	Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men and women	46.2
12.	Understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity	39.2
13.	Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada	27.9
14.	Understanding the history and philosophy of science	46.0

[a] The order of objectives is the same as in Table III.3.

[b] Percentage of teachers assessing their teaching as fairly or very effective in achieving their objectives.

IV. Instructional Contexts of Science Teaching

The achievement of objectives for science education depends in large measure on the importance accorded those objectives by teachers. But other factors are also involved, including the availability (to both teacher and students) of appropriate curriculum resources (textbooks, software, magazines, etc.), the adequacy of the teacher's background for the specific pedagogical tasks required, the interests and abilities of the students, the physical facilities and equipment provided, the institutional arrangements (such as teaching schedule and class size) and the degree of professional (e.g., school principal) and community (e.g., parental) support for science teaching. Any one of these factors can make the achievement of any objectives, however desirable in principle, impossible in practice. Given this fact, well established by educational research, one may wonder how *any* objectives can be met successfully. But some are; schools do result in students' learning. However, it is naive to expect real change in the combination or balance of objectives of science education while ignoring factors such as those listed above. Likewise, it is necessary for a study such as the present one to determine as much information as possible about those contextual factors if it is to inform a deliberative process that may contemplate changes in the direction of science education.

Information concerning six such factors was collected in the survey of science teachers. Three of these are discussed in this chapter:

- Curriculum resources (Tables IV.2 to IV.6);
- Teacher's background and experience (especially inservice education) (Tables IV.7 to IV.10);
- Students' abilities and interests (Tables IV.11 to IV.15).

These factors directly affect the substance of a teacher's instructional interaction with his or her students.

In chapter V, three other factors, one step removed from the instructional process but none the less important, are examined: the physical facilities and equipment available; institutional arrangements (such as class size and time allocation); and the extent of community and professional support for science teaching. First, however, we needed to be sure that these six factors were all, in the opinion of teachers, relevant to the problem of achieving objectives. Table IV.1 reports teachers' responses to this question; it shows that all six factors are, to different degrees at different levels, important to teachers. At the early- and middle-years levels, physical facilities and institutional factors are of concern to most teachers. At the senior years, students' abilities and interests are cited most often as being important. However, further investigation of each of these six areas is clearly warranted.

Table IV.1 – Obstacles to the Achievement of Objectives

Areas Containing Potential Obstacles	Percentage of teachers assessing various areas as containing fairly or very important obstacles to the achievement of their objectives: Early	Middle	Senior
Curriculum resources	58.5	61.8	57.4
Teacher's background and experience	62.8	50.0	41.8
Students' abilities and interests	67.2	74.4	77.0
Physical facilities and equipment	75.3	73.2	61.1
Institutional arrangements (e.g., class size)	78.1	77.3	74.6
Community and professional support	47.0	50.9	46.1

Comment:
To some extent all areas contain obstacles to the achievement of objectives. Of most importance to teachers are institutional arrangements; of least concern is community and professional support.

Curriculum Resources

Five questions on the survey focussed on curriculum resources and curriculum development. The results of these inquiries are reported in Tables IV.2 to IV.6.

Teachers use curriculum resources to plan their lessons. Table IV.2 shows the degree to which teachers value various resources for this purpose. It is interesting to note that textbooks – both those approved for student use and others – are a major resource for three out of four teachers. School libraries are noted by over 80 per cent of early-years teachers as being important. Surprisingly perhaps, the ministry guidelines themselves, although they form the policy basis for the science curriculum, are not used as a primary resource for planning by a large proportion of teachers. It is also worth noting that teachers make little use of materials not produced specifically for educators. Science magazines, journals and newsletters are cited as important resources by 72.4 per cent of senior-years teachers, but respondents probably interpreted this category of resources as including science *education* magazines and journals as well as scientific periodicals.

A series of questions focussed on the textbooks used by students. At the senior- and middle-years levels, a large number of respondents reported that their students use textbooks (Table IV.3) and that, in general, these texts are satisfactory (Table IV.4). These assessments were based on a number of specific criteria and referred to texts named by respondents.*

Two final questions in this section concern the processes used for developing curricula. Tables IV.5 and IV.6 suggest that teachers believe that development work is best done either by ministries of education or by committees of teachers at school-board level. This distribution of responsibility reflects essentially the present situation in which school boards have formal responsibility for the implementation of ministry policies. However, only a few teachers think that the selection of textbooks is a task best accomplished by ministries of education. Finally, most teachers report that they have not had an opportunity to participate in curriculum development activities beyond the school level.

---

* Only teachers' general assessments of textbooks are reported in this volume. Detailed assessments are reported in volume I.

Table IV.2 – Resources for Planning Instruction

Resources	Percentage of teachers assessing various resources as fairly or very important in the planning of their instruction (with ranking)		
	Early	Middle	Senior
Ministry policy statements	50.4 (8)	56.1 (8)	48.0 (7)
Supplementary material from the ministry of education	48.0 (9)	43.3 (9)	31.0 (11)
Provincially approved textbooks	61.6 (4)	73.4 (3)	78.0 (2)
Other science textbooks	56.7 (6)	74.8 (1)	81.5 (1)
Commercially published curriculum materials	65.4 (3)	59.4 (6)	50.4 (6)
Curriculum materials developed locally	67.8 (2)	60.5 (5)	50.7 (5)
Materials from teachers' association	40.7 (11)	31.3 (11)	37.0 (9)
Materials from the school library	82.5 (1)	74.5 (2)	62.8 (4)
Publications from government departments	33.4 (12)	29.8 (12)	26.9 (12)
Science magazines, journals, newsletters	53.2 (7)	69.1 (4)	72.4 (3)
Industrially sponsored free materials	42.6 (10)	40.4 (10)	32.4 (10)
TV or radio programs or tapes	56.8 (5)	58.1 (7)	44.0 (8)
Computer software	9.8 (13)	11.6 (13)	14.1 (13)

Comment:
Textbooks, both provincially approved and others, are important – especially at senior and middle years. School libraries provide important resources, especially at the early years.

Table IV.3 – Use of Textbooks by Students

Percentage of teachers whose students use a science textbook

Early	Middle	Senior
37.6	70.9	89.6

Comment:
At middle and senior levels, the textbook continues to be of great importance. There is great variation among provinces in the early years (low: 7.1 per cent; high: 95.0 per cent).

Table IV.4 – Teachers' Assessments of Textbooks[a]

Criteria	Percentage of teachers assessing the text most often used by students as fairly or completely adequate with respect to various criteria		
	Early	Middle	Senior
Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	84.4	78.8	83.3
The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	78.0	73.5	75.8
Readability for students	72.7	75.1	73.7
Illustrations, photographs, etc.	85.2	79.6	77.4
Suggested activities	76.9	69.6	55.7
Canadian examples	56.1	49.8	28.8
Accounts of the applications of science	65.3	56.7	45.0
Appropriateness for slow students	46.0	30.5	25.7
Appropriateness for bright students	78.5	72.4	79.5
References for further reading	49.4	38.7	46.3
Overall impression	76.0	75.1	74.9
(N)[b]	(722)	(890)	(882)

[a] These assessments were made of specific textbooks named by the respondents. This table provides a general view of the degree of teachers' satisfaction with the textbooks their students use; see volume I, chapter 6 for assessments of individual textbooks.

[b] This question was only answered by those naming a textbook in a previous question. In addition, there was a typographical error in the questionnaire. As a result, there was a larger number of nonrespondents than usual.

Comment:

Textbooks are generally regarded as adequate except for slow learners.

Table IV.5 – Responsibilities for Curriculum Development[a]

Opinions of teachers (at early, middle and senior levels) concerning which agencies are the most appropriate to take responsibility for various curriculum development tasks

	Defining overall aims			Selecting textbooks			Preparing courses of study		
Agency	E	M	S	E	M	S	E	M	S
Ministry of education	38.1	48.8	47.9	8.5	8.3	14.5	11.1	10.6	18.8
School-board officials	7.1	2.0	1.8	5.9	8.5	1.3	6.7	1.4	1.6
Committee of teachers at school-board level	37.0	35.0	35.8	51.1	43.5	44.2	50.0	49.9	41.9
Families of schools	10.0	5.7	5.9	11.3	8.8	7.8	12.5	5.6	6.2
Individual schools	1.6	1.9	2.0	10.4	13.9	13.2	5.2	7.6	10.2
Individual teachers	3.9	3.2	5.1	9.3	13.5	17.3	11.2	21.1	19.3

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

Few teachers believe that ministries of education should select textbooks.

Table IV.6 – Teachers' Participation in Curriculum Development[a]

	Extent to which teachers at early-, middle- and senior-years levels have participated in curriculum planning and development activities at various levels during the past few years								
	No opportunity			Occasionally			Frequently		
Level of activity	E	M	S	E	M	S	E	M	S
School	51.0	28.6	27.9	26.2	24.1	26.2	20.7	44.7	44.6
School board	79.5	67.7	59.2	15.1	23.7	30.6	2.5	6.0	8.3
Provincial ministry	92.7	88.8	79.7	2.7	6.3	13.8	1.2	2.3	4.6
Teachers' association	87.1	79.7	77.2	8.8	15.7	17.3	1.3	2.0	3.6
Other	83.8	82.2	80.0	6.4	7.5	8.9	2.7	3.5	3.8

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

Most teachers do not participate in curriculum development activities beyond their own school.

Teachers' Backgrounds and Experiences: Inservice Education

In chapter II, aspects of teachers' backgrounds and experiences were discussed. Here, the focus is on inservice education, an area of particular importance when curriculum changes are planned. Tables IV.7 to IV.10 report on teachers' assessments of the effectiveness of existing inservice programs, teachers' willingness to participate in inservice workshops, teachers' assessments of the amount of inservice education they need, and teachers' opinions concerning the value of various inservice experiences.

The ability of the science education system to be reoriented towards new objectives depends in large measure on its ability to provide useful and effective inservice training to a teaching force that, as was noted in chapter 2, is mature and experienced. Yet, as Table IV.7 shows, teachers do not feel that present inservice programs are very effective. Most teachers are prepared to participate in inservice workshops (Table IV.8) and feel that the present quantity of inservice education is about right (Table IV.9), although different amounts are clearly needed for teachers at different stages of their careers. Table IV.10 reports teachers' opinions concerning the usefulness of specific inservice experiences. Interactions with other science teachers rate highly at all levels. Many senior-years teachers claim that university courses in science are most useful. A large number of teachers, particularly at the early years, report having had no experience of many inservice training alternatives. For example, 71.1 per cent of early-years teachers report never having attended a conference or meeting organized by a science teachers' association. This situation is perhaps the result of a traditional focus on secondary schools by such associations, and also of the need for early-years teachers to keep informed in several subject areas at the same time.

Table IV.7 – Effectiveness of Inservice Education[a]

Teachers' assessments of the inservice program provided in their school or district

Assessment	Early	Middle	Senior
Nonexistent	34.7	29.0	38.7
Completely or fairly ineffective	32.4	34.3	39.5
Fairly or very effective	27.9	33.5	19.6

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:
At least two out of three teachers find their inservice education program nonexistent or ineffective.

Table IV.8 – Teachers' Participation in Inservice Education

	Percentage of teachers indicating that they would (probably or definitely) participate in an inservice workshop in two specified circumstances		
Circumstances	Early	Middle	Senior
During school hours if release time was given	90.8	96.2	95.7
At a convenient time outside of school hours	63.9	77.9	77.8

Comment:
Three out of four teachers are prepared to participate in inservice workshops in or out of school hours.

Table IV.9 – Teachers' Requirements for Inservice Education[a]

Teachers' assessments of the amounts of inservice education they require per year in order to maintain the quality of their science teaching

Amount	Early	Middle	Senior
None	4.6	7.3	9.8
3-5 hours	30.6	12.3	17.1
5-20 hours	49.3	64.0	52.0
An intensive refresher course	10.8	12.0	10.4
A full year away from the classroom	2.4	3.7	9.5

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:
Present amounts of inservice education (5-20 hours per year for most teachers) are appropriate.

Table IV.10 – Value of Inservice Education Experiences[a]

Inservice Experience	Opinions of teachers (at early, middle and senior levels) regarding various inservice experiences in terms of the contribution to their work as science teachers								
	Completely or fairly useless			Fairly or very useful			No experience		
	E	M	S	E	M	S	E	M	S
Informal meetings with other science teachers	7.5	2.8	4.8	60.9	90.1	91.8	29.4	6.5	2.7
Informal meetings with university science education personnel	8.9	15.7	17.6	22.9	42.1	58.5	65.9	41.4	22.9
Informal meetings with scientists	6.9	13.0	10.3	9.0	35.5	44.6	81.8	50.5	44.2
Workshops presented by other teachers	5.3	5.1	12.7	61.2	76.3	75.0	31.5	17.9	11.5
Workshops presented by school board	8.8	16.1	31.2	52.6	54.6	41.5	36.5	28.4	26.3
Workshops presented by university science education personnel	7.0	17.6	13.3	16.4	36.3	51.0	74.2	45.2	34.8
Workshops presented by scientists	5.5	6.7	8.4	6.3	24.9	35.8	86.0	67.5	54.7
Workshops presented by ministry of education officials	5.3	15.7	19.1	18.9	28.7	31.4	72.7	54.1	18.2
University courses in science	13.2	13.5	5.8	28.3	59.2	82.0	54.5	25.6	11.1
University courses in science education	12.5	18.9	20.8	34.6	50.8	56.7	49.5	28.7	21.0
Visits to other teachers' classrooms or other schools	4.3	5.6	12.7	53.3	66.1	60.0	38.9	26.4	26.0
Conferences or meetings arranged by science teachers' association	3.7	9.5	9.3	21.6	54.9	72.9	71.1	32.4	16.5
Visits to industry	4.5	14.0	13.1	32.5	45.9	56.7	59.5	36.8	28.9
Visits from industrial personnel	5.1	14.1	16.2	12.0	19.5	28.9	79.1	63.1	53.7

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

Teachers believe they learn most from other teachers.

Students' Abilities and Interests

If students are unable or unwilling to learn what is taught to them, then nothing in the world can make an otherwise successfully planned and implemented curriculum effective. As we had agreed with ministries of education at the outset that we would conduct no direct assessment of students' abilities or attitudes, it was necessary to rely on indirect evidence, namely, teachers' assessments of these factors. Tables IV.11 to IV.14 analyze results of these inquiries and Table IV.15 reports teachers' estimates of students' extracurricular activities related to science.

According to the vast majority of teachers, students are both able and well motivated to undertake science courses. Girls and boys have equal ability, according to teachers, but their motivation varies somewhat: boys in the early years and girls in the senior years appear to some teachers to be more motivated. These perceptions tend to be related to the sex of the respondent, though not in a systematic way (Table IV.14). Students also learn about science from extracurricular activities. According to teachers, visits to museums appear to be a good way for early-years students to learn about science; for middle-years students, museums and science fairs are important sources of information.

Table IV.11 – Students' Attitudes Toward Learning Science[a]

Teachers' perceptions of the attitudes of the majority of their students

Student attitude	Early	Middle	Senior
Ready to drop science	0.1	0.8	0.1
Indifferent	9.6	15.1	15.4
Fairly motivated	67.1	68.8	75.1
Highly motivated	21.6	13.0	8.7

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:
Four out of five teachers find students to be well motivated towards learning science.

Table IV.12 – Students' Backgrounds and Abilities[a]

Teachers' perceptions of their students' backgrounds and abilities to undertake present science courses

Student's background and ability	Early	Middle	Senior
Completely inadequate	2.0	4.7	2.0
Fairly inadequate	23.2	26.5	19.1
Fairly adequate	62.1	60.9	70.9
Completely adequate	8.6	5.5	6.7

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:
Two out of three teachers find their students able to undertake science courses.

Table IV.13 – Attitudes and Abilities of Boys and Girls[a]

Teachers' perceptions of differences in attitudes and abilities (relating to science courses) between boys and girls

Teachers' perceptions	Early	Middle	Senior
Attitudes			
-Girls more motivated than boys	3.1	12.2	21.6
-No difference	83.6	70.4	68.1
-Boys more motivated than girls	11.3	14.1	8.1
Abilities			
-Girls more able than boys	4.9	6.0	6.6
-No difference	87.2	85.6	82.4
-Boys more able than girls	4.2	2.9	7.3

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

1. Most teachers see no difference in attitude or ability between boys and girls.
2. Where there is a perceived difference in attitude, teachers claim that boys are more motivated at the early years, while girls are more motivated at the senior years.

Table IV.14 – Attitudes and Abilities of Boys and Girls by Sex of Respondent[a]

Male and female teachers' perceptions of attitudes and abilities of girls and boys

	Early		Middle		Senior	
Teachers' perceptions	M	F	M	F	M	F
Attitudes						
-Girls more motivated than boys	4.1	2.9	12.1	13.7	22.5	14.1
-No difference	77.1	87.3	75.8	65.9	66.4	80.3
-Boys more motivated than girls	18.6	9.6	12.0	20.2	10.9	5.4
-(N)	(410)	(1 256)	(1 047)	(271)	(996)	(135)
Abilities						
-Girls more able than boys	5.6	4.9	7.1	4.5	6.3	10.1
-No difference	84.6	92.2	89.4	93.1	85.2	84.1
-Boys more able than girls	9.6	2.8	3.4	2.2	8.4	5.7
-(N)	(403)	(1 227)	(1 014)	(264)	(980)	(135)

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

The perception of attitudes and abilities in boys and girls tends to be influenced by the sex of the respondent, but not in a consistent pattern.

Table IV.15 – Students' Science-Related Extracurricular Activities[a]

Activities	Early-, middle- and senior-years teachers' estimates of the proportion of their students participating in various extracurricular activities											
	Very few			About half			Very many			I don't know		
	E	M	S	E	M	S	E	M	S	E	M	S
A science fair project	44.4	56.6	78.9	4.0	2.1	2.4	8.8	22.3	4.3	36.4	17.9	12.7
Membership in a science-related club	45.5	60.7	79.5	0.7	3.8	1.2	0.2	0.6	0.3	46.4	31.8	17.4
A visit to a museum or science centre during the past year	33.2	35.7	43.5	13.7	11.8	16.5	17.9	21.8	10.3	30.4	27.8	28.0
Regularly read a science-related book or magazine	43.9	50.9	48.3	11.0	14.7	17.1	5.2	5.5	5.0	34.4	26.1	28.4
Regularly watch a science TV show (or listen to a radio show)	32.1	30.6	32.6	17.0	27.3	26.2	9.6	15.7	10.3	36.3	23.5	29.1
Pursue actively a scientific hobby	43.1	57.2	61.5	6.1	7.8	5.5	0.4	0.8	0.8	44.9	31.2	31.0

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:
A surprisingly high proportion of early-years teachers (about one in three) do not know what their students' interests are.

V. Physical, Institutional and Social Contexts of Science Teaching

Effective science teaching depends not only on the purposes of teachers, students and curricula being in harmony, but also on other factors, which are usually beyond teachers' control. This chapter focusses on three such factors:

- Physical facilities (Tables V.1 to V.3);
- Institutional arrangements (Tables V.4 to V.8);
- Support for science teaching (Tables V.9 to V.13).

Physical Facilities

Effective science teaching requires special facilities and equipment. The exact requirements will vary, of course, depending on the course content and the teaching level. To learn about the facilities and equipment presently available to teachers and about teachers' views of their adequacy, several questions on this subject were included in the questionnaire. Tables V.1, V.2 and V.3 report the results of this inquiry.

These data show that, not surprisingly, most science in the early years is taught in a regular classroom, that there is not usually enough equipment for students to participate actively and that over 50 per cent of the teachers regard the situation as being poor or very poor. By contrast, three out of four senior-years science teachers have a regular laboratory equipped for experiments by students, and the quality of both laboratory and equipment are regarded as good or excellent. The situation in the middle years is much more varied, although teachers' assessments of quality are almost as high as are those of senior-years teachers.

Table V.1 – Facilities for Science Teaching[a]

Facility	Early	Middle	Senior
A laboratory or specially designed science room	1.3	41.9	74.2
A classroom with occasional access to a laboratory	7.4	18.0	21.5
A classroom with facilities for demonstrations only	11.2	15.3	1.8
A classroom with no special facilities for science	78.9	24.1	1.9

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Figure V.1 – Facilities for Science Teaching

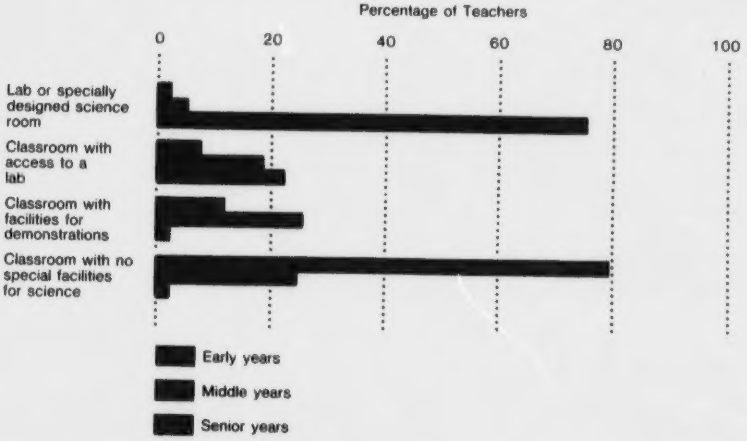


Table V.2 – Equipment and Supplies for Science Teaching[a]

Conditions[b]	Early	Middle	Senior
Ample equipment for student use	15.4	51.4	68.5
Inexpensive, outdated, or donated equipment for student use	16.9	22.9	14.3
Virtually no equipment for demonstration purposes	29.9	10.0	1.8
Adequate equipment for demonstration purposes	41.5	49.0	50.4
Virtually no science equipment at all	18.7	7.0	2.0
Sufficient consumable materials	16.3	49.9	61.8
Access to computing facilities	2.9	16.4	26.8
Adequate audio-visual equipment	34.6	52.9	58.6

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

[b] Respondents were requested to indicate all categories that applied; consequently, the columns do not total 100 per cent.

Table V.3 – Quality of Facilities and Equipment[a]

Teachers' assessment	Early	Middle	Senior
Very poor	18.2	10.3	3.0
Poor	40.5	21.9	14.9
Good	37.1	54.1	58.8
Excellent	2.3	12.7	22.3

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

Most early-years science teachers feel that the quality of the facilities and equipment available to them is inadequate. The same opinion is held by one in three middle-years teachers.

Institutional Arrangements

Teachers of science operate in schools where schedules and classes are arranged not only to accommodate the teaching of science, but many other subjects and considerations as well. Nevertheless, in terms of available time, science seems to fare as well or better than other subjects in the curriculum (Tables V.4 to V.8).

Tables V.4 and V.5 show the range of subjects taught by teachers. For early-years teachers, science is only one of a variety of subjects that they teach, while senior-year teachers tend to specialize in science subjects. Table V.5 shows the *proportions* of male and female teachers teaching each of the science subjects. While a greater proportion of female teachers teach biology than, say, physics, it should be noted that the overall 7:1 balance of male teachers to female teachers means that, in absolute terms, there are many more male than female biology teachers.

Table V.6 reports the number of different grades and classes each teacher is responsible for. Early-years teachers tend to have one class at one grade while senior-years teachers teach several different classes at several grade levels. Class sizes, according to the data in Table V.7, are fairly uniform at 20 to 30, and the time allocated to science appears to be adequate (Table V.8).

Table V.4 – Subjects Taught: (1) All teachers[a]

Subjects	Early	Middle	Senior
Science only	0.7	32.6	65.7
Science and Mathematics	2.4	14.8	21.9
A variety of subjects	95.2	51.8	10.9

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Table V.5 – Subjects Taught: (2) Senior-years teachers compared by sex[a]

Major subject	Male	Female	Overall
Biology	25.8	39.5	27.4
Chemistry	32.7	34.0	32.9
Physics	26.0	14.1	24.6
Earth Science	0.9	0.7	0.9
Other science subjects	5.3	2.9	5.0
Nonscience subjects	8.9	8.4	8.8
(N)	(987)	(135)	(1 122)

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Table V.6 – Number of Different Grades and Classes Taught[a]

	Early	Middle	Senior
Number of Grades			
-1 only	64.8	25.7	8.8
-2	23.2	30.3	32.6
-3	4.1	28.0	38.9
-More than 3	6.2	15.0	19.1
Number of classes			
-1 only	64.7	13.8	1.5
-2-3	21.1	28.1	19.0
-More than 3	11.6	57.2	78.3

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Table V.7 – Class Size[a]

Average number of students per class	Early	Middle	Senior
20 or less	16.4	7.9	12.1
21-25	36.2	23.9	23.3
26-30	36.8	39.9	47.2
31-35	6.2	26.7	15.8
Over 35	1.4	0.4	0.6
Average size	25	27	27

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Table V.8 – Early-, Middle- and Senior-Years Teachers' Assessments of the Adequacy of Time Allocated to Science at Their Level[a]

	In relation to other subjects			In terms of course content		
Teachers' Assessments	E	M	S	E	M	S
Inadequate amount of time	17.8	19.6	19.0	31.2	32.0	31.9
Just enough time	53.4	48.9	52.3	58.9	61.2	62.1
Very adequate amount of time	26.9	30.6	27.3	7.0	5.0	4.5

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Supports for Science Teaching

Science teachers are not always in the best position to assess the degree of support for science education that exists in other parts of the educational system. However, we sought their opinions on this matter and on the existence of leadership in science education at school and school-board levels. Tables V.9 and V.10 convey the results of these inquiries. A final area of interest for the study was the interaction between science education and industry. Many teachers have never experienced any interaction between industry and schools (Table V.11). Few of those who have think that industry's objective is primarily to support schools (Table V.12). Yet, despite this, an overwhelming majority of science teachers believe that there is a role for industry to play in science education (Table V.13). It is a challenge for deliberators to find what the role should be.

Table V.9 – Leadership and Coordination of Science at School and School-Board Levels[a]

	School level			School-board level		
Form of leadership	E	M	S	E	M	S
Specially designated person	5.5	35.3	66.5	38.8	42.0	42.8
A group of teachers	10.9	9.9	7.2	8.4	11.1	7.9
Administrators	9.2	13.0	4.7	5.5	8.6	6.9
No particular leadership	63.4	35.9	20.2	24.2	23.3	35.2
Don't know	8.7	5.1	0.7	20.5	14.0	6.1

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

There is great variation in the data for school-board level when these data are compared by province.

Table V.10 – Views of the Importance of Science[a]

	Early-, middle- and senior-years teachers' assessments of the views of various administrators and members of the community towards science, relative to the other subjects in the school curriculum											
	Less important			Equally important			More important			Don't know		
	E	M	S	E	M	S	E	M	S	E	M	S
School principal	19.3	10.6	9.6	53.1	64.5	68.2	3.5	12.6	8.5	22.5	9.7	12.7
School-board administrators	18.4	12.7	12.3	41.1	51.5	54.2	3.4	1.5	2.7	35.1	31.4	29.8
Parents	31.4	18.9	9.7	29.8	46.8	47.8	2.2	9.2	13.1	34.7	22.2	28.4
Trustees	18.0	12.7	10.4	24.6	34.6	38.8	2.1	0.7	1.6	52.7	48.8	47.4

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Table V.11 – Experience of Industrial Involvement in Science Education[a]

Teachers' experiences[b]	Early	Middle	Senior
Provisions of curriculum materials	19.8	29.4	35.6
Financial support of activities such as science fairs	2.7	8.5	15.8
Visits to industry	23.0	35.1	44.0
Visits by industrial personnel to school	7.1	11.7	21.1
Provisions of career information	6.1	25.1	41.2
Other experiences	8.2	11.8	9.0
No particular experience	60.8	40.9	31.1

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

[b] Respondents were requested to indicate all categories that applied; the columns do not therefore total 100 per cent.

Table V.12 - Benefits of Industrial Involvement in Science Education[a]

Teachers' opinions of industry's contributions to science teaching

Opinion concerning the contributions	Early	Middle	Senior
Exclusively in the interests of industry	3.0	7.9	5.3
Mostly in the interests of industry	16.7	26.6	28.9
Equally helpful to both industry and school	19.1	26.8	31.7
Designed primarily to assist schools	7.2	8.9	6.1
No opinion	50.4	26.0	26.4

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Table V.13 – The Role of Industry in Relation to Science Education[a]

Teachers' responses to the question, "Do you believe it is appropriate for industry to be involved in science education at all?"

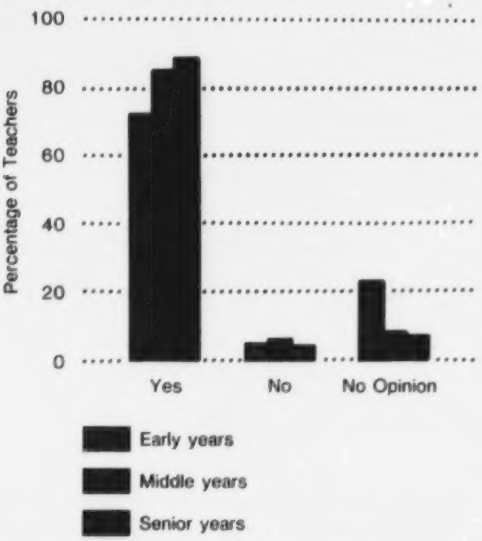
Response	Early	Middle	Senior
Yes	71.4	84.5	88.8
No	3.7	5.6	3.9
No opinion	22.2	7.4	6.6

[a] Figures shown are percentages.

Comment:

Four out of five teachers support industry's involvement in science education.

Figure V.2 – The Role of Industry in Relation to Science Education (Teachers' Responses to the Question, "Do you believe it is appropriate for industry to be involved in science education at all?")



VI. Concluding Comments: Questions Raised by the Data

As did other parts of the research program, the survey of science teachers raised as many questions as it answered. These questions, together with the data produced by the research, stimulated and informed a series of deliberative conferences held across Canada during 1982-1983. Those who participated in these conferences raised a number of issues that were particularly important to individual provinces and territories, but they also discussed questions based on the national data included in this report. These questions, which are relevant to all provinces and territories, are listed in the pages that follow. They are arranged to correspond with the order of the preceding chapters.

Science Teachers

Trends In the Age of Science Teachers

In many provinces, schools are experiencing the phenomenon of declining enrolments resulting from the passage of the population "bulge" through its school years. A direct result of this is that school systems have, in many places, not only stopped recruiting new teachers, but have been forced to lay off those already employed. Usually, the youngest (or least senior) teachers have been laid off. This is one reason for the relative absence of young teachers (Table II.2) and for the relatively experienced teaching force noted in Table II.4. However, several disturbing consequences of this trend should be noted. The younger teachers are among the best qualified (Table II.9); there is also a more even balance between the sexes in this group (Table II.5). If policies concerning teacher layoffs are continued, what will be the consequences for the teaching of science, especially at the elementary level?

Preservice Teacher Education

Assuming that it is inappropriate to expect science to be taught at any level by a person who has not had any college-level courses in either science or mathematics, the data presented in Tables II.10 and II.11 are cause for concern. The data show that more than half of all early-years teachers, and more than a third of all middle-years teachers, have never taken mathematics or science at the university level. In view of these statistics, what changes should be made in preservice teacher education and certification requirements? Of course, in view of declining student enrolment, any changes made will only affect the very small number of new teachers entering the profession. Changes in the backgrounds of those currently teaching science are a matter for inservice education (see below).

Work Experience Outside of Teaching

As Table II.13 suggests, many science teachers have had science-related jobs. If the present trend towards greater concern with the applications of science, the relationship between science and society and the use of technology continues, these experiences could prove invaluable. How can this type of experience be recognized and encouraged for those who are, or plan to be, teachers of science? Also, how can teachers use this experience as a pedagogical resource for students' benefit?

Objectives of Science Teaching

The Number, Variety and Balance of Objectives

The analysis of provincial science curriculum policies (volume I, chapter V) prompted the question, "How many different objectives can a science program realistically be expected to reach?" The question is equally apt here. As Tables III.1, III.2 and III.3 show, teachers appear to be as enthusiastic as ministries of education in aiming at a long and varied list of objectives. In volume I, we suggested that to test whether real commitment to a particular objective exists, we should ask, "What practical difference to the day-by-day teaching of science would it make if each objective were separately dropped?" Teachers, as well as ministries, might do well to ask themselves such a question.

Changes in the Objectives of Science Teaching

The survey made no direct inquiry into teachers' readiness to accept change in the balance of objectives in their science programs. However, the fact that those objectives that were thought to be the most important are also those most frequently encountered in present science programs suggests a certain resistance to change on the part of most teachers. The authors of Council's discussion papers have, explicitly or implicitly, suggested alternative objectives, but these have received little support from science teachers. This can mean several things. Perhaps, teachers know best what is achievable in schools, and present programs are a reflection of their judgement. On the other hand, the critics may be right, but the teaching profession has not yet been persuaded. There is little doubt that what teachers believe to be important is a major influence – perhaps *the* major influence – on what actually takes place in classrooms. Clearly, dialogue and deliberation is called for between both those inside and those outside the education system on this most urgent of all questions: What should be the priority among objectives for science education?

Assessing the Effectiveness of Science Teaching

Discussion of the effectiveness of teaching with respect to various objectives tends to be contentious and political. The measurement of learning is, of course, fraught with all kinds of technical difficulties. Yet most teachers, administrators and parents recognize that certain objectives can be and are being met in schools. In recent years, some provinces (notably BC, Alberta and Manitoba) have instituted assessment programs aimed at determining how effectively various objectives of science programs are being met. Despite the controversy surrounding such assessment programs, they may help clarify the debate about new (and old) objectives by telling us what schools can do, and do, well or poorly. Having such information, educators could better assess the feasibility of introducing new objectives or, at least, the strategies required to do so. Until such data are available, we must rely on teachers' assessments of their own effectiveness. At the same time, we should question the reliability of such self-assessment. At issue, for provincial deliberation, is the matter of extending, introducing and improving systematic approaches to the evaluation of students' learning.

Instructional Contexts of Science Teaching

Factors Affecting the Effectiveness of Science Teaching

If assessing the effectiveness of teaching is difficult, determining which factors most strongly influence effectiveness may be more difficult still. Some factors, such as class size, may affect the pleasantness of the working atmosphere significantly and thus lead a teacher to suppose that he or she is being more effective. Factors that may increase teachers' enjoyment of teaching may make little or no difference to the degree to which students achieve objectives. This situation makes it difficult to know which factors are most crucial to teachers' effectiveness and students' learning when a change in objectives is contemplated. Lacking any further evidence, we must assume that all of the six factors identified in Table IV.1 are (more or less equally) important. Are there, however, other factors that influence teaching effectiveness significantly, about which data are needed before the costs of a change in educational objectives can be estimated?

Curriculum Resources

Are teaching resources – particularly textbooks – sufficiently adequate to allow desired objectives to be met? Or, to put the matter in slightly different terms: What new curriculum resources are required to enable teachers to achieve objectives that cannot be met with existing materials? How can materials that contain useful resources (such as government publications) be made more accessible to teachers? How can computer technology be developed to increase curriculum resources for teachers? There is ample material to satisfy all resource needs in existence. The problem is to make it available in the right form at the right time (and at the right price). How can these problems be solved?

Processes of Curriculum Development

Will existing procedures, which are supported by teachers, allow science curricula with different objectives to be developed, or will new procedures and the participation of different people in the making of policy decisions be needed if change is to occur?

Inservice Education

How can inservice education be made more effective so that teachers can continue to enjoy teaching science, and can maintain and develop their abilities to do so? Data presented in this report suggest that inservice education in its present form is not very effective (Table IV.7). Are too many different groups responsible for it? Does it have too many objectives? Does it lack adequate resources?

Students' Interests and Abilities

Does science teaching adequately capitalize on the interests and abilities of all students? A significant number of teachers do not know what science-related extracurricular activities interest their students. How can science activities outside school, which students find interesting, be better related to the science that they learn inside the school?

Science Teaching for Boys and Girls

What can teachers do to ensure that girls take an active interest in science? Most teachers see no difference in attitude or ability between boys and girls (Table IV.13). Yet girls continue to drop out of science at a much higher rate than do boys. What can be done to change this pattern?

Physical, Institutional and Social Contexts of Science Teaching

Physical Facilities and Equipment

What different facilities are required for the achievement of the various objectives of science education? Laboratories are clearly required if students are to develop all the skills of the experimental scientist. Since these objectives have been regarded as important, there has been a corresponding move to ensure that laboratory facilities were available. But are "science-and-society" objectives best achieved through laboratory work? If not, what type of facility is required? To put the matter another way, if we were to design a new school with facilities and equipment appropriate to the objectives of science education in the 1980s and 1990s, what might such a school contain?

Institutional Arrangements

What relative importance should be given to science at each stage of a student's education?

Leadership in Science Education

What kinds of leadership are required, especially in elementary science? How can the resources (especially the human resources) of secondary science teaching be extended to assist and improve science education in the middle and early years?

Views of the Importance of Science

Are educators and politicians sufficiently convinced of the importance of science in the education of students? If not, how can their views be changed?

Industrial Involvement in Science Education

How can industry become more involved in science education without diminishing the integrity of teachers and their responsibility towards students?

Appendix A

Questionnaire and Response Sheet

SCIENCE COUNCIL OF CANADA

SCIENCE EDUCATION STUDY

A Questionnaire for Teachers of Science

1 October 1981

To each teacher:

The Science Council of Canada is currently undertaking a major study into the directions of science education in Canadian schools and invites you to participate by completing this questionnaire.

First, however, some background information. For several years now, science education has been the object of growing criticism and this has become a matter of concern to the Science Council of Canada. So, with the cooperation of the Council of Ministers of Education, the Science Council decided that a better understanding of science teaching, its problems and difficulties, was needed before any useful recommendations for change could be considered.

To this end, the comments of teachers of science — *your* comments — are of vital importance. By responding to this questionnaire, you will be providing us with information that will help us to answer three questions:

1. What are the aims and objectives of science teaching in Canada today, as perceived by teachers?
2. What problems are encountered by teachers when they try to achieve these objectives in practice?
3. What changes are required if science education is to continue to meet the needs of Canadians in the years to come?

Your school has been randomly selected to participate in this study and all teachers who teach science (whether full or part time) are being asked individually to respond to the questionnaire.

Science programs and administrative terminology vary greatly from one province or territory to another. Inevitably, therefore, some questions will not seem to be worded in an exactly appropriate manner. We hope, nevertheless, that you will respond as completely as possible. Thank you in advance for your cooperation.

You can be assured that your responses will be treated in complete confidence. Our reports will not identify participating teachers or schools. When you have completed the questionnaire, place the response sheet in the envelope provided, seal it, and return it to the person who gave it to you — within a week, if possible.

Thank you again for your participation. If you would like to have more information about Science Council or the Science Education Study, you can obtain our publications free of charge from the Council's Publications Office, 100 Metcalfe Street, Ottawa.

Yours truly,

Graham W.F. Orpwood

Jean-P. Souque

Project Officers
Science Education Study

A Questionnaire for Teachers of Science

IMPORTANT: We ask that you respond to each item in this questionnaire by circling the appropriate number *on the separate response sheet provided.*

I GENERAL INFORMATION

In this section, we are interested in learning something about you. This will enable us to understand better your opinions concerning the objectives and difficulties of science teaching.

1. Are you currently teaching some science?

(Circle one on the response sheet)

a. Yes 1
b. No 2

If your answer is "No", please do not proceed further. Kindly return this questionnaire to the individual who gave it to you. Thank you for your cooperation.

If your answer is "Yes", please go on to the next question.

2. For the purpose of our study, we have defined three levels of teaching. At which level is *most* of your science teaching currently taking place? Please select only one of a, b, or c.

(Circle one)

a. Early Years (grades K-6 for all provinces except K-7 in B.C. and the Yukon) 1
b. Middle Years (grades 7-9 for all provinces except secondary 1-3 in Quebec, grades 7-10 in Ontario, and 8-10 in B.C. and the Yukon) 2
c. Senior Years (grades 10-12 for all provinces except 10-11 in Newfoundland, secondary 4-5 in Quebec, grades 11-13 in Ontario, and 11-12 in B.C. and the Yukon) 3

Note: Although you may teach (or have taught) at more than one of those levels, we would ask you to complete the rest of this questionnaire *as though you only taught at the level you have marked.*

3. What is your age?

(Circle one)

a. Under 26 1
b. 26-35 2
c. 36-45 3
d. 46-55 4
e. over 55 5

4. What is your sex?

(Circle one)

a. Male 1
b. Female 2

5. How many years of overall teaching experience do you have, including the present year?

	(Circle one)
a. 1 year (i.e., new to teaching this year)	1
b. 2-5 years	2
c. 6-9 years	3
d. 10-13 years	4
e. 14 years or more	5

II CURRICULUM & INSTRUCTION

In this section, the questions have to do with the overall aims and objectives for a student's learning science and with the degree to which these aims can be successfully achieved through present science programs.

There are many reasons why objectives, considered by teachers to be important, are nevertheless difficult to achieve in practice. Questions 6 and 7 contain a list of possible objectives for science teaching. Question 6 asks you to rate the importance of each objective *for the level you teach*. Question 7 asks you to estimate the effectiveness of your own teaching with respect to each objective. Question 8 then explores some of the potential obstacles to achieving objectives.

6. Importance of objectives

Please indicate your assessment of the importance of each of the following objectives *for the level which you identified* in Question 2.

Scale: 1 — No importance
2 — Of little importance
3 — Fairly important
4 — Very important

	(Circle one on each line on the response sheet)			
a. Understanding scientific facts, concepts, laws, etc.	1	2	3	4
b. Developing social skills (e.g., cooperation, communication, sense of responsibility)	1	2	3	4
c. Relating science to career opportunities	1	2	3	4
d. Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials	1	2	3	4
e. Understanding the nature and process of technological or engineering activity	1	2	3	4
f. Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour (e.g., curiosity, creativity, skepticism)	1	2	3	4
g. Understanding the history and philosophy of science	1	2	3	4
h. Understanding the practical applications of science	1	2	3	4
i. Developing skills and processes of investigation (e.g., observing, classifying, conducting experiments)	1	2	3	4
j. Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men *and* women	1	2	3	4
k. Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world	1	2	3	4
l. Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed	1	2	3	4
m. Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada	1	2	3	4
n. Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society	1	2	3	4

7. Achievement of objectives

How effective do you feel your teaching is at providing for students to achieve each of the following objectives? If you do not attempt an objective, circle 0.

Scale: 1 — Very ineffective
2 — Fairly ineffective
3 — Fairly effective
4 — Very effective
0 — Not attempted

(Circle one on each line)

a. Understanding scientific facts, concepts, laws, etc. . .	1	2	3	4	0
b. Developing social skills (e.g., cooperation, communication, sense of responsibility)	1	2	3	4	0
c. Relating science to career opportunities	1	2	3	4	0
d. Developing the skills of reading and understanding science-related materials	1	2	3	4	0
e. Understanding the nature and processes of technological or engineering activity	1	2	3	4	0
f. Developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour (e.g., curiosity, creativity, skepticism) . . .	1	2	3	4	0
g. Understanding the history and philosophy of science .	1	2	3	4	0
h. Understanding the practical applications of science . . .	1	2	3	4	0
i. Developing skills and processes of investigation (e.g., observing, classifying, conducting experiments)	1	2	3	4	0
j. Understanding the relevance of science to the needs and interests of both men *and* women	1	2	3	4	0
k. Relating scientific explanation to the student's conception of the world	1	2	3	4	0
l. Understanding the way that scientific knowledge is developed	1	2	3	4	0
m. Developing an awareness of the practice of science in Canada	1	2	3	4	0
n. Understanding the role and significance of science in modern society	1	2	3	4	0

8. Obstacles to achieving objectives

We have listed six areas which may contain obstacles to the achievement of objectives. Please rate the importance of these areas as representing obstacles to the achievement of *your* objectives.

Scale: 1 — No importance
2 — Of little importance
3 — Fairly important
4 — Very important

(Circle one on each line)

a. Curriculum resources (including Ministry/ Department guidelines, textbooks, etc.)	1	2	3	4
b. My background and experience (pre-service and in-service)	1	2	3	4
c. Physical facilities and equipment	1	2	3	4
d. Students' abilities and interests	1	2	3	4
e. Institutional arrangements (e.g., class size, time allocation)	1	2	3	4
f. Community and professional support (e.g., parents, principals, superintendents, trustees)	1	2	3	4

PARTS III-VIII

In the remainder of the questionnaire, we are interested in exploring further those six areas identified in Question 8 which influence, in various ways, the effectiveness of science teaching.

III CURRICULUM RESOURCES

9. Teachers use a variety of materials when planning instruction. How useful have you found the following types of material to be in *your* planning? If, for any reason, you do not have an opinion, please circle 0.

Scale: 1 — No importance
2 — Of little importance
3 — Fairly important
4 — Very important
0 — No opinion

(Circle one on each line)

a. Ministry/Department policy statements	1	2	3	4	0
b. Provincially/Territorially approved texts	1	2	3	4	0
c. Other science texts	1	2	3	4	0
d. Supplementary material from the Ministry/Department of Education	1	2	3	4	0
e. Curriculum material developed in your school or school board	1	2	3	4	0
f. Commercially published curriculum materials other than textbooks such as kits of printed materials etc. ...	1	2	3	4	0
g. Publications from government departments (other than education)	1	2	3	4	0
h. Materials from teachers' associations	1	2	3	4	0
i. Science magazines, journals, newsletters etc.	1	2	3	4	0
j. Industrially sponsored free materials	1	2	3	4	0
k. TV or radio programs or tapes	1	2	3	4	0
l. Materials from the school library	1	2	3	4	0
m. Computer software	1	2	3	4	0

10. Student textbooks

(a) Please identify the grade that you teach science to most often this year.

(Circle only one)

K 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 .13

(b) Do the students in this grade use a science textbook?

Yes .... 1 .... Please go on to part (c) of this question.
No .... 2 .... Please go directly to Question 12.

(c) Which textbook is used most often by students in this grade? Provide as much information as you can. If a series of books is used, give the series title only.

a. Author(s) ....
b. Title ....
c. Publisher ....
d. Year of edition ....

(Provide this information in the appropriate space on the response sheet)

11. This question concerns the textbook you identified in Question 10. Please assess the quality of the text in respect of each of the following criteria.

(Circle one on each line)

	Completely inadequate 1	Fairly inadequate 2	Fairly adequate 3	Completely adequate 4
a. Appropriateness of the science content for the grade level you teach	1	2	3	4
b. The relationship of the text's objectives with your own priorities	1	2	3	4
c. Readability for students	1	2	3	4
d. Illustrations, photographs, etc.	1	2	3	4
e. Suggested activities	1	2	3	4
f. Canadian examples	1	2	3	4
g. Accounts of the applications of science	1	2	3	4
h. Appropriateness for slow students	1	2	3	4
i. Appropriateness for bright students	1	2	3	4
j. References for further reading	1	2	3	4
k. Overall impression	1	2	3	4

12. Suppose a new science program is to be developed for your grade level. This must involve (a) defining overall aims and objectives, (b) selecting textbooks, and (c) preparing detailed courses of study. Which of the following agencies (numbered 1-6) do you consider to be most appropriate *to take responsibility* for each of these tasks?

1. Department/Ministry of Education
2. School board officials
3. Committee of teachers at school board level
4. Families of schools
5. Individual schools
6. Individual teachers

(Circle one on each line)

a. Defining overall aims and objectives	1	2	3	4	5	6
b. Selecting textbooks	1	2	3	4	5	6
c. Preparing detailed courses of study	1	2	3	4	5	6

13. To what extent have you participated in curriculum planning and development activities at each of the following levels during the past few years?

(Circle one on each line)

	No opportunity to participate 1	Participated occasionally 2	Participated frequently 3
a. School	1	2	3
b. School board	1	2	3
c. Provincial/Territorial Department/Ministry	1	2	3
d. Teachers' association	1	2	3
e. Other	1	2	3

IV TEACHER BACKGROUND & EXPERIENCE

14. Please indicate the *highest* level of education you have *completed*.

	(Circle one only)
a. Elementary school	1
b. High school	2
c. Community college diploma (or equivalent)	3
d. Teacher's college diploma (or equivalent)	4
e. Bachelor's degree	5
f. Master's degree	6
g. Doctoral degree	7

15. Please indicate the *highest* level at which you have *studied the following subjects*.

(Circle one on each line)

	Not studied at university 1	Bachelor's level 2	Master's/Doctoral level 3
a. Mathematics	1	2	3
b. Pure science (e.g., physics, chemistry)	1	2	3
c. Applied science (e.g., engineering, medicine)	1	2	3
d. Education	1	2	3

16. How long has it been since you last took a post-secondary course in each of the following areas?

(Circle one on each line)

	Never taken 1	More than 10 years 2	6-10 years 3	1-5 years 4	Currently enrolled 5
a. Mathematics	1	2	3	4	5
b. Pure science	1	2	3	4	5
c. Applied science	1	2	3	4	5
d. Education	1	2	3	4	5

17. As preparation for your work as a science teacher, how do you rate the overall quality of:

(Circle one on each line)

	Very unsatisfactory 1	Fairly unsatisfactory 2	Fairly satisfactory 3	Very satisfactory 4
a. Your education in science?	1	2	3	4
b. Your training as a teacher?	1	2	3	4

18. How helpful has your post-secondary education been to you as a science teacher in regard to the following areas?

(Circle one on each line)

	No help 1	Little help 2	Some help 3	Much help 4
a. Acquiring scientific knowledge and skills	1	2	3	4
b. Understanding interactions between science and society	1	2	3	4
c. Understanding the ways children and adolescents learn science	1	2	3	4

19. What science-related employment have you had other than teaching?

(Circle all that apply)

a. None 1
b. Work in a science library 2
c. Routine work in a testing or analysis laboratory 3
d. Research or development work on methods, products, or processes 4
e. Basic research in physical, medical, biological, or earth science 5
f. Work in farming, mining, or fishing 6
g. Other industrial work including engineering 7

20. Rate the value of each of the following in-service experiences in terms of their contribution to your work as a science teacher. If you have no experience in a particular activity, please circle 0.

(Circle one on each line)

	Completely Useless 1	Fairly Useless 2	Fairly Useful 3	Very Useful 4	No Experience 0
a. Informal meetings with other science teachers	1	2	3	4	0
b. Informal meetings with university science education personnel	1	2	3	4	0
c. Informal meetings with scientists	1	2	3	4	0
d. Workshops presented by other teachers	1	2	3	4	0
e. Workshops presented by school board	1	2	3	4	0
f. Workshops presented by university science education personnel	1	2	3	4	0
g. Workshops presented by scientists	1	2	3	4	0
h. Workshops presented by Ministry Department of Education officials	1	2	3	4	0
i. University courses in science	1	2	3	4	0
j. University courses in science education	1	2	3	4	0
k. Visits to other teachers' classrooms or other schools. . .	1	2	3	4	0
l. Conferences or meetings arranged by science teachers' association	1	2	3	4	0
m. Visits to industries	1	2	3	4	0
n. Visits from industrial personnel	1	2	3	4	0

21. Generally, how willing would you be to participate in an in-service workshop in science education under the following circumstances:

(a) during school hours if release time was given?

(Circle one)

a. Definitely would not participate 1
b. Probably would not participate 2
c. Probably would participate 3
d. Definitely would participate 4

(b) at a convenient time outside of school hours?

(Circle one)

a. Definitely would not participate 1
b. Probably would not participate 2
c. Probably would participate 3
d. Definitely would participate 4

22. How much in-service education per year do you feel *you* require in order to continue doing a good job of teaching science?

(Circle one)

a. None 1
b. 3-5 hours (e.g., one afternoon workshop) 2
c. 5-20 hours (e.g., several full days of workshops) .. 3
d. An intensive refresher course 4
e. A full year away from the classroom 5

23. How effective is the in-service program provided for science teachers in your school or district?

(Circle one)

a. Non-existent 1
b. Completely ineffective 2
c. Fairly ineffective 3
d. Fairly effective 4
e. Very effective 5

24. (a) If you had a choice, would you avoid teaching science altogether?

a. Yes .... 1 .... Please go on to part (b) of this question
b. No .... 2 .... Please go directly to Question 25.
c. Undecided .... 3 .... Please go directly to Question 25.

(b) If "Yes", for which of the following reasons?

(Circle all that apply)

a. Lack of resources 1
b. Inadequate background 2
c. Dislike of science 3
d. Working conditions 4
e. Student attitudes 5
f. Other 6

25. Please indicate the statement that most closely applies to your situation. In general, I teach my science classes:

(Circle one)

a. In a laboratory or specially designed science room 1
b. In a classroom with occasional access to a laboratory 2
c. In a classroom with facilities for demonstrations only 3
d. In a classroom with no special facilities for science 4

26. Which statements most closely apply to your situation regarding equipment and supplies for teaching science?

(Circle all that apply)

a. There is ample equipment for student use 1
b. There is inexpensive, donated, or outdated equipment for student use 2
c. There is virtually no equipment for student use .. 3
d. There is adequate equipment for demonstration purposes 4
e. There is virtually no science equipment at all 5
f. There are sufficient consumable materials (chemicals, biological supplies, graph paper, etc.) 6
g. There is access to computing facilities 7
h. There is adequate audio-visual equipment 8

27. Overall, how do you rate the quality of the facilities and equipment available to you for teaching science?

(Circle one)

a. Very poor 1
b. Poor 2
c. Good 3
d. Excellent 4

VI STUDENTS' ABILITIES & INTERESTS

28. What is your perception of your students' attitudes toward learning science this year?

The majority of my students are:

(Circle one)

a. Ready to drop science 1
b. Indifferent 2
c. Fairly motivated 3
d. Highly motivated 4

29. What is your perception of your students' backgrounds and abilities to undertake the science courses you teach this year?

(Circle one)

a. Completely inadequate 1
b. Fairly inadequate 2
c. Fairly adequate 3
d. Completely adequate 4

30. We are interested in your perception of any differences in attitudes and ability (relating to science courses) between the boys and girls you teach. Please indicate which statement corresponds most closely to your experience.

(a) Attitudes

(Circle one)

a. The girls are more motivated than the boys 1
b. I see no difference in motivation 2
c. The boys are more motivated than the girls 3

(b) Ability

(Circle one)

a. The girls have greater ability than the boys 1
b. I see no difference in ability 2
c. The boys have greater ability than the girls 3

31. Please estimate how many of your students engage in each of the following activities.

(Circle one on each line)

	Very few 1	About half 2	Very many 3	I don't know 4
a. A science fair project	1	2	3	4
b. Membership in a science-related club	1	2	3	4
c. A visit to a museum or science centre during the past year	1	2	3	4
d. Regularly read a science-related magazine or book	1	2	3	4
e. Regularly watch a science-related TV show (or listen to a radio show)	1	2	3	4
f. Pursue actively a scientific hobby	1	2	3	4

VII INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

32. Subjects Taught

(a) Which statement most closely describes your teaching situation?

(Circle one)

a. I teach only science subjects 1
b. I teach both science and mathematics 2
c. I teach a variety of subjects of which science is only one 3

(b) This year, most of my time is spent in teaching:

(Circle one)

a. Physics 1
b. Chemistry 2
c. Biology 3
d. Earth science 4
e. Other science subjects 5
f. Non-science subjects 6

33. Teaching Load

(a) How many different grades do you teach this year altogether?

(Circle one)

a. 1 only 1
b. 2 2
c. 3 3
d. more than 3 4

(b) How many different classes do you teach this year altogether?

	(Circle one)
a. 1 only	1
b. 2-3	2
c. more than 3	3

(c) What is the average number of students in your classes?

	(Circle one)
a. 20 or less	1
b. 21-25	2
c. 26-30	3
d. 31-35	4
e. over 35	5

34. This question concerns your assessment of the amount of time allocated to science at the level at which you teach.

(a) How adequate is the amount of time allocated to science (based on your view of its importance relative to the other subjects of the curriculum)?

	(Circle one)
a. Inadequate	1
b. About right	2
c. Adequate	3

(b) How much time do you have to cover science courses?

	(Circle one)
a. Too little time	1
b. Just enough time	2
c. More than enough time	3

VIII COMMUNITY & PROFESSIONAL SUPPORT

35. With reference to the science program in your *school*, which of the following best describes the form of leadership which exists?

	(Circle one)
a. There is a specially designated department head for science	1
b. Leadership and coordination are carried out by a working group of teachers in the school	2
c. Leadership and coordination are carried out by the principal or vice-principal	3
d. Our school's science program has no particular form of leadership	4
e. I don't know	5

36. With reference to the science program in your *district/board*, which of the following best describes the form of leadership that exists?

(Circle one)

a. There is a specially designated science consultant, coordinator, or supervisor for science	1
b. Leadership and coordination are carried out by a working group of teachers in the district	2
c. Leadership and coordination are carried out by one of the school district superintendents	3
d. There is no particular form of leadership in science at the district level	4
e. I don't know	5

37. How important do *you* think various administrators and members of the community consider science to be relative to the other subjects in the school curriculum?

(Circle one on each line)

	Less important 1	Equally important 2	More important 3	I don't know 4
a. Your school principal	1	2	3	4
b. School board administrators	1	2	3	4
c. Parents	1	2	3	4
d. Trustees	1	2	3	4

Finally, we have three questions that focus on the role of industry in providing support for the work of science teachers. We are most interested in collecting teachers' views about this matter.

38. What experiences have you had of the involvement of industry with school science teaching?

(Circle all that apply)

a. Provision of curriculum materials	1
b. Financial support of activities such as science fairs	2
c. Visits to industry	3
d. Visits by industrial personnel to school	4
e. Provision of career information	5
f. Other experiences	6
g. No particular experience	7

39. In your judgement, are the contributions made by industry to science teaching . . .

(Circle one)

a. in the interests of the industry exclusively?	1
b. mostly in the interests of the industry?	2
c. equally helpful to both industry and school?	3
d. designed primarily to assist schools?	4
e. matters you have no opinion about?	5

40. Do you believe that it is appropriate for industry to be involved in science education at all?

(Circle one)

a. Yes 1
b. No 2
c. No opinion 3

THANK YOU VERY MUCH FOR COMPLETING THIS QUESTIONNAIRE.

If you have not already done so, make sure that your responses are recorded on the separate response sheet provided, then seal it in the envelope, and return it to the person who gave it to you. We do not need the questionnaire itself to be returned.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The Science Council of Canada acknowledges with thanks the authors of the many documents consulted during the development of this questionnaire. Questionnaires from the following studies have been of particular value.

Assessment of the Teaching of Science in Junior High Schools in the Maritimes, 1977.
The Teacher and Curriculum Development Project, Queen's University, Ontario, 1977
National Survey of Science, Mathematics, and Social Studies Education, U.S. National Science Foundation, 1977.
British Columbia Science Assessment, 1978.
Curriculum Task Force, Commission on Declining Enrolments in Ontario, 1978.
Étude Evalensci, University of Montreal, 1980.

SCIENCE COUNCIL OF CANADA
SCIENCE EDUCATION STUDY
A Questionnaire for Teachers of Science

RESPONSE SHEET

Please mark your response to each question by circling the appropriate number on this sheet, as clearly as possible. Most questions require only response only. However, a few, marked with an asterisk (*), may have multiple responses.

I GENERAL INFORMATION

		For Office Use Only
1.	1 2	(8)
2.	1 2 3	(9)
3.	1 2 3 4 5	(10)
4.	1 2	(11)
5.	1 2 3 4 5	(12)

II CURRICULUM & INSTRUCTION

			For Office Use Only
6.	(a) 1 2 3 4	(h) 1 2 3 4	(13/20)
	(b) 1 2 3 4	(i) 1 2 3 4	(14/21)
	(c) 1 2 3 4	(j) 1 2 3 4	(15/22)
	(d) 1 2 3 4	(k) 1 2 3 4	(16/23)
	(e) 1 2 3 4	(l) 1 2 3 4	(17/24)
	(f) 1 2 3 4	(m) 1 2 3 4	(18/25)
	(g) 1 2 3 4	(n) 1 2 3 4	(19/26)
7.	(a) 1 2 3 4 0	(h) 1 2 3 4 0	(27/34)
	(b) 1 2 3 4 0	(i) 1 2 3 4 0	(28/35)
	(c) 1 2 3 4 0	(j) 1 2 3 4 0	(29/36)
	(d) 1 2 3 4 0	(k) 1 2 3 4 0	(30/37)
	(e) 1 2 3 4 0	(l) 1 2 3 4 0	(31/38)
	(f) 1 2 3 4 0	(m) 1 2 3 4 0	(32/39)
	(g) 1 2 3 4 0	(n) 1 2 3 4 0	(33/40)
8.	(a) 1 2 3 4		(41)
	(b) 1 2 3 4		(42)
	(c) 1 2 3 4		(43)
	(d) 1 2 3 4		(44)
	(e) 1 2 3 4		(45)
	(f) 1 2 3 4		(46)

III CURRICULUM RESOURCES

9.	(a) 1 2 3 4 0	(h) 1 2 3 4 0	(47/54)
	(b) 1 2 3 4 0	(i) 1 2 3 4 0	(48/55)
	(c) 1 2 3 4 0	(j) 1 2 3 4 0	(49/56)
	(d) 1 2 3 4 0	(k) 1 2 3 4 0	(50/57)
	(e) 1 2 3 4 0	(l) 1 2 3 4 0	(51/58)
	(f) 1 2 3 4 0	(m) 1 2 3 4 0	(52/59)
	(g) 1 2 3 4 0		(53)
10.	(a) K 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13		(60-61)
	(b) 1 2		(62)
	(c) a.		(63-64)
	b.		
	c.		
	d.		
11.	(a) 1 2 3 4	(g) 1 2 3 4	(65/71)
	(b) 1 2 3 4	(h) 1 2 3 4	(66/72)
	(c) 1 2 3 4	(i) 1 2 3 4	(67/73)
	(d) 1 2 3 4	(j) 1 2 3 4	(68/74)
	(e) 1 2 3 4	(k) 1 2 3 4	(69/75)
	(f) 1 2 3 4		(70)
12.	(a) 1 2 3 4 5 6		(76)
	(b) 1 2 3 4 5 6		(77)
	(c) 1 2 3 4 5 6		(78)
13.	(a) 1 2 3		(79)
	(b) 1 2 3		(80)
	(c) 1 2 3		(81)
	(d) 1 2 3		(82)
	(e) 1 2 3		(83)

IV TEACHER BACKGROUND & EXPERIENCE

14.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7		(84)
15.	(a) 1 2 3		(85)
	(b) 1 2 3		(86)
	(c) 1 2 3		(87)
	(d) 1 2 3		(88)

16.	(a)	1 2 3 4 5			(89)
	(b)	1 2 3 4 5			(90)
	(c)	1 2 3 4 5			(91)
	(d)	1 2 3 4 5			(92)
17.	(a)	1 2 3 4			(93)
	(b)	1 2 3 4			(94)
18.	(a)	1 2 3 4			(95)
	(b)	1 2 3 4			(96)
	(c)	1 2 3 4			(97)
*19.		1 2 3 4 5 6 7			(98-104)
20.	(a)	1 2 3 4 0	(h)	1 2 3 4 0	(105/112)
	(b)	1 2 3 4 0	(i)	1 2 3 4 0	(106/113)
	(c)	1 2 3 4 0	(j)	1 2 3 4 0	(107/114)
	(d)	1 2 3 4 0	(k)	1 2 3 4 0	(108/115)
	(e)	1 2 3 4 0	(l)	1 2 3 4 0	(109/116)
	(f)	1 2 3 4 0	(m)	1 2 3 4 0	(110/117)
	(g)	1 2 3 4 0	(n)	1 2 3 4 0	(111/118)
21.	(a)	1 2 3 4			(119)
	(b)	1 2 3 4			(120)
22.		1 2 3 4 5			(121)
23.		1 2 3 4 5			(122)
24.	(a)	1 2 3			(123)
	*(b)	1 2 3 4 5 6			(124-130)

V PHYSICAL FACILITIES & EQUIPMENT

25.	1 2 3 4	(131)
*26.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	(132-140)
27.	1 2 3 4	(141)

VI STUDENTS' ABILITIES & ATTITUDES

28.		1 2 3 4	(142)
29.		1 2 3 4	(143)
30.	(a)	1 2 3	(144)
	(b)	1 2 3	(145)
31.	(a)	1 2 3 4	(146)
	(b)	1 2 3 4	(147)
	(c)	1 2 3 4	(148)
	(d)	1 2 3 4	(149)
	(e)	1 2 3 4	(150)
	(f)	1 2 3 4	(151)

VII INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

32.	(a)	1 2 3	(152)
	(b)	1 2 3 4 5 6	(153)
33.	(a)	1 2 3 4	(154)
	(b)	1 2 3	(155)
	(c)	1 2 3 4 5	(156)
34.	(a)	1 2 3	(157)
	(b)	1 2 3	(158)

VIII COMMUNITY & PROFESSIONAL SUPPORT

35.		1 2 3 4 5	(159)
36.		1 2 3 4 5	(160)
37.	(a)	1 2 3 4	(161)
	(b)	1 2 3 4	(162)
	(c)	1 2 3 4	(163)
	(d)	1 2 3 4	(164)
*38.		1 2 3 4 5 6 7	(165-171)
39.		1 2 3 4 5	(172)
40.		1 2 3	(173)

Appendix B

Sampling, Estimation and Sampling Error Computations

Sampling Computations

The use of probability sampling allows calculation both of unbiased estimates of population characteristics and of sampling errors associated with those estimates. The purpose of this section is to review technical aspects of the sample selection and weighting procedures.

Sample Selection

The procedures used for sample selection are outlined in general terms in chapter I of this report. What follows is a more detailed account of how sample sizes were calculated and an illustration of their use in selecting a typical sample. Sample sizes were calculated for each teaching level (early, middle and senior years) according to our requirements for data reliability. The size of each required sample (n_o) is given by the following formula:

$$n_o = \frac{4pq}{d^2} \qquad (1)$$

where d = error acceptable in estimates
p = proportion of teachers having a given characteristic
q = 1 - p

Since p was unknown, it was taken to be 0.5, giving pq a maximum value and ensuring a large enough sample size. Also, (as noted in chapter I, notes 3 and 7) d was taken to be 0.05 at the regional level and 0.1 at the provincial level, both at a 95 per cent confidence level.

If n_o thus calculated was found to be greater than five per cent of the population (N), a revised sample size (n′) was determined using the following finite population correction factor:

$$n' = \frac{n_o}{1 + n_o/N} \qquad (2)$$

Finally, another correction factor was applied to adjust for the anticipated nonresponse rate, using the following formula:

$$n'' = n_o \text{ (or } n') \div \text{expected response rate (0.8)} \qquad (3)$$

where n″ is the sample size used for the next stage of the sampling process.

It was decided to sample elementary schools (defined for this purpose as those schools comprising kindergarten to grade 6) on the basis of the required numbers of early-years teachers, and to sample secondary schools (defined for this purpose as those comprising grades 7 to 13) on the basis of the total number of teachers required for both middle and senior years. (See chapter I, note 8 for a fuller version of this definition of "elementary" and "secondary.")

For every province and territory, a list of schools was available which showed the range of grades taught and the number of teachers employed. On the basis of these lists, all schools were classified as either elementary or secondary. In the case of elementary schools, all teachers were regarded as potential respondents, while in the case of secondary schools, approximately one-fifth of the teachers were so considered. The following general example illustrates the procedure that was used to select a sample.

Suppose that, in a given province, the calculation described above showed that a sample of x early-years science teachers was required. Using the average number of teachers per school in that province, it was estimated that y elementary schools would be required in order to obtain a sample of x science teachers. Following a random start, every zth school on the list was selected (where z is the total number of elementary schools in the province divided by y). Finally the total number of teachers in the selected sample of y schools was checked to ensure that it was greater than or equal to x. If this was found not to be the case, the selection procedure was repeated until an adequate sample was obtained.

Weighting

As explained in chapter I, a system of disproportionate sampling such as that used here requires a corresponding system of weighting of each teacher's responses in order that final estimates reflect the balance of the original population. The weights assigned to the responses of teachers in this survey were determined on the basis of the probabilities of the teachers' being selected. The probability of selecting a given teacher is the product of the probability of the teacher's school being selected and the probability of selecting a science teacher within that school. In the present survey, since all science teachers within selected schools were requested to respond, this latter probability was intended to be 1. The weight assigned to the responses of a given teacher is, then, the reciprocal of the probability of his or her being selected.

Additional weight was given to take into account nonresponse by both teacher and school. The final weight used for a particular set of responses thus consisted of the product of three components:

- the inverse of the probability of the school being selected:
- the inverse of the school response rate;

- the inverse of the teacher response rate (within responding schools).

Weights are thus dependent on the province and type of school (elementary/secondary) but independent of the teaching level (early/middle/senior years) within a given school. The formula for calculating weights for teachers at elementary schools is as follows:

$$w_e = \frac{M_e}{m_e} \times \frac{n''_e}{n'_e} \qquad (4)$$

where w_e = weight assigned to teachers from elementary schools
M_e = total number of elementary schools in the province
m_e = number of elementary schools responding to survey*
n''_e = number of teachers at elementary schools given a questionnaire*
n'_e = number of teachers at elementary schools responding to survey*

For secondary schools, a corresponding formula is used.

Calculation of Estimates

To this point, all calculations have been based on the two levels of school – elementary and secondary – which constituted our sampling frame. However, the estimates had to be expressed in terms of the three teaching levels – early, middle and senior years – by which the other parts of the study are structured. In responding to the survey, respondents classified themselves into these three categories, and when these data were analyzed, it was found that early- and middle-years teachers were located in both elementary and secondary schools while senior-years teachers came exclusively from secondary schools. This factor required that special calculations be undertaken to prepare balanced estimates for the three teaching levels. First, however, it was necessary to estimate the populations of teachers at each school level in each province. The formulae for calculation of weights can be used for this purpose also. As an illustration, the formula for the population of early-years teachers at elementary schools in a given province is as follows:

$$N_e = w_e n_e \qquad (5)$$

---

* Indicates information collected from the control forms completed by principals

where N_e = number of early-years teachers at elementary schools
w_e = weight assigned to teachers from elementary schools
n_e = number of early-years teachers at elementary schools responding to survey

A corresponding formula may be used for estimating the number of early-years teachers at secondary schools (N_s), and the total number of early-years teachers in the province (N_e) is then the sum of N_e and N_s. Similar calculations may be made for the populations of teachers at the middle- and senior-years levels.

Estimates (in the form of percentages) for each response and teaching level can now be calculated. As an example, consider the data resulting from a particular response by early-years teachers in a particular province. To determine the proportion of early-years teachers in that province who responded in a particular way, the proportions of early-years teachers from elementary schools and from secondary schools are computed separately and then combined to form the net proportion. Specifically, the proportion of early-years teachers from elementary schools responding to a question in a specific way (p_e) is given by the following formula:

$$p_e = \frac{a_e}{n_e} \tag{6}$$

where a_e = total number of early-years teachers in elementary schools responding in the specified way
n_e = total number of early-years teachers in elementary schools responding to the survey

The proportion of early-years teachers in secondary schools responding in the specified way (p_s) is calculated in a parallel manner. The combined proportion (p_E) is then determined as follows:

$$p_E = \frac{N_e p_e + N_s p_s}{N_E} \tag{7}$$

where N_e = population of early-years science teachers in elementary schools
N_s = population of early-years science teachers in secondary schools
N_E = population of early-years science teachers in the province

Estimates for the middle years are calculated in an identical manner, while those for the senior years are simpler because they involve responses from secondary schools only.

Once provincial estimates are constructed as described here, it is possible to calculate national estimates also. Continuing the same example, the overall proportion of early-years teachers in Canada responding in the specified way to a particular question (p_{can}) is given by the following formula:

$$p_{can} = \sum_{k=1}^{12} \frac{N_k}{N_{can}} p_k \qquad (8)$$

where p_k = estimated proportion of early-years teachers in province K responding in the specified way

N_k = population of early-years science teachers in province K

N_{can} = population of early-years science teachers in Canada

Sampling Error Estimation

Every piece of information inferred from a sample is subject to sampling error. It is important to check that the errors due to sampling are not so large as to invalidate the results. The variance and standard error of an estimate are used to express sampling errors and, in the case of our survey, both have been calculated from our sample data.

The variance of a proportional estimate based on responses from elementary schools, $var(p_e)$, is given by the following formula:

$$var(p_e) = \frac{1 - f_e}{n_e^2} \left(\frac{m_e}{m_e - 1} \right) \left[\sum_{j=1}^{m_e} a_{ej}^2 + p_e^2 \sum_{j=1}^{m_e} n_{ej}^2 - 2p_e \sum_{j=1}^{m_e} a_{ej}\, n_{ej} \right] \qquad (9)$$

where f_e = m_e / M_e

a_{ej} = number of teachers who responded in the jth elementary school in a particular way

n_{ej} = number of teachers who responded in the jth elementary school

j = $1, 2, 3, \ldots, m_e$

A corresponding variance can be calculated for a proportion based on responses from secondary schools. The overall variance of the proportional estimate var(p) is then given by the formula:

$$\mathrm{var}(p) = \left(\frac{N_e}{N}\right)^2 \mathrm{var}(p_e) + \left(\frac{N_s}{N}\right)^2 \mathrm{var}(p_s) \qquad (10)$$

The standard error of p is given by the following formula:

$$\mathrm{s.e.}(p) = \sqrt{\mathrm{var}(p)} \qquad (11)$$

The variance of a proportional estimate at the national level, p_{can}, is determined by use of the following formula:

$$\mathrm{var}(p_{can}) = \sum_{k=1}^{12} \left(\frac{N_k}{N_{can}}\right)^2 \mathrm{var}(p_k) \qquad (12)$$

where N_k = population of science teachers at a given level in province K

N_{can} = population of science teachers at that level in Canada

The standard error of p_{can} is given by the formula:

$$\mathrm{s.e.}(p_{can}) = \sqrt{\mathrm{var}(p_{can})} \qquad (13)$$

The range of standard errors calculated in this way for national estimates in this survey is presented in Table I.5 of this report.

Reliability of the Data

The concept of standard error described here is the basis for determining the reliability of the estimates. It is used to compute a confidence interval at a specified level of probability. For example, for a 95 per cent probability level, there is a range around the true population value within which estimates from repeated samples can be expected to lie 95 per cent of the time. This range or confidence interval can be calculated using the following formula:

$$p = \pm 1.96 \times \mathrm{s.e.} \qquad (14)$$

The relatively small standard errors in our survey mean that the confidence intervals are correspondingly narrow and that the national estimates have a relatively high degree of reliability.

Notes

I. Survey Objectives and Methodology

1. The six regions are: Atlantic Canada, Québec, Ontario, Prairies, British Columbia and the Northwest Territories.

2. Estimates were produced from teacher census data collected annually by the Elementary-Secondary Section of the Education, Science and Culture Division of Statistics Canada.

3. We wanted regional estimates to be within five per cent, 95 per cent of the time.

4. We anticipated a response rate of 80 per cent after follow-up – that is, after teachers had been contacted a second or third time.

5. We assumed that the design effect, defined as the ratio of the variance of the estimate given by our sampling plan to the variance of the estimate given by a simple random sample of the same size would be equal to 1. This assumption was made because there was no reason to believe that responses of teachers within sampled schools would be highly correlated for the sort of topics covered in the questionnaire. Had there been a high degree of similarity in the responses of teachers from the same school, the effect would have been to inflate the variance of estimates, resulting in an increased ratio of variances and thus a design effect greater than 1.

6. Ten thousand questionnaires was set as a maximum.

7. We wanted provincial estimates to be within 10 per cent, 95 per cent of the time.

8. For the purpose of sampling, schools were classified into two categories – elementary or secondary – depending on the grade range of each school. We defined elementary schools as those schools containing grades kindergarten to grade 6 and secondary schools as those schools containing grades 7 to 13. Schools having both elementary and secondary grades, especially intermediate or middle schools, were placed into the category corresponding to the majority of its grades. Schools containing all grades (kindergarten through grades 12 or 13) were considered as secondary schools for sampling purposes. This procedure enabled us to obtain an adequate sample of middle-years teachers owing to the higher sampling ratios used for secondary schools.

9. The basis for classifying schools as urban or rural is the "metropolitan/nonmetropolitan indicator" used by Statistics Canada. This indicator identifies 26 communities in Canada as urban centres.

10. To estimate the number of science teachers in schools, it was assumed that teachers in elementary schools are generalists (that is, that they teach a variety of subjects) and are expected to teach some science as a part of their teaching assignment. Thus, every teacher was considered a potential respondent to our survey. In secondary schools, however, where most teachers are science specialists, we assumed that roughly one-sixth to one-quarter of the teachers (depending on the grade range of the school) teach science and were therefore potential respondents.

Additional References

William G. Cochran, *Sampling Techniques*, John Wiley, New York, 1977.

Leslie Kish, *Survey Sampling*, John Wiley, New York, 1965.

John B. Lansing and James N. Morgan, *Economic Survey Methods*, Institute of Social Research, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor MI, 1971.

A. Satin and W. Shastry, *A Presentation on Survey Sampling*, Statistics Canada, 1980.

Donald P. Warwick and Charles A. Lininger, *The Sample Survey: Theory and Practice*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1975.

Publications of the Science Council of Canada

Policy Reports

No. 1. **A Space Program for Canada,** July 1967 (SS22-1967/1, $0.75), 31 p.

No. 2. **The Proposal for an Intense Neutron Generator: Initial Assessment and Recommendation,** December 1967 (SS22-1967/2, $0.75), 12 p.

No. 3. **A Major Program of Water Resources Research in Canada,** September 1968 (SS22-1968/3, $0.75), 37 p.

No. 4. **Towards a National Science Policy in Canada,** October 1968 (SS22-1968/4, $1.00), 56 p.

No. 5. **University Research and the Federal Government,** September 1969 (SS22-1969/5, $0.75), 28 p.

No. 6. **A Policy for Scientific and Technical Information Dissemination,** September 1969 (SS22-1969/6, $0.75), 35 p.

No. 7. **Earth Sciences Serving the Nation – Recommendations,** April 1970 (SS22-1970/7, $0.75), 36 p.

No. 8. **Seeing the Forest and the Trees,** October 1970 (SS22-1970/8, $0.75), 22 p.

No. 9. **This Land is Their Land. . . ,** October 1970 (SS22-1970/9, $0.75), 41 p.

No. 10. **Canada, Science and the Oceans,** November 1970 (SS22-1970/10, $0.75), 37 p.

No. 11. **A Canadian STOL Air Transport System – A Major Program,** December 1970 (SS22-1970/11, $0.75), 33 p.

No. 12. **Two Blades of Grass: The Challenge Facing Agriculture,** March 1971 (SS22-1971/12, $1.25), 61 p.

No. 13. **A Trans-Canada Computer Communications Network: Phase 1 of a Major Program on Computers,** August 1971 (SS22-1971/13, $0.75), 41 p.

No. 14. **Cities for Tomorrow: Some Applications of Science and Technology to Urban Development,** September 1971 (SS22-1971/14, $1.25), 67 p.

No. 15. **Innovation in a Cold Climate: The Dilemma of Canadian Manufacturing,** October 1971 (SS22-1971/15, $0.75), 49 p.

No. 16. **It Is Not Too Late – Yet: A look at some pollution problems in Canada. . . ,** June 1972 (SS22-1972/16, $1.00), 52 p.

No. 17. **Lifelines: Some Policies for a Basic Biology in Canada,** August 1972 (SS22-1972/17, $1.00), 73 p.

No. 18. **Policy Objectives for Basic Research in Canada,** September 1972 (SS22-1972/18, $1.00), 75 p.

No. 19. **Natural Resource Policy Issues in Canada,** January 1973 (SS22-1973/19, $1.25), 59 p.

No. 20. **Canada, Science and International Affairs,** April 1973 (SS22-1973/20, $1.25), 66 p.

No. 21. **Strategies of Development for the Canadian Computer Industry,** September 1973 (SS22-1973/21, $1.50), 80 p.

No. 22. **Science for Health Services,** October 1974 (SS22-1974/22, $2.00), 140 p.

No. 23. **Canada's Energy Opportunities,** March 1975 (SS22-1975/23, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 135 p.

No. 24. **Technology Transfer: Government Laboratories to Manufacturing Industry,** December 1975 (SS22-1975/24, Canada: $1.00, other countries: $1.20), 61. p.

No. 25. **Population, Technology and Resources,** July 1976 (SS22-1976/25, Canada: $3.00, other countries: $3.60), 91 p.

No. 26. **Northward Looking: A Strategy and a Science Policy for Northern Development,** August 1977 (SS22-1977/26, Canada: $2.50, other countries: $3.00), 95 p.

No. 27. **Canada as a Conserver Society: Resource Uncertainties and the Need for New Technologies,** September 1977 (SS22-1977/27, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 108 p.

No. 28. **Policies and Poisons: The Containment of Long-term Hazards to Human Health in the Environment and in the Workplace,** October 1977 (SS22-1977/28, Canada: $2.00, other countries: $2.40), 76 p.

No. 29. **Forging the Links: A Technology Policy for Canada,** February 1979 (SS22-1979/29, Canada: $2.25, other countries: $2.70), 72 p.

No. 30. **Roads to Energy Self-Reliance: The Necessary National Demonstrations,** June 1979 (SS22-1979/30, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 200 p.

No. 31. **University Research in Jeopardy: The Threat of Declining Enrolment,** December 1979 (SS22-1979/31, Canada: $2.95, other countries: $3.55), 61 p.

No. 32. **Collaboration for Self-Reliance: Canada's Scientific and Technological Contribution to the Food Supply of Developing Countries,** March 1981 (SS22-1981/32, Canada: $3.95, other countries: $4.75), 112 p.

No. 33. **Tomorrow is Too Late: Planning Now for an Information Society,** April 1982 (SS22-1982/33, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 77 p.

No. 34. **Transportation in a Resource-Conscious Future: Intercity Passenger Travel in Canada,** September 1982 (SS22-1982/34, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 112 p.

No. 35. **Regulating the Regulators: Science, Values and Decisions,** October 1982 (SS22-1982/35, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 106 p.

No. 36. **Science for Every Student: Educating Canadians for Tomorrow's World,** April 1984 (SS22-1984/36E, Canada: $5.25, other countries: $6.30).

Statements of Council

Supporting Canadian Science: Time for Action, May 1978
Canada's Threatened Forests, March 1983

Statements of Council Committees

Toward a Conserver Society: A Statement of Concern, by the Committee on the Implications of a Conserver Society, 1976, 22 p.

Erosion of the Research Manpower Base in Canada: A Statement of Concern, by the Task Force on Research in Canada, 1976.

Uncertain Prospects: Canadian Manufacturing Industry 1971-1977, by the Industrial Policies Committee, 1977, 55 p.

Communications and Computers: Information and Canadian Society, by an ad hoc committee, 1978, 40 p.

A Scenario for the Implementation of Interactive Computer-Communications Systems in the Home, by the Committee on Computers and Communication, 1979, 40 p.

Multinationals and Industrial Strategy: The Role of World Product Mandates, by the Working Group on Industrial Policies, 1980, 77 p.

Hard Times, Hard Choices: A Statement by the Industrial Policies Committee, 1981, 99 p.

The Science Education of Women in Canada: A Statement of Concern by the Science and Education Committee, 1982.

Reports on Matters Referred by the Minister

Research and Development in Canada, a report of the Ad Hoc Advisory Committee to the Minister of State for Science and Technology, 1979, 32 p.

Public Awareness of Science and Technology in Canada, a staff report to the Minister of State for Science and Technology, 1981, 57 p.

Background Studies

No. 1. **Upper Atmosphere and Space Programs in Canada,** by J.H. Chapman, P.A. Forsyth, P.A. Lapp, G.N. Patterson, February 1967 (SS21-1/1, $2.50), 258 p.

No. 2. **Physics in Canada: Survey and Outlook,** by a Study Group of the Canadian Association of Physicists, headed by D.C. Rose, May 1967 (SS21-1/2, $2.50), 385 p.

No. 3. **Psychology in Canada,** by M.H. Appley and Jean Rickwood, September 1967 (SS21-1/3, $2.50), 131 p.

No. 4. **The Proposal for an Intense Neutron Generator: Scientific and Economic Evaluation,** by a Committee of the Science Council of Canada, December 1967 (SS21-1/4, $2.00), 181 p.

No. 5. **Water Resources Research in Canada,** by J.P. Bruce and D.E.L. Maasland, July 1968 (SS21-1/5, $2.50), 169 p.

No. 6. **Background Studies in Science Policy: Projections of R&D Manpower and Expenditure,** by R.W. Jackson, D.W. Henderson and B. Leung, 1969 (SS21-1/6, $1.25), 85 p.

No. 7. **The Role of the Federal Government in Support of Research in Canadian Universities,** by John B. Macdonald, L.P. Dugal, J.S. Dupré, J.B. Marshall, J.G. Parr, E. Sirluck, and E. Vogt, 1969 (SS21-1/7, $3.75), 361 p.

No. 8. **Scientific and Technical Information in Canada, Part I,** by J.P.I. Tyas, 1969 (SS21-1/8, $1.50), 62 p.
Part II, Chapter 1, Government Departments and Agencies (SS21-1/8-2-1, $1.75), 168 p.
Part II, Chapter 2, Industry (SS21-1/8-2-2, $1.25), 80 p.
Part II, Chapter 3, Universities (SS21-1/8-2-3, $1.75), 115 p.
Part II, Chapter 4, International Organizations and Foreign Countries (SS21-1/8-2-4, $1.00), 63 p.
Part II, Chapter 5, Techniques and Sources (SS21-1/8-2-5, $1.15), 99 p.
Part II, Chapter 6, Libraries (SS21-1/8-2-6, $1.00), 49 p.
Part II, Chapter 7, Economics (SS21-1/8-2-7, $1.00), 63 p.

No. 9. **Chemistry and Chemical Engineering: A Survey of Research and Development in Canada,** by a Study Group of the Chemical Institute of Canada, 1969 (SS21-1/9, $2.50), 102 p.

No. 10. **Agricultural Science in Canada,** by B.N. Smallman, D.A. Chant, D.M. Connor, J.C. Gilson, A.E. Hannah, D.N. Huntley, E. Mercer, M. Shaw, 1970 (SS21-1/10, $2.00), 148 p.

No. 11. **Background to Invention,** by Andrew H. Wilson, 1970 (SS21-1/11, $1.50), 77 p.

No. 12. **Aeronautics – Highway to the Future,** by J.J. Green, 1970 (SS21-1/12, $2.50), 148 p.

No. 13. **Earth Sciences Serving the Nation,** by Roger A. Blais, Charles H. Smith, J.E. Blanchard, J.T. Cawley, D.R. Derry, Y.O. Fortier, G.G.L. Henderson, J.R. Mackay, J.S. Scott, H.O. Seigel, R.B. Toombs, H.D.B. Wilson, 1971 (SS21-1/13, $4.50), 363 p.

No. 14. **Forest Resources in Canada,** by J. Harry, G. Smith and Gilles Lessard, May 1971 (SS21-1/14, $3.50), 204 p.

No. 15. **Scientific Activities in Fisheries and Wildlife Resources,** by D.H. Pimlott, C.J. Kerswill and J.R. Bider, June 1971 (SS21-1/15, $3.50), 191 p.

No. 16. **Ad Mare: Canada Looks to the Sea,** by R.W. Stewart and L.M. Dickie, September 1971 (SS21-1/16, $2.50), 175 p.

No. 17. **A Survey of Canadian Activity in Transportation R&D,** by C.B. Lewis, May 1971 (SS21-1/17, $0.75), 29 p.

No. 18. **From Formalin to Fortran: Basic Biology in Canada,** by P.A. Larkin and W.J.D. Stephen, August 1971 (SS21-1/18, $2.50), 79 p.

No. 19. **Research Councils in the Provinces: A Canadian Resource,** by Andrew H. Wilson, June 1971 (SS21-1/19, $1.50), 115 p.

No. 20. **Prospects for Scientists and Engineers in Canada,** by Frank Kelly, March 1971 (SS21-1/20, $1.00), 61 p.

No. 21. **Basic Research,** by P. Kruus, December 1971 (SS21-1/21, $1.50), 73 p.

No. 22. **The Multinational Firm, Foreign Direct Investment, and Canadian Science Policy,** by Arthur J. Cordell, December 1971 (SS21-1/22, $1.50), 95 p.

No. 23. **Innovation and the Structure of Canadian Industry,** by Pierre L. Bourgault, October 1972 (SS21-1/23, $4.00), 135 p.

No. 24. **Air Quality – Local, Regional and Global Aspects,** by R.E. Munn, October 1972 (SS21-1/24, $0.75), 39 p.

No. 25. **National Engineering, Scientific and Technological Societies of Canada,** by the Management Committee of SCITEC and Prof. Allen S. West, December 1971 (SS21-1/25, $2.50), 131 p.

No. 26. **Governments and Innovation,** by Andrew H. Wilson, April 1973 (SS21-1/26, $3.75), 275 p.

No. 27. **Essays on Aspects of Resource Policy,** by W.D. Bennett, A.D. Chambers, A.R. Thompson, H.R. Eddy, and A.J. Cordell, May 1973 (SS21-1/27, $2.50), 113 p.

No. 28. **Education and Jobs: Career patterns among selected Canadian science graduates with international comparisons,** by A.D. Boyd and A.C. Gross, June 1973 (SS21-1/28, $2.25), 139 p.

No. 29. **Health Care in Canada: A Commentary,** by H. Rocke Robertson, August 1973 (SS21-1/29, $2.75), 173 p.

No. 30. **A Technology Assessment System: A Case Study of East Coast Offshore Petroleum Exploration,** by M. Gibbons and R. Voyer, March 1974 (SS21-1/30, $2.00), 114 p.

No. 31. **Knowledge, Power and Public Policy,** by Peter Aucoin and Richard French, November 1974 (SS21-1/31, $2.00), 95 p.

No. 32. **Technology Transfer in Construction,** by A.D. Boyd and A.H. Wilson, January 1975 (SS21-1/32, $3.50), 163 p.

No. 33. **Energy Conservation,** by F.H. Knelman, July 1975 (SS21-1/33, Canada: $1.75, other countries: $2.10), 169 p.

No. 34. **Northern Development and Technology Assessment Systems: A study of petroleum development programs in the Mackenzie Delta-Beaufort Sea Region and the Arctic Islands,** by Robert F. Keith, David W. Fischer, Colin E. De'Ath, Edward J. Farkas, George R. Francis, and Sally C. Lerner, January 1976 (SS21-1/34, Canada: $3.75, other countries: $4.50), 219 p.

No. 35. **The Role and Function of Government Laboratories and the Transfer of Technology to the Manufacturing Sector,** by A.J. Cordell and J.M. Gilmour, April 1976 (SS21-1/35, Canada: $6.50, other countries: $7.80), 397 p.

No. 36. **The Political Economy of Northern Development,** by K.J. Rea, April 1976 (SS21-1/36, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 251 p.

No. 37. **Mathematical Sciences in Canada,** by Klaus P. Beltzner, A. John Coleman, and Gordon D. Edwards, July 1976 (SS21-1/37, Canada: $6.50, other countries: $7.80), 339 p.

No. 38. **Human Goals and Science Policy,** by R.W. Jackson, October 1976 (SS21-1/38, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 134 p.

No. 39. **Canadian Law and the Control of Exposure to Hazards,** by Robert T. Franson, Alastair R. Lucas, Lorne Giroux, and Patrick Kenniff, October 1977 (SS21-1/39, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 152 p.

No. 40. **Government Regulation of the Occupational and General Environments in the United Kingdom, United States and Sweden,** by Roger Williams, October 1977 (SS21-1/40, Canada: $5.00, other countries: $6.00), 155 p.

No. 41. **Regulatory Processes and Jurisdictional Issues in the Regulation of Hazardous Products in Canada,** by G. Bruce Doern, October 1977 (SS21-1/41, Canada: $5.50, other countries: $6.00), 201 p.

No. 42. **The Strathcona Sound Mining Project: A Case Study of Decision Making,** by Robert B. Gibson, February 1978 (SS21-1/42, Canada: $8.00, other countries: $9.60), 274 p.

No. 43. **The Weakest Link: A Technological Perspective on Canadian Industrial Underdevelopment,** by John N.H. Britton and James M. Gilmour, assisted by Mark G. Murphy, October 1978 (SS21-1/43, Canada: $5.00, other countries: $6.00), 216 p.

No. 44. **Canadian Government Participation in International Science and Technology,** by Jocelyn Maynard Ghent, February 1979 (SS21-1/44, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 136 p.

No. 45. **Partnership in Development: Canadian Universities and World Food,** by William E. Tossell, August 1980 (SS21-1/45, Canada: $6.00, other countries: $7.20), 145 p.

No. 46. **The Peripheral Nature of Scientific and Technological Controversy in Federal Policy Formation,** by G. Bruce Doern, July 1981 (SS21-1/46, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 108 p.

No. 47. **Public Inquiries in Canada,** by Liora Salter and Debra Slaco, with the assistance of Karin Konstantynowicz, September 1981 (SS21-1/47, Canada: $7.95, other countries: $9.55), 232 p.

No. 48. **Threshold Firms: Backing Canada's Winners,** by Guy P.F. Steed, July 1982 (SS21-1/48, Canada: $6.95, other countries: $8.35), 173 p.

No. 49. **Governments and Microelectronics: The European Experience,** by Dirk de Vos, March 1983 (SS21-1/49, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 112 p.

No. 50. **The Challenge of Diversity: Industrial Policy in the Canadian Federation,** by Michael Jenkin, July 1983, (SS21-1/50, Canada: $8.95, other countries: $10.75), 214 p.

No. 51. **Partners in Industrial Strategy: The Special Role of the Provincial Research Organizations,** by Donald J. Le Roy and Paul Dufour, November 1983 (SS21-1/51, Canada: $5.50, other countries: $6.60, 146 p.

Occasional Publications

1976

Energy Scenarios for the Future, by Hedlin, Menzies & Associates, 423 p.
Science and the North: An Essay on Aspirations, by Peter Larkin, 8 p.

A Nuclear Dialogue: Proceedings of a Workshop on Issues in Nuclear Power for Canada, 75 p.

1977

An Overview of the Canadian Mercury Problem, by Clarence T. Charlebois, 20 p.
An Overview of the Vinyl Chloride Hazard in Canada, by J. Basuk, 16 p.
Materials Recycling: History, Status, Potential, by F.T. Gerson Limited, 98 p.

University Research Manpower: Concerns and Remedies, Proceedings of a Workshop on the Optimization of Age Distribution in University Research, 19 p.
The Workshop on Optimization of Age Distribution in University Research:
Papers for Discussion, 215 p.
Background Papers, 338 p.
Living with Climatic Change: A Proceedings, 90 p.
Proceedings of the Seminar on Natural Gas from the Arctic by Marine Mode: A Preliminary Assessment, 254 p.

Seminar on a National Transportation System for Optimum Service: Proceedings, 73 p.

1978

A Northern Resource Centre: A First Step Toward a University of the North, by the Committee on Northern Development, 13 p.
An Overview of the Canadian Asbestos Problem, by Clarence T. Charlebois, 20 p.
An Overview of the Oxides of Nitrogren Problem in Canada, by J. Basuk, 48 p.
Federal Funding of Science in Canada: Apparent and Effective Levels, by J. Miedzinski and K.P. Beltzner, 78 p.

Appropriate Scale for Canadian Industry: A Proceedings, 211 p.
Proceedings of the Public Forum on Policies and Poisons, 40 p.
Science Policies in Smaller Industrialized Northern Countries: A Proceedings, 93 p.

1979

A Canadian Context for Science Education, by James E. Page, 52 p.
An Overview of the Ionizing Radiation Hazard in Canada, by J. Basuk, 225 p.
Canadian Food and Agriculture: Sustainability and Self-Reliance: A Discussion Paper, by the Committee on Canada's Scientific and Technological Contribution to World Food Supply, 52 p.

From the Bottom Up – Involvement of Canadian NGOs in Food and Rural Development in the Third World: A Proceedings, 153 p.
Opportunities in Canadian Transportation:
    Conference Proceedings: 1, 162 p.
    Auto Sub-Conference Proceedings: 2, 136 p.
    Bus/Rail Sub-Conference Proceedings: 3, 122 p.
    Air Sub-Conference Proceedings: 4, 131 p.
The Politics of an Industrial Strategy: A Proceedings, 115 p.

1980

Food for the Poor: The Role of CIDA in Agricultural, Fisheries and Rural Development, by Suteera Thomson, 194 p.
Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching, by Glen S. Aikenhead, 81 p.

Entropy and the Economic Process: A Proceedings, 107 p.
Opportunities in Canadian Transportation Conference Proceedings: 5, 270 p.
Proceedings of the Seminar on University Research in Jeopardy, 83 p.
Social Issues in Human Genetics – Genetic Screening and Counselling: A Proceedings, 110 p.
The Impact of the Microelectronics Revolution on Work and Working: A Proceedings, 73 p.

1981

An Engineer's View of Science Education, by Donald A. George, 34 p.
The Limits of Consultation: A Debate among Ottawa, the Provinces, and the Private Sector on an Industrial Strategy, by D. Brown, J. Eastman, with I. Robinson, 195 p.

Biotechnology in Canada – Promises and Concerns, 62 p.
Challenge of the Research Complex:
    Proceedings, 116 p.
    Papers, 324 p.

The Adoption of Foreign Technology by Canadian Industry, 152 p.
The Impact of the Microelectronics Revolution on the Canadian Electronics Industry, 109 p.
Policy Issues in Computer-Aided Learning, 51 p.

1982
What is Scientific Thinking? by Hugh Munby, 43 p.
Macroscole, A Holistic Approach to Science Teaching, by M. Risi, 61 p.

Québec Science Education – Which Directions?, 135 p.
Who Turns The Wheel?, 136 p.

1983
Parliamentarians and Science, by Karen Fish, 49 p.
Scientific Literacy: Towards Balance in Setting Goals for School Science Programs, by Douglas A. Roberts, 43 p.
The Conserver Society Revisited, by Ted Schrecker, 50 p.

A Workshop on Artificial Intelligence, 75 p.

Volume

3

Science
Council
of Canada

Conseil
des sciences
du Canada

Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Volume III
Case Studies of Science Teaching

Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Volume III

Case Studies of Science Teaching

April 1984

Science Council of Canada
100 Metcalfe Street
17th Floor
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5M1

© Minister of Supply and Services, 1984

Available in Canada through
authorized bookstore agents
and other bookstores
or by mail from

Canadian Government Publishing Centre
Supply and Services Canada
Hull, Québec, Canada K1A 0S9

Vous pouvez également
vous procurer la version française,
à l'adresse ci-dessus

Catalogue No. SS21-1/52-3-1984E
ISBN 0-660-11472-0

Price: Canada: $10.95
Other countries: $13.15

Price subject to change without notice.

Background Study 52

Science Education in Canadian Schools

Volume III
Case Studies of Science Teaching

Edited by
John Olson
Thomas Russell

John Olson

John Olson is Associate Professor of Science Education at the Faculty of Education, Queen's University. Dr. Olson taught biology in secondary schools in Canada and England, and he remains interested in problems associated with improvement of the science curriculum. His current research is aimed at understanding the ways in which teachers are using and responding to microcomputer technology in the classroom.

Thomas L. Russell

Thomas L. Russell is an associate professor in the Faculty of Education, Queen's University. He teaches courses for both beginning and experienced teachers in the areas of science, curriculum and the improvement of teaching. Dr. Russell began his career in science education by teaching in Nigeria after completing an undergraduate program in physics at Cornell University. He holds an MA degree in teaching from Harvard University and a PhD from the University of Toronto. Dr. Russell has taught at Queen's since 1977 and is now on sabbatical leave at Mills College in California, where he is developing case studies of teachers attempting innovations in their classrooms.

Contents

Foreword 9

Contributors 11

I. Themes and Issues: Introduction to the Case Studies 13
John Olson and Thomas Russell

II. Teaching Science at Seaward Elementary School 30
Mary M. Schoeneberger

III. Science Teaching at Trillium Elementary School 65
Thomas Russell and John Olson

IV. McBride Triptych: Science Teaching in a Junior High School 97
Brent Kilbourn

V. Junior Secondary Science at Northend School 129
P. James Gaskell

VI. Science at Derrick Composite High School 156
Patricia M. Rowell

VII. Science Teaching at Red Cliff High School 183
Lawson Drake

VIII. Lavoisier: Science Teaching at an École Polyvalente 209
Pierre-Léon Trempe

IX. Science at Prairie High School 257
Glen Aikenhead

Publications of the Science Council of Canada 291

Foreword

Excellence in science and technology is essential for Canada's successful participation in the information age. Canada's youth, therefore, must have a science education of the highest possible quality. This was among the main conclusions of the Science Council's recently published report, *Science for Every Student: Educating Canadians for Tomorrow's World.*

Science for Every Student is the product of a comprehensive study of science education in Canadian schools begun by Council in 1980. The research program, designed by Council's Science Education Committee in cooperation with every ministry of education and science teachers' association in Canada, was carried out in each province and territory by some 15 researchers. Interim research reports, discussion papers and workshop proceedings formed the basis for a series of nationwide conferences during which parents and students, teachers and administrators, scientists and engineers, and representatives of business and labour discussed future directions for science education. Results from the conferences were then used to develop the conclusions and recommendations of the final report.

To stimulate continuing discussion leading to concrete changes in Canadian science education, and to provide a factual basis for such discussion, the Science Council is now publishing the results of the research as a background study, *Science Education in Canadian Schools.* Background Study 52 concludes, not with its own recommendations, but with questions for further deliberation.

The background study is in three volumes, coordinated by the study's project officers, Dr. Graham Orpwood and Mr. Jean-Pascal Souque. Volume 1, *Introduction and Curriculum Analyses,* describes the philosophy and methodology of the study. Volume I also includes an analysis of science textbooks used in Canadian schools. Volume II, *Statistical Database for Canadian Science Education,* comprises the results of a national survey of science teachers. Volume III, *Case Studies of Science Teaching,* has been prepared by professors John Olson and Thomas Russell of Queen's University, Kingston, Ontario, in collaboration with the project officers and a team of researchers from across Canada. This volume reports eight case studies of science teaching in action in Canadian schools. To retain the anonymity of the teachers who allowed their work to be observed, the names of schools and individuals have been changed throughout this volume.

As with all background studies published by the Science Council, this study represents the views of the authors and not necessarily those of Council.

James M. Gilmour
Director of Research
Science Council of Canada

Contributors

Glen Aikenhead, College of Education, University of Saskatchewan

Lawson Drake, Department of Biology, University of Prince Edward Island

P. James Gaskell, Faculty of Education, University of British Columbia

Brent Kilbourn, Curriculum Department, Ontario Institute of Studies in Education

John Olson, Faculty of Education, Queen's University, Kingston

Patricia M. Rowell, Department of Secondary Education, University of Alberta

Thomas L. Russell, Faculty of Education, Queen's University, Kingston

Mary M. Schoeneberger, Atlantic Institute of Education, Halifax

Pierre-Léon Trempe, Faculté des sciences de l'Éducation, Université du Québec à Trois-Rivières

I. Themes and Issues: Introduction to the Case Studies

John Olson and Thomas Russell

The Design of the Case Studies

Would-be critics and reorganizers of the educational system must attend to the important lessons that emerged from the school curriculum reforms of the 1960s. Although these reforms affected most school subjects, their influence was particularly strong in science. Curriculum developers seemed to expect that new ideas for teaching science could and would be implemented much as they had been designed. However, the research studies that followed revealed that classroom events were more complex and teachers less able to change than had been expected. At the same time, these studies seemed to show that innovative curricula were "better" than traditional ones, but only because the criteria used to evaluate them unintentionally favoured the former. Generally, students learned best whatever their teachers emphasized.

The importance of the way science is emphasized by teachers has been noted both by critics of science education and by curriculum theorists in Canada. Criticisms tend to focus not on the content of science courses but on the way the content is treated, particularly on the apparent lack of an emphasis either on the history of Canadian science or on the relationship between science and technology in Canada. These case studies are designed to explore the emphasis that teachers *do* place on the subject matter they teach. In exploring these emphases we recognize that science teachers play a central role in determining what can and does happen in the classroom. In planning and conducting their teaching, teachers bring into action the particular frameworks of thought and belief that they hold. Teachers' curriculum emphases can be inferred directly from classroom events, but to assess the validity of inferences about practice and to understand the reasons why particular emphases are adopted, it is also necessary to explore, through dialogue with teachers, the frameworks of thought and belief about education that underlie classroom events.

The case studies reported here were done in eight locations across Canada. Each site was studied by a person possessing both the necessary research capabilities and appropriate background knowledge of science education in the region. Over a period of several months, site visitors compiled observational and interview data and analyzed documents, using approaches they developed at a planning conference preceding the field work. The case-study research group included Glen Aikenhead, Lawson Drake, Jim Gaskell, Brent Kilbourn, John Olson, Pat Rowell, Tom Russell, Mary Schoeneberger and Pierre-Léon Trempe. Graham Orpwood, from the start, was associated with the work as a sympathetic adviser and critic.

Sites for intensive study were selected to include a diversity of both regions and school settings. At each school site, various kinds of information were collected — for example, information concerning what went on in the classroom, the documents used by the teachers, what teachers said about their work — to obtain as complete a picture as possible of how science is taught. As observation proceeded, emerging hypotheses were checked, modified and developed further. Such direct access to sites has been important because the data that have been collected are sufficiently complex and the meanings to be inferred from them sufficiently uncertain that it has been necessary for the researchers to observe the events of the classroom themselves and to discuss those events with teachers. This approach to the problem was chosen after several alternatives had been considered.

In order to review the "state of the art" in case-study methodology and discuss what common starting points might be valuable in the study, the research team met for four days in February 1981. Emerging from that conference, for consideration at each of the sites, were a number of issues related to what happens in the classroom and to how teachers interpret classroom events and other aspects of school life. The case studies were to focus on the events of science teaching as they are influenced by the teacher, by written materials and by other factors in the classroom environment. These events were to be analyzed to determine the emphases teachers place upon the subject matter, the ways in which teachers socialize their students, and the interaction between these two factors. Finally, teachers' intentions concerning their teaching activities were to be explored to determine what factors in the educational environment they perceive as shaping classroom events. Discussion of how to implement these ideas formed an important part of the preliminary meeting.

A number of principles of procedure have guided all of the researchers. These were discussed at great length at the preliminary meeting and have formed the practical context in which these studies have been conducted. These principles involved ways of choosing sites, ways of gaining access to them, ethical guidelines for our work with individual teachers and similar matters. The following principles of procedure were established for all eight case studies. School personnel we talked to were to be informed that they could, without any malice, discontinue their participation in the study at any time. They were to be informed that they had the right to see what was written about them and to correct inaccuracies in any factual statement about them, to review interpretations about them and have alternative interpretations printed in the final site report and, as a last resort, to have facts and interpretations about them removed from the site report.

As research got under way in the fall of 1981, we visited each of the sites in order to compare notes, act as a sounding board and help identify problems early in the research. A number of methodological issues emerged from these visits and these were collected together in the form of a report to the research team. When the research team came together again in June 1982, some 16 months after the original planning meeting, it tried to determine what the cases said collectively about the work of science teachers.

It became clear at the outset that we had to recognize the different levels of teaching within the school system. There was little doubt that there were important differences in curriculum, in teaching and in the teaching environment at different levels. Early-, middle- and senior-division teachers seemed to work in quite different "universes," and we felt it dangerous to assume that the categories we might use to talk about the work of senior teachers would apply, for example, to teachers of the early years. In addition to great variation in teachers' knowledge of subject matter and available resources for teaching science, there is diversity in the educational goals different divisions strive to achieve. These overall goals and their embodiment in practice form a context that influences the way science is taught.

To summarize these comments, we find we must attend to how the subject of science fits into the working life of the science teacher. The case studies show that, in practice, teachers are concerned with maintaining their credibility, exerting their influence, gaining access to scarce resources, coping with conflicts between outside expectations and the realities of the classroom, coping with a lack of skill to teach science as innovators imagine it should be taught, fulfilling the expectations of authorities and resolving conflicts between students' interests and the demands of the subject.

We found a complex web of interacting factors present in the way teachers approach their work. Our task in what follows is to clarify the nature of the teachers' thinking about those factors and to identify the underlying and persistent concerns that seem to rule the way teachers resolve the tensions in their work. By combining knowledge about the decisions that teachers make, the frameworks in which they make them and the factors that influence teachers, we believe we will be in a better position to construct pictures of how science is being taught in the school contexts we studied, and to appreciate why teachers act as they do in their classrooms. We hope these case studies, by illuminating for decision makers the demands and dilemmas that teachers cope with in everyday classroom activity, will yield some hint of what might happen if particular practices of teachers are subjected to pressures for change. If we can help decision makers appreciate the possible consequences of upsetting some of the delicate balances teachers create to cope with teaching as an occupation, then we shall have made a contribution to the deliberation about futures for science education in Canada.

The Case Studies: Major Themes

The comments that follow are intended to help the reader locate areas of interest within the separate case studies. The comments here are divided into three parts, reflecting three broad divisions of elementary and secondary schooling. We designate kindergarten through grade 6 as the *early years* of a child's education, grades 7/8 through 9/10 as the *middle years* and grades 9/10 through 12/13 as the *senior years*. (Some variation is necessary in the boundaries, to recognize provincial variations across Canada.) From the case studies in each division we have isolated major themes which have become the basis for the organization of our comments about that division. While examples that illustrate the themes may be drawn from one or another case, each comment is made with all of the schools within the division in mind. Further, we have related information about what goes on in classrooms to information about the context within which that work takes place and to what teachers say about the work. In this way we have tried to relate what teachers say about their work to what we have observed of that work in their classrooms.

Clearly, our analysis of the case studies involves making judgements about what the significant events of the science classroom are, about how they are related to the account of them given by the teacher and about the interpretations provided by the researchers. We hope that readers will be tempted by these comments to explore the cases in detail and to test our rendering of them against their own personal impressions. The following discussion of the eight case studies could be read as a generalization, but it would be very inappropriate to interpret our comments as a set of generalizations about science teaching across Canada. Our purpose is to identify possible relationships among events that were recorded in the eight cooperating schools. We highlight themes and issues, hoping thereby to provide a guide for the reader who goes on to examine other science teaching situations with which he or she is familiar. Likewise, the research group that prepared these case studies has developed and applied ways of looking at people and events in eight schools in the hope that similar ways of looking at science teaching will be useful to others.

As we begin this discussion, we would like to express our thanks to the teachers who participated in the case studies. We hope that we have read sympathetically these cases which document their practices; our effort has been to understand how teachers approach their work. The work these teachers do is complex, and these studies are but preliminary glimpses of the science classroom.

The Early Years

Two studies, Seaward and Part II of Trillium, provide data relevant to the early years, a period of schooling in which approximately 10 per cent of the available time is allotted to the study of science. A subject that occupies a small fraction of total curriculum time understandably presents a task different from that facing the teacher in the middle or senior years, where those who teach science usually teach it for most of each day. Science demands preparation time, access to equipment and confidence. Unfortunately, a "10 per cent concern" is not likely to build teachers' confidence through experience, at least not in the short run, as the teaching of science in the early years is such a small part of the daily teaching load.

Two of the early-years teachers were attentive to children's curiosity about phenomena that science can explain and to the differences boys and girls show, as groups, in their attitudes to science. Perhaps the latter portion of the early years is the time when significant attitude differences emerge clearly in patterns that may persist for a lifetime. Early-years teachers spoke of the importance of young children's interests and of the opportunities that arise, over the course of a school year, to pursue children's science-related interests. For example, dinosaurs are a common science topic in the first year or two of school; guinea pigs, gerbils and fish are familiar animals in the classrooms of those teachers who are prepared to do the work required to maintain the animals. One teacher has introduced a computer into his classroom and found that it attracts the attention of the boys who show interest in science, a group he has resolved to challenge rather than settle for "mediocrity" throughout his class. The reader who is unfamiliar with teaching in the early years may find helpful the account of a "typical day" which concludes the discussion of science at Seaward.

In the early years, as in the middle and senior years, teachers feel the pressure of time. Some teachers respond to this pressure by integrating science with related topics in other curriculum areas. For one teacher, this is not avoiding science but linking it with other aspects of the curriculum, as an aid to teaching effectiveness and making the best use of time. Teachers at this level must balance their "time budget" in ways that teachers in the middle and senior years do not. To those outside the early years, integration may seem to be a "softening" of science experience in those grades, but the nature of the intended integration can only be judged by talking with and observing the teacher who claims to use such an approach. The matter of integration and its impact on science work in the later years is an important issue for science curriculum planning.

Within their schools, the four teachers of science in the early years who were observed tend to be isolated, not by choice but by circumstance and tradition. Cooperation with other teachers is difficult to arrange and maintain. The presence of a "science expert" in a school appears not to be an effective way of disseminating ideas about the teaching of science. In one case, teachers found that workshops and materials from outside the school were helpful in building the confidence they now display in the teaching of science.

The Middle Years

Three studies focus on the middle years – Northend, McBride and Part I of Trillium. Middle-years teachers lay particular stress on "covering the material" in the time available. "Covering the material" means ensuring that the "correct" explanation is included in the students' notes. At Northend, for example, where the stress is on following instructions supplied by lab procedures in the textbook, notes were given followed by "illustrative" work in the lab. "Good" diagrams were based on the text, not on actual data collected, as in the case of the ray diagrams used to show the reflection of light.

At McBride, activity sheets were produced by the head of the department and used by the other teachers. The sheets contained instructions for carrying out procedures in the lab, which were followed primarily by recall questions reviewing terminology. Filmstrips, used extensively in conjunction with the activity sheets, similarly stressed technical vocabulary. Students copied the information from the activity sheets into their notebooks, the text being used mainly as a "resource." At Trillium, too, the work was controlled by chalkboard notes or handouts; the text remained a resource for occasional use. Here, also, the emphasis was on "correct" terminology and making sure that students had the "approved" definition in their notes.

The impression left by these middle-years schools is that of a considerable body of material to be "covered." Central to covering the material is a stress on the specialized vocabulary of science, access to which is controlled through notes and activity sheets designed by teachers. Lab work is also based on teacher handouts or on procedures from a text. Following procedures and recalling terminology are central activities of the science lessons in these middle-years schools.

All the middle-years teachers stressed nonacademic aspects of their teaching life that they felt contributed to their effectiveness with the adolescents they work with. At Northend, where the teachers have degrees in science, the stress is on the subject, but some effort is given to making the subject "connect" with students' lives. Teachers there said they wanted to increase the relevance of their courses but indicated that there were pressures preventing this. The science teachers at McBride played important roles in the wider social activities of the school. They said that their extracurricular activity was important, and they emphasized the acquisition of social "skills" — such as responsibility — through learning routines in the science classroom. At Trillium, science happenings (collected by students in the form of newspaper clippings) and science fairs were used to promote interest in science and to show that there was a connection with "out there." In doing the science fair work, the students were seen as practising the "scientific method."

When teachers spoke of their work, the pressure of time was cited as a significant problem. At Northend, teachers found that marking and preparation were time-consuming, and that the semester system created a pressure to get through material. As a result of the time pressures, the teachers said, they could not include much material on science-society issues. Covering the ministry-prescribed material contributed to the sense of strain these teachers felt. At McBride, the ministry's guidelines required teachers to cover a large amount of material; for one teacher, this meant there was no time for "whole-class" discussions. Similarly, at Trillium, efficient use of time was uppermost in a teacher's thinking about what to teach; lack of time was a reason for not including more lab and field work, because covering the vocabulary of the subject required all the time he had.

Students' interests and correct behaviour concerned these middle-years teachers. A Northend teacher spoke about the extra energy needed to teach middle-years students; similarly, at McBride, the lack of student manners, particularly among nonacademic stream students, was bothersome. At Trillium, the teacher was concerned that students not treat the practical work flippantly. He remarked that if there were signs of misbehaviour during lab periods, students' work was halted and a demonstration given instead: direct experience was withdrawn from students as a punishment for misbehaviour.

These middle-years teachers made it clear that their students were not easy to teach; class control was a central concern, and trying to interest students was a high priority in their planning. Teachers at Northend, for example, spoke ruefully about the lack of students' interest in the labs they did, and about how hard it was to engage the students intellectually. At McBride, the teachers spoke of their concern for helping students feel "comfortable" with the subject. And at Trillium the teacher was concerned with reducing students' fear of science, a fear that he believes is a consequence of teachers' attitudes to science in the early years. He encouraged the students to express their feelings about him and about their work. While these teachers gave class control a high priority, they remained unsure about the inherent interest of the work they had students do, work which might have improved control by engaging students' interests.

The middle-years teachers stressed the importance of routines and of standards of accuracy and thoroughness to which students should adhere. Accuracy is at the heart of what they believe to be a "scientific" approach to problems. At Trillium, the teacher was adamant about thorough copying of notes and complete answering of assigned questions, but did not worry about the writing-up of experiments which, he felt, could come later. Good notes, which would make review for tests easier, were emphasized. In his view, these notes laid the groundwork for the next grade. Teachers at McBride said that learning to follow routines prepared students for grade 9; accuracy of diagrams in students' notes reflected the "experimental" process and eased review for tests. Northend teachers, also, stressed the importance of preparing students for the next grade; making sure that the "correct" answer was entered into the notebook was part of establishing a base for further work.

How might we interpret the strong focus of these teachers on orderliness, routine, procedures and "approved" explanations? This emphasis on the certain, the exact, the "right" answer, contrasts with an emphasis on the process of inquiry and the conceptual and tentative status of knowledge in science. First, we have to consider the amount of material these teachers are asked to cover; by their own report, it seems extensive. Given also that the material is presented as a body of facts with a strong "official" emphasis on terminology, it is not surprising that teachers treat it as a commodity to be delivered. Second, the subject matter is the main vehicle for engaging students' interest and for channelling their energies in approved directions. Again, by their own account, channelling students' energies is not an easy task for teachers. How do these teachers accomplish this task? Thorough and accurate note-taking and routine are stressed, copying from activity sheets and from the chalkboard appears to be common, and, where labs occur, correct procedures and recording correct information in notebooks are emphasized. Such highly predictable activities are valued, ostensibly because they will allow material to be easily reviewed for tests and because the information so accumulated provides a base for work to be done in the next grade. These activities control and channel students' energies because students are kept busy doing routine, unambiguous work. Third, the teachers tend to use their own materials to guide activity and provide a context for that activity. Teaching from the text is not predominant; teaching through note-giving and procedure-following, is.

The official documents supplied by the ministries of education influence both the nature of the material presented and, less directly, how that material is presented. The classroom work is seen by middle-years teachers as fulfilling the mandate given to them by the writers of the curriculum documents, and, at the same time, as ensuring that students will be prepared to move on to the next grade, ready to tackle the work prescribed for them. The orderly habits engendered by the following of routines are justified by the teachers because they will help students to complete their grades and because they let students experience, if only for a moment, what it might be like to be a scientist.

The pressure of time is cited by teachers as a reason for not introducing into a well-ordered and coherent system any activity that might upset the smooth running of things as they are. The prevailing system gives teachers purpose and direction, channels students' behaviour in desired directions, and enables students to complete grades successfully and move smoothly to higher grades.

However, the problem may not be lack of time for alternate methods and subject matter. It may be that teaching early adolescents and selecting appropriate content is difficult (especially for nonspecialists). Perhaps teachers find that strict adherence to legitimate and well-defined content specified by ministries of education is a secure base upon which to build notes, lab procedures, teaching strategies and examinations. To do so may seem "safer" to teachers than emphasizing the processes of science or science-society relationships.

One might argue that very restricted use is made by these teachers of the potential that the study of science has for general education, especially for learning about the role of science in society and in technology. While these teachers tap this potential to some small extent, perhaps more than they are encouraged to do by the way their instructional mandate is formulated in the official documents they receive, it may be less than their students might wish and less than they ought to do, given the ways in which society is changing and the demands it will soon make on their students. Arguments on both sides of this issue can and have been made. We hope that these case studies will stimulate further debate, informed by teachers' views on these matters.

Those who would alter the middle-years science instruction system must consider the effect of innovation on the persistent problems faced by middle-years teachers, especially those who are not science specialists. How would these changes affect the existing relationship among teacher, students and curriculum? What would it mean to teachers and students to take a more adventurous view of the subject? What kinds of teaching strategies would teachers use with nontraditional ways of treating content? How would they justify these strategies to parents and students? What effects would these less "reliable" strategies have on class control? On motivation? On evaluation and grade progression?

The Senior Years

Derrick, Prairie, Lavoisier and Red Cliff — the four cases that constitute the study of science education in the senior years — illustrate a number of dilemmas facing teachers of the separate sciences. Central to their work is a tension between "covering" the required and considerable subject matter so as to lay the foundation for future work, and promoting student interest in that work through an inquiry method that takes time, that can be difficult to evaluate and that is problematic in its own right. While the subject matter to be covered is specified by official documents and by texts — and these are followed closely — the ways in which this content can be made interesting and relevant to students is a matter of some uncertainty for the teachers of the senior grades.

These teachers view science as a method of precision characterized by exact numbers and highly organized bodies of information with specialized terminology. Accordingly, they are concerned about providing students with the notes and the practice with problems that are essential for success on examinations stressing recall of facts and the solving of numerical problems. The teachers say that approaching science teaching this way is both satisfying to them and necessary for their students: the task is relatively well-defined and the resulting student activity enables the students to perform well on tests, learn desirable habits and prepare for more of the same kind of activity in later grades and university.

Where they occur, alternative approaches such as stressing inquiry processes, relating science to social issues or relating science and technology are seen not as central activities for the science classroom but as a means of encouraging students' interest. Teachers say they are leery of allowing these approaches to form the core of their work, partly because the activities are not stressed in the documents they use to guide their work and partly because the teachers are not sure how to base their classroom activities on such approaches. The views teachers hold about alternative approaches to science teaching appear to flow from their conception of the nature of science itself.

Teachers' approaches to laboratory work reveal most clearly the way they think about the nature of their subject. Almost without exception, work in the lab is viewed as illustrating facts and theories presented in the classroom. What happens in the labs also confirms what is discussed in class. At Derrick High, for example, one teacher stressed the results that students should get in order to have performed the lab correctly; another stressed the importance of scientific notation; another, that students were to store a library of precise facts in their "computers" (their minds). Obtaining precise facts was what students did in their laboratory work. The same view was expressed by a teacher at Red Cliff High, who stressed the importance of precision in measurement and of finding the right answer. Indeed, measurement is the basis for students' science work.

For a teacher of physics at Red Cliff, the labs are supposed to reinforce the theory of the course; getting the right answer to problems is what matters. Working towards "the anticipated result" is seen to be the important thing. In biology, neatness is stressed and students are encouraged to be "diligent." At Lavoisier, the lab work is intended to make the ideas of the lessons "concrete"; students were seen to follow precise written procedures, but apparently without understanding the point of the lab and what might be concluded from it.

Allied to the search for "right" answers in the lab is the work students do on problems in physics and chemistry. The way teachers view this "problem-solving" activity also indicates how they view the nature of science. At Derrick High, chemistry students spend considerable time working out problems in order to apply principles and get correct answers. At Prairie High, the physics teacher valued quantitative problem solving because it prepared students to be systematic in their own lives. Similarly, at Red Cliff High, the physics teacher had hopes that students would see the "logic" behind the problems they solved, but she was not convinced that they did. Doing problems, she felt, contributed to skill in organizing one's thinking, in being disciplined. At Lavoisier, students regularly did questions from the end of the chapter, and by doing so they appeared to concentrate on the "knack" of solving problems rather than on understanding their meaning.

One can detect in the comments of many teachers in the senior-years schools a concern about whether students understand what they are doing in science class and whether, by adopting alternative approaches, teachers could improve their understanding. However, in spite of an awareness of what might be gained by adopting alternative approaches, most teachers considered such approaches impractical, except as isolated events designed to interest their students in the lectures and labs. Alternative approaches were not seen as bases for exploration into the nature of science and the relations between science and society, nor as a way of lending meaning to the work the students did day by day, period by period.

Physical science, for example, is presented as a body of knowledge based on careful, precise observation whose conclusions are justified by that precision. Science is seen as yielding mathematical formulations that can be used to process data in order to obtain precise numbers that describe the physical world. Biological science is seen as less precise, but still yielding organized knowledge in the form of taxonomies and terminology.

When teachers were asked how students benefit from such an approach to science, socialization goals predominated among their answers. Achieving high marks and moving forward through the school system to university were given as important reasons for learning the material presented. Allied to this emphasis on grades and credentials were teachers' claims that doing the labs and procedures developed in students habits of diligence, self-reliance, systematic inquiry, objectivity, industriousness, orderliness and tidiness. What was absent in the remarks of these teachers was a view of science as a basis for developing intellectual and moral capacity.

With the stress that teachers place on learning science as a body of right answers and on the "social" dimensions of such learning come a number of problems that confront teachers in their day-to-day teaching. Some of these problems are perceived by teachers to stem from the way they teach, some arise from the character of the students they teach and others emerge from the system in which the teachers find themselves. Stress on the conclusions of science and the emphasis on "socialization" may enable teachers to resolve some of their problems; but at the same time this stress creates other problems.

Consider the matter of students' abilities, interests and needs. Teachers believe that many students find it difficult to infer relationships and explore the implications of theories on their own. They believe that students need to be encouraged to learn. They believe that parents want teachers to ensure the "success" of their students. They believe that students need teachers to "boil" down the material with which they are confronted. They believe that students enjoy seeing a definite "end product" to their work. They also believe that universities must be satisfied with what teachers do. They believe they are not competent to lead discussions about "subjective" issues. They believe that students want "grades" as success tokens. They also believe that students are easily distracted, that they want "push-button" answers and that they cannot read or do mathematics. These beliefs provide us with some insight into how teachers construe the nature of their job, and these beliefs are central to understanding what happens in classrooms and why it happens.

Given these beliefs, we might see the stress on socialization matters as a natural response. Students are encouraged to learn in order to do well on examinations and achieve good grades. What they have to do to achieve good grades and credentials is clearly laid out, and they are rehearsed in the procedures they will need. For the students, the teacher is a necessary and reliable guide providing a "carrot" to help them organize their work and overcome their "laziness" and their inability to handle abstract relationships. The restricted subject matter provides a clear indication of the work to be done; the work is well-defined and the relationships among the work, the student and the teacher are relatively clear. Optional material, where it is suggested, can be safely ignored because it is not part of the work towards examinations and does not enter into agreements, made between teacher and students, concerning success on examinations. Teachers can avoid the risky business of treating "subjective" issues, about which they often feel incompetent. In showing how problems can be solved and lab work correctly interpreted, they are at their most competent; by their own admission, they are at their least competent when dealing with more open-ended, value-laden matters. Dealing with "cut-and-dried" matters is safer and more functional, given the way teachers construe their working conditions and what is expected of them.

The teachers stressed the importance of achieving positive relationships with their students. How, they ask, can such relationships be established? Most clearly, by ensuring that students are "successful," but also by stimulating their interest. Here the teachers expressed concern about the interest students had in their science work and the need to do "interesting things." Optional work, however, while "interesting," was considered to be peripheral. At Prairie, more so than at the other schools, the teachers spoke highly of such work, but for these teachers a dilemma clearly exists: the interesting work is not essential and time presses them to cover the less interesting but "real" work. Moreover, the optional work is often difficult to teach, so it is not surprising that such work finds little room in the activities of the classroom itself.

Yet a more serious dilemma persists. Beyond the matter of interest, perhaps the most significant question emerging from these cases is, "Do the students understand what they are doing?" It seems that students may not always understand the context that gives meaning to the lab and problem work they do. At Derrick, for example, in spite of the stress on accuracy, large errors in experimental findings were not discussed; the "right" answer itself was stressed. Dissections were rushed and reports of the work not made. At Prairie, teachers complained of students not writing their observations in their lab reports. Similarly, at Lavoisier, students could not draw conclusions from the lab; they did not appear to know what the point of the lab was. Teachers there said there wasn't enough time to look at the implications of the work done in the lab. At Red Cliff High, an important part of an experiment was not done, and a key concept could not be discussed in relation to the data. In biology at Red Cliff, dissections were done, but the students were not asked to organize their findings.

The teachers are aware of the problem of student understanding, and they recognize that an "inquiry" approach might promote better understanding. Nevertheless, in the main, they reject such an approach. They cited various reasons for this attitude. At Derrick, one teacher said he had not considered alternative approaches because the daily routine did not allow for such reflection. At Prairie High, a teacher said that that type of work doesn't "sink in." Another teacher could not see the "academic" value of looking at science-society issues, and yet another said that "nature of science" topics took time away from the content of the discipline: it wasn't an efficient approach. One teacher at Red Cliff High said that "discovery" was really a "carefully programmed exposure to ideas."

These teachers *are* concerned about what sense their students make of the science experiments and about the potential of alternative approaches to contribute to students' understanding. Yet for a variety of reasons important to teachers, they have not reflected very much about how they might use these approaches more centrally in their work. Other goals, which are mostly unrelated to alternative strategies, absorb their time and attention.

Because they hold that there isn't enough time to do the optional work, many teachers view that work as a "digression." But if there were more time, would these "digressions" be viewed as any less peripheral? Does the low status given to optional work not reflect, rather, these teachers' beliefs about what their central tasks are and how they can best be accomplished? Given the beliefs these teachers have about their work, it is not surprising to find them teaching science as a body of right answers. Some outsiders might take a sceptical view of such an approach to science teaching. However, we must consider the beliefs of these teachers in the larger context of students', parents' and the school-systems' definitions of "success" in the culture, the way schools are themselves organized, the nature of teachers' undergraduate education in the sciences, and the efficiency of teacher education programs in promoting alternative and richer conceptions of science education. These factors loom large in any attempt to think about how science education in Canada might evolve. It is to these matters that we turn in our concluding comments.

Major Issues: A Basis for Deliberation

The overall purpose of these case studies is to better understand how teachers approach the task of teaching science in the different divisions of the school. Issues that, in our view, are important to teachers and to a discussion of the present state of science teaching are organized below under these headings: integration and options, socialization, the inquiry approach and understanding, and change.

Integration and Options as Forms of Curriculum Organization

What appears to be the main concern of the early-years teacher — following student interests — becomes for the senior-years teacher a constant frustration. For the latter, the more "interesting" work that could be done cannot be done because there isn't time for it; the core has to be covered. Senior-years teachers teach science all the time and are able to develop a repertoire of proven routines, whereas in the early years, teachers teach many subjects. Whereas the senior-years teachers worry about which science topics to include or exclude, the early-years teachers may find it difficult to include any "science" at all. By adopting a rhetoric of integration it is possible for curriculum policy documents to discuss "science" in the early years without saying what the science topics should be or how they should be related to the science work that comes later. So, while early-years teachers may be able to follow the interests of students, they are also somewhat free to follow their own interests, and this freedom may lead to little science or a great deal of science being included in their teaching. Is this approach an adequate basis for establishing how science should function in the early years of a child's schooling?

Middle-years and senior-years teachers are faced with the problem of how to deal with core requirements and options. As science is seen as a minor part of the early-years curriculum, so options appear to be a minor part of the curriculum in the later years. A rhetoric of options enables official documents to acknowledge nontraditional topics and approaches, yet in practice options are often ignored under pressure of time. We must treat teachers' reference to time carefully because it appears to be an acceptable way of expressing preferences without saying they are preferences; teachers cite "lack of time" rather than "preference" as the reason why certain potentially desirable things are not done. If it is the case that options are not exercised by teachers, then how appropriate is the prevailing "core-plus-options" approach to curriculum policy making?

Socialization as a Priority

What of teachers' emphases on right answers, correct procedures, routine and the "facts" of science? In the middle and senior years, in the core areas of curricula, teachers view the subject of science as a body of right answers. They approach science with their students, not through disciplined curiosity, but through correct procedures and precise calculations. It is difficult to characterize early-years teachers' views of science, given the limited information we have and the enormous potential for diversity in approaches to science teaching at this level. Because the rhetoric of integration employed by some teachers stresses general intellectual skills such as problem solving, we might say that teachers think of science as "probing the curious." (Contrast this view with the "precision" view of science held by teachers in the later years.)

The "precision" view – one that stresses right answers, terminology, exact numbers, careful notes and doing "problems" – springs from an overriding concern of teachers to inculcate good habits. This emphasis in teaching is often termed *socialization*. Social priorities are stressed: good work habits, diligence, preparation for future work, attentiveness, being prepared and following instructions. What is not stressed are the intellectual functions, especially critical thinking and good judgement. We do not wish to minimize the values inherent in the socialization view of science teaching; there are good arguments to be made for it. But we do question whether this social rather than intellectual emphasis is a desirable one for science education. Given the complex role of science in our cultural and political lives, is socialization a wise priority?

The Inquiry Approach and Understanding

We find that the emphasis schools place on diligence enables teachers to make use of apparently reliable and secure approaches to teaching. An inquiry approach to science teaching is viewed with suspicion by the teachers in many of these cases. The existence of this alternative approach is a constant reminder that other possibilities for science teaching do exist, possibilities that can only be realized by taking a different view of the subject and by struggling to achieve a new balance of emphases in one's teaching. Alternative approaches to teaching can remind teachers that, in an ideal world, they might prefer to use an approach that emphasizes both social and intellectual development.

As many of the middle- and senior-years teachers see it, to study science through inquiry (that is, to engage students in discussions about what is and what ought to be the case) is, to put it bluntly, to work in an inefficient way. How can the extensive subject matter that is mandated be covered? How can valid and reliable tests be set when inquiry is the approach to teaching? Prevailing answers to these questions have not satisfied these teachers.

When inquiry-based emphases are suggested – in optional sections of science curriculum documents – they tend to be ignored, or used sparingly as ways of "motivating" the students. Nevertheless, middle- and senior-years teachers are concerned about the way they usually teach science. They are worried about students' interest in their lessons, which emphasize the transmission of facts: are students motivated by such lessons and, further, do they understand the facts in relation to the methods and theories of science? Without the context provided by the methods and theories of science, and without an understanding of the social implications of the technology based on those theories, the isolated facts and laws of science remain in danger of being seen by students as pieces in a never-finished jigsaw puzzle. Here lies an unresolved problem for these teachers and a significant topic for deliberation.

Dynamics of Change and Dilemmas of Practice

Not all these teachers are trained scientists and not all work with ample resources, but all of them do work with large numbers of children whose abilities vary considerably and whose home support varies even more. Teaching children with such a range of social and psychological backgrounds is very demanding. Add to this difficulty the lack of any clear consensus about what schools are for and the result is a task that is ambiguous and poorly delineated. We believe that teachers actively counter these forces, which place unlimited demands on them, by interpreting and carrying out their jobs in a particular way. Given the uncertainties that exist about subject-matter competence, students' behaviour and educational goals, it is not surprising to us that teachers approach their work in ways that make it less uncertain. If we accept this view, it is also not surprising that certain apparently limited views of the subject and its educational functions prevail at all levels of science education. We believe that teachers react to the many problems confronting them by promoting those objectives and using those methods of instruction that make their jobs less ambiguous and less threatening. To ask teachers to change their methods and objectives without first considering the reasons they behave as they do in the first place is unwise, to put it mildly.

Having said this, we are not urging that the existing situation be enshrined because the educational system is difficult to change. Sources for productive debate and improved practices lie with the teachers themselves. They are aware of the dilemmas inherent in their work. They know that trade-offs are being made constantly, and it is clear that many of them are less than happy about these trade-offs. The dilemmas are many:

- How can teachers develop good work habits in students and maintain their interest in science?
- How can teachers include science topics in the early years when society demands the teaching of "basics"?
- How can teachers stimulate thought, especially by means of optional material, and still cover the core material specified by authorities?
- How can teachers control students' energies without suppressing imagination?
- How can teachers portray fairly the nature of science and yet enable students with different abilities to understand the basic concepts?
- How can teachers reconcile the apparent objectivity of science with the apparent subjectivity of value-laden issues related to science?
- How can teachers cover the work yet ensure that students understand it?
- How can teachers meet the expectations of parents and students for grades and credentials while at the same time pursuing sidelines that are not directly related to testing and examination?

These are the principal dilemmas we see inherent in what teachers have said in these case studies. How teachers and others view the trade-offs science teachers have to make, and how they view the consequences of these trade-offs for realizing the full potential of science in the school curriculum, are matters for further study and deliberation.

II. Teaching Science at Seaward Elementary School

Mary M. Schoeneberger

The Setting

The Community

Seaward is a quaint seaside village that lies nestled among the inlets and coves of a scenic Maritime coastline. In this rural community of about 1500 residents, a pulp and paper mill and its associated lumbering activities provide much of the employment for the people both in the village and in the surrounding countryside. Some small-scale industries also operate in the area, including hydraulics, custom machinery and small cottage industries; most other people work for "small outfits," or are self-employed as merchants and craftspeople. Fishing provides work for some residents. Most of the fishermen operate off large company trawlers, although in some inlets, away from the town, a few fishermen continue to run their own boats and attempt to preserve a way of life that is rapidly disappearing. Unemployment in the area is high. During the summer months, the area is a favourite spot for tourists, who come to enjoy sailing and swimming, to browse in craft shops and to enjoy home cooking and seafood which is available along the waterfront.

Seaward and vicinity is a long-established, stable community, many of whose permanent residents were born in the area. Generations of families, largely of Anglo-Saxon descent, continue to live and work here, with some family groupings choosing to live close together in clusters, as the mailboxes along the roadside indicate. The school principal estimates that, if five or six family names were removed from the class lists in the elementary school, "it might take care of 30 per cent of the school's population."

According to several teachers at the school, the concerns of people in the area tend to centre around events close to home, particularly events which affect them directly. Residents do not appear to be very aware of or interested in what is happening elsewhere in the world, how it affects them, or "where they fit into the broader scheme of things on a national scale or even an international scale."

Change, in general, tends to be resisted, especially if it might affect someone personally. Sometimes, however, the community opposes things which, according to the principal, "need to be resisted," and parents have been known "to get up in arms" in support of an issue that they consider important. Such was the case a few years ago in regard to the need for improving special services for the elementary students. In that instance, the community had perceived a need for a reading specialist and kept "pushing" until, when an extra teaching position was allocated to the school for the teaching of art, community pressure influenced the decision to hire a reading specialist instead.

While reading is of concern to the community, science is not. The general consensus at the school is that science appears to be a "non-issue." Neither the principal nor the teachers can ever recall any parent asking about or even mentioning the school science program. On the rare occasion when science has been brought up during parent-teacher conferences, it has been in relation to a child's mark or perhaps a question about a textbook. The principal cannot recall science ever being mentioned or discussed in the course of his dealings with school trustees, school boards and home-school associations over the years; the same was true, however, of subjects such as health, social studies and art. The primary concern seems to be for the "basics." One teacher, who has been in the school system 16 years, described community concern for science this way:

> "I'm quite certain that you could go a year without teaching science and there would be no comment. Parents see it as a little added frill, maybe. I don't think they see it being as important, for instance, as math is — that you know how to add, subtract, or that you are able to read. And perhaps another reason [why parents do not consider science important] is the way high school programs have been over the years; you choose to take science if you so desire. Most people didn't take science courses unless they were going into medicine or nursing or somewhere they had to have it; otherwise they bypassed those courses."

The School

The present Seaward Elementary School is in its second year of operation. According to one long-time teacher, it took nearly 20 years of talk, discussions, planning and promises for the new school to become a reality. The school is situated on the top of a hill which, to the rear, gradually descends towards the ocean several hundred metres beyond. Off to the side of the school and behind the playing fields is a wooded area that provides one of several ecological areas for the school.

Most of the classrooms are self-contained, with the exception of a kindergarten-grade 1 combination, a grade 5-6 combination, and two grade 7s, which occupy the three open-area spaces within the school. Although each of these classes has its own space, teachers sometimes team-teach or teach a specific subject to both grades. For example, in the grade 5-6 area, one teacher teaches all of the science while the other teaches all of the social studies. Children are heterogeneously assigned to all classes, with the exception of the special education classes.

The school has classes from kindergarten through grade 7. Almost 400 students are enrolled, and about 100 of these are in grade 7. About 60 per cent of the students are bused to school, while the remainder live within walking distance. Most of the elementary students live within 12 miles of the school, although some of the grade 7s live much farther away.

The grade 7 classrooms are located in a wing of the school away from the other classrooms. Because this group begins school 35 minutes later than the rest of the student body, their timetable also contributes to keeping them physically separated from the younger students. On certain occasions, such as assemblies and school plays, the entire school does participate as a unit.

The school is staffed by a principal, 14 classroom teachers (three of whom teach grade 7), and seven specialist teachers for special education, reading, music, French and physical education. All but three of the teachers are women. A support staff of seven provides library assistance, secretarial help, a school lunch program and general maintenance of the building, while volunteers assist in the library, on field trips, in administering speech therapy, and in teaching special education and reading.

The Curriculum

Language arts and mathematics are the primary concern not only of the community at large, but also of the provincial Department of Education, the school and the teachers. Provincial guidelines allocate instructional time in the following way:

In grades 1, 2 and 3:

language arts (incorporating social studies)	55 per cent

mathematics education	15 per cent
science education	10 per cent
physical and health education	10 per cent
music education and art education	10 per cent

In grades 4, 5 and 6:

language arts (including French)	40 per cent
mathematics education	20 per cent
science education	10 per cent
social studies	10 per cent
physical and health education	10 per cent
music education and art education	10 per cent

Accordingly, the school handbook informs parents that the major emphasis of the program at the elementary level is "on the development of communication skills — reading, writing, listening and speaking." The second major area of emphasis is on mathematics, but science, social studies, music, art and physical education are also included in the program. French language, which is taught in grades 3 to 7, is considered part of language arts.

The teachers also consider language arts and mathematics as the most important areas of the curriculum. One teacher summed it up this way: "Well, your reading and maths are always your priorities and everything else, health, science, social studies, is lumped into what's left over."

Depending on how calculations are made in the six-day teaching cycle, the 10 per cent time allotment for science averages out to approximately 120 minutes every six days for kindergarten through grade 2, and 150 minutes for grades 3 to 6. Of the 10 classes in which science teaching is supposed to occur regularly, only two receive science instruction for the officially allotted time. Most classes receive considerably less science instruction and some receive little or none at all, at least on a regular basis or in a form which could be identified primarily as "science." The reasons for this situation appear to be many and varied.

Teaching Science

The Program

Provincial guidelines for teaching elementary science provide the general framework for what is taught in science at Seaward. *STEM Science* (Addison-Wesley, 1977) is the primary resource available for teachers and students; one set of textbooks is provided for students at each grade level. Some teachers follow the textbook quite closely, while others are selective, preferring to use *STEM* as a supplementary resource, as a guide, or not at all.

There is no overall coordinated school plan for the teaching of science, although sometimes several teachers might cooperate in planning a program for several grades. This year, for example, the grade 5 and 6 teachers attempted to coordinate their programs by deciding which topics would be taught at each grade level, in order to avoid duplication and also to ensure that a variety of topics would be included. It was anticipated that this approach would "cut down on planning time" and allow teachers "to do something in depth." Initially, teachers selected individual topics according to their interests and strengths and agreed to gather the necessary materials, which would be shared. To facilitate this agreement, grade 5 and 6 textbooks were to be ferried back and forth between classrooms as the need arose. The teachers felt that this arrangement would provide students entering grade 7 with similar science experiences during their last two years of elementary school. Several months into the school year, however, it became evident that this system was not working as intended. The "kits" never materialized, and the teachers gradually reverted back to teaching individual programs. One teacher suggested that lack of communication was a major reason for the demise of the plan.

Equipment

According to one experienced teacher, during the last six years equipment for science teaching has been much more readily available than before. During this time, several systems for organizing equipment were tried. About five years ago, a group of teachers in the district who were "keen on science" decided to make up kits which would be available for use by all teachers. Mr. Blake, a grade 5 teacher, took responsibility for coordinating the development of the kits at Seaward School, using funds provided by the school board and the local chapter of the teachers' union. According to Mr. Blake, the outcome of their effort meant that "if you were working on magnets, for instance, you had iron filings, magnets and a compass. Everything was there in the box, and if you were working on that topic, you just took the box and you had everything you needed."

For several years a number of teachers, particularly those in the intermediate grades, made good use of the kits, but, because there was no system for circulating and maintaining the kits, pieces of equipment gradually disappeared and the kits fell into disuse. There is still no system for organizing science equipment in the school, nor is the equipment stored in one central location. This lack of organization is a source of frustration for some teachers and is perceived as a barrier to teaching science.

When the new school was completed, a capital grant was included in the budget for science equipment, with the result that an assortment of equipment was purchased for the school, including a class set of elementary microscopes, test tubes and racks, bells and so forth. Much of this equipment, which is stored near the principal's office in the original packing case, does not appear to be widely used, perhaps because it is largely inappropriate for the *STEM* program. Equipment that would be appropriate for the program — such as styrofoam cups, paper plates, string, nails, etc. — are commonly found in supermarkets and hardware stores, for which reason they cannot be purchased with funds from the existing capital grant.

At present, ordering of school equipment of all sorts is done centrally; each teacher submits individual requests and these are examined in terms of priorities and available funds. Under this system, there is no guarantee that all requests can be filled. Some teachers say their previous science requests have not been funded, so they do not bother to ask any more; others seem satisfied. The system does require teachers to do long-range planning, because orders are placed each spring for the following school year. Many teachers miss the deadline. Teachers who do not have the necessary science equipment either purchase it themselves and are reimbursed, or pay for it out of their pockets, or do without. Whatever the case, it often means that there is not enough equipment to actively engage all students in doing science. One teacher explained how she organized her classes around the equipment that was available for a unit on electricity:

> "I had a large class of grade 3s and 4s and I taught *STEM* in both grades. The electricity unit was particularly a hands-on unit — more so than the other ones. We did experiments. . . sometimes I had two or three children perform the experiment; sometimes I performed it. Sometimes it was set up so that there were perhaps four or five groups doing different experiments from the same unit and then pooling the information gained. We never had enough materials for the whole class to be working on the same experiment, because I was looking after 35 students and I didn't have 35 of anything. So, in the end, there were a lot of demonstrations. Occasionally, each child had something to work with, as when each child brought a wire, a bulb or a battery from home. In other cases, we pooled the resources. It was set out so that not everyone did the same experiment each day. One group of kids was responsible for the experiment on one day and, on another science day, another group would be involved while everyone else watched. And, we wrote up experiments in a fairly scientific way in terms of equipment, method, procedure, observation and that sort of thing."

Lack of Confidence

Many of the teachers say they feel less comfortable teaching science than they do most other subjects. This feeling, which often appears to reflect a general lack of confidence in relation to science teaching, seems to be associated with several factors. According to the teachers, these factors generally include a weak background in science, unfamiliarity with the science program at a specific grade level and the lack of structure provided by the ministry's guidelines and other curriculum aids. One teacher, who is in her second year of teaching at the grade 6 level and who typifies this predicament, explains it this way:

> "Oh yes! [I do lack confidence], especially not having the background knowledge of science or knowing exactly what is in here [material for a unit on the solar system] or what the students are required to learn. Or this unit on electricity and magnetism — what exactly is in here? How far does it go? Things like that I didn't really know, and it was almost like keeping myself one step ahead of the students during the first year. Now at least I feel I have that knowledge and I can develop it a bit further and, hopefully, see it the way I want it to work.
>
> "Last year, I was really lacking in confidence. What the course last summer [a one-week science workshop] gave me was a bit more confidence to try these things on my own. You know, no matter if they [the experiments at the workshop] were a huge flop, at least you tried them. Before, I had the idea, 'Well, if I do this experiment as a demonstration and it turns out to be disastrous, then how will I explain it?' What I learned from the course was that there is no right answer. . . it's not all black and white. It's a process, and I guess that's it in itself — just having fun; and also learning from what you do. I feel better about what I am doing in science this year than I did last year. I'm approaching it differently."

The principal, who is aware of teacher concerns about science, suggested that some of them feel less comfortable with science because the curriculum is not as prescriptive as it is in some of the other subjects:

> "I think teachers generally feel less comfortable with science and social studies than they do with the rest of the subjects. Even if you take, for instance, a teacher who went to university and got a BA in history and English, and fell into education and ended up in a school — they generally feel reasonably comfortable with the language arts program because the reading text is fairly prescriptive in nature and so on and so forth. In a lot of cases, you see, there's a framework on which they can hang their program and get through. Science and social studies haven't been in the same kind of situation. . . Science is better off since the new curriculum guidelines [came out four years ago], and also since, in this school, we adopted the *STEM* program and provided the materials for *STEM*, too, but nevertheless, it's the curriculum area that most teachers, if they're

> BA people or if they are nondegreed people, feel very uncomfortable with. . . . It's something they *can* do – you don't need to be an Einstein to carry off the science – but they are uncomfortable about it and, therefore, reluctant to get into it."

Scheduling Science and the Lack of Time

The normal school day includes 275 minutes of in-school time, with classes scheduled over a six-day cycle according to the percentages recommended by the provincial guidelines. In practice, however, there is no standard formula for determining actual teaching time for in-class subjects; thus, broad discrepancies in allotted teaching time for a specific subject can and do exist. For example, one teacher at the intermediate level calculated 140 minutes for science in the six-day cycle, while another at the same grade level calculated 60 minutes for the same time period.

Although teacher-made timetables may show that 10 per cent of the time has been allocated to science, it does not necessarily follow that all of that time is actually devoted to science teaching. In some classrooms the timetable is followed regularly, but in others it is not. "Sometimes I just don't have time to get everything in" is a common statement. On other occasions, science time may be used as a make-up period for other subjects.

One teacher at the intermediate level who is teaching a new grade level this year felt that during the first few months she had to spend most of the time becoming familiar with the language arts and mathematics programs. Until she had those subjects "under control" she did not have much time for other subjects, including science. During this adjustment time, her class did do some work on the topic of water and land but, as she said:

> "They've just been reading and talking a lot, mainly discussion. I hate to have them just reading a book. Actually we haven't even filled all the science periods. We were just talking about a lot of general things. . . . As far as experiments go, I am not really experiment-oriented, although I enjoy doing them. Part of it is I really don't have the materials. I'll have to see what I can do about that."

Those subjects that are taught by specialist teachers (music, French and physical education) are prescheduled and therefore are always taught on a regular basis.

Lack of sufficient time in which to teach science is also a common complaint of teachers. They note that new subjects are continually being added to the curriculum, but seldom are any removed. The school's change from a five-day to a six-day teaching cycle helped to alleviate this situation. However, even with this arrangement many teachers continue to find it difficult to teach everything that is required in the time allotted. Consequently, they say, some subjects "suffer"; science is often among them. Language arts and mathematics nearly always receive attention as prescribed, and in some classrooms these subjects seem to dominate the program.

Integrating Science

Some teachers justify the limited time spent on science per se because they feel that they "integrate" science with other subjects, and thus, they say, more time is actually spent on science than might appear on the timetable. Because integration is a common practice in elementary teaching, it is perhaps not unusual for teachers to believe that the "science" they teach in this way is an effective way to approach the subject. Upon examination, however, most integration appears to mean primarily talking about topics which might be science-related rather than "doing" science. A grade 1 teacher gave the following example of how she integrates science in her classroom:

> "I tie it in with the reading course. For example, *Surprise, Surprise,* which is the first reader in the series, starts off working with pets, the pet shop, going to buy a pet; so, instead of going from the *STEM* book on animal needs, I build from the reading course – like I integrate it. So, we start off with, for instance, the types of animals that you would have for a pet – tame animals and what they need – and then we go to wild animals and what their needs are. Really they are getting it from discussion; they are getting it from their own home experience at that stage. About the only thing we did was that the children each brought in a picture of their dog, told us about it, wrote a story about their own dog, and then the photograph went on a piece of paper with the story."

These approaches suggest that science is primarily conceived as a body of knowledge that can be imparted through a variety of means and that does not have to be formally labelled as "science" or presented during a special time of day devoted primarily to "science." Only one teacher was observed to integrate science regularly by beginning with organized science activities and then extending the learning to applications of science in mathematics and language arts. In addition, this teacher emphasized ideas and information that were related to science throughout his program. According to the principal, there are times when integration presents the opportunity to "hide science or social studies in one another." Integration could also be a way of rationalizing the fact that not enough science teaching is actually occurring.

Science Experts

Two teachers (in the kindergarten to grade 6 range) are perceived by the staff to be particularly interested in science. Although one of them is considered to be "quite a science expert," both of them are thought to "know a lot about science" and to "like to teach it." Both are men, and both have science programs that are always taught regularly. The remainder of the staff do not consider themselves particularly competent in science and certainly not "science experts." According to the principal, this situation is typical of most elementary schools:

> "You probably noticed yourself the limited hands-on things that are going on in science and so on, and I think it's fair to say of students that during their career in elementary school — and this is not just true here; it's true in most schools — if their luck is average, they are going to hit one teacher at least, maybe two, who are keen on the science aspect of curriculum, and probably you are going to see some of the social studies dragging its heels if the teacher is concentrating on science. I don't feel badly about that because I think it probably evens out on the social studies side with another teacher."

Science Background

It should be recognized that most of the teachers at Seaward have taken several reading and language arts courses during their preservice teacher education programs. Also, most have since taken additional language arts courses at both the undergraduate and graduate levels, and many have attended the reading and language arts inservice courses and workshops regularly available throughout the province. This training has helped them feel more competent and comfortable in teaching language arts. Such is not the case with science. Only one teacher at Seaward has studied science at the university level. Several others studied some science in high school (typically biology and, perhaps, chemistry), while a few took no science at all. Several teacher's college graduates studied science in one course during training, but none of them considers these courses to have been of much value, particularly because they took place "so long ago."

In the two institutions within the province that train the majority of elementary school teachers, science methods courses are not always available, let alone required. At one of the institutions, as recently as five years ago, a science methods course was offered only to those students preparing to teach at the intermediate level. As some of the teachers currently at Seaward concentrated in early childhood education, they did not take the course. One teacher, who is now assigned to the intermediate grades, regrets not having had a science methods course. At the other institution, a six-hour noncredit workshop in science methods has been offered to all prospective teachers in the past few years. Plans are now being made to introduce a science course. The fact remains, however, that graduates of that program have few or no science teaching methods to call upon when they are teaching science.

Inservice Education in Science

Due to their lack of preservice preparation in science and science methods, Seaward teachers must rely on inservice and continuing education courses to improve their background in science. However, opportunities for upgrading, particularly in science content, appear to be limited or nonexistent.

Science inservice activities for elementary teachers at the district level have been rare; the few that have been available were usually one-hour or two-hour sessions offered during meetings of the teachers' association. However, because all associations (covering the various subjects) hold their meetings on the same day, teachers must make choices, and only a few have ever chosen science. The principal explains this fact by suggesting that teachers feel uncomfortable with science and prefer to attend workshops in "safer" areas. Also, the emphasis the school places on language arts and mathematics probably increases attendance at those workshops. Teachers who have attended the occasional science workshops, however, have often been disappointed with their quality. As one teacher said:

> "I have attended a lot of inservices in reading and creative writing — things like that — and I could still go to a lot more, but with science, I have never really attended any great workshops. You know the conferences we have every year; I have never attended anything that has helped me in the classroom."

In the past six years, only two inservice days were devoted to science, and at only one of those was attendance by teachers required. Most of the teachers at the school said they would be interested in attending some science workshops, particularly if they were designed to meet the needs of their classrooms.

One type of inservice education that has been attempted on a provincial basis involves inviting one representative from a school district to a one-week intensive workshop, with the expectation that participants would convey what they had learned to colleagues in their home districts. The assumptions here are that knowledge and experience gained at the original workshop will eventually become widely disseminated, and that teachers attending the workshop will be equipped to do "teacher training."

Several years ago, Mr. Blake, a grade 5 teacher from Seaward, was selected to attend a one-week intensive workshop on the *STEM* science program, an experience he reported as having been well received by all participants. He returned to Seaward to conduct a workshop for teachers in the district but was not satisfied with the outcome. Mr. Blake felt his presentation had been too theoretical, and he was not sure what the teachers had gained from the experience. Although some teachers did say they found the session interesting and informative, their actual teaching of science did not seem to be affected. The principal, who had participated in a similar inservice activity for mathematics teachers ("following which I didn't disseminate what I had learned at all"), finds this type of inservice education to be a generally ineffective way of improving science teaching:

> "It is fine in theory to say, 'Well, this is how we will disseminate here because we will spend some dollars and we will get these key people and then they will go back and spread the gospel, and so on.' In my experience, it doesn't work that way. It makes a big difference to the person who attended [the workshop], but that's probably where the difference ends. I just don't know. I think any kind of inservicing where we say, 'O.K., we're going to do a science inservice for the elementary teachers in this district, so we're going to gather 65 of you together and jam science down your throats for an hour,' isn't effective because, first of all, it is very difficult to get teachers to an inservice on time and get the inservice started on time. It's very difficult to restrict a coffee break or a mid-morning break or lunch at noon and have everybody back at 1:30 p.m. The day ends up being so reduced by the social side of things. Not that that is all bad, because, I think, teachers need an opportunity to get together without other responsibilities so that they can socialize, because socialization has got school in the middle of it. You know they're talking about school things and science. Inservice isn't necessarily science, it's school things and, I think, there is a benefit to that which shouldn't be ignored. But, by the same token, if your objective is to disseminate something about science and, further from that, if your objective is that science programs in the classroom will improve because of that inservice, then that objective has had it!"

Leadership in Science

Leadership in science teaching at the district level has been limited. The district curriculum consultant, a person responsible for all curriculum areas, generally concentrates on the language arts and has provided little assistance in terms of science teaching to the teachers of Seaward. This situation is not uncommon. Most of the school-district consultants in the province who carry responsibilities for all curriculum areas in the elementary program generally have had little training in science. In fact, in a province with 21 school districts, there are only three school-district consultants with full-time or part-time responsibility for science. Thus the one provincial science consultant at the Department of Education faces the overwhelming task of providing expertise and assistance to teachers in the remainder of the province, in addition to the other duties required of someone holding that position.

Within the school, leadership in science has come to be identified with Mr. Blake, who has a strong background and burning interest in science, who is very active in teaching it and quite willing to promote it.

Over the years, Mr. Blake has been selected to represent the district at a special science workshop, has presented two science workshops to Seaward teachers (one mandatory and one optional) and others in the district, and generally has made himself available to colleagues for the purpose of providing assistance in the form of suggestions, materials, information and explanations about scientific phenomena.

Among his colleagues, Mr. Blake is recognized as the "science person" in the school. Mr. Blake suggests that he is perceived this way because he is trained in science and had worked in science-related areas prior to becoming a teacher. Most teachers, however, do not use Mr. Blake as a resource person on a regular basis although they know he is available if they wish to approach him. Because a classroom teacher serving as a resource person can only influence and be helpful but cannot demand, the onus for change remains with each individual teacher.

During the past several years, interest in and action towards developing the school science program at Seaward has peaked and waned. Those few teachers who have a personal interest in science and feel committed to improving it have continued to seek assistance and to work towards implementing a more activity-oriented science program in their classrooms. Most of the others appear to be carrying on primarily in a more traditional mode that is heavily teacher-centred and textbook-oriented, creating an environment in which worksheets are commonplace and hands-on activities are rare.

Teaching a Combination Kindergarten-Through-Grade-2 Class

The Classroom

Just outside Ms. Tanner's classroom, a brightly coloured rainbow with the word "WELCOME" printed below it greets everyone who passes by the room. One step inside suggests to children and visitors alike that this is a place for and about children. There is a hum of activity as children go about their tasks throughout the room. Evidence of children's creative work covers walls and countertops. A large yellow sunflower surrounded by poems covers one section of a wall, reminding children of their study of this plant, which flourishes in the area; several brightly coloured graphs created cooperatively by the class are displayed on other walls, along with poems and other bits of work produced by the children. Squiggly caterpillars, individually designed by each child, hang from the ceiling in another section of the room; a large calendar and weather chart, designed by Ms. Tanner and filled in by the children, records time and weather conditions from day to day, providing information for children to enter in their daily journals.

Books, both the commercially produced and homemade variety (made by the children themselves), are everywhere — on desks, countertops, carts, on the floor of the reading corner and on tables; several

"Big Books" sit on an easel for use by a group of children, although individual students often can be seen leafing through them. A pair of guinea pigs that live in a cardboard-box home (constructed by the children and situated on a counter in a "quiet" corner of the room) provide a constant source of observational material for students. The children learn to care for these small animals and, in Ms. Tanner's words, "it's so nice for the kids to have something to cuddle and play with."

A spirit of cooperative learning is encouraged by Ms. Tanner. Older children are encouraged to help the younger ones, although often the assistance is mutual. Ms. Tanner's desk, unobtrusively situated at one side of the room, is surrounded by shelves and books, while the students' desks are to one side near the front of the room in three clusters of eight desks each. Within the clusters, the desks are arranged in two rows of four desks, facing and adjacent to each other. This arrangement allows the children to interact freely with each other. Children from all three levels — kindergarten, grades 1 and 2 — constitute each grouping so that children can assist each other.

Another section of the room houses the reading corner, where the class frequently gathers throughout the day for stories and discussion. The coziness provided by the rug invites children to spend additional time in this area, reading quietly, completing manipulative mathematics assignments or doing a variety of other nonwritten activities.

Observing in this classroom was always a pleasant task for me. I was always warmly welcomed by everyone and made to feel a part of the class. Judging from the number of students from other classes who spent their recess, noon hour and after-school free time in Ms. Tanner's room, I was not the only one who felt this way. Because of the unstructured nature of the environment, I was able to move about freely and came to be accepted as part of the group. Usually, children were willing to enter into a conversation; often they came to request assistance, perhaps viewing me as another teacher.

Ms. Tanner

This is the first year for the "experiment" combining kindergarten and grades 1 and 2 in a single class. Although Ms. Tanner has been teaching for six years, it is her first year teaching kindergarten and grade 1. There are some "bright" students in the class, but a number of the children have experienced difficulty with reading and mathematics during their first years in school and are working below their grade level. Consequently, Ms. Tanner's primary objective is assisting students in mastering basic literacy and computational skills.

While Ms. Tanner feels that she is quite well-prepared to teach language arts and mathematics, she does not feel the same way about science. During her university studies, she did one year of introductory biology. In retrospect, she feels that her one science methods course was "a kind of hit-and-miss" experience, particularly "in relation to developing in students an understanding of the sequential development of process skills involved in doing science," an area in which she continues to feel somewhat inadequate.

Science in the Classroom Program

Ms. Tanner feels that, due to the nature of the children in her class, reading and mathematics must form the basis of the daily program, with other subjects, including science, flowing from these basic activities. However, because music and physical education are taught by specialists, these two subjects also appear regularly in the timetable.

Within this integrated approach, science is not taught as a separate subject. Although Ms. Tanner sometimes questions her reasons for doing this, she believes nevertheless that there are no clear distinctions among the different subjects and that integration is one way to give attention to all of them. She explains it this way:

> "I don't know whether it is a compromise or a cop-out on my part, but it seemed a comfortable way for me to handle the whole situation; it seemed to work in with the program. It seems that science is important, but it's not as important as getting kids to read and write and do math. Somehow [when students read, write or do arithmetic] they are not seen as doing science. Some people still seem to think science is science and reading is reading and math is math, and there is no dialogue or exchange between them, but I find just the opposite, that kids are interested. You know, if they are interested in whatever they are doing, they will learn to read or do their calculations or whatever is necessary in the context. They identify with reading and math quite naturally and quite easily, so that it facilitates the learning."

Another reason why science is not given specific attention in her program is that Ms. Tanner finds that she has no time to plan for it. During one of our discussions, she described the demands on her time this way:

> "I've found that I've just been so busy that I just haven't had time to project too far into the future which, I suppose, makes things even less directed than they might be. I find the three levels very demanding. I find at the end of the day I've just made it through, and I find it difficult to integrate planning into the teaching day. There are only so many hours in a day, so I find that a big problem and, I suppose, the newness of it all [is a factor, too]. Doing it all over again a second time would be smoother and easier. I do feel very rushed and pressured. I guess, in a way, if I was to follow a prescribed program [in science] that has been laid out, it might help, but I haven't really had time to look at the materials [*STEM*] and become familiar with them."

Ms. Tanner feels that one way of coping with the time problem is to integrate science with language arts and mathematics. Within this integration process, science is not planned; it "just happens." Ms. Tanner tells how this occurs:

> "Well, science just happens. There isn't a particular time on the schedule when it is taught. It happens in the context of the day, and it would be something that would be used to cultivate math skills, writing skills, reading skills — that sort of thing — so that the science would become an instrument for that, rather than just science for the sake of science. It would just overlap specific areas [reading, mathematics] which seem to be the major thrust. Reading and mathematics are most important, and the other subjects [science, art, etc.] serve those purposes."

Ms. Tanner's usual approach to topic selection is, as she says, to "go with the interests of the kids." The topics that she introduces normally emphasize skill development, such as observing and graphing. In the four-month period September to December, topics that related to science included apples, seasonal changes, sunflowers ("related to seasonal changes"), guinea pigs and dinosaurs. It was Ms. Tanner's idea to have the children take the temperature and note weather conditions; these are then recorded in their daily journals, an exercise which is also considered to be science.

Integration: Studying Dinosaurs

As a topic that evolved from the interests of the students, the study of dinosaurs serves to illustrate how Ms. Tanner integrates language arts and science. It all began with the reading of a book about dinosaurs. This event sparked a discussion that led to the students constructing dinosaur models out of plasticine. The rubbery creatures of many colours sat on a board just behind the more formal study area and were available for observation and admiration throughout the day. Some of the models could be readily identified as tyrannosaurus rex, triceratops and brontosaurus, among others. During the next library period, a few days later, the students took their models to the library where they were placed on display. The sign that accompanied the display read: "Please Be Gentle." At this time, many of the students asked to check out books on dinosaurs, and the four or five available books were quickly snatched up, leaving a number of children disappointed.

Over the next week, the children continued to request that books about dinosaurs be read to them. Several youngsters brought books from home and asked to have them read to the class. Ms. Tanner always agreed. In one instance, she challenged the class to see if they could "learn anything more about dinosaurs from this book." The children then heard about the environment in which dinosaurs lived, how they looked and what they ate. Most of the children seemed very interested in the story and listened attentively, but towards the end of the story and the discussion, two children — a boy and a girl — got up and returned to their desks. When Ms. Tanner asked that they return to the reading corner, both children reluctantly obliged, although the little girl muttered quietly, "I don't like dinosaurs."

Following the story and the discussion, Ms. Tanner asked the group if they would like to make a book about dinosaurs. Most children seemed to like the idea. Ms. Tanner told them that they could tell her the words and she would type them and then everyone could illustrate his or her ideas. This assignment set off a flurry of activity. Ms. Tanner rolled her typewriter out into the room, and as she sat down behind it the students crowded around her waiting for a turn. As each suggestion was given, it was typed and read out aloud.

"Some dinosaurs can eat other dinosaurs."
"Dinosaurs are very big."
"Some dinosaurs learn to fly."
"Dinosaurs come to school on the bus."
"Some dinosaurs eat water plants."
"Dinosaurs lived long ago."
"Some dinosaurs eat garbage."

Once the children had illustrated their ideas, their work was put together in a book that was read to the class and then added to the collection of books on the mobile book shelf. This book became a favourite of many children, who often could be seen leafing through it.

Emphasizing Process Skills

Throughout her teaching, Ms. Tanner says she emphasizes process skill development rather than content. She feels that it is more important to provide children with skills for "learning how to learn" than to concentrate on facts and information that probably will be forgotten. In particular, observation is stressed, as are graphing, measuring and classifying. Graphing began the first day of school when the class completed a graph that Ms. Tanner had prepared.

Where Did You Eat Your Lunch?

At Home	○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○
At School in Cafeteria	○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○
In Teachers' Room	○ ○

Each child selected a sticker and placed it on the graph in the appropriate row. Those children who were not able to read (most could not) received help from Ms. Tanner or another child. Graphs of this type are constructed regularly in this classroom and usually deal with topics the children have just experienced.

During one visit to the classroom, I observed a lesson in observation which was conducted around the introduction of two guinea pigs into the classroom. Ms. Tanner began by gathering the children in a circle on the floor. Everyone was asked to be very quiet so as not to frighten the newcomers. As the guinea pigs were placed in the centre of the circle, Ms. Tanner said, "I'm going to put these down on the carpet to run around the circle. If they come to you, just be very quiet and be very gentle with them. They will run around and visit you and we can have a good look at them. The white one is called Chris and the brown one is Mouse." The children sat quietly. One guinea pig moved near two children; the other guinea pig followed.

Ms. Tanner: What does it feel like?

Student: Soft. [The student touches the animal]. What are you playing, follow the leader?

Ms. Tanner: Do they look like any other animals you know?

Student: Yes, a pig.

Ms. Tanner: They are related. What do you notice about their fur?

Student: It's all curled.

Student 2: That one's fur is all sticking out.

Ms. Tanner: Those are called twirls. There are different kinds of guinea pigs. Some have straight hair and some have curls — just like people do.

Student: Curls!

Ms. Tanner: Some have short hair like cats and some have long, fuzzy hair.

Student: Is it all right if I bring my cat to class?

Ms. Tanner: Sometime that would be nice. What's Chris doing now? What is he smelling?

Student: He wants to smell a bit.

The discussion continues. Ms. Tanner asks Tony, a small kindergarten boy, to get his apple core, which Ms. Tanner has saved on her desk. Tony jumps at the chance to become involved and returns with the core. The guinea pigs immediately begin to chew it.

Student: Listen!

Ms. Tanner: What do you hear?

Student: I hear their teeth snap.

Student 2: Can I hold it?

The animals are then passed from one set of arms to another. Meanwhile, the four girls in the class have been sitting on the outside of the circle. One of them complains, "I can't see," but no one moves to accommodate her. She persists, asking several times, "Can I hold one?"

but to no avail. When the circle gradually closes in around the children holding the animals, two of the girls remain in the background watching the activity.

During the next 10 minutes, the class talks about the guinea pigs' claws, teeth, the food they eat and where they live. The noise level rises as work begins on constructing a house out of two cardboard boxes that have just been fetched by several students from a nearby supermarket. When the task is completed, it is time for lunch.

Once all the boys have left, the four girls go back to the guinea pigs. They stand looking into the box. Several touch the animals gingerly. When I ask whether they have held the guinea pigs yet, they tell me that they have not had a chance. I suggest that perhaps they would like to try now, so one of the girls picks up one of the guinea pigs and begins petting it. Another is very hesitant, but manages to pick up the other animal. She holds it far away from her body. The guinea pig wiggles and Ms. Tanner suggests that she put it on the floor and play with it there. She does so, but the animal runs away from her. The child follows it, under tables and chairs. She tries to catch it several times, but it always manages to elude the outstretched, unsure set of hands. Several boys come back into the room, and one of them immediately goes after the guinea pig. "Shall I catch it for you?" he asks, attempting to corner the animal. Immediately the little girl stops the chase. She watches for a short time and then gets up and leaves the room.

During the first three months of the school year, the class performed several measuring and classifying activities in addition to the observation activities. Some measuring was done during the study of apples, when the class used recipes to make applesauce. At the same time, the class also classified (sorted) the apples into the different varieties, and then graphed their results. Ms. Tanner had planned to take the class to an apple orchard to do some observation activities, but rain and cold weather prevented the trip. She says she also would like to take the class to the seashore to observe the "sea creatures" but she is worried about being able to control some of the students along the seashore.

Ms. Tanner describes her efforts to develop students' science process skills as "whatever comes up in the context of what [the students] are doing," although she does specifically plan some classifying activities for the kindergarten children as part of their mathematics program.

The science that flows from Ms. Tanner's program centres around the life science areas. Physical science activities are conspicuously absent. A water table sitting empty, covered with a board which is used for storage, reflects this situation. Although the water table is not being used for activities such as sinking and floating, Ms. Tanner does plan to use it to hold tadpoles during a study of "animals in springtime." Hands-on problem-solving activities from a science perspective have not been included in the program either. However, as Ms. Tanner says, in trying to develop a program for children at three grade levels, with many children having difficulty coping with a school learning environment, "there just isn't time to do everything."

Teaching Grade Five

Mr. Blake

Mr. Blake's strong academic background in science is indicated by the fact that he holds a BSc degree and has completed course work towards the MSc degree. He was involved in government research work before entering teaching 14 years ago. His six-month teacher education program did not include a "thorough" science methods course. His personal reading list, which consists of some 20 science-related periodicals, includes publications such as *Science '82, Discovery, Scientific American, Popular Science and Technology* and *Computers and Computing*; for his students, he subscribes to *Owl, Chickadee, Ranger Rick* and *Contact*, among others. He feels that it is his background in science, together with his sustained interest and active involvement in science-related activities, including work with computers, that contribute to his reputation as a "science expert."

While Mr. Blake feels very confident about his science background, he would like to improve his skill in organizing the classroom for alternate ways of learning. He finds that, in general, students are becoming less interested in school learning of any kind and increasingly difficult to motivate. This situation causes him much distress, and sometimes he becomes very discouraged with teaching. He wishes help were available in the form of workshops or courses, but to date he has been unable to locate any. In the meantime, he attempts to adapt as best he can, but continues to feel that what he is doing is inadequate.

Mr. Blake has placed his desk at the back of the room, in a corner where it is sandwiched between several cupboards to the side and rear, and students' desks to the front. Being constantly on the move interacting with students, he does not spend much time at his desk. It was from this vantage point that I carried out much of my observation of science activities in his classroom.

Creating an Investigative Environment

Over a period of several months, this classroom has become a stimulating environment, with an array of living organisms and with a variety of children's work displayed on the walls and hanging from the ceiling. Very little teacher handiwork can be seen anywhere, reflecting Mr. Blake's philosophy that the students learn best from producing their own work, whether it be the morning news broadcasts that his class regularly produces, material for classroom walls or the Christmas concert. As for student input, he says:

> "I am very proud of them [for their morning broadcast production] because I know it's not me. It would be so easy for me to write something out for them and say, 'Here, you say this, you do this and that.' It would be so easy, it really would. I would rather see kids make a flop, knowing it was their own effort, and see them take pride in whatever they do, rather than watch them spend all their time doing what someone else prepared for them."

Two guinea pigs occupy a permanent position in the classroom, although other animals brought in by the students periodically join them, as do bits of interesting organic material that students find and want to share with the class. Across the room, near the window, are several large plants, while a fish tank holding guppies rests on a window sill at the back of the room. According to Mr. Blake, living organisms serve several purposes in his classroom:

> "I guess one purpose for having them here is to take the edge off the formality of the classroom – like the plants and the fish – there's something in the classroom other than the walls. Secondly, a lot of kids learn incidentally from it. With the guinea pigs, for instance, the kids pick them up and look at them and see their teeth and such. They ask questions about them. It takes a long time to get their curiosity up, you know. Some kids have been curious about the shape of the pellets that the guinea pigs produce. 'Why is that?' they ask. 'What goes in looks almost like what comes out! Same colour.' So, I get into talking about the reasons for that. And, likewise, the fish are a source of curiosity and observation. One student asked, 'Well, are those fish eggs down at the bottom?' and I said, 'No, guppies don't lay eggs; they keep their eggs inside of them.' So we go on to talk about that. Different kids come up with different questions over a period of time."

On the counter that lines the wall on one side of the room can be found some interesting materials — such as a bone, a piece of grass or an insect in a jar — brought in by Mr. Blake or by a student. On display at the moment is a wood borer in a jar, accompanied by the question, "Why such long antennae?"

All material brought into the classroom must be accompanied by a question. Mr. Blake wants the students to think about what they see rather than just make superficial observations about it. He feels that questions stimulate their thinking and, indeed, students can be observed stopping to study the object and spend a few minutes pondering over the question. Mr. Blake feels this exercise has some merit:

> "If you just put stuff out, it probably will get looked at and some kids will ask questions and some won't; and I don't really care if everybody asks the question of themselves or not. If *one* does, I feel I have accomplished something."

Students who bring in their own specimens are especially keen to have others observe their contributions. One student recently brought in some teeth from a pig. He arranged the teeth neatly on a piece of paper and added the inscription, "Teeth from a Pig: 1. What type are they? 2. Is a pig a herbivore?" The student was anxious to have me take a look at "his" teeth, so he came to the teacher's desk and extended a special invitation to see what he had brought to class. As he arranged the teeth in the order in which they are found in the pig's mouth, he proudly gave me a private briefing about "fangs" and other "front teeth," as these terms apply to pigs.

This kind of activity reflects, in one way, Mr. Blake's goal for his students in science:

> "I want them to be curious; I want them to be investigative and to develop skills in [science]; I want them to be able to have the challenge of trying to figure out something from the facts they have. To me, that's the basis of all education, and I think science is education, really. The goals I have for science are the goals I have for everything I do — having this sort of love of wanting to find out."

Another way in which Mr. Blake attempts to foster an investigative questioning attitude is to model that behaviour — something he does continually. When talking about a topic, he often injects questions such as, "How do you think that got to be that way?" or, "Look at the information you have; how does it fit in with what you know?"

Although Mr. Blake does have a great deal of scientific knowledge to offer, he tries, nevertheless, to convey the message that he does not have all the answers. He does this by responding to questions with several possible answers.

> "I never give them a definite answer; I always give them two or three answers or possibilities. They know that I don't know the answers. You know, I don't think that there is any 'one answer all the time' sort of thing anyway. I don't know if it is a good technique or not, but I always feel comfortable in doing it. It's arousing curiosity, or saying, 'Look, it's not as simple as it seems.' That's the message I want the kids to get from it, and I think they do, you know."

During field work, students are encouraged to study, examine and investigate. Mr. Blake's own investigative behaviour provides a model for the students, and his questions help to focus their observations. For example, while digging in the forest floor, he puts his fingers to his nose and says, "Smell your fingers; what can it tell you about the ground?" Walking through an area of pine and spruce trees and stumps, he stops, comments and then queries: "Thinning. Why do you suppose they had to do that?" His question led to closer observation of the amount of shade being provided by the trees and to speculation about its effect on new growth.

A Storehouse of Information

In addition to his investigative behaviour, Mr. Blake brings to the setting a wealth of scientific information. He is a virtual storehouse of interesting facts that provide a rich contextual background to whatever is being discussed. Thus a question by a student usually elicits not just a simple answer but elaboration and clarification as well. For instance, during a class in which students were preparing to go outside to collect materials for a forest-floor terrarium, it became evident that some of the students were a bit unclear about the meaning of "terrarium."

Mr. Blake: I think there is some confusion here. What does "terrarium" mean?

Student: Sort of like an aquarium?

Mr. Blake: In a way. What does the word 'terra' mean?

Student: Life-like.

Mr. Blake: No. [The guessing continues.]

Student: Death-like.

Mr. Blake: Terra has to do with the ground, the earth. Terra Firma.

Student: What about pterodactyl?

Mr. Blake: I don't think it comes from that; that's another terra, "pt," and that means winged. This terra means the earth. So, the terrarium is earth, like aquarium is water. Terra is earth, and terrarium is just making a noun out of it. Would someone like to look up the origin of the word? [Researching using resource materials is a frequent occurrence in this classroom.]

Similarly, during a class discussion following an investigation of the living organisms found in different ecological areas near the school, the concept of life cycles was being examined. One student announced that he had found a grasshopper in a grassy area his group had been examining.

Mr. Blake: Grasshoppers. Where do you think they lay their eggs?

Student: On the grass near the ground.

Mr. Blake: Yes, they do. A grasshopper is an insect that has different stages in its life, too, except that it only has baby grasshoppers and then the grown-up grasshoppers; there aren't any larva grasshoppers. The eggs hatch out into a baby grasshopper, and then the baby grasshopper becomes a little more grown-up, and then a little more, and it finally becomes an adult. Now that grasshopper there is just about to moult; as you see, its skin is quite dark. It is just about to moult and become the final stage of the grasshopper — the winged-flying stage.

Student: It's flying now!

Mr. Blake: It's flying now? O.K. Then it is really coming to the end of its life; it probably is just about to lay eggs and maybe it was laying eggs when you captured it. O.K. I'll investigate it a little more fully for you afterwards and tell you a bit more about it. We will look at it under the microscope.

Student: If grasshoppers lay eggs in the grass, don't they get stepped on?

Mr. Blake: Well, they are so very tiny; see, actually they lay them in the ground. They burrow a little hole and just lay them in the ground. The eggs are so tiny it wouldn't hurt just to step on them because they are so small.

Mr. Blake considers factual information of a scientific nature important for students because he feels it provides them with a foundation upon which to build. It is important because, as he says:

> "What is it you want them to know, anyway? They've got to have a lot of these building blocks of knowledge before they start thinking about something else anyway. They have to have the language before they can talk. They have to have the words before they can speak the language."

Although Mr. Blake's explanations provide a wealth of information and a colourful context to almost any discussion, they can lead to a situation which tends to become teacher-centred and content-oriented. As a result, Mr. Blake often ends up by dominating the discussion or answering his own questions, particularly when a student is slow to respond or does not answer correctly. Very short wait-time between question and answer results in classroom interaction moving in the direction of a teacher-centred monologue. Although the ideas being discussed may be informative, an unintended outcome is the loss of the child-centred inquiry environment that Mr. Blake would like to foster. This situation also makes it difficult for many of the grade 5 students to keep their attention on the task at hand, particularly over long periods of time.

Methods of Instruction

Of the five general activities of reading, discussing, recording, listening and experimenting that often occur in science classrooms, Mr. Blake estimates that discussion probably happens most often during his science class, followed by listening, experimenting, recording and reading. When I asked a group of students to state their perception of what happened most in science class, most of them mentioned listening and discussing, and all of them indicated that they would like to do more experimenting. Observation supports the perception of both teacher and students. A great deal of discussion occurs, with the students doing most of the listening. Mr. Blake says he, too, would like to have the students actively involved in investigations on a more regular basis. Sometimes, however, he finds it difficult to organize many activity-oriented experiences. He explains the dilemma:

> "I would like to approach science as being an activity, but I'm not always able to do it. I guess it goes back to my organization. I have found that I have to strike a balance between what I think I should do and what I can do. I feel if I put everything into my teaching, what I believe in and feel that I should do, I couldn't do it all. It affects science because I don't plan as much; I don't organize as much as I would like to do. I have to make compromises. The compromises I make are having a lot of lecture-type lessons rather than activities. I'd say out of five science lessons I think there are three activity lessons and two lecture or two reading or two problem-solving lessons — nonactivity."

He also feels that the biological topics in *STEM* that he has agreed to teach (classification, interdependence and communities of living things) do not lend themselves to as much experimentation as do some of the topics in the physical science areas, such as electricity and light. Although he has built into his program a number of activities that utilize the outdoors and his specimen collection, he still finds that it leaves a great deal of material to be covered through discussion, filmstrips, the textbook and other written resource materials.

For Mr. Blake, the outdoors is an extension of the classroom and a rich source of data for a variety of investigative experiences. He finds that students come to grade 5 with little prior experience in investigating, as evidenced by their lack of investigative skills. When asked about this, the other teachers in the school said they rarely use the outdoors for science purposes. One teacher mentioned that she does not take her students outside because "they don't know how to behave" and are too difficult to manage. Consequently, Mr. Blake has had to begin developing in his students the basic skills for learning and investigating outdoors. He accomplishes this in several ways.

Initially, activities are carefully structured so that each group of students has a specific task to do in a specific area within a limited time period. Depending on the activity, Mr. Blake will give suggestions about what and where to explore. Once outside, he models for them the behaviours of an investigator, by making observations, looking for relationships, asking questions and searching for clues in the environment that might provide possible answers. It is Mr. Blake's hope that over time the students will learn from his behaviour and begin to imitate him.

Although he considers these skills very important for purposes of teaching and learning science, Mr. Blake does not teach them directly. Rather, he expects that the students will develop them by being involved in activities in which they will have the opportunity to use them:

> "I don't actually teach process skills; I guess they sort of happen as the students go along. I hope that with enthusiasm and my approach they are sort of following along with what I do. For instance,

> I'm observing and I am hoping that they sort of pick up my observational patterns, or how I investigate."

Although Mr. Blake feels that many students have much to learn, he is beginning to see a carry-over in some of them. He recalls a recent incident:

> "I see some of the kids sort of investigating things. For instance, I see them trying to figure out why the guinea pigs are both going in the dark a lot of the time. First, they think it is because of the food, but they check this out and find there is no food in there, so they look in the hole and think a little bit about it and then they look in the hole in the other side. 'It's small! Maybe they like being in small places,' and that sort of stuff."

As a regular participant in science classes over a four-month period, however, I was unable to observe much evidence of carry-over to student behaviour. Perhaps a visitor would be able to observe such changes near the end of the school year.

Mr. Blake associates psychomotor skill development with manipulation of large pieces of equipment such as microscopes and balances. To date, he has not spent much time developing these skills in his students. Mr. Blake offers this explanation:

> "We didn't have the equipment until this year. We've tried the binocular microscope. I've had them out a few times, but I realized that the kids who were working with them didn't have a line about what they were doing. I am going to have to spend some time with microscopes and just let them play around with them. I will get some stuff that I know they could readily see, like leaves, parts of leaves, and we will just look at a whole bunch of stuff. We'll look at chalk dust, look at sugar, salt, all kinds of stuff, and spend the whole afternoon because there are enough microscopes in the school for everybody."

As well, Mr. Blake has not emphasized the development of manipulation skills such as building and assembling simple pieces of equipment as part of his science program, although such activities may "happen" occasionally. As he noted, however, the biological topics currently being studied do not lend themselves particularly well to activities of this sort.

Computers in the Classroom

A year ago three computers were acquired by the school through the efforts of Mr. Blake, who obtained a professional development assistance grant from the provincial teachers' union. Two terminals are housed in the library, a central location that makes them easily accessible to all teachers, although Mr. Blake continues to be the primary user. Being a computer enthusiast, he spends many hours developing programs for classroom use or just investigating the parameters of the system. Mr.

Blake has offered to instruct the other teachers in the use of computers and hopes that some of them will become involved.

Mr. Blake's long-term goal is to acquaint all students with the computer by the time they complete their elementary schooling — not necessarily to make them proficient, but rather to provide them with basic computer awareness that can be expanded later. The most important aim is to make students feel comfortable with the computer.

In the meantime, Mr. Blake has one terminal set up in his classroom for use by his grade 5 students. During the first few months of school, the computer was introduced as a reward for doing good work, so initially only a few of the better students who expressed an interest began learning to use the computer. Consequently, several other students, who also wanted to get involved but who had difficulty completing assignments or who were irresponsible in relation to their obligations as class members, were denied early access.

Instruction on the computer began, therefore, with the training of four or five of the better students. Once these students had demonstrated that they "could be trusted" and had gained the basic skills of entering a simple program, they were encouraged to help other students get started. Mr. Blake feels this cooperative method of peer instruction is both an effective and an efficient way to introduce students to computers. Students are assisted in their learning by written instructions which Mr. Blake has developed and, because he is always in the room to assist in time of difficulty, any problems that arise can be identified and dealt with immediately. Mr. Blake feels that this system fosters success and minimizes frustration.

Girls and Science

Mr. Blake notes that the boys seem to be more interested in the computer than are the girls. No girls were among the initial group of students who learned to use the computer, and seldom were any girls observed to "hang around" the computer during out-of-class time. On the rare occasion that a girl was observed to look over the shoulder of the boy operating the computer, she never asserted herself to get in line to use it, whereas the boys would often haggle over who was next in line. Mr. Blake says, however, that he has the same expectations for the girls as he does for the boys — to become familiar with the computer. He notes that, although few girls resist the expectation, none seems particularly interested at this time. He did discover that one girl was very apprehensive about getting involved, because she had been cautioned against it by a parent who was concerned that she might break the machine and have to pay for it. (The same student was also reluctant to use hand calculators.) Once this misunderstanding was straightened out with the parent, the girl agreed to try. At first she appeared somewhat nervous; nevertheless, she seemed pleased with herself as she sat in front of the terminal while several other students looked on.

In Mr. Blake's view, it is not just in relation to the computer that the girls do not seem as interested as the boys; the same is true of science in general. He feels that, although the girls are just as capable as the boys, they just do not demonstrate any particular interest in scientific endeavours, and he attributes their lack of interest partly to the "socialization process."

> "For boys, science is part of their lives; science is part of their growing up. When they are little boys, they are investigating how the little trucks move in the sand or whatever, and investigation and observation are very much a part of their everyday play. Girls usually are not into those things. They seem to become more interested in dolls and things, and are not into mechanical, investigative, observational things."

This lower level of interest on the part of girls can also be observed in other ways. Although there does not appear to be any explicit resistance to science by any student, it is the boys who outwardly express excitement about science. For instance, my frequent visits to the school soon became associated with science class, and my appearance often seemed to act as a catalyst for remarks such as, "Oh boy, we have science today!" No girls were ever observed to react in this way. Several of the boys were also overheard to remark that science was their favourite subject.

Interest in science is manifested by the boys in other ways, too, such as by bringing animals to school, by frequently spending free time with the guinea pigs and making observations about them, by observing the fish tank or by bringing objects to class which become part of an investigative problem in science. A number of boys also appear to be more enthusiastic towards class activities, as evidenced by the speed with which their hands are raised and vigorously shaken in response to a question, and by the frequency with which they respond.

One group of four girls who shared a table provided a good source of observation over a period of several months. Although the group appeared to be fairly conscientious in completing tasks and following directions, all of these activities appeared to be carried out as a matter of course. There was neither resistance nor excitement, only a routine which happened every Day 1. These girls would find things to do other than science. However, just when one might think that they were paying little or no attention to the ongoing discussion or activity, one of the girls would raise a hand in response to a question. Seldom were these girls unable to respond to a question when called upon by the teacher. On the other hand, even though some of the boys were observed to "tune out," most of them participated on a more active level and with greater enthusiasm than did the girls. Although Mr. Blake is aware of the girls' attitudes towards science, he has not attempted to involve them in any special way so as to cultivate in them a greater interest in science. Similarly, he has not made any extra effort to motivate those boys who show little interest in science. Consequently, the boys who are enthusiastic about science and actively pursue it continue to receive more attention from the teacher.

A Typical Day

It is 8:10 a.m. and Mr. Blake is already at his desk, reading over his notes for the day's classes. He has been at school since 7:45 a.m., his usual arrival time. Following his normal routine, he has spent the first 25 minutes in the staff room chatting with colleagues. Once he gets into the classroom, there will be little time to engage them in conversation until well after classes close for the day. By 8:15, the first students begin to drift in. Mr. Blake, who is now busily gathering and organizing mathematics materials, greets them. One student stops at the guinea pig box, which is kept on a table just to the right of the door. Noticing that the two furry creatures have been separated and placed in individual boxes, the youngster asks why. Mr. Blake, who is now over at the computer, explains that the young female of four months had babies the night before, but because "she was too young to have them, the babies were born dead." The other students in the room all turn their attention to this conversation and several pairs of eyes grow large, while another student displays a look of puzzlement. Mr. Blake continues, "She needs time to recuperate so it is better that they are kept apart for awhile." John, the boy with the puzzled look, inquires further, "How long do they carry their children?" but by now Mr. Blake is busy with a computer problem and the question is left unanswered. John does not persist but continues watching the guinea pigs, petting them now and again.

Paul, another student, has arrived and requests permission to use the computer, which is located in a sheltered corner in the rear of the room between Mr. Blake's desk and the storage cupboards that line one wall of the classroom. Paul is one of a group of three or four boys who often can be found "hanging around" during free time, hoping for a chance to use the computer. This year, Mr. Blake has decided to give more attention to the better students, like Paul, in order to challenge them:

> "I've been thinking a lot this year about the mediocrity in the class — teaching mediocrity. I'm not going to do that anymore. I'm going to push the most intelligent ones, the more gifted ones. If the others want to pull up, fine. You know, I'll get them to a certain level, but I'm not going to teach for nothing. I'm going to push as much as I can, strive for as much as I can."

Paul is now sitting in front of the terminal busily punching in commands which will activate the game that is currently on the disc. Several other students look over his shoulder as he verbalizes the commands, which he reads from the direction manual that Mr. Blake has written for his students. Once the game is activated, everyone takes delight in his attempts to shoot down the invaders that crisscross the screen.

By the time the first bell rings at 8:35 a.m., most of the students are already in the classroom, where they spend the next 10 minutes busily chatting and getting themselves organized for the day. These activities are brought to a close by the intervention of the principal's voice over the PA system at 8:45 a.m. Following announcements and the national anthem, the day's work begins.

It is Day 1 on the timetable, and the students quickly gather their belongings and line up for physical education class, which is held in the gym. For the next 45 minutes, Mr. Blake has a quiet time in which to continue his preparations for the day. The remainder of the morning will include mathematics and reading, according to the timetable shown in Table III.1.

Table II.1 – Timetable for Class Five, Seaward Elementary School

Time	Day 1	Day 2	Day 3	Day 4	Day 5	Day 6
8:40	◄---- Opening ----►					
8:45	Phys. Ed.	Math	Phys. Ed.	Math	Phys. Ed.	Math
9:30	Math		Math		Math	
9:45		Music		Music		Music
10:15	◄---- Recess ----►					
10:30	◄---- SRA (reading) ----►					
11:30	◄---- USSR ("uninterrupted sustained silent reading") ----►					
11:45	◄---- Lunch ----►					
12:10	◄---- Activities ----►					
12:50	◄---- Listening ----►					
1:15	Science[a]	Writing	Art	Grammar	Soc. Stud.	Language
1:45		French		French		French
2:15	◄---- Shared Reading ----►					
2:30	◄---- Clean up ----►					
2:35	◄---- Dismissal ----►					

[a] Although science is officially scheduled for one hour, science class oftens starts 10 to 15 minutes early. Additional unscheduled time is also devoted to follow-up science activities; mathematics, language arts and social studies activities are frequently integrated with science.

Except on Wednesday, when he is called on to supervise the hall, lunchroom and playground, Mr. Blake spends part of every noon hour running outdoors, either with the running club (which he supervises) or by himself. Following his half-hour run, Mr. Blake is usually back in his classroom before 12:30, when he finishes his lunch and organizes for the afternoon. Because science is on the timetable for the afternoon, he removes several microscopes from the cupboards and places them on the counter, ready for use by students in examining the seeds they will collect as part of their science lesson. One boy who has just come into the room notices the microscopes and says, "Oh! microscopes," takes a hurried glance, and proceeds to his desk.

Although this is the first time the microscopes have been out this year, the appearance of yet another new piece of equipment or material is not something new; in fact, it is a regular occurrence in this classroom. For instance, sitting on the counter top are several large cardboard boxes full of skeletons and bone fragments that Mr. Blake has collected and prepared over a period of several years. These materials recently were used by the class during their study of vertebrates, and their availability enables the students to stop by and continue their examination at any time. A large insect collection, containing hundreds of carefully mounted and keyed specimens, has already been put away for safekeeping. Perhaps it is Mr. Blake's ability to continually produce from the cupboards collections like these (in addition to a large variety of other science materials) that contributes to the look of awe that appears on the faces of students nearly every time something new is pulled from a shelf at a moment's notice. Certainly it contributes to the sense that science is an integral part of the classroom.

At 12:45 the bell rings, and within five minutes everyone is in the classroom ready for the afternoon session, which begins with a 25-minute listening period. The listening period may include a discussion of some topic of mutual interest, listening and analyzing music or just listening to a story. Today Mr. Blake is reading a chapter from *Charlotte's Web*. The class listens attentively and, at one point, gets into a discussion about runts, during which students learn a few biological facts in addition to the relation of runts to the story line. At 1:15 the relaxed atmosphere is changed as students begin locating their science scribblers.

The class has just finished a study of scientific names and is about to begin some work with seeds – "how plants reproduce and make new plants." Mr. Blake informs the students that they will be planting seeds in order to investigate the conditions under which they grow, and that they will "make all kinds of little experiments with bean seeds because they grow fast." Today, however, the objective is to examine some common seeds that the students will collect from outdoors. As background information, Mr. Blake tells the class that birds may have taken many of the seeds, and because the spring-flowering plants and most of the summer-flowering plants are already in the ground or starting to grow for next year, these also are not available for gathering.

For science class, the students are organized into six groups. Each group is now given the task of collecting a specific kind of seed, and everyone is told to report back within 10 minutes. At this point, the class (including Mr. Blake) departs for the outdoors, where each group moves off in a different direction and busily begins collecting its seeds. When the time is up, everyone returns to the classroom for the remainder of the lesson.

Once in the classroom, three binocular microscopes are placed around the room so that the seeds can be examined more closely. Each group of students is asked to locate the seeds in its plants and make some of the seeds available to the rest of the class. The students are then told to make a collection of the different kinds of seeds and paste them on a piece of paper in their notebooks.

The students eagerly set to work trying to find their seeds. Some pound their specimens, while others pull apart flowers and disassemble cones. Moving about the room, I notice that most students are not able to identify any seeds. Conversation reveals that they don't know what they are looking for. Instead, they just make a guess, with the result that flowers, seeds and parts of plants are all pasted down together. Mr. Blake, apparently aware of the general problem, interrupts the class and asks for attention:

> "Now, some people have been fooled this afternoon in looking at seeds. They are looking at the whole flower thinking it is a seed, and not until they put it under the microscope did they discover it was actually just a little tiny speck. Now, this microscope has some of the little tiny seeds and some flowers, so some of you may want to come along and see it."

Several students gather around the microscope waiting for their turn to have a look, and Mr. Blake continues to circulate around the room, giving assistance to each person at a microscope. In nearly every case, he has to locate the seed, and even then students continue to be confused, asking, "But which thing is the seed?" or "Where is it?" Meanwhile, the rest of the class continue taping and pasting in their notebooks or struggling with the microscopes. Some five minutes later, Mr. Blake once again asks for attention, goes to the chalkboard, and begins "describing a few things" that he has noticed about the seeds he has seen, drawing diagrams on the board as he speaks.

> "A spruce seed looks like a little wing. And all the fall flowers come with all kinds of seeds — some tiny, some circular; some with little twirls, and two parachute seeds like this; some seeds look like little sculptured nuts; and some plants come with long seeds. We had one kind of grass seed that was very small. Did anybody find any other seeds?"

No one had, so Mr. Blake moves back among the students and everyone continues working. Some students now try to identify seeds similar to the ones drawn on the board. Mr. Blake continues his rounds, all the while explaining, clarifying and helping students identify their seeds. I, too, move about the class, talking with students about what they are doing, assisting periodically with a microscope or stopping for a look at what students are examining. Although many of the students still have not found their seeds, their failure does not seem to bother them, and they continue the task of pasting and taping — a task which appears to be the primary concern for a number of them. Some students who are having trouble with the microscopes finally give up and go back to their places, but a few persist, determined to locate some tiny seeds.

To date, the class has had no special instruction in using a microscope; trial and error tend to predominate. This process continues for another 20 minutes, after which students are asked to return to their places and give their attention to the front of the room. Gradually, the activity and the chatter cease, and Mr. Blake begins guiding the summary:

Mr. Blake: We saw a lot of different things, and now we are going to try and figure out what's happening. The seeds we saw were tiny, more or less like the ones in the chart [points to drawings he has made on the board]. I have no idea what some of them are. It's very difficult to identify some of these plants, because usually we look for flowers and leaves; there are none there. I've been fooled so many times by looking at a plant that I don't even try to guess any more, because they're so different from when they have their flowers than when they have just their seeds. O.K., what are some of the characteristics that you noticed about seeds?

Student: They're small.

Mr. Blake: Small. Yes. In fact, some of them you could even say are. . . .

Student 1: Tiny.

Student 2: Microscopic.

Mr. Blake: Yes, there might be some that are microscopic, because we couldn't really see them until we had the microscope on. Why? What kind of adaptation is it for a plant to have tiny seeds?

Student: Well, I think so there can be a bunch in the flower and so the birds won't get them.

Mr. Blake: O.K., so maybe they can escape detection by birds.

Student: So they can fall on the ground easier.

Mr. Blake: All right, so they can fall in the little crevices in the ground. These are all possible reasons.

Student: Maybe nature just made them that way.

Mr. Blake: That may sound sort of funny, but just think of it. They don't have to be big; maybe it's more economical to be small. What does a seed do?

Student: It grows.

Mr. Blake: Let's think of what seeds do. What is job number one? Actually, job number two is related to job number one.

Student: Grow up.

Mr. Blake (clarifying): Grow a new plant.

Student: Makes new plants?

Mr. Blake: No, that's the same thing. Job number one was to grow a new plant. Job number two relates to that. There is something else the seed does. We eat seeds.

Student (surprised): We do?

Mr. Blake: We're almost there.

Student: Food?

Mr. Blake: All right, job number two is to store food. For whom?

Student: The plant.

Mr. Blake: Right, the new plant can't make its own food, can it? Does it have leaves? It just has a little stalk coming up through the ground, so it has to have food until it can grow and make its own food. So a seed has two jobs; it has a job of storing up food and a job of having that little bit of life in it that will start a new plant — the cells or whatever. Now, when they opened up King Tut's tomb, they found seeds in there and scientists planted some of them and they grew. They had been buried for thousands of years. Now, one of the most long-lived plants — and for that reason it was very often made into a little necklace, in a little globule of glass — is the mustard seed.

The mustard seed can live for hundreds and thousands of years without dying. Some seeds won't; some seeds will hardly live from one year to the next. When you plant lettuce and count how many seeds germinate, from the lettuce, you'll find that only about half of them will germinate, and next year, if you have the same package of lettuce seeds, you'd probably get ten out of it. So they don't last very long.

Student: What about those seeds that have milk inside of them? Does the milk provide food for the seed?

Mr. Blake: Coconuts?

Student: No. Sometimes you find some of it in dandelions.

Mr. Blake: No. There wouldn't be any of that in it at the beginning; that would be manufactured. It's the fluid that moves up and down the little tubes in the plant, a bit like sap. Arnie?

Arnie: Well, how about the lotus plant?

Mr. Blake: Well, I don't know about that.

Arnie: Well, they found it frozen for hundreds and thousands of years so they put it in boiling water and it opened up.

Mr. Blake: I don't know about that. Some seeds preserve just a little bit of life, and there are some animals like that too. If you put dried-up weeds from ponds in water, you'll often see some little animals begin to swim around.

By this time, it is nearly 2:30 and time to get ready for dismissal. Everyone begins to clean up and reorganize the classroom so that it will be in order for the next day.

Once the bell rings, nearly everyone leaves. A few boys stay to use the computer. Mr. Blake talks with them while he tidies up from the day's activities. By 3:15 all the students have left, and Mr. Blake finally has some quiet time in which to plan and organize for the next day. This year he stays until his work is completed, a departure from previous years when he often took books home with him so that he could work several hours each evening. The pace he was keeping was leading towards "burnout," and he was forced to re-evaluate his priorities and reorganize his time. Now, he stays later at school, until 5:30 if necessary, in order to complete his work and not have to take any home with him. He still worries about burnout though, but at least things are "a bit better" this year.

III. Science Teaching at Trillium Elementary School

Thomas Russell and John Olson

This is an account of the work of three elementary school teachers at a school in eastern Ontario, which we have called Trillium Elementary School. Readers are cautioned to resist the temptation to generalize from the work of these teachers in one elementary school to the work of many teachers in schools across Ontario and Canada.

Mr. Swift teaches science exclusively, to a number of different groups of children; Mrs. Macdonald and Mr. Clark teach science as part of their broader responsibility to direct the entire curriculum for one group of children at a particular grade level. All three volunteered to take part in this case study, and thereby indicated some degree of comfort with the teaching of science and a belief that the year would permit them the time and energy to submit their teaching to an unusual type of scrutiny.

Trillium Elementary School was built in 1958; inside the front door, a plaque commemorates the opening. The building of the school reflects the suburban growth of the city. Most of the children come from middle-class homes, from parents who, by and large, expect their children to do well in school and who support its work. About 250 children in kindergarten to grade 8 attend the school. Mr. Swift is the vice principal; his time is about equally divided between administrative duties and teaching grades 7 and 8 science to classes that rotate among several teachers for different subjects. These classes have four 40-minute periods of science in a six-day cycle. Mr. Clark teaches grade 5, and Mrs.

Macdonald teaches grade 3; the science they teach is included in that portion of the curriculum called Social and Environmental Studies (SES).

Science in the Intermediate Division

Mr. Swift joined the school in 1972, when he took charge of the science program in grades 7 and 8. At that time, local control of the curriculum was the policy of the Ministry of Education. This policy had, in fact, been established that very year. Prior to that time, the nature of the science curriculum had been specified in some detail; however, the 1972 ministry guideline did not mandate material to be covered. The document did outline the curricular policies of the ministry in general terms and included illustrations of how these policies might be realized through local action. Thus Mr. Swift was left to his own devices when it came to planning the program for the school.

The science room as he found it then was much as one finds it today. There are six three-bench groupings, each seating six students who are organized as a team; one student in each group acts as the leader. Along the south side of the room is a work-bench with six sinks; above the work-bench are cupboards containing class sets of two textbooks written to conform to the pre-1972 guidelines. As well, there is a half-class set of textbooks written according to the 1978 guidelines, which reintroduced considerable content specification as part of the curriculum policy of the ministry. In the cupboards are pieces of equipment that were obtained as part of the Ontario Teachers' Federation (OTF) Science Project; the equipment includes metal inclined planes, metal test tube racks, test tubes and flasks. These OTF units were developed for use in the elementary schools in the 1960s and early 1970s. The project was a major effort at elementary school science curriculum reform.

On the wall opposite the cupboards are a small chalkboard, a noticeboard containing information about science fairs and, beside that, the door to the preparation room. This room contains, among other things, six OTF balances, six Bausch and Lomb junior microscopes, a number of OTF tripod stands and three OTF alcohol burners. Also stored in the room are kits of materials assembled by Mr. Swift to go with some of the units he now does in science. At the front of the room behind the teacher's desk is a chalkboard which is usually covered with notes, including definitions and diagrams.

On the chalkboard next to the noticeboard is the program of units to be covered that year. Grades 7 and 8 do the same units each year; each unit is taught every two years. The cycle is currently at Year II. In Year I the following units are covered: "Classification of Living Things"; "Interdependence"; "Properties of Matter"; "Measurement I"; "Science Fair"; "Science Happenings." In Year II of the cycle the following units are covered: "Characteristics of Living Things"; "Measurement II";

"Force and Energy"; "Plants"; "Science Fair"; "Science Happenings." A number of units are prescribed by the ministry guidelines, and others can be found in the guidelines but are optional; "Science Fair" and "Science Happenings" are local units.

When Mr. Swift came to the school there were no prescribed units. He tells what it was like then:

Swift: My academic responsibility when I came here was [to develop] a science program in the school — there was no science program. It's grown from almost zero. . . . I keep getting a little more each year in that my spread is increasing [to include grade 6]. When I was given the mandate I was apprehensive. [I was told] to do it and do it well. There was no doubt in my mind what was wanted.

Olson: You were concerned from a subject-matter perspective?

Swift: Because of my failings in university science. . . . [But] let's look at another reason why: no real guidelines, as they are today. "This is what they do down at Pine Secondary School." That was my guide.

Olson: Had you expressed a desire to do science?

Swift: No. No one wanted to do science. Even today, if I were to bow out of the picture, I think that science [would decline]. . . . I'm proud of what goes on here. It's not perfect. What I'm doing now is refining, enriching. I include more.

Olson: What did you do about that reticence as you began?

Swift: There was nothing. Nothing.

Olson: No counsel?

Swift: As a matter of fact, what went on in grade 7 and 8 is very much like what I think goes on in primary division. [Science] is done incidentally. A kid brings in a butterfly. We talk about butterflies.

Lacking guidance, Mr. Swift sought out sources of support, including guidelines from other boards, OTF units and workshops, and advice from a local secondary school. Mr. Swift said he was sure that parents now expected the school to do a good job with the science program.

One of the school's recent curriculum priorities has been to ensure that the ministry guidelines for the intermediate grades (7 and 8) are implemented. At the board level there is a superintendent who has science as part of his portfolio and whose role has been to help arrange the county-wide events (such as science fairs) and to encourage curriculum development at the local level, mainly through summer writing teams. A mathematics-science consultant (a temporary resource position in the board) has had contact with the school, particularly concerning the development and use of locally produced units for kindergarten to grade 6. Mr. Swift sees it as his job to make sure that these units are passed along to the primary-junior teachers. In Mr. Swift's view, science is treated as an incidental subject in kindergarten to grade 6. How significant science becomes depends very much on the interests of the person teaching it, he believes.

The advent of the ministry guidelines signalled a watershed in Mr. Swift's career:

> "To me, the ministry guidelines are a godsend; I put a great value on them. Also, because I tend to look at myself professionally as an organized person, I have to break it down into little organized units for me to move ahead and to present the material in an organized form. The philosophy [in the guidelines] goes on and on, and it could be condensed. What to look for is the units themselves. . . . I feel that I'm accountable for what's in the ministry document."

Before the advent of the 1978 document, Mr. Swift said, he was not sure that the tack he took in his teaching was what was expected:

> "If you had nothing to guide you, you can skirt over it [a topic] too easily. When I had no guide, I could take my sweet time and, let's say, do plants all year if I wanted to. . . . [Now] I feel that I'm accountable. I feel that way because at a number of meetings that I was at it was said, 'They're your parameters. You'd better work with them.'"

Goals and Activities of Intermediate Science

Quite naturally, the question "Why teach science?" came up in our conversations. Mr. Swift says that covering the core material in the guidelines prepares the students for high school and that is important. That material has to be covered. The optional material isn't that important. Covering the core must be done so as to reduce the students' fear of science. This fear, he says, is radiated by teachers:

> "Teachers avoided science by hiding it in that mystery called Social and Environmental Studies. . . . I usually have enough indicators to tell me that the kids feel [fearful] towards it. . . . I try to generate [an awareness of] the importance of [science] in their everyday way of life. It's a healthier attitude to it [that I am after]. As far as being able to play with knobs [on the microscope] or look at oscilloscopes or dissecting technique, no."

Mr. Swift speaks of trying to get students to see how science is important in their everyday life. This, he feels, is more important than teaching them how to manipulate oscilloscopes, microscopes and other complex pieces of equipment. One of the ways he pursues this goal is through a local unit called "Science Happenings." This unit is one students study each year as part of the ministry's requirement that six units be covered. At the beginning of the year, the students are given a pink sheet on which are written the criteria for the work. Each month, for example, grade 8 students are required to collect, annotate and place in a notebook 15 science articles taken from the newspaper or other suitable sources. The program runs from September to May. All students in grades 6, 7 and 8 do this unit each year. Seven objectives for the unit are listed, including "to promote the fact that scientific development plays an important part in our lives today and in the future." Mr. Swift is in his second year of the "Happenings" unit. He started the unit as a way of introducing a manageable unit as part of the six he had to complete each year and to show that "Science is part of every day. . . . It's not just in the classroom. . . . I'm a believer [in the idea that] people should know what's going on." He found that the activity had paled a little by March:

> "They were getting sick of it. It went on too long, but it has to; it has to go on to develop some responsibility. . . . Perhaps I'm putting too much onus on the kids. In a way, it's very much like university."

Mr. Swift is doubtful about the value of introducing what he views as complex equipment into his science program. Microscopes, for example, are not essential: "To me a microscope is a complex form of equipment [even] in its simplest form, and to say to kids, 'Here are the microscopes we are going to look at,' and you know [they are] going to go through [i.e., break] the slide. I can't stand this sort of thing." Similarly, other unnecessarily sophisticated equipment is to be avoided:

Olson: You place that [microscope work] later? Grade 9, 10?

Swift: Yes. Look at this morning's work, dissecting lima beans.

Olson: They are doing it?

Swift: Yes, [but] scalpels, I can't afford them.

Olson: What do you use?

Swift: Razor blades, one end covered.

Olson: Every kid cuts up one of these?

Swift: Yes, absolutely. Some cut two or three.

Olson: Draw?

Swift: They draw and identify parts — draw and label. Someone from the university [might say] that's not the way to do it. You do it with a scalpel. [Here] we do a primary [grades] type of thing, hands on.

Olson: So who needs a scalpel?

Swift: What I am doing is fine, even though the razor blades are rusty. O.K., we can't keep replacing them every year. So [I say to them] "Don't cut yourself!"

Olson: So you've had them around for a while?

Swift: Yes, but they still cut. You have those around. That is part of your stock of equipment, of your own bits and pieces.

The practical activities unfortunately sometimes give children a chance to misbehave:

Swift: One particular class this morning doesn't listen to instructions. O.K., you find out that the beans are a little bit slippery so you try to shoot them off through the sky. That annoys me.

Olson: Why?

Swift: I'm sincere about what I do and when I see this sort of thing happening I've had to demonstrate and they watch. I can say, "Yes, it's been covered, but *you* won't have *experienced* it."

Mr. Swift has organized the class to make the best use of the equipment:

Olson: When you are doing activities with kids, what are some of the things you hope they will get out of them?

Swift: [They] hand in things, [and] learn observatory skills [and] care and respect.

Olson: Do they work in pairs?

Swift: No, they work in groups of six. Yes, every class is organized the same way, and I use it for the whole year. It's very mechanical, with a chairman and a vice chairman.

Olson: They work well in these groups?

Swift: Yes, and I find this satisfactory.

Olson: With that number?

Swift: It's a manageable number, and I can go a reasonable way with the equipment. Instead of having, let's say, 18 sets if they worked in pairs, they work with six sets of something.

Olson: So it's economical?

Swift: Oh yes! And the same with the textbook, you see.

Mr. Swift has changed his ideas about how to conduct practical work. Pressures of time have made him modify the way the students proceed, although he continues to stress with them the need to be prepared:

Swift: At the beginning of the year, invariably somebody in each class says, "Are we going to do dissections?" I say, "Well yes." They say, "Whoopee." I say, "Yes it's fun, but we have to study before we start cutting things apart, because we have to know what we are looking for." And that is, hopefully, casting an attitude for secondary school. As far as a write-up is concerned, I used to do a lot more before 1978. I was almost looking for things to fill up the students' time. We did a lot of writing up according to the standard procedure — you know — method, and so on, [and writing] "my prediction" — that was sacred! So in those days there was a lot of writing up, and that took a lot of time. I wouldn't say we wasted time, but it was a way of making that drop of water cover as much of the table as possible. But now I can't afford the time during which I should be covering more material. I'm not sorry we don't spend a lot of time writing up experiments. I feel they'll have plenty [of that] in high school and university. I feel there are too many other goodies [available], a broader knowledge base. The ministry wants us to cover six units in a year. [That] is rather difficult.

Olson: When a group is finished doing some of the things you've asked them to do, where do they go from there?

Swift: We take up what I expect them to have seen; that becomes part of the overall note. In other words, I'm "dictatorial." This report won't be as individualized as lab reports would be.

The notes the students write become the basis of the tests the students write. Why have them write this information down and repeat it on tests?

> "It's self-discipline, you know. [They are to] know certain groups of facts. It's laid out at the beginning. There's nothing wishy-washy about it. It's pedagogically important because to operate in a vacuum is sinful. And now that I know I have an indication about what is to be done, let's get on with the task and do it well. So I am a much happier person in class."

Mr. Swift is aware that there is a dilemma for him here. If he does all the things he did before 1978, such as extended practical investigations, writing up experiments, outdoor work and so on, he would not have time to cover the required material specified in the 1978 ministry guidelines. The transmission of this material, in his view, takes priority over a number of other desirable, but not essential, activities. I asked him about this dilemma:

Olson: You said some things about what gets in the way of covering important work?

Swift: I am a convert to the guidelines; the work has to be covered. You as an academic might say, "But these kids should. . . ."

Olson: Do microscope work?

Swift: That really isn't what the ministry means. Let them play around with microscopes? Sorry, but. . . .

Olson: Why do you think it has to be this way?

Swift: Because the ministry wants it. What I see in writing — what I interpret the writing as [saying is] — "Cover this!" and it will be covered.

Mr. Swift prizes the equipment he has collected within his limited budget. He has accumulated a stock of materials which he tries to keep intact. He expressed concern about hanging on to these materials:

Swift: What I have collected, scrounged over the years with a zero budget, I want to get when I want it and in good shape, [I want] to know where it is, take it out, use it and put it back. I keep it under lock and key.

Olson: Any particular kinds of equipment?

Swift: Things as simple as a thermometer, test tubes that don't come back, beakers that don't come back. When I want it, blindfolded I can take it out. I know exactly where it is.

I asked Mr. Swift about the OTF science equipment that he no longer uses. What about the inclined planes? What had they been used for?

Swift: There is something that I spent a lot of time with before 1978. I had a lot of fun with them. You know, some graphing and the rest of it. Now they don't fit; so they collect dust.

Olson: Do you regret not using them any more?

Swift: Yes I do, because it was mechanically oriented, and I like that work. Prior to 1978, it was just another unit. It wasn't planned. A lot of good work was done with them. . . . Currently we're doing leaves. Now we looked at different ways of classifying them. What I'd love to do is to take them out in the yard. Pre-1978, no problem; but now it's going to cost me another lesson [if I go outside].

Notebooks play an important part in the work of the class. The chalkboard, rather than the textbook, is the source of information to be learned. The notebook is the record of the work covered. Mr. Swift has the students divide their notebooks into two parts:

> "The front of the notebook is the good part. The back part is where they make rough notes. . . . What's in the back is precious to them. . . . [I say, for example,] 'If you love me on that day put a heart; if you hate me, put whatever you like. . . . You express yourself in those pages. . . . That's an area for free expression. . . . You'd better have a good set of notes from which to study.' And I tell them from my own experience that if my notes were rotten I didn't want to study from them."

The textbooks are sometimes useful, but they are not central to the work. Mr. Swift explained why he preferred to organize the material for the students himself:

> "In the transition period [during which there were no guidelines] I learned to use the science books for reference only. . . . I continued that way. [Students] like it that way. . . . [If I used the books] I would get off track from those [notes] I follow. . . . To me, a book is merely a suggestion [for] a new teacher, a green teacher — 'There it is; use it if you need to.' "

Rather than use the textbooks, Mr. Swift prefers to put work on the board: "I like to know that things are going to go well." He does not assign homework from textbooks.

Olson: You don't assign homework from textbooks?

Swift: [You mean] "Read these two paragraphs and answer the questions?" No, sir.

Olson: That's not part of your style?

Swift: No, sir.

Olson: What do you give them for homework?

Swift: [Take plants]. I start off with trying to impress on them that the plant is important to man. So for the next day [I'd say to them]: "I'd like you to bring in, in writing, 10 uses of plants to man and I'd like a direct and an indirect example of those uses."

Olson: So they have to get it out of their own experience, rather than extract it from a textbook?

Swift: That's right. It's that sort of thing or translate a rough note into a good section of the book. The back part is where they make rough notes.

Olson: Do you check the books for homework?

Swift: For homework done? Yes. At the beginning of the year I walk around and look into every book. When I say I want 10 uses I want them there. If [a student says] "I've only got eight," [I say,] "Make sure you have 10 by the time you walk out of here."

Olson: Do you deduct marks for failure to do homework?

Swift: That's correct. If a kid never does homework, no more than 20 marks can be lost. . . . I get some super ones. However, if it is poor, I'll put it on the report card.

Olson: Homework, is it a small or big deal in your scheme of things?

Swift: Small, the completion of work.

Olson: Is class the action centre?

Swift: Yes, that's right. Even finishing off a lesson [I say to them], "This is what I expect of you. If you want to sit and twiddle your thumbs, as long as you don't disturb somebody else, that's fine; but you'd better have it done when you come the next day." Again that's putting more onus on the students. It's getting my standards to stick. . . . I give them time now to do it. The door is open, and [the notes] will be erased at four o'clock.

Teaching from the Guidelines

From our conversations, it became clear that teaching science with and without guidelines are two very different things for Mr. Swift. Without guidelines, what is to be taught is unclear, and it is impossible to organize the material into carefully timed parts. The danger of drift is constantly present when the work is not under the control of some regulation. The 1978 ministry guidelines supplied Mr. Swift with a regulating mechanism — presenting the core material of those guidelines to students. The sheer amount of material, however, creates a situation in which certain activities have to be reconsidered, given the amount of time they require and their tenuous connection to what the guidelines require. Given a budget of limited time and an extensive program of material to cover, the use of time becomes a critical factor for Mr. Swift in deciding how to proceed. Time becomes a factor influencing not only what is presented, but how it is presented. With the guidelines authoritatively prescribing content to be covered, Mr. Swift is left with the task of deciding how that content might best be dealt with. His objective is to cover the material in ways that are interesting but not time-consuming.

The most efficient way to avoid wasting time and yet be able to portray science in an attractive way, according to Mr. Swift, is to retain firm control over the lesson and not spend too much time on discussion or "side-trips." This has meant that what might have been usefully included, if time had not been of paramount importance, has had to be omitted. Some of the things that Mr. Swift has had to omit for lack of time are the pursuit of students' ideas (in some cases), enrichment topics, lab work rather than notes (at times) and field trips. Mr. Swift is aware of the dilemmas inherent in the regulation of time by the ministry guidelines. If the time budget is carefully used, the units are covered; if time is "wasted" on "extras," the units will not be covered. The regulation provided by the guidelines, as Mr. Swift sees it, provides an orderly context for planning — for defining the task to be done and showing what to stress in the time available. Thus the guidelines are a mixed blessing in Mr. Swift's view: a source of authority about what to include and a source of pressure to exclude interesting but time-consuming work. Content information is included; certain time-wasting activities are excluded. The balance isn't perfect.

To pursue in greater depth Mr. Swift's attempts to resolve this dilemma, I asked him to sort statements of science teaching activities, which ranged from highly teacher-controlled activities to student-controlled activities. These statements, which were written on small cards, he arranged in a number of groups according to some underlying construct he had chosen to organize his thinking about the set of 20 statements. We then discussed these activities in relation to the set of constructs he had used to sort them.

One important construct he used to organize the groupings — an overarching construct — was that of "keeping on track" versus "squandering time." He said that all of the activities could be organized along this dimension. Teacher-centred activities were seen to be on-track activities: "I, as the teacher, know where I'm going, and I don't want to be thrown off track too much. I have a definite goal to achieve and a definite amount of time in which to achieve it." The importance of knowing the goal and of planning the time needed to achieve it can be seen in how Mr. Swift views an activity in which students are at work doing an experiment to verify a law. As Mr. Swift sees it, he has limited control here.

> "If a kid messes around for 40 minutes and measures for a couple of minutes, copies and makes up data for the rest of the time, I can't control that part. . . . On the other hand, when I'm in control, the kid may be wasting time if his mind is outside. . . . When people are given freedom, there's a greater tendency to take advantage of freedom, to horse around. I think I've found an answer to this, but I don't think I can live with it."

I asked Mr. Swift to explain what the answer might be to this dilemma. He spoke of problems in approaching a field trip to the Ontario Science Centre. To make sure that time wasn't wasted, he had the students do four worksheets while they were at the Centre. The students complained to him afterwards that they hadn't had time to complete the worksheets. Should they be allowed to go their own way at the Centre and perhaps "squander" their time, or be required to do the sheets and perhaps enjoy the visit less? Mr. Swift is aware that there is an important dilemma here and that he has to resolve it before the next trip to the Centre.

> "There's a lot of messing around. I can't be with each child. What's wrong with messing around in a place like the Science Centre? What happens if they push a button 10 times? Isn't that discovery? I can't argue with that, but I'm uncomfortable with that situation. I guess I have a way of controlling it."

Mr. Swift sees teacher-controlled activities as having a definite goal and a definite time to achieve the goal. If time allows, then students can be involved, but if time presses, "If that clock says I've got five more minutes to get that done so that they can get their notes, I'll eliminate [discussion] and revert to [telling them]. . . . It's safe. I know where I'm going." Mr. Swift talked about "savouring" his lesson time as opposed to having to "cover" the ground:

> "So, let's say the lesson is broken down into four units of time. Let's say an hour lesson, and I've used half the time. One of the 15 minutes I've done in 7 1/2 minutes; now I've 22 1/2 minutes to do the rest. If I get my 15 minutes done there, I may, if I like, have 7 1/2 minutes savouring time. I can do the lesson and enjoy it and spend some time developing an answer from a child. If it goes the other way and [I use more than 15 minutes] then I'll really speed up and go like heck."

For Mr. Swift the guideline regulates the time. It prevents time from being wasted. How does he view those occasions when time is unavoidably lost? Mr. Swift defends his "lapse" of time management: "I must confess. . . . there were a couple of things I did that cost me in terms of periods, say three, four, five periods, but I enjoyed it. Without it I don't think I could radiate any love of what I'm doing."

I asked Mr. Swift what types of activities tend to take more time than they should:

Swift: Showing the film; that's not recorded in the book — in notebooks — as work having been done.

Olson: But was it worth the time to do that?

Swift: I feel it was.

Olson: You are glad you took the time?

Swift: Yes, otherwise I wouldn't have done it. Another thing was the [observation of the structure of a] bean — inside and out. Two periods. "This is your note on the board. This is the way it's going to be. There's a hole under the scar. Take out your lenses."

Olson: So you did get the lenses out?

Swift: That's right; let's have a look at them. I'm taking the luxury of taking the time to explore. Put them [the beans] in the freezer. We'll be back tomorrow. That was a luxury. What I'm saying is what could have taken one period has taken two, but as far as I'm concerned, it was really worthwhile.

Other activities had more potential for the squandering of time, although they could also have benefited the students. Mr. Swift was aware that in stressing "efficient" activities he was perhaps giving up on other things. For example, he had asked students to engage in some thinking out loud, in hypothesizing about something they had seen:

> "For the good ones, [this exercise afforded] a chance to participate, a chance to help the teacher, to formulate something; a chance to see his [the student's] idea go on the board when I trigger the idea in him; and it's exactly what I wanted to have anyway."

Field trips present special problems for the efficient use of time:

> "This plant unit we are doing: I didn't go out. It would have been a fun period with each class. We may have got it done. I gave it up. . . . One thing we did last year, we went to a creek within walking distance of the school. It did not upset the system, and this is something else you have to watch. You upset the timetable and it snowballs. So that's enough reason for not doing it as often. I shouldn't say that. If I wanted to do it, I'd get it done."

Teaching Core and Local Units

While Mr. Swift and I were meeting to discuss his thoughts on science teaching, he was working through one of the optional units — "Plants" — and one of the compulsory units of the ministry guidelines — "Characteristics of Living Things." I sat in on nine of his lessons associated with these topics. These lessons gave me some idea of what it was like to be working from the 1978 guidelines.

The first lesson I sat in on was concerned with the structure of taproots. A diagram had been placed on the side chalkboard outlining the parts of the taproot. One student was asked to point out the parts of the longitudinal section, and another, the transverse section. Some students had not learned the terms, and Mr. Swift asked them to learn them for the next lesson. They were given a mnemonic to help them remember the parts. The main part of the lesson was to have been a dissection of a parsnip, which had been left standing in dyed water.

Unfortunately the dye had not penetrated the root sufficiently. Mr. Swift asked the students to consider how they could tell if the dye had been taken up. Some suggested that there would be less fluid in the beaker. Mr. Swift suggested there may have been other reasons why the water level might have fallen, and he asked the class to consider these. Following this exchange the class looked at the parsnips, one for each group of six. The students were then brought back together and asked to comment on what they had seen. The shrivelled condition of the roots attracted the students' attention, and Mr. Swift asked them to explain why the parsnips were shrivelled and how that might have been prevented. The 40-minute lesson ended on that exchange and a promise of dissection next week.

A later lesson found the students working on the unit "Characteristics of Living Things." On the chalkboard had been placed definitions of important terms. Students were asked to recite the characteristics, and then the lesson proceeded to the new material — reproduction. After Mr. Swift introduced this topic to the class, they watched a film on plants, and then, until the lesson's end, they made notes from the chalkboard. The following extracts are taken from the grade 7 and grade 8 lessons on this topic. Here we see Mr. Swift introducing the class to reproduction as a characteristic of living things.

Grade 7: 15 Students, Period 1

Teacher: Today, we're going to have another look at the characteristics of living things, and that's reproduction, and we were quickly overviewing the unit. What did we say reproduction means?

Student: Make one like one's self.

Teacher: O.K., make babies. When we make babies, there are two different ways of doing it. One is called sexual reproduction. Sexual reproduction is where we have two organisms making one; in other words, like dogs — the papa dog and the mama dog. The mama dog can't make babies by herself and the papa dog can't make babies by himself. That's called sexual reproduction. Then we have another kind. That's called asexual reproduction, and this is where we need only one organism to make babies. You don't need a papa. The mama does it all. Do you remember one plant in the last unit that could make babies by itself; that could reproduce either way?

Student: [inaudible]

Teacher: That's not the one I was thinking of. [pause]

Student: [inaudible]

Teacher: Yes, that's correct. You are really smart. With asexual reproduction — that's where only one organism is required to reproduce another one. We have two kinds of asexual reproduction. One is called fission — fission; and please if I ever ask you to put that on paper, don't you do it, and I've actually seen this on paper. I've had kids actually put down fishing: gone fishing. Don't put down fishing. It's fission: f-i-double s-i-o-n. Here, an organism divides itself into two new organisms [pointing to drawing on chalkboard]. Perhaps you'll get a better idea by looking at page 20 in *Focus on Science.* Make that page 21. If you have a look at the two sets of gray diagrams, it's the upper set. First you have – what do you call that first thing?

Student: Cell.

Teacher: Who was the first one to say "cell"? Who said "cell"? Was that you, Karen? Oh, super. I think we're looking at an 80 [for you] next time. We have there a cell, and in the second drawing, what changes have taken place in the cell?

Student: [inaudible]

Teacher: Yes, it's a different shape. What changes can you see already? Yes, Curtis?

Curtis: It's starting to get so that when it splits in half, it's equal on each side.

Teacher: Could you be a little more specific?

Curtis: When it splits in half, one side will be on the other side — identical.

Teacher: I think you're saying — correct me if I'm wrong — are you saying that you can see evidence of splitting already starting?

Curtis: Yeah.

Teacher: How? That's what I'm getting at.

Curtis: It's starting to move in.

Teacher: What's starting to move in?

Curtis: The cell.

Teacher: I think we're making a mistake here. This whole thing is the cell.

Curtis: Yeah, I know that.

Teacher: What do we call this thing in the middle — you remember from last day? This thing here. I see a couple of hands up. Yes, sir?

Student: The nucleus.

Teacher: Yes. What's different about this one from this one? You say. . .

Student: In the middle — it's almost coming in.

Teacher: Yes. It's almost like a waistline on a lady. That's the beginning of splitting; and then, of course, in the third one, the diagram shows that the division is taking place; and in the fourth one division has taken place, and each one of those new cells is called a daughter cell. A daughter cell! That doesn't mean that it is a female. That is not the case. It is merely called a daughter cell indicating it is an offspring. That is one way in which it happens. The second way is budding. The bud appears on the parent cell and breaks away, and you can see the different stages. I haven't done it quite as well as they have in the book, but the idea is there — two kinds of asexual reproduction: fission, where splitting takes place; and budding, where one plant comes off the parent cell. In each case, the new cells are called daughter cells. The products of fission and the products of budding are called fission cells. Now, I've summed up our lesson for this morning by saying that some forms can reproduce sexually and asexually, as we've said, but most organisms use one method only. Any question about this?

Grade 8: 20 Students, Period 3

Teacher: The next characteristic of living things that we discussed was growth. Let's go through it quickly. What are the two main kinds of growth that take place in the body and the cells? Let's go through it quickly. Body and cells — one?

Student: [inaudible]

Teacher: O.K. Cells grow larger. Another type of cells divide. What do you call that?

Peter: Mitosis.

Teacher: "My toes is" cold on a day like this. What do we call mitosis that has gone out of control?

Student: Cancer.

Teacher: All right. What are the three things that mitosis enables to happen within the organism? Three things that mitosis enables an organism – sorry – three things that can happen because of mitosis. [Pause; no response.] Oh! Sorry about that — don't you remember?

Student: [inaudible]

Teacher: O.K. That's one of them.

Student: . . . replaces cells. . . .

Teacher: As a result of this, it replaces worn-out cells — blood cells. It can also replace — what was the first word you used?

Student: Damaged cells.

Teacher: Damaged cells, all right. Like we have when we cut ourselves; and one more? It's going on inside of you — should be a permanent need. Our friend at the back of the room? Yes?

Student: Growth.

Teacher: Growth — O.K. — growth — all right — any questions about those two subunits? Today we'll talk about reproduction in organisms. Despite your concern, what does reproduction mean? Shirley?

Student: [inaudible]

Teacher: Yes! Making a little one like yourself, and it can be done in two different ways.

In these lessons on reproduction Mr. Swift has concentrated on important definitions. These definitions the students are expected to copy into their notebooks. Definitions of "sexual" and "asexual" reproduction are there as well as definitions of "budding" and "fission." During the lesson, Mr. Swift goes over the way these words are to be understood, he ensures that the terminology of the guideline is presented and he follows the sequence of presentation laid down there. Students are given mnemonics to help them remember words like "fission" and "mitosis."

In a later lesson, still from the unit on "Characteristics of Living Things," students were given back their monthly work on "Science Happenings" with completed evaluation sheets; the students discussed their grades with Mr. Swift. He asked the students if they had reviewed their notes for the lesson, and he reviewed the terms "autotroph" and "heterotroph" with them, as well as "ingestion" and "digestion." These terms are stressed in the guideline. Following the recitation, Mr. Swift reviewed with the class the steps that the students should use when writing up a formal lab report. Here, Mr. Swift discussed work associated with the local units the class works on in tandem with the ministry units. Rather than stress words and their definitions, the emphasis in the local units is on procedures and their logic rather than on words and their definitions. Mr. Swift said that the students would need to know how to do the procedures for the "Science Fair." He handed out a sheet which listed seven steps in reporting on an experiment, and gave a brief commentary on the nature of controlled experimentation. The following is an excerpt from his presentation on experimental control:

> "The method – before we go into the method, I want to skip to below the double line two-thirds down the page – 'controlled experimentation.' I've tried to put this in as few words as possible, while still trying to make sense. Sometimes it is advisable to have a control in the experiment. The control portion of the experiment differs from the experiment proper (that's the experiment itself) in only one condition or variable. We vary only one thing. We change only one thing. The control is used as a comparison with the experiment proper; for example: 'Does fertilizer affect the growth of plants?' To one group of plants, the experimental group, I add fertilizer and water. To the control group, I do the very same thing. I add exactly the same amount of water, but no fertilizer to identical beanplants. . . . Why? To keep all other conditions the same – conditions like temperature, the amount of light, amount of humidity, and so on. So I have a control group and an experimental group, because you see, if we didn't have the control group, then maybe you'd say, 'Maybe those bean plants would have done that anyway?' I couldn't argue with you. Maybe they would have done the same; I can't argue with that at all. That's why it's good to have control in an experiment. Last year, in grade 6, we didn't talk much

about control. This year, I expect you to know much more about it. Are there questions about control in an experiment?"

Commentary

In these comments to the class, Mr. Swift emphasizes the methods of experimentation. These methods, as they are listed on the sheet he gave out, are to be used in preparing entries to the "Science Fair," which is one of the six units of the year that the school is to complete. Parents are asked to come to the fair, and prizes are awarded to students in grades 7 and 8. For the grade 6 fair, students are given comments by the judges using a form designed by Mr. Swift. These comments are slanted to provide the student with a positive but critical response. I served as a judge for the grade 6 fair. The gym was full of displays, and the students I talked to all had interesting stories to tell; they seemed enthusiastic and attentive to how they did their projects. The fair appears to have provided a way of doing something extra beyond the material of the guidelines, and for which class time is not available. The fair might be seen as a contrast to the work of covering the syllabus prescribed by the guidelines. The fair involves *doing* science rather than learning the *words* of science, a chance to investigate something in depth using out-of-class time rather than the precious time that has to be devoted to the syllabus.

In the contrast between the lesson from the unit on the "Characteristics of Living Things" and the one on experimental procedures for the "Science Fair" we see the different strands of Mr. Swift's work that he has spoken of. "Characteristics of Living Things" has to be done in the prescribed way. The guideline urges that attention be paid to the naming of the parts, to the words and to science as a body of facts with a specialized vocabulary. The procedures, directed as they are to doing something — getting ready for the fair — emphasize the unpredictable activity rather than memory.

If we think back to what Mr. Swift hopes to accomplish by his science teaching, we can see how the two strands of activity are related to their purposes. Mr. Swift has stressed the importance of the work students do as preparation for high school and beyond. What they do and how they do it get them ready to handle later science work; the work mandated by the guidelines can be seen to serve this function. The "Fair" and "Happenings" units have a more personal context — to help students see for themselves how science is, for example, part of the news and part of what might be a hobby for them. These units provide a more relaxed view of the subject.

It appears that Mr. Swift has attempted to resolve the dilemmas that stem from the pressures of time engendered by the guidelines by incorporating "Science Fair" and "Science Happenings" into his program. These local units allow the students to pursue an almost parallel curriculum, controlled by general procedures of his making, but open to individual selection of material and treatment. These units contrast with ones that aim at uniformity and an assured common core of knowledge. Because the local units do not make major demands on class time, they can be run without undermining the coverage of the material that must be accounted for. The classroom curriculum stresses the subject itself, conceived as a body of knowledge, while in the parallel curriculum, the fair stresses the subject as a *method* of inquiry, and "Happenings" stresses the larger social order outside the classroom.

As we have seen, Mr. Swift makes it clear he values the idea that science work in school should have some connection to the outside life of students, and he is able to pursue that goal, it seems, while at the same time making sure that the core curriculum specified in the guideline is dealt with. It may be the case that the way in which the core units of the guideline are set out creates for him a view of the subject as a body of facts to be transmitted. The emphasis on mandatory units, mandatory topics and required terminology may carry such a message. The guideline seems to say: "Here is how the subject is to be carved up; these are the key pieces; here is how long they take; here is what to stress; here is what you should get across." The organization of the content material says something about the way science is thought to function in the classroom by those who write guidelines. The organization of the science curriculum in the guidelines may reflect how teachers have accommodated to the realities of teaching science in the senior grades of the public school. Material that may be supposed to have received wide approval and that is capable of being taught authoritatively within the time constraints of the timetable is mandated. Ambiguities associated with teaching the subject are reduced, because the teacher is not left to decide what material to teach, and the units that are mandated are presented so as to emphasize their authoritative status through the use of a required vocabulary and mandated topics. The stress on classification, on definition and on the vocabulary encourages a view of the subject as a "rhetoric of conclusions," and, perhaps, gives support to teachers unsure of their knowledge of the subject. The situation many grade 7 and grade 8 teachers find themselves in is ameliorated by the prescriptions supplied in the guideline. Is it an accident that Mr. Swift found the guidelines a "godsend"?

Certain educational values are also built into the very structuring of the material itself. Perhaps one important value is that the students may come to see themselves as having no responsibility for the knowledge they hold, because the knowledge is being passed on as text to be learned, rather than as lessons in, for example, the nature of scientific knowledge. Seen as instruments of communication, the guidelines convey meta-lessons to teachers as well, such as lessons about what science it is important to teach, about how the teacher should stand vis-à-vis knowledge and students, about how time should be used and about the nature of interactions in the classroom. For Mr. Swift, the practical consequences of the guideline structure have been a mixed blessing. The guideline makes it clear what he is expected to teach. However, messages about how he is to teach, implicit in the nature of the document, may not encourage Mr. Swift to capitalize on his strengths as a teacher, on his and his students' interests and on the educational possibilities science holds for his students. On the other hand, in his view, the guideline has helped him resolve a number of important problems that confront him at the grade 7 and 8 levels. Clearly, the function of the guideline is complex.

What Mr. Swift has done, it seems, is to create a program that resolves some of the remaining tensions. The syllabus is covered (that is, the body of information it represents is transmitted to the students), some of the social context of science is captured in the "Science Happenings," and through their "Science Fair" work students get to experience some of the excitement of science as a process. Emerging from our conversations is the possibility that an important activity for inservice education may be for teachers to consider what dilemmas they *do* cope with, how they cope with them, and what their views are about prevailing resolutions in the light of what they hope might be achieved through science education. Through conversations with colleagues and others, teachers might be able to articulate these experiences for themselves and others.

This concludes our study of Mr. Swift's science teaching at the level of grades 7 and 8. As our attention turns from Mr. Swift to Mr. Clark, and later to Mrs. Macdonald, we shift from a teacher who teaches science in all his classes to two teachers who work with science for only a small fraction of their total teaching time. In one sense, then, the following portraits are incomplete in a way in which Mr. Swift's was not. Much of the work of Mr. Clark and Mrs. Macdonald does not come under our direct scrutiny. Nevertheless, distinct features of their overall teaching philosophies do emerge, along with some of the unique features of teaching science to younger children.

Science in the Junior Division

Mr. Clark is in his twenty-first year of teaching, and his sixth year at Trillium Elementary School. This year, his class is a "straight" grade 5, without the addition of a small number of grade 4 or grade 6 pupils to create a "split" class, as in recent years. There are almost twice as many girls as boys in this class of 30 children. The classroom is pleasant, with a large map of the world filling the bulletin board on one wall. Across the top of the blackboard at the front of the room are excellent drawings of airplanes. Examples of recent written work are also posted, and noticed by the children. Mr. Clark has no desire to work in an administrative capacity in the school, for he sees himself as belonging in the classroom. Nevertheless, Mr. Clark is attentive to administrative arrangements within the school. He has worked to ensure that "free" time during the teaching day is divided as evenly as possible among all the teachers in the school. He believes that any surplus of free time should go to teachers in the primary division, grades 1 to 3.

Mr. Clark quickly replied, "No, not at all," to my asking whether science is "pushed" at Trillium Elementary School. He says this realistically, not negatively, and he sees two factors related to his conclusion. One is the fact that Trillium Elementary School does have a "Science Room" with facilities and equipment uniquely suited to the teaching of science. However, the science room is largely unavailable to any but the grade 7 and 8 students. Mr. Clark recounts that attempts to take his own students into the science room were met by responses indicating that this would be inconvenient for the people regularly using the room and that area of the school. The second factor derives from the fact that no one in the school is designated as "the science teacher," with responsibility for supporting science in every classroom. This role could fall to Mr. Swift, as teacher of science to grades 7 and 8, but Mr. Swift has not adopted such a stance. Mr. Clark describes Trillium Elementary School as very traditional and very comfortable, and one characteristic this implies is that a teacher does not move outside his or her present role. Mr. Clark did make an effort to have the entire school see the room in question as a science room for the school, without interfering with its use by grades 7 and 8, but no one else responded to the opportunity, and the idea died. Mr. Clark does all his inschool science teaching in his own classroom.

Mr. Clark expresses a personal view that most science teaching is and should be incidental, with everything depending on proper timing. For example, when the space shuttle was first launched, he devoted the entire day to that topic and related matters, building on children's keen interest. When water pollution became a topic in the local newspaper over a period of several weeks, he made that his topic for science. Mr. Clark also stressed his personal view that on complex and controversial topics a teacher must remain "completely unbiased," working strenuously and continuously to avoid being on either side of a value question. For example, when explaining the "bad" features of water pollution, he also points out that, when wastes already exist, something has to be done and compromises made. Real problems cannot be ignored. Mr. Clark sees his role with grade 5 children as one of giving them the facts and letting them decide for themselves on matters of controversy. This general posture is one that Mr. Clark maintains throughout social and environmental studies, recognizing that the line dividing the two is sometimes blurred.

Logical thinking and organization are two of the major themes of Mr. Clark's work with his grade 5 class. He hopes that, by the end of the year, most children will be better able to organize their thoughts, to sort out what is important and to recognize what to accept and when to listen. At this age they already know many facts, and he strives to arouse their curiosity, to lead them to new questions and to have them apply what they already know. For example, he hopes to get away from statements like "That's a robin," and move on to questions like "How and why can a robin fly?"

Experiments on "Air"

My observations of science teaching by Mr. Clark took place during a unit on air. Science is taught within the social and environmental studies (SES) periods which are scheduled into the school's six-day cycle. A total of 300 minutes is allocated to SES over each six-day cycle, for a daily average of 50 minutes. Every other day there is an SES allocation of 60 minutes, between afternoon recess and the end of the school day. It was agreed that these periods were the most suitable for observation.

As the children returned to the classroom from afternoon recess, they immediately noticed the "apparatus" hanging from the ceiling at the front of the room, directly in front of the chalkboard. Two tetherballs were suspended by string from opposite ends of a metre stick, and the stick itself was supported by a piece of string at its midpoint. A piece of plasticine at one end of the metre stick served to balance the stick in a horizontal position.

Science teachers will quickly recognize that this apparatus is intended to provide data relevant to the question of whether air has mass. This fact was also readily apparent to the children, but the dialogue that occurred in this introductory phase of the activity illustrates something of the nature of discussion of science topics at the grade 5 level:

Mr. Clark: What on each side gives it the mass?

Student: Air.

Mr. Clark: What else must balance?

Student: The stick across. . . . How much the string is. . .

Mr. Clark: There's something else you forgot: the weight, the mass of. . .

Student: The weight of the tetherball.

Mr. Clark: And the mass of the plasticine.

At this point, Mr. Clark pointed out that he had also taped an inflating needle to each ball, because a needle must be inserted to permit air to escape from one ball. He then used another metre stick to demonstrate visibly the effect on the stick of changing the mass attached to either end. Interestingly, as the discussion proceeded, Mr. Clark alternated between the terms "weight" and "mass," on some occasions correcting "weight" to "mass." The children seemed to use the term "weight."

Mr. Clark: If I were to remove the air from one, what would happen?

Students: It'll go off balance.

Mr. Clark: Which way would it go? Think about it for a minute.

Students: [They indicate their personal opinions.]

Mr. Clark: Most of you seem to agree it will go up. What would that mean, or prove?

Students: Air has weight.

Mr. Clark wrote "Air has weight" on the board and then inserted a needle to permit air to escape from one of the tetherballs. No obvious change could be observed in the position of the metre stick, and the children concluded that its position was unchanged.

Mr. Clark: Would you agree that air has weight?

Students: Yes.

Mr. Clark: But it's a very small weight.

This discussion has taken about 15 minutes. For the next 20 minutes, the children perform a similar experiment after an explanation by Mr. Clark. By inserting a pin through a plastic straw and into the end of a ruler held to the desk by a book, the children could attach an inflated balloon to one end of the straw and balance the mass of the balloon with a tiny piece of plasticine at the other end of the straw. They were then asked to observe what happened to the position of the straw when they used a pin to puncture the balloon, inserting the pin near the neck of the balloon to avoid having the balloon break into pieces. With great enthusiasm, and an impressive degree of orderliness, the children proceeded to create every imaginable variation on the general theme. I was called upon to tie knots in balloons and to insert pins into the ends of rulers; I was also called upon to assist in interpreting the widely varying results. Several pairs of children managed to create a slow leak in a balloon, enabling them to see the straw tilt more and more as the balloon shrank in size.

Twenty minutes after the experiments began, the children were busy cleaning up, and the room soon looked just as it had before. After a brief discussion of the results and a short demonstration by Mr. Clark, the children were asked to take out their SES notebooks and begin their write-up. The following material was written on the board for the children to copy, before drawing a diagram to show the apparatus used.

Activity IV

Purpose: To see if air has weight.

Apparatus:

The children were offered a choice of drawing the tetherballs or the soda-straw balance; roughly half the students chose one option, and half chose the other. The class worked quietly until the bell rang; normal end-of-school activities were followed by dismissal.

A few days later, another lesson in the same unit on "Air" again presented the pattern of simple demonstrations accompanied by discussion, questions to the children and written work by the children in their exercise books. During the lesson, I was impressed by the preparation time required to ensure that demonstrations could and would work. Science demonstrations also require a confidence that things will work, and a readiness to go looking for extra equipment.

> "Let's get around the table as best we can and make sure everyone can see. This is an ordinary stick, and this is an ordinary piece of paper [perhaps 25 by 40 cm.], and all I'm going to do is put it on the table and try to flatten out all the air underneath it. Then I'll take this hammer and. . . . [Mr. Clark strikes a metre stick, which rests on the table beneath the paper with a short piece visible beyond the edge of the table.] That didn't work out as I thought it should. Let's try again. Watch your eye, right? This time, hopefully, it's going to lie a bit flatter. . . [he tries again]. No it didn't. I've got some hard wood, it's bouncing on me. There, it worked.
>
> "Now what in the world could be holding that down like that? I mean it's just paper, it doesn't weigh very much. Why is it that I can just break it off like that? What is holding it up?"

A student replies:

> "The air pressure?"

Mr. Clark then had the children return to their desks. After showing the progress made by another demonstration, he asked them to enter the breaking-stick demonstration in their exercise books while they waited.

Learning Scientific Terms and Concepts

An interesting illustration of the way Mr. Clark deals with terminology special to science emerged as students copied the "purpose" of the next activity they would observe and write up. On the board, Mr. Clark wrote: "Purpose: To discover the effects of heating and cooling on a given volume of air." When one child asked him the meaning of the word "given," Mr. Clark responded with the following comment:

> "You people all sit down, and if everyone could put their pens and pencils down for a minute we'll look at the second part so you can see what is happening. I've mentioned this before, Scott. I'm going to continue using words that are often used in science, such as 'given,' which simply means the amount of air you have. In this case, it is just the amount of air that is here in the bottle. You can't change that, can you? Once I put the top on you can't add air or take it away. That's why we mean 'given.' And instead of 'amount,' I'm using 'volume.' "

To complete the hour-long science lesson, Mr. Clark turned to a demonstration that is a favourite of virtually all science teachers — the "collapsing can." A small amount of water is boiled for several minutes in a large metal can; then it is removed from the heat and sealed. Soon after, the can begins to collapse, as the steam condenses to water and the pressure inside becomes much lower than that of the air pressure outside the can. Mr. Clark wrote the following purpose on the board: "To discover the effect of atmospheric pressure on a closed low pressure system." The discussion included the following dialogue:

Mr. Clark: I've heated it up, the air has expanded, some of the air has come out because it has expanded, the water vapour in here has pushed more air out. I'm going to seal it off and the air is going to try to get back in, but it can't get back in because the seal is in the way. It is a closed container. We sometimes give that a different name. Right now there is air trying to push on us. You know pressure when you dive. . . but there is a name for it. We don't just say the air around here, we call it. . .

Student: Atmosphere.

Mr. Clark: Usually we call it what kind of pressure?. . . . Atmospheric pressure. All that really means is that the air is pushing down from the atmosphere.

After referring to a diagram showing how air pressure varies (high and low) in the atmosphere surrounding the earth, Mr. Clark proceeded with the demonstration.

Mr. Clark: Right. I've got a wet rag here so I can hold [the can] steady. I put the top on. I hope I've got a top that fits well. I seal it up so that no more air can get inside. . . . Look at that poor old can. [As the can collapses more and more, the children make excited comments.] So that is just air pressure. So do you think air pressure can do work? It's hard to get a hold of cans like this one. Can someone fix this one for me? [There are no volunteers.] We've had lots of new words today – "high air pressure," "low air pressure," "closed container"; we've got "atmospheric pressure," which simply means the air all around us. I don't think anyone in this room will doubt that air pressure can do a lot of work.

Mr. Clark then left the room briefly and returned with a can identical to the one that had just collapsed. Several boys accepted the challenge of trying to crush the new can as much as the first can was crushed by air pressure. With considerable effort, they did manage to make substantial inroads into the new can, and this activity gave emphasis to the claim that "air pressure can do a lot of work."

Evaluation in Science/SES

In discussion after the children had left for the day, I inquired about testing that might be used to judge how students had responded to a unit in science. Mr. Clark's reply is indicative of the status of science in his view:

> "I usually find that whenever I give a test, it's almost a hundred per cent. In other words, when I give a test, what I expect them to know, they know pretty well. A hundred per cent of them know it

> all. I'm not too concerned about the end test result. But if I do do something, it is usually something like that. [Mr. Clark refers to a two-page test with statements about Australia, requiring students to give the comparable facts about Canada.] It's a comparison where I might give them facts about one country and ask them to regurgitate on another. For example, I would want them to know the provinces. The only thing I test ability in is mathematics and English. You can tell — if you look in my SES book, there are only a couple of marks. That's SES, so there are only two things that I have tested. Math is a mechanical thing where one thing builds on another, and if they don't know this fact, they sure won't get the next one. In science it's different, because they learn most of it by osmosis anyway. Each year they are going to pick up a little bit more."

The reply given by Mr. Clark when I asked whether he evaluated the students' notebooks in science is indicative of one of the ways in which social realities can influence work at the grade 5 level. Mr. Clark also acknowledges the pressure that can come from "theory" about how education should proceed:

> "I do evaluate their notebooks. You know, how they set it up. I tell them that that is just preparation for their future jobs, so to speak. I know you're not supposed to do that in education, but let's face it, when you get out on a job you're going to be evaluated. They're going to look at your notes, your record-keeping. He may judge you on that as much as on your performance."

Commentary

A dominant impression from these lessons on air pressure is the confidence and skill that Mr. Clark has developed in the presentation of a variety of phenomena relevant to a basic, yet challenging, scientific concept. Mr. Clark assembled equipment almost "on the run," yet everything proceeded smoothly, and he knew just where to look for additional materials. Starting with no more than a combination sink-and-drinking-fountain at the back of the room, Mr. Clark's teaching of science combines self-reliance with the confidence of a number of years of experience.

Mr. Clark's comment that "they learn most of it by osmosis anyway" reflects the reality that our culture is permeated with products made possible by science and with mass-media presentations of science content and science-related issues. Children in grade 5 have ready access to these aspects of their culture, but have not yet reached the stage at which science becomes one of five or six "subjects." Language arts, mathematics and the basic skills of all schoolwork are still fundamental. Only a few science topics are dealt with in the course of any one year. Some of the differences between the pre-highschool context of Mr.

Swift's science teaching and the grade 5 context of Mr. Clark's teaching become more sharply defined in the setting in which Mrs. Macdonald teaches science.

Science in the Primary Division

Over the past 11 years at Trillium Elementary School Mrs. Macdonald has taught at various grade levels, but most of her time has been spent between grades 3 and 6. During the same period she has also completed her BA degree through part-time studies at Queen's University, which is located within commuting distance of her home and the school. This year Mrs. Macdonald teaches grade 3, which falls within the primary division — kindergarten to grade 3.

Mrs. Macdonald talks easily about her work, and a listener is quickly made aware that having children work in a variety of group arrangements for at least part of each day is an important part of her teaching philosophy. Basically, Mrs. Macdonald approaches the teaching of science with a sense of confidence. Within her overall program, she integrates subject areas whenever possible, and "integrating" is the major way in which she teaches science; she finds that science integrates well with mathematics and social studies.

These basic features of Mrs. Macdonald's philosophy were apparent in my first observation of her teaching. Social and environmental studies is scheduled in the afternoon, and the lesson began with an activity for the entire class. A large map showing the boundaries of the provinces and major lakes of Canada was used to elicit first the names of all the provinces and then the children's responses to questions of the form, "What province is immediately west [or east] of Alberta?" Several competitions between groups were arranged, and then "time trials" were held to see how many children could, within a three-minute period, point to and properly name the five Great Lakes. This 15-minute period was followed by a 10-minute viewing of part of a filmstrip (of US origin) on "The Far North." As children took turns reading captions, Mrs. Macdonald asked questions such as "What did you notice?" and also maintained order by statements such as "I don't have people calling out." For the next 30 minutes, children were arranged in groups and directed to centres within the room. At each centre, the children found directions for working with the materials provided for them. The directions at Centre 2, below, illustrate Mrs. Macdonald's approach and her attention to posing different levels of questions:

FOR YOUR EYES ONLY!

1. Choose one envelope.
2. Study its contents carefully and report your findings on a sheet from the box.
3. Be sure to return contents to the envelope without others seeing.

One child found a picture of an unusual vehicle and the following questions:

A. What are you looking at?
B. What is different about this vehicle?
C. What time of year is it in the picture?
D. What clues help you decide?
E. Draw a sketch of the vehicle.

At this and some of the other centres, the children went ahead with their work without much difficulty. Yet any observer would have noticed that six children were receiving the greater portion of Mrs. Macdonald's attention, in part because they had not mastered the skills of working steadily and independently.

The preceding account of one day's SES period, between lunch and afternoon recess, provides an introduction to Mrs. Macdonald's teaching situation, including its many challenges and her overall approach to teaching science. When asked to describe what had happened in the science (SES) area of the curriculum in the first part of the school year, Mrs. Macdonald replied very straightforwardly, "Not as much as I'd like." Short units on plants and "the universe" preceded discussion of living things in general, eventually resulting in a "decision" to study mammals in greater detail. This investigation led to a focus on the tundra area of the Canadian North, because Canada is an SES focus in grade 3 and because the animals of the tundra tend to be mammals. Mrs. Macdonald's teaching philosophy and experience are evident in her further explanation, that the mammals of the tundra are not those of the children's everyday experience. The differences would provide a basis for comparison, and the children would not "get hung up doing a unit on the cat or the dog."

When we discussed the units recommended by her board of education for grade 3, Mrs. Macdonald explained that quite a bit of material is provided for teachers, but more to be used as a set of starting points than to be used as printed. For example, she expects to integrate the content of the two physical science units designated for grade 3 into the unit on the tundra and Canadian North. Mrs. Macdonald's ability to practise the integration she believes in suggests that she is fairly comfortable with science topics. She explained that she was offered a position teaching science at the grade 8 level in another county when she completed her preservice teacher education, but she decided against that position in favour of working nearer home. Mrs. Macdonald believes that she does not include enough science in her program, that she could do more and that science is not included to an adequate degree in the elementary grades, particularly kindergarten to grade 3. In Mrs. Macdonald's view, her county has worked very hard to incorporate the concepts of *The Formative Years* (the official Ontario curriculum document for kindergarten to grade 6) into its school programs. We could only speculate as to why separate science units have been developed, rather than units that integrate social and environmental studies.

Integration in teaching at the elementary level is obviously facilitated by Mrs. Macdonald's ability to relate content areas to each other. She rarely uses a curriculum document as it is printed. When teaching grade 4, several years ago, she never used the official unit on "Water." Instead, Mrs. Macdonald "used 'Water' as the vehicle for teaching the whole SES program." After studying the local water system, the students studied reclaimed lands in Europe. The Nile River system in Egypt served as an ancient community, and the formation of Hawaii by volcanic action provided water-related study of a "new-found land." "One could almost go around the world using 'Water.' "

Related features of Mrs. Macdonald's teaching are her sensitivity to children's interests and her responsiveness to items children bring to school. This year the classroom has one fish tank, which has most recently served to demonstrate the "pollution" that results from overfeeding the fish. In a previous year, when the children were "super keen" about the live fish, four tanks were used, many species were bred successfully and these activities served as a focal point for work in family studies. (All such activities are both demanding and risky; one winter weekend the heat failed in the school and only the fish in the largest tank survived.) Plants line the window sills in Mrs. Macdonald's classroom, adding interest but also providing a ready source of material for studying plant propagation. Mrs. Macdonald attempts to "facilitate" unexpected events that display teaching potential. When a boy brought a young snake to school, Mrs. Macdonald had time to prepare some worksheets for the children before they returned from lunch. "You just throw out your afternoon's work and go at it in a different way." The children practised measurement, estimation and looking for detail; then they drew the snake twice, in an attempt to get the most accurate colours.

Mrs. Macdonald's work in grade 3 shows how themes can be developed and how aspects of science can be integrated with other subjects. She tries to build on children's interests, but she balances what they "want" to do against her own sense of her responsibilities as a teacher of young children. Thus when 75 per cent of the children declared an interest in mammals, their topic became "mammals of the tundra," to ensure that the children would be challenged by the unfamiliar. Many children are eager to have a "pet day" when they can bring their pets to school, but there are six asthmatic children in the class, so pet day will wait until warmer weather when children and pets can meet outside. The presence in the class of a significant number of children who require almost constant "surveillance" is an obvious constraint on arrangements of children for working purposes, and Mrs. Macdonald's customary use of groups has been delayed and reduced this year. To explore the possibility of moving one child to a special class in another school, Mrs. Macdonald's principal spent two days in the classroom to observe the child. The principal's presence did not appear to disturb Mrs. Macdonald, but it was yet one more element in the complex scenario she orchestrates each and every day. The child in question was moved to another school, but management of a significant number of "challenging" children will remain one of the major demands on Mrs. Macdonald's teaching energies throughout the school year. "Some years are like that," says Mrs. Macdonald. In fact, the child who went to another school will continue to visit Mrs. Macdonald on a weekly basis, to facilitate the child's eventual return to the school.

After completing the unit on mammals of the Canadian tundra, Mrs. Macdonald's science program moved into a period of work on "individual projects," in which each child uses library materials to prepare a report on a particular species of animal. This is, in fact, the introduction of the grade 3 children to the work of library research and report preparation that will continue and increase at subsequent grade levels. Each child received six pages of material to guide the development of the individual project, and it is informative to note the specific structure provided in this science project:

Page 1: List three animals you might like to investigate and do a project about.

Tell me where you would go to get information about your choice.

Write questions that you would ask about one of your choices.

[Space is provided for nine questions.]

Page 1 provides the basis for Mrs. Macdonald's individual discussion with a child, to determine the particular animal to be studied. Mrs. Macdonald relies here on her knowledge of material available in the school library, and she gives each child page 2 and explains how it is to be used to record visits to the library and work accomplished there.

Page 3: My project is about ________________________________ .

Here is my drawing of ______________________________ .

[The remainder of the page is used for the child's drawing.]

Page 4: The ________________ belong to
the ________________ family in
the ________________ Kingdom.
We know this because the ____________ has:
[Eight lines are provided.]

Here is a picture to prove the ________________
is ________________ .

[Space is provided for picture.]

Page 5: Where do ____________ live in the world?

[Five lines are provided.]

On the map of the world I have shaded in the area(s) that
________________ live in.

I have used ____________ to show their location.

What is the country that they live in like?

Describe the type of land formations and vegetation it likes for its home area.

[Six lines are provided.]

Page 6: [Bears the title "Bibliography — Books I Used." Two columns are marked off vertically, one headed "Author or Company," and the other headed "Title of Book or Magazine."]

During this period of individual projects in science, one class included the viewing of part of a filmstrip (produced in the US in 1962) on the classification of animals. The filmstrip credits Aristotle with the first important step in classification, moves quickly through several possible classification schemes (e.g., useful-harmful) and then introduces Linnaeus as the designer of our present system, based on structural similarities. In the phylum Chordata, five classes of the subphylum Vertebrates are introduced: Fish, Amphibia, Reptiles, Birds and Mammals. One child reads the captions very competently, and Mrs. Macdonald poses questions about the content. Filmstrips such as this one are an important resource for teachers, yet I was struck by the abstract and routine treatment of the topic.

This brief glimpse of a teaching approach and associated classroom events in the teaching of science at the grade 3 level is hardly "typical," but it is indicative of some of the issues surrounding the teaching of science in the elementary grades. Mrs. Macdonald is having a difficult year, in terms of managing the group of children in her class. She approaches her work in science with considerable confidence, and she appears to enjoy the challenge of content integration, particularly within social and environmental studies. Somehow Mrs. Macdonald seems to know what each child is doing. She follows each individual closely, and at times groups children for individual work to enable them to practise their social skills.

This year, Mrs. Macdonald has eight parent volunteers who come for half or all of a morning or afternoon, once a week. The volunteers tend to work with one child who has a particular need for remedial work, and Mrs. Macdonald sees the volunteers as making a substantial contribution. Mrs. Macdonald shares Mr. Clark's view that Trillium Elementary School is basically a rather "conservative" school. This year she is adjusting to the absence of a teacher (now transferred to another school) who previously taught in a nearby classroom and served as a close colleague and "sounding board" for new ideas about teaching. Opportunities for dialogue about teaching seem rare in the day-to-day work of many teachers. Mrs. Macdonald clearly finds dialogue very valuable, and she actively searches for it. She traces many of her ideas to inservice workshops within her own board of education and to meetings in Toronto and elsewhere in Ontario under the auspices of the federation to which she belongs.

Commentary

In the primary division, more so than in other divisions, the teaching of science appears to be much more closely related to children's natural interests in particular aspects of the world around them. The formal language of experimentation has not yet become necessary, for reading and writing skills are still developing, along with the skills of group interaction that school requires. Themes are more prominent than subjects, and Mrs. Macdonald's skills of content integration illustrate the potential and the convenience of a thematic approach to learning. Like Mr. Clark, Mrs. Macdonald works almost exclusively in one room with one group of children and without a stock of formal science equipment. Again, teaching science requires self-reliance, and confidence seems to come not so much from the support of other colleagues in the school as from years of experience in which advantage is taken of out-of-school opportunities to explore ways of teaching science-related content.

Afterword

Teaching science in the primary and junior divisions contrasts sharply with that in the intermediate division. As Mr. Swift stresses, he could not run the program he does if he had responsibility for other subjects. Only by being able to concentrate on one subject is he able to cover the amount of work prescribed by the Ministry of Education. If he were a home-room teacher, he reckons he could not cover the material for which he is responsible.

Science as a defined subject does not exist in the primary and junior divisions. For Mr. Clark and Mrs. Macdonald, the pressures of covering mandated content do not exist. Science units for use in kindergarten to grade 6, however, have been developed by writing teams sponsored by the board of education. For example, in grade 3, the physical science units are "Heat" and "Astronomy"; in grade 5, the units are "Air" and "Crystals." These units are intended to be used during the social and environmental studies portions of the daily timetable. Although the teacher's guide to the set of units stresses integration with language arts and mathematics, certain science content and inquiry skills are intended to be developed in a systematic way through the primary and junior divisions. These units have been made available to all primary and junior teachers at Trillium.

The ministry guideline (*The Formative Years*) for kindergarten to grade 6 does not prescribe any particular content to be dealt with in science, and there do not seem to be any pressures from the board of education to follow the local units in the way that Mr. Swift feels under pressure to follow the guideline for intermediate science. Here we see an important difference in the work contexts of teachers in different divisions within one school.

While Mr. Swift has sought to integrate the work prescribed by the guideline with current events and "Science Fair" activity, Mrs. Macdonald and Mr. Clark are faced with the task of integrating science with other elements of the curriculum. For them, integration is the official policy of the ministry; in Mr. Swift's case, it is part of his own desire to create interest in science and to overcome what he sees as fear of the subject engendered by insufficient contact with science in the earlier grades. He is critical of the integration of science with other subjects in the earlier grades, and he thinks it is the lack of attention to science there that creates for him the task of overcoming fear of the subject.

For Mrs. Macdonald and Mr. Clark, "science" content is used as opportunities arise and as children express interest in various topics and with a view to developing curiosity and the ability to organize and think clearly about information. The efforts of the curriculum writing team that developed the primary and junior science units to create local guides for science that approach the level of systematic treatment that exists for mathematics and language arts do not seem to fit with the view that science can be taught as occasions arise and according to the interests of the children. Perhaps quite different views about the role of science are at work here. Given these different perceptions of how science should function in the elementary school, groups intending to develop curricula should appreciate how the teachers they wish to influence make sense of their work, so that all involved might collaborate more effectively in making the most of what science has to offer to the elementary school curriculum.

IV. McBride Triptych: Science Teaching in a Junior High School

Brent Kilbourn

McBride Junior High School has a total student body of about 570 in grades 7, 8 and 9. The building itself is less than five years old and is a pleasant, if architecturally conservative, structure. The facilities at the school, while not extravagant, would be considered very adequate by most standards. The school serves an urban community that is racially mixed but predominantly Anglo-Saxon. The socioeconomic status of local residents runs the continuum from low income to high income/professional, but the bulk of the community would probably be best described as stable and working-class. However, in spite of the "stability" of the community, the principal estimates that as many as 60 per cent of the students come from single-parent homes.

The science department is located in three adjacent rooms, with one room for each of the three science teachers. Students in grades 7 and 8 have science on four out of six days, on a rotating schedule, while grade 9 students meet every day. The periods are 40 minutes long. The classrooms have been designed for science teaching and are relatively well-equipped – no teacher found a lack of science equipment and supplies to be a serious impediment to his or her teaching. The classrooms have a perimeter-lab-counter design with water, gas and electrical outlets at each station.

Each of the three science teachers at McBride has more than 10 years of teaching experience. The grade 7 and 8 teachers are essentially "new" to science teaching this year, and the grade 9 teacher is the only one of the three with a formal academic and teacher-training background in science. The three are good friends and work well together; they are gregarious and very much involved with the social aspects of the school. From my experience it would be fair to say that their demeanour is "upbeat" and cheerful, both towards students and other staff members.

In this case-study report, I attempt to paint a picture of what science teaching is like, within a limited time frame, at McBride. I tried to avoid anticipating what I would find, in keeping with the naturalistic approach of the study, and to allow the salient features to emerge from the data. It is only fair to point out some of the more general concerns that oriented the research. I have been concerned with addressing the intellectual or substantive aspect of science teaching (e.g., content and process of science) as well as those aspects that cluster around the term "socialization" (e.g., management and control, classroom climate and the nature of teacher-student interactions). I have been concerned to address these in such a way as to indicate what teachers *say* they are doing and to indicate what they *are* doing. That is, I have attempted to form images of how teachers' intentions are manifested in their teaching.

Furthermore, I have attempted to provide an account that will allow a reader to interpret science teaching from the teacher's point of view and from the student's point of view. The former has been captured in the quotations from teachers during interviews. To grasp the student's point of view, however, the reader will have to make inferences from the structure and substance of the accounts themselves. (My informal talks with individual students served primarily as a triangulating device for my own descriptive impressions; on the whole, students were not questioned concerning their own "feelings" about what was happening.)

With minor variation, each of the three science teachers at McBride is responsible for one grade level. I observed each teacher for approximately one month. During this time I stayed with one class as it worked through a unit of material. Each teacher selected an "advanced" class for observation. All the lessons observed were tape-recorded and most were transcribed. In addition to the sequential observations of a single class, I spent one full day with each teacher and occasionally caught bits and pieces of his or her other classes. In addition to informal discussions with the teachers, I held more formal interviews with them as well. These too were taped and transcribed.

The accounts of each teacher's work were developed in the following way. During each lesson I took notes on salient aspects of the lesson and noted questions I wanted to ask the teacher. These notes, and other information collected at various times, were then used to generate broad topics and questions for the interviews. The information in the transcriptions of the interviews and in the field notes was used to develop the basic structure of each account. I then went back to the transcripts of the lessons to find examples of the major points. In the accounts, all of the quoted material is from the transcriptions of the lessons and interviews. (In some cases, quotations have received minor, nonsubstantive editing to improve readability.)

I have tried to let teachers and students speak for themselves, by quoting from the interviews and lessons as much as possible. The emphasis in the accounts is descriptive rather than interpretive, and the intention is to provide enough data, in context, so that a reader can make his or her own interpretations. Each account is structured on its own terms, which is why the same topics are not always found in each account and why the presentation is somewhat different in each case. The generalizations that I do make are limited to the period of time and to the class in which observations were made.

Grade 7

Steve Henning has taught at McBride Junior High School for the past four years. He teaches grade 7 physical education half-time and, for the first time in four years, also teaches grade 7 science (half-time). His BA degree is in geography, and he has acquired enough credits for a "major" in physical education. His training at the Faculty of Education was in physical education and geography.

Mr. Henning has taught English, history, geography, science, mathematics, typing and physical education. This jack-of-all-trades experience is partly due to historical trends: "We happen to be departmentalized a lot right now. When I first came on, most of the people taught a bit of everything, but it's just turning around." Another factor is that, because of seniority, it is often difficult for .. beginning teacher to be given the subject he or she wants (in this case, physical education). "So, I knew that because of the situation I'd just keep plugging along doing whatever they asked me. I didn't do a lot of complaining and I didn't really figure I had an option to anyway."

Although Mr. Henning obviously enjoys teaching science, he said: "If I had a choice, if someone said, 'Do you want geography and phys-ed or do you want all phys-ed?' I'd take all phys-ed or I might take all geography over science." It should also be noted that, training and personal preference aside, teaching a "protected" subject like physical education means more security in a period of declining enrolments and financial cutbacks.* Consequently, if, for example, he had to choose among a variety of inservice workshops, "Because science isn't my chosen field I would rather spend workshops doing phys-ed."

---

* "Protected" subjects are those that would be taught (and, consequently, would have to be staffed) even if enrolment dropped drastically. Physical education, for example, is a "protected" subject, whereas Latin is not.

In the context of "inservice workshops," Mr. Henning commented on the needs of grade 7 students and the demands on their teacher:

> "I figure that with grade 7 science you're building on the fact that it's not hard to keep a few steps ahead of the kids anyway. Grade 9, I'd definitely have to take more work to do a really good job. But for 7 and 8, I have a good basis in [the subject] anyway, and I've taught 7 and 8 science, so I figure my background would be good enough."

These comments fit with Mr. Henning's view of himself and of grade 7 teachers as generalists: "I figure with grade 7 you should be able to teach just about anything."

The fact that this is the first time in four years that Mr. Henning has taught science, coupled with his view of the teaching demands, means that his planning tends to project two or three days beyond class. He uses guidelines, several texts and previous notes in planning a lesson, but the precise topic for any particular day is largely determined (in the case of this particular unit) by following an "A" student's notebook from the previous year.

Goals

Given the opportunity to talk generally about his goals, Mr. Henning tends to emphasize those concerning socialization. On several occasions he mentioned the importance of developing a sense of responsibility, routine and manners. This view stems from his perception that grade 7 students often seem to have little respect for property or for each other:

> "I figure if the kid has developed some sort of manners and some sort of responsibility and some sort of routine, I've succeeded whether or not he learns any science. I figure if he's done that or has developed some of that partly through my teaching or my influence, I feel like I've done a good job. I really feel that for a lot of these kids that's more beneficial than learning how the conduction of heat works the way it does in water and air, or whatever."

The emphasis on routine and responsibility also relates to the idea that, in this science department, grades 7 and 8 are seen as the training ground for grade 9:

> "The way it's set up here, we follow a similar format with the activity sheets, the group work, and so on, and by the time they get to grade 9, they're all set."

The idea of training for grade 9 is also prominent when Mr. Henning talks about goals specific to science. Two goals appear to dominate his thinking about grade 7 science — learning applications to everyday life and learning the basics for subsequent grades:

> "[For example], even if they can't give me a good definition of conduction, they know they aren't going to touch a steel frying pan. They may forget [it's called conduction], but they'll remember the basic principle behind it, which is just as important, I think. But

> that's at the 7 level. At 8 and 9, it gets a little more sophisticated. [For example], setting up an experiment. This is probably the first year they've set one up the way they have, the first time they've gone through that routine. Now when they get to 8 and 9 they've got that, and then they can do other things. . . . I think science is a building process. You can't jump into grade 11 or grade 12 chemistry without some background, grade 9, 10, 11 or whatever. You have to have some of the basics as you get up there."

Teaching

Routine, then, is a feature of both socialization goals and goals in science, and it is not surprising that an observer sees a great deal of routine in the classroom. At this point it is helpful to sketch some of the more relevant details of the class I observed. Of the 17 lesson observations, 12 were spent with the same advanced class. Although the perimeter-lab classroom looks spacious, it is very crowded with 36 students, especially during lab activities. According to Mr. Henning, the large class size is due to at least two interrelated factors. This class incorporates all the students taking instrumental music (who have to be kept together for scheduling purposes); also, the policy of keeping general-level classes smaller in size (20 to 30) pushes up the number of students in advanced classes.

The class was observed through an entire unit on "Heat and Temperature." The class had recently completed a unit on measurement and the metric system, which was preceded by a unit on the characteristics and interdependence of living things. Within the "Heat and Temperature" unit, approximately one 40-minute lesson focussed on each of the following topics, in this order: introduction and film on heat; film on heat and discussion of convection, radiation, conduction; use of the Bunsen burner; activity on different rates of conduction; activity on water convection; demonstration of heat absorption; demonstration of heat loss; activity on bimetallic strip; demonstration of expansion with heated ball and ring; review; test.

During my visits, I became aware of the following general routine during each period of science class. As students enter the class, they are expected to take out their science notebooks and review until Mr. Henning formally begins class. This period of time usually lasts two or three minutes and, as the students are often talking or "messing around," it is frequently a time when Mr. Henning forcefully reminds them that they should be reviewing their notebooks. The notebooks are compiled by each student for each unit and, on the whole, are made up of the activity sheets (which usually include diagrams and answers to questions). The next part of the class is usually devoted to answering questions or reporting observations and conclusions from the "experiment" of the previous day. Then a new activity sheet is handed out, which the students copy. Sometimes the activity sheets are mimeographed and students are given a copy, but usually there is only one class set. The remainder of the lesson is spent with students doing the activity in groups of four or five. The following excerpts from several consecutive lessons illustrate this general pattern and show how, in a few specific instances, Mr. Henning addresses his goals of socialization and science content.

Thursday

Near the end of the class students are given the following activity sheet to copy in their notebooks:

HEAT #4

EXPERIMENT

Purpose:	1.	To show that different substances conduct heat at different rates.
	2.	To distinguish between conductors and insulators.
Materials:		Bunsen burner, clock, strips of steel, copper, aluminum, glass tubing, blackboard chalk, wood splinter, beaker, water, slate (a rock).
Method:		Hold what you are testing about 6 cm from one end and hold that end into the flame of a Bunsen burner. Time yourself and see how long you can hold on to it.
Observations:		Conducts heat well. Doesn't conduct heat well/time.
Conclusions:		Give a definition for the word "conductor."

Friday

Mr. Henning begins class by talking to those who were on a trip the day before:

> "Now just for the people that were away the other day, remember, please do not walk off with the activity sheets. Do not write on them unless I ask you to put something on them. Please return them at the end of the class. If you need one because you are behind, you have a couple of options. You can come in and see me. You can borrow somebody else's. As a last resort I will let you take one out of my classroom. [Activity groups are arranged.]
>
> "Now, as I mentioned to the class the other day, this is a very very crowded classroom. Another slight problem that we have is that we don't have enough aprons and goggles to go around for everybody in the class. Because of that we're going to have to take turns lighting the Bunsen burners and doing the actual experiments. Now that doesn't mean you have to sit at your desk. You go

to your group area as long as you're not standing over the flame and as long as you're standing back a couple of feet. You'll still be able to see. I just don't want any accidents to occur. Any questions?

"Again, as I said, the people that were away yesterday, everybody in the class — hang on, David, put your pen down till I tell you to start. Elizabeth, pay attention. Put your pen down. Then I know you're paying attention.

"The way we're going to do these experiments, I'm going to do some of the work for you. I will put down the purpose, the materials, the method by which the experiment will be done. You will have to do the observations, obviously, the conclusion, and a diagram. So I will help you out; I will give you a sheet with those first pieces of information. You have to do the rest. That's why it's important that you work together as a group so everybody gets some feedback, the information. [The groups turn to the activity. After that Mr. Henning calls for clean-up.]

"You have three things to do. You have to write down your observations. Now obviously it may be only one person that's taken down the readings. That means that everybody in the group will have to copy them into their notebooks. Two, you have to think up a conclusion. What did you discover? I'm not going to give you a hint here. Three, you draw a diagram. A nice simple diagram showing a Bunsen burner with a flame, a little hand holding onto the object, and that is it. The diagram will be a half-page in size. It will be drawn in pencil. It can be pencil-crayon if you wish. Any questions? You've got work to do. Do it."

Later I asked Mr. Henning why most of the "experiments" require a diagram.

> "Well, the main premise is that when they go back and look over the notes, they may be able to read through the material but for some of the kids, if they have a little picture that they can look at, they'll say, 'Ah!' When a kid reads over his notes, he's going to go 'bloop'; but if he can look at a picture, he'll remember the whole experiment. Even though he can't regurgitate it word for word, he'll have a good idea of what he did – hopefully, if his diagram's labelled and drawn with any accuracy. I think, again, that's a part of the scientific – the experimental – process; you know, that you can do a diagram after and actually see what you've done."

Monday

Mr. Henning begins by circulating around the classroom and briefly looking at the write-up on Friday's activity with conductors:

Henning: Now looking around I see a few slight problems. Number one, some of you people still don't know how to write out a note. You use pen, you don't use pencil. I see a lot of messy attempts. Those people who have used a fairly blunt pencil will be redoing it, I'm sure. Next, the diagram that you were supposed to do is absent in some cases. Some of you have done it and you have not labelled it. [Looks at a student's diagram.] That's good, Ray. So remember you need a labelled diagram.

Scott: How do you label it? Like this?

Henning: Shhh! You have a question, Scott?

Scott: Yeah.

Henning: Put up your hand, please. [Scott puts his hand up.] Yes?

Scott: Do you say what it is or what?

Henning: Well, if you have a diagram and it's not labelled, it's not a complete diagram, meaning, you should label that you have a Bunsen burner there and label whatever object you're representing that by — if it's an aluminum strip or whatever the case may be. O.K.? So as you can see, there are a few problems, but I realize this is your first attempt at an experiment. If you learn it correctly the first time, we'll have no problems with the future experiments that we do.

Let's take a look at the observations. I realize that because you all worked in different groups the observations that you found concerning the amount of time it took for the various materials to get hot would differ from group to group. But we should notice something about these observations and the observations will be literally summed up in the conclusion. So let's look at the conclusion and we'll see if we can see the relationship between the conclusion and the observation. The conclusion. Who would like to read out the conclusion? Peter, can you give me your conclusion please, or one of them?

Peter: Metal conducts heat the best.

Henning: O.K., and looking at your observation, how did you determine that?

Peter: Well, the aluminum and the copper and the steel conducts heat very fast, but the chalk and the glass tubing and the wood and the rock didn't.

Henning: How many people would agree with the conclusion Peter arrived at? Good. Does anyone have any other conclusions that you could mention? Matt?

Matt: Different people have different sensitivities to heat.

Henning: O.K., interesting. Could you give me an example of how you arrived at that conclusion? [Matt's response is inaudible.] Interesting. Does that relate to the purpose of the experiment though?

Matt: No.

Henning: No, it doesn't. But that's O.K., it's an interesting sideline. It doesn't exactly relate back to the purpose, but as Matt said, obviously some people may be more sensitive than others and perhaps they could feel the heat more quickly. [A short interchange occurs with another student concerning the conductivity of chalk.]

Henning: So what would we call that type of material that does not conduct heat very well? Frank?

Frank: Unconducted.

Henning: Unconducted. Well I think there's another word in here. Isn't there a word in your "purpose" that will maybe give you a better word instead of an unconductor? Lynn?

Lynn: An insulator.

Henning: An insulator. Right. Some materials act as insulators because they do not conduct heat very well at all. [A short interchange occurs concerning why one student had a low time-reading for chalk. Then Mr. Henning slides the blackboard sideways to expose two written statements.] O.K., on the front board I wrote down a typical type of conclusion you can have. Now this isn't what everybody has to have, word for word. This is just the ideas that you should have been able to pick up. For example, Conclusion #1: "Metals are better conductors than nonmetals." In other words, the aluminum, copper, and the steel, and the iron all conducted heat relatively well, whereas the materials such as glass, rock, and chalk, for example, are very poor conductors of heat. And then I put down in #2 – I left two blanks: "[blank] conducted heat the fastest while [blank] was the worst conductor." In other words, what you can do is just fill in the blanks. For example, aluminum may have been the best conductor we found, and chalk or rock may have been the worst conductor you found in your group so that way you've got two conclusions and you related them back to the purpose. You should also mention the word "insulator." You could use that as another word to relate to your conclusion. And also, as you see, a very quick simple diagram labelled "Bunsen burner." That's all that's necessary with this diagram for this first experiment. It doesn't have to be terribly elaborate. [After several brief interchanges, Mr. Henning hands out an activity sheet on water convection. The procedure is to heat water containing crystals of potassium permanganate in order to "see" the convection currents. The purpose is "To find out how water gets hot, even though it is a poor conductor."] O.K., just take a look at the purpose of this next experiment. I gave you a couple of seconds of time and the experiment's pretty well all set up at the stations. Purpose. Steve, could you read out the purpose, please?

Steve: "To find out how water gets hot even though it's a poor conductor."

Henning: O.K., so in the first experiment we're dealing with solids. This experiment we're going to see how a liquid such as water is heated. Some of you already have an idea. [Mr. Henning continues the instructions with Activity #5.] Does anyone have any questions? I'll tell you what, I'll give you five minutes right now to start copying that down. In five minutes put the aprons and the goggles on and we'll start.

Student: Do we keep these?

Henning: No you don't keep those. Again you do not keep these handouts, please. You copy them. [New group leaders are chosen and the class works on the activity until the end of the period.]

Tuesday

Mr. Henning moves among the students, looking at their activity sheets from Monday. Students are mumbling.

"Now, from what I've seen so far, I shouldn't hear a sound out of any of you. In fact, I haven't seen one person so far that has it all done. It's not a very good way to impress me. [Moves to the next student and comments on the diagram.] What is that? I can hardly see it. Get another pen and do it all over. [Moves to the next student.] Why is it in pencil? Do it all over again with pen. [He moves from student to student commenting on their work, then summarizes.]

"Well, looking at the experiment you did yesterday, it's not finished. Pens and pencils down now, everybody listen. Brock, be quiet please. Now I can't really figure out why there are so many people in this class that couldn't complete the work I asked you to last day. It wasn't terribly strenuous. That's why I figured you could all handle it on your own. A number of people could. Obviously that shows that they could accept some responsibility. Put your pen down, Linda, and listen to me.

"Now, the things you had to do: you had to put in an observation, you had to put in a conclusion, and you had to draw a diagram. Some of you did the observation, some of you did a diagram, and some of you did conclusions, but very few of you did all three. The experiment's not complete until you've finished it completely. [Later, Mr. Henning said that he occasionally "put on a show" in order to get students to work.]

> "Now, what observations did some of you notice?" [The class turns to a discussion of Monday's activity, followed by another activity on air convection.]

With these excerpts I have tried to convey, in summary form, my impression that Mr. Henning's emphasis on routine and responsibility tends to be played out at two levels. One level concerns general issues of classroom control or socialization (e.g., "Everyone put their pens down"), while another level concerns routines more specifically related to the work in science (e.g., experiments require a diagram). Obviously, the two levels are not mutually exclusive (e.g., diagrams must be done in pencil, notes in pen).

The substance of the students' work and class discussion is generally circumscribed by the activity sheets. On the whole, students' questions tend to be procedural but, on the few occasions when students asked questions of substance, Mr. Henning was willing to let discussion move in the direction indicated, even though he may not have had a ready answer (e.g., "Sir, what makes a flame hot?"). Mr. Henning comments:

> "I guess it [questions from students] happens occasionally. I can think of a few other times that they'd ask me a question, and maybe one way of answering it would be 'O.K., what do other people think?' or, 'What do you think?,' or give them part of an answer and then send them to the library to check it out some more or something."

Insofar as class work and discussion tend to be confined to the activity sheets, "learning the basics" is emphasized. Mr. Henning's goal of relating science to everyday life, while not normally provided for in the activity sheets, generally is brought out in class discussion either by examples provided by Mr. Henning (e.g., relating air convection to heating systems) or by questions he poses to students.

Mr. Henning enjoys teaching, and this fact was borne out repeatedly in observations and in discussions with him. Most professions have their frustrations, however, and, as any teacher knows, teaching is no exception. When asked about frustrating aspects of his work, Mr. Henning's initial response was, "The thing that bothers me most is their [grade 7] lack of manners and respect, generally speaking." As the days went by and we talked more, it became apparent that a considerable portion of that frustration was due to the behaviour of the general-level students. Mr. Henning feels that much of the difficulty is a matter of innate intelligence ("They're [the general-level students] going to produce children that, generally speaking, are going to be at a disadvantage, and I believe that they're not going to have as much to start with.") as well as environmental factors, such as a broken home. I asked Mr. Henning to describe the major difference between advanced and general-level students. "Maturity, effort, responsibility, brain power, manners. No comparison. It's just like night and day. It's unbelievable."

During the one day that I spent observing all of Mr. Henning's classes, his frustration with classes containing a high proportion of general-level students was evident and understandable. From my point of view, there was a much higher proportion of "drill-sergeant" controlling behaviour by Mr. Henning with the general-level students, usually as a result of things students said or did. Over the course of a month, I developed two interpretations of the source of the disturbance felt by Mr. Henning. The general-level students (especially the small handful that can seriously influence the tone of an entire class) are, comparatively speaking, unpredictable, both academically and behaviourally. And the general-level student makes the teacher be something (e.g., a drill-sergeant) that he or she basically does not want to be. When we were discussing one particular "problem" student, Mr. Henning commented that the student would frequently laugh when someone made a mistake:

> "He just doesn't control himself, in that respect. That's what bugs me. That's the main reason — I shouldn't say I dislike them — I like them least of my other classes. That's the thing there, it's the discipline: keep quiet, sit down, no, yes, don't do that, don't do this."

But there are joys in teaching, too, and one of the more conspicuous joys for Mr. Henning is just being around young people, as shown by his involvement in extracurricular student activities:

> "O.K., as you know, Bill, Ron and I do the Friday night club [dances]. That's only one Friday a month. . . . Sports take up a couple of nights a week; the swim club on Tuesday mornings; the staff-student hockey on Wednesday and Friday morning. . . . Actually, we just started [the swim club]. . . . The girls had a swim club, and they had about 50 girls and the guys said, 'Oh, we'd like to have one of those, let's have one,' so Bill and I decided to give them a swim club and we had our first meeting last Tuesday."

Grade 8

Mr. Sills' class has just seen a filmstrip on ways to conserve energy in food preparation and is discussing a series of questions on the filmstrip.

Sills: How could we prepare foods in order to conserve energy?

Student: We could eat raw foods.

Sills: All right, another one?

Student: Cook with a wok.

Sills: O.K. Do you know a country that they've talked about recently that has been eating dogs? Yes?

Student: The Philippines.

Sills: The Philippines. Well, there's a new cook book out in the Philippines. It's called *How to Wok Your Dog*. [pause]

Students: Ohhh!! Ohhh!! [much moaning and laughing]

Sills: I know, that joke was in bad taste. [The discussion continues.]

Later, during an interview, we discussed this episode:

Kilbourn: Bad puns are part of your style.

Sills: A terrible part. It's just a little bit of humour to brighten things up.

Kilbourn: But you consciously do that, I take it.

Sills: Oh yeah. I mean, I think teaching is predominantly the acting. You have to have a little bit of levity just to make the kids feel comfortable and know that you are human and you may tell a rotten joke now and again. It's all part of the game, eh?

Ron Sills has taught elementary school for 10 years. This is his first year teaching in a junior high school and his first year teaching full-time science. He has six grade 8 classes and three grade 7 classes. His BA degree is in psychology, and he is currently working on an Honours degree. He has moved into the junior high system because he felt he was "getting in a rut." Mr. Sills remarked on three major differences between elementary and junior high:

> "There aren't too many differences between grade 6s and 7s as far as the students are concerned. However, I notice a vast difference in the 8s as far as maturity level goes; the girls especially — not the physical aspects, but definitely attitudinally — are sort of feeling their oats, and they don't really like to get down to serious work.
>
> "It's a whole new ball of wax to me, giving marks, and I'm already beginning to see injustices in the system. I was talking to Steve Henning about the marks and how I feel that marks aren't necessarily an indication of the student's performance at the junior high school level.
>
> "You only see the students for 40 minutes during a day and you only see them three or four times a week and you don't really get to know the students as well as you do in an elementary school, which is too bad. There are some students in grades 7 and 8 that I barely get a chance to talk to, simply because I have a subject to cover and I have to do it in a 40-minute time slot. . . ."

Because he is new to the situation, Mr. Sills is feeling his way and is gradually developing ideas about what he will do differently in the future. For example, his grade 8 classes started the year with a unit on classifying living things, are now doing a unit on energy and will next do a unit on reproduction. It had been suggested to Mr. Sills that he simply follow the sequence adopted by the previous teacher:

> "This is my first year doing this, so if I had to do it over again I would arrange it so that it would be in a totally different sequence. I don't exactly know how I would arrange it because I haven't really given it a great deal of thought yet, but I definitely would, in my planning, arrange it so that I would have continuity."

During our first interview Mr. Sills commented on his goals as a teacher:

> "My main emphasis in teaching is to make the kids feel comfortable in what they're doing. That's always been my basic philosophy.

> I'm not a strict disciplinarian, and I definitely feel that one of the things that has been my ultimate goal for the past 11 years is to just make kids feel more comfortable in education in general, and to not make them feel threatened. I would like to see students come out with a basic liking for the subject — broadening of the horizons. A lot of kids are turned off by science simply because they are overwhelmed by the material."

From a questionnaire listing 14 goals for science teaching, Mr. Sills selected "developing social skills," "developing attitudes appropriate to scientific endeavour" and "understanding the role and significance of science in modern society" as very important overall goals in science teaching. More specifically, with regard to the "Wise Use of Energy" unit, he made this comment:

> "What I have been talking about basically is nonrenewable/ renewable energy sources and how to use these sources. The students have come in with a set of ideas, hopefully about energy and where energy comes from, and what I have done is I've sort of broadened that scope, so to speak. I've taken that knowledge and I've expanded on it or I've added to that, hoping that the student will have a better working knowledge of the terms. Hopefully, I could get these kids to go home and say, 'Gee, we're being wasters, and this is happening all around us.'"

Because there is no ministry-developed unit for the "Wise Use of Energy," Mr. Sills has developed one on his own. The following sequence of topics is the basis for the 16-lesson unit: potential energy, energy conversion, renewable and nonrenewable energy sources, advantages and disadvantages of different energy sources, energy in the home, solar energy and the water cycle, energy conservation, energy and food preparation. The lessons are structured around films and filmstrips (seven are shown) and activity sheets (generally, one per lesson). Normally, the activity sheets are a series of questions on the filmstrips or, sometimes, on the text or other material. Although the department head encouraged the idea of activity sheets, Mr. Sills develops them:

> "Being a new teacher, of course, I have got to make use of the prep-periods, and I find that they go really quickly. Usually Friday night I stay home and work [on the activity sheets]. It's almost like a prefabrication. But it's true. Work on it Friday night, and then Sunday night from about 7:00 till almost 11:00 I'm working on course material. And then during the prep-periods, of course, I'm previewing films."

A typical pattern of activity for a 40-minute lesson is for the class to see a filmstrip, copy and answer activity sheet questions and then discuss the questions as a whole class. For this particular unit. the students usually work individually or, occasionally, in groups of four or five, doing the same task at the same time:

> "When I was doing 'Classification of Living Things,' I had a whole different system, as a matter of fact. I had four groups, and I had four activity sheets which were rotated every day. At this table I had a whole series of glass jars with specimens in them, and the kids had to classify the specimens. At the next one I had the micro-slide viewers and they had to look at the micro-slides and write a few things on the activities there. And on the next table was a text-book activity. The last table had slides and a tape. And I also had a library activity — I had a word search."

The class I observed for most of the unit was designated "advanced" and was very large — 37 students. Although the classroom was pleasant and well equipped, it was quite small, and Mr. Sills agrees that the overcrowding constrains both what he can do and what he is willing to try to do.

In the following account, I extract and comment on relevant excerpts from the sequential lessons. No one excerpt could be considered typical, but taken together they form a relatively adequate image of the structure and substance of Mr. Sills' teaching during the period of observation.

Friday

This is the fifth lesson in the unit. The students read six pages from the text (of which there is only one class set) and work on the activity sheet that sets them the following task:

> "Describe each of the following energy sources: geothermal, solar, nuclear, hydrogen, wind and tidal. What are the advantages of each? The disadvantages?"

The information needed to do this task is contained in the text. Throughout the observations, the questions on the activity sheets and in class discussions generally are "recall" questions (although there are exceptions). The students' written work is collected about every eight days, marked, and returned.

> "I mark them holistically, according to neatness, accuracy and completeness, and I don't worry about spelling mistakes or anything like that."

On the whole, for this unit, the texts are seldom used, largely because they contain relatively little information on the topic. I asked Mr. Sills how he normally uses the texts:

> "Very sporadically. If I use a textbook at all it's for some questions that I couldn't dream up myself related to the unit, or I would take diagrams and specific charts out. In the unit on asexual and sexual reproduction, for example, there are going to be oodles of diagrams and charts that I want the kids to have in their notes."

After the class has worked on the activity sheet, Mr. Sills holds a class discussion. Here is an excerpt from a total class discussion of about 15 minutes:

Sills: All right, great. It doesn't take a lot of uranium to create this power. That's right. Another advantage? O.K., go ahead if you have an idea. Just shout it out.

Student: Is uranium renewable?

Sills: That's a good question. I'll throw it out. Do you think uranium is a renewable resource? [mixture of students saying "yes" or "no"]

Student: No, I don't think it's renewable.

Sills: No, it's not. O.K., that's one disadvantage, that's right. However, because we've got a lot of it, the uranium is going to last us.

Student: Doesn't it cost a lot to get it?

Sills: Getting the uranium doesn't, but building the power plants is a very expensive problem. However, it's not as expensive as building great dams, or gathering the potential energy of waterfalls. The next one. Oh, the disadvantages, of course. Yes?

Student: Kill people.

Sills: All right, how?

Student: The radiation, unless it's properly controlled.

Sills: All right, great. Another disadvantage? Yes?

Student: People don't like it.

Sills: All right, why?

Students: Because it's dangerous. Because of radiation. Nuclear wastes are — I mean some of them aren't properly, you know, contained or whatever.

Sills: All right. Great.

Student: It's hard to dispose of the nuclear waste.

Sills: That's the main problem right there. That's a great disadvantage. I'm glad you people are thinking. That's super. All right, let's take a look at hydrogen. First of all what is it?

Student: [inaudible]

Sills: I don't want the same people answering all the time. That's great that you are doing that [turns towards some silent students] but I'm looking for a description of hydrogen? Yes, Trudy?

Tuesday

Mr. Sills begins the class with these remarks:

> "Today we are going to have a look at still another filmstrip. I realize that you are getting a little bit tired of them, as I was too. However, the next day that you come in you will not be looking at a filmstrip; you will be doing another exercise related again to the textbook. Today we are going to be looking at energy use at home.

> And in particular it's sort of in part related to an activity that we are going to be doing several days from now, where I am going to be asking you to look at the energy use at home and you'll be keeping a chart of some of these things that you use at home that demand the use of electricity. . . [continues to talk about conserving energy]. There are several things that we can do in the home to save energy, of course. And several of them are listed in the filmstrip.
>
> "Now, the question that I jotted down — a lot of people think I get these questions with the filmstrip. I do not. I sit and listen to the filmstrip and as the filmstrip is going on, I jot down the questions that come to my mind — simply for the fact that it's easier for me to recall the filmstrip than it is, in the long run, for you to recall it. Anyway, let's have a look at it. I'd like to read these to you because the filmstrip tape goes very, very quickly."

At this point Mr. Sills reads the 19 questions from the activity sheet. The first seven are as follows:

1. Where does 20 per cent of all Canada's energy go?
2. What does this figure not include?
3. What happens to a poorly insulated home?
4. What per cent of the budget is used in heating a home during the winter?
5. What steps can be taken to ensure that homes will be comfortable year round?
6. What will good insulation do?
7. What savings in oil will result?

After this introduction, students watch the filmstrip, write the answers to the questions and then discuss them. On this occasion they are allowed to keep the mimeographed activity sheet, though normally they spend time copying from a class set into their notebooks. Two aspects of Mr. Sills' preliminary remarks are characteristic: he publicly reflects on what he is doing as a teacher, and he relates what the students are presently doing to what they will be doing.

Thursday

Student: Where do we find the answer to number two?

Sills: From the "old noggin." The reason I asked these questions was to get you to think.

The tasks on this activity sheet are more demanding than those on the previous Tuesday. For example, students copy (from the text) a diagram of the water cycle and a chart showing what happens to the sun's energy (35 per cent reflected, 43 per cent absorbed, etc.) and are asked to answer the following question: "One of the sources of energy depends on the water cycle, which is powered by solar energy. State what limits this source." The class spends the entire period working on this and another question. During this time I followed Mr. Sills as he worked with individuals. Here he is talking to a group of four students:

> "I'm not talking about the water cycle. The water cycle is fairly easy to understand. If you think about the sun — it's giving out 100 per cent of the energy that the earth takes in — it will become a little bit clearer. Don't worry about the fact that the total radiation is [so much] per year. What is more important is that the earth takes in 100 per cent of the energy from the sun. It gives 100 per cent of its energy, but right away what happens is that 35 per cent is directly reflected back into space from the clouds. We never see that 35 per cent. All right? It says that approximately 43 per cent is absorbed as heat energy and power in the water cycle. Well, this is the reason I had you draw the water cycle so you could see that, of course, we have to have the sun's energy for any type of evaporation to take place. Look at the diagram of the water cycle you are about to draw."

Monday

There was no class the previous Friday because of parent/teacher interviews. Mr. Sills makes this comment to the class about the interviews:

> "First of all, I'd like to say that I've met a couple of parents on the first day for parent/teacher interviews. It was nice to see a couple of parents. It's usually the parents of relatively bright children that end up coming to these interviews, which is too bad. There are exceptions."

After ten minutes, two-thirds of the class leave for tubercular skin tests. The class is given a one-page article entitled "Why Conserve Energy" accompanied by a diagram (from a book on home insulation). The article is read aloud, one paragraph per student. The remainder of the period is spent writing the answers to activity-sheet questions on the article.

Tuesday

Class begins with a brief discussion of sources of renewable and nonrenewable energy. Mr. Sills then shows an interesting National Geographic film on alternative sources of energy. Later I comment that most of the films and filmstrips appear to be from the United States:

> "I was going to say that I don't actively look for Canadian or non-Canadian materials. I think that I'm more interested in materials that I find available."

The class discusses the film for about five minutes.

> "What I would like you to do in the remaining five minutes is to take a look at some of the alternative sources of energy, and I would

like you to write a few lines — just a few lines — on the alternative source of energy that interested you the most and why it did. [Bell rings.] What I would like to do before you go is — I would like to have you do that for a [homework assignment]. I haven't given any homework up to this point, and I would like to have it completed as a homework assignment, as activity number 10, and I would like to hear some of your answers in the next class and that will be the first thing that I will take up with you."

Wednesday

The class did not meet on this particular Wednesday, but I was with Mr. Sills for the entire day — three grade 8 classes and three grade 7 classes (none of these classes was taped). This is an appropriate point to make two rather general interpretive comments that were more firmly established for me as a result of the day's observations.

The first observation is that, if possible, Mr. Sills tries to keep his classes on the same topic at the same time, or at least within one or two days of each other. This approach is largely a response to the logistical complexities of trying to coordinate equipment and supplies for several sections of the same grade — a task that becomes more difficult the further the sections get "out of step." And, as Mr. Sills pointed out, he wanted his classes kept together so that he could test before Christmas, grade over the break, and start fresh with a new unit in January. One of the consequences of trying to keep classes together (exacerbated by assemblies, special programs, TB tests, etc.) is that sometimes some classes are rushing to catch up, while others are stalling.

The second comment concerns a variety of factors related to general-level students, discipline and teacher frustration. Mr. Sills has two grade 8 classes that are considered "low" and a third class that, though average, is seen as a definite control problem by the whole staff. The term "low" is often (but not always) used by Mr. Sills and other teachers at McBride chiefly in reference to students that are thought to have low academic ability, little motivation, and a tendency towards inappropriate behaviour. Throughout the period of observation with Mr. Sills, he referred to his "lows" in a way that indicated they were a source of frustration and, at times, considerable anxiety. "I'm exhausted after having class" and "I'm not looking forward to next period because. . . " were typical statements. Apparently, some of this is related to Mr. Sills' relaxed approach in class and his inexperience with grade 8 adolescents. Steve Henning and Bill Larson have encouraged him to "get tough."

Mr. Sills and I talked about the "lows" on several occasions. He feels that some of the difficulty is that "low" students tend to be concentrated in a few classes. Some of the stress lies in their unpredictable nature:

> "I can't predict. [Class B] is unpredictable. Now today they threw me for a loop, they really did. They were really excellent but it was something that the [National Geographic] film had done and certainly not what I had done. . . .
>
> "If I gave [Class C] a task I don't think that they have the attention span that would enable them to finish, or they might start it and may last for about 10 or 15 minutes. Then they would say that this is too hard – one of their favourite expressions is 'This is for a browner class,' a brain class. The kids have a notion of where they stand as far as the relationship with the rest of the grade 8s. They know that they are the bottom, which is unfortunate.
>
> [Earlier in the same interview:] "There are single parents, you know? More so than ever. The kids come into class and they have all these psychological hang-ups because of a one-parent type of thing, and you're dealing with that. And the stress is all around you, and you just sort of have to bear under the pressure I guess.
>
> "You're seeing [the advanced class] and there are very few kids in here with any major hang-ups; in a lot of the classes that I deal with there are. I have one boy. . . [who] doesn't have a father, and he sits there and he dawdles away his time. He's had seven failures this term, and his mother came in for the interview. I was talking to her on Friday and she was crying. What can you do? What can you do as a teacher? You make specific recommendations. I recommended that he have the benefit of psychological services just to see where he's at academically and to see what his interests are, but I don't think the mother goes for it. But as a teacher you can only do so many things."

Thursday

Mr. Sills begins class with a harangue (the transcript of which fills one page of single-spaced type) concerning an incident from a different class that morning. This passage is illustrative:

> "I know for a fact that most of you people in the class are bright enough and intelligent enough that you would do your homework at night and not in somebody else's class. That is something that is a definite 'No.' I'd rather have you say that you hadn't done the assignment, rather than do it in somebody else's class."

Later, I asked him if similar incidents had occurred in the class I was observing and to which he was speaking.

> "Oh, no. Well, there were some things that went on, but also it was my devious way of getting them to do their homework assignment, like as if to say, 'You guys wouldn't pull this stunt on me, would you, in not doing your homework?'"

During the harangue, however, I recorded my impression that some of the fervour could be attributed to emotional "carry-over" from the event which occurred in Mr. Sills' most obstreperous class. When he finished, Mr. Sills turned to a discussion of the homework assignment from Tuesday (as promised) and the class ended with a film from the National Film Board.

Tuesday

I could not attend the class on Monday. Mr. Sills had asked the students to write the answers to several questions, and he began this class by referring to them:

Sills: Some of you have done the answers to those questions. Maybe we could have a look at the first one and see exactly what your impressions were. What would happen if we were to eliminate all of the electrical gadgets in the world? What do you think would happen? Yes? [A number of students raise their hands and begin to talk at once.]

Sills: Ah, I beg your pardon. Let's put your hands down for a minute. First and foremost, a couple of things that you should be aware of is that you are forgetting that people are speaking. There are people with their hands up that wait. The second thing that you should be aware of is that while that is happening, other people are talking to their neighbours. That is unforgivable. O.K., Ali?

Ali: I think that electricity is one of the cheaper sources of energy and if you did that I think it would help a lot but I don't think it would solve all of the energy problems.

Sills: O.K., you made a statement there. You said that electricity is the cheapest form of energy.

Ali: No, I said one of the cheaper.

Sills: Um, I would like to sort of argue that point simply because electricity comes from sources of energy that are not cheap. O.K.? At the present time anyway.

Student: I think some of the gadgets you should cut, like electric toothbrushes and shoe shiners and orange juicers and things, but I think that some of them — dishwashers even you could cut out. But I think some of the things like dryers and that, people need it in today's society, and I know that there are a lot of people who really use it.

Sills: O.K., so you say there are a lot of things that we could eliminate and others that we could keep. [The lesson continues.]

Sills: Great. That's a good statement to make. Yes? [A student's inaudible comment is laughed at by several other students.] One of the things that you should be aware of as well, and this is a typical reaction to someone who makes a statement. What I would like you to be aware of is that this is an open forum, and it's an open forum that shouldn't be criticized.

You shouldn't criticize anyone who has a statement to make. O.K.? No matter if the statement is sort of off base. At least it is a statement that this person genuinely feels is a viable type of statement and it shouldn't be criticized. Anybody can say anything directly related to the question and shouldn't be criticized. Maybe we've made that a rule then. If you make a statement, then it's a statement that you feel is right. Fair enough?

Student: If we took out electrical gadgets and things, I mean come on, we'd be back like the pioneers. We'd figure out other ways to do it, but I don't think people are ready to give it up right now.

Student: If we did – say if we did – and then all of a sudden we didn't like it and we wanted to change. . . [inaudible].

Student: I think we should find more ways to conserve our energy because if we find ways to conserve the energy then we'll have enough energy and we won't need log cabins.

Sills: Great. [Lesson continues with considerable student participation.]

Later, during an interview, I asked about this episode:

Kilbourn: There was the other day in which the class made some good comments, but some kids would laugh, [and you said] "Hey, wait, that doesn't go here." Do you very often make "process" comments like that?

Sills: Quite often. Quite often. Especially when I think the behaviour is going to be detrimental to the class. If I think that the behaviour is going to carry on, I will make a "process" comment because I – well, simply because I don't want it carried on in the class. If I did that – it also gives the person who made the comment a feeling of importance as well. But often kids are put down, you know. I sort of unintentionally put Barb down over here. I didn't really mean it.

These affective issues spread beyond the classroom interaction, of course, and it is apparent that Ron Sills likes the students and spends considerable time with them outside the classroom. He is in charge of the computer games and the pop concession at dances, he helps with the school musical, he is starting a computer club and he is trying to decide whether or not to help some students with a rocketry club. I suggested that the whole science department seems to have a high social profile. His reply:

> "Well, don't forget that basically you're a teacher first and a science teacher second, and as it turns out, all three of us – Bill, Steve and I – are all sort of socially oriented, which is terrific. We have a great deal of interest in the social activities that go along with school."

Grade 9

The bell rings. Corridors come alive with students going to class. Bill Larson stands outside his door while class "A" begins to fill the room. As students enter they automatically pick up an activity sheet from the corner of Mr. Larson's lab table, go directly to their seats, start reading the instructions and begin copying the activity sheet into their notebooks. Mr. Larson enters and goes over the instructions. Usually the instructions concern procedural matters. The class then begins to work on its own in eight groups of four students each. On a typical day they will move to the lab counters (running the length of the double room) where Mr. Larson will have placed all the necessary equipment to do the exercise. While the class is working, Mr. Larson circulates among the groups, dealing with questions and problems individually. He also does routine "accounting" — checking with individual students about work they must turn in, or crediting them with work they have done. A few students move about tending plants, several small animals and a weather station. When the lab is finished, students move back to their desks and begin working on diagrams and answering questions. Sometimes, but not usually, there will be a brief class discussion of the work. Near the end of the class Mr. Larson calls for clean-up. Each group readies its lab area for the next class while one student collects the original activity sheets, counts them and puts them on the corner of the lab table for the next class. Students sit in their seats and check the floor for garbage. The bell rings. As with Mr. Larson's other classes, this class is run efficiently and students are well-trained.

Bill Larson is head of science at McBride. Every day he teaches one class of grade 8 mathematics and five classes of grade 9 general science. He has been teaching for 12 years; some of that time has been spent at the secondary level, but he prefers junior high because he feels that, on the whole, the students are less set in their ways and, consequently, the atmosphere is more exciting. He took mathemathics and science in his BA degree program, and he is currently enrolled in an MEd program specializing in environmental education.

Goals

As department head, Mr. Larson has had considerable influence on the science program at McBride, especially as Ron Sills and Steve Henning are new to the situation. For example, he has promoted the use of activity sheets as a structural format in all three grades. The use of activity sheets embodies Mr. Larson's belief that one of the most important aspects of teaching is to get the students involved and feeling good about what they are doing. I asked him what he thought it was important to communicate to students, and why he teaches the way he does.

> "I guess it's just to get the kids involved with the subject. I believe that they learn by doing and being involved. I can think of the

> things that I have enjoyed the most and they're the things I feel a part of, the things I feel good about doing and things that I'm successful with."

Along with involvement and success, Mr. Larson puts a high priority on students learning to be accountable and developing a sense of responsibility. On one occasion he talked about his implicit messages to students concerning responsibility:

Larson: I didn't even tell them. I may have, just off the cuff, said yesterday, "Oh yeah, by the way, tomorrow your notes are due," but I didn't make a big production of it. They know when the stuff is due for the rest of the year, within a couple of days. I mean they can figure it out, and they know when their tests are. Like, I'm not going to change the format for the rest of the year as far as the activity sheets are concerned.

Kilbourn: Part of this, I take it, is a thing that you work on continually, which is accountability and responsibility. You're fairly persistent about that from what I've seen.

Larson: I guess it goes down in my whole philosophy about teaching kids. Like, I want to make them responsible for their own actions. I think our society as a whole would function a lot better if all of us were responsible for our own actions. I feel that there are too many cop-outs and I don't think I'm doing a kid a favour if I let him get away at least without thinking about it. I'm really a soft touch. I come on like Jack the Bear but I'm really a soft touch. [In a later interview:] I've always been big on social skills, especially things like cooperation, sense of responsibility. I'm a teacher, and science just happens to be the vehicle.

I observed Mr. Larson teach a unit called "The Functioning Animal," which followed the year's first unit, on green plants. He provided the following background information:

> "I want them to understand some of the basic facts and concepts. I want them to understand digestion. I want them to understand respiration. We just touch on circulation. But it goes back to my game plan for the whole year. Like, it makes the other units make more sense if they do the [basics] at the beginning of the year. . . . It's kind of a first-term introduction – have a good experience, get involved, get into it, and the bottom line is I want them to come out of both these first units in the first term with some pretty good understanding of what green plants and animals are all about, and then we can go on.
>
> [In a later interview:] "I have tried to order units in such a way that we build to a climax at the end of the year, which is that unit where we take them outside and do the environmental testing with the kids and things like that. . . . If you look at the course over the

> period of the year, it really looks like an ecology course, and that's the theme for the entire year."

Activity Sheets, Pace and Control

Activity sheets are the primary means for achieving goals specific to science and the particular unit. Mr. Larson is well organized; his files contain an activity sheet for nearly every day of the school year. Each activity is designed to be done in a 40-minute period. About 80 per cent of the activity sheets involve some kind of lab exercise, while the rest concern other resources (such as filmstrips) or printed material (such as the text). The sheets are normally copied by the students. (Mr. Larson expressed his concern that students spend so much time copying the activity sheets, and he has persistently encouraged them to get on with the tasks themselves. He pointed out that he would prefer to give each student a copy to keep, but the budget will not stand the expense.)

An observer cannot help but notice the rapid pace of most of the lessons, a pace that is dictated by both the amount the student must do and, more generally, the amount of material Mr. Larson must cover over the year as outlined by the Ministry of Education's guidelines. His comment:

> "I don't know what it's going to be like for next year, but for the two or three years that I've been here the increase in the amount of work that they've done between grade 8 and grade 9 is quite dramatic for them. I think it's just because either they're just too young to have the organizational skills or nobody's paid attention to teaching them those skills. . . . Maybe the odd activity sheet could be done perfectly in 40 minutes, but for the advanced kids there's always more. So that's kind of a philosophy where you don't really finish in here, you just run out of time."

The press for time can help account for several noticeable features of class "A." First, there is normally no "whole-class" discussion of the results or substance of the activities, nor is there generally time for talk about future lessons. Second, at least from what I noticed, students tend to ask procedural questions (i.e., questions that would help them finish the work) rather than broader questions about the material. (Non-procedural questions seem to be asked outside the classroom; class "A" students frequently and voluntarily come to Mr. Larson's room after school.) Third, although Mr. Larson never formally assigns homework, advanced students tend to do their class work in "rough draft" (especially drawings) and then copy the work to perfection at home. Finally, class "A" students are always "on-task."

> "I don't have a lot of rules — like a lot of little rules. My one major rule is that when you're in here, you're working. My thing is that there's a time to play and there's a time to work. . . . You have to watch where you draw the line between 'fun-fun' and 'involve-

> ment-fun.' I think kids can have a lot of fun while they're doing something constructive. . . . So I try to make sure that all the resources are available, and then I just let them go ahead and work with what's in front of them."

In fact, Mr. Larson is in total control of his classes. One aspect of this control concerns discipline, and here it is evident that he runs a tight ship:

> "It's never been my style to be really heavy with them. . . . [But you should] let the kid know that you disapprove, that he's doing something wrong: 'Nothing against you personally, kid, it's just about the dumb thing that you're doing right at this moment. Clean up your act while you're in here, it's inappropriate behaviour; now let's get on with the job.' And I find that works for me."

Another aspect of control concerns management of the class; and here, with the basic structure of the activity sheets and the accounting procedures, it is plain that Mr. Larson explicitly and/or implicitly controls what his students do and, in keeping with his emphasis on responsibility, expects that what they are asked to do will be done.

Outside the Class

Bill Larson's extracurricular activities stem in part from his concern for developing social skills. The high regard students have for him is obvious and, at least in part, is a function of the amount of time he is willing to devote to them outside the classroom. He is involved in staff-student hockey and in field trips (one week of camping and one week with general-level students at a field centre), as well as supervising dances, the student audio-visual crew, the photography club and the student prefects:

Larson: I've just looked around the school and found places where I thought that there was a need and used the need as a vehicle to get kids involved. . . . There are things that I can do with kids on an extracurricular basis. Like, you can relax when there's only a small group of kids. You can have some fun. Like, you can talk to them as people instead of as students. There's a distance that you have to keep when you've got 33 kids in your room. You can't get too close to them because then they just walk all over you, so you've got to play the heavy too. But with these kids you can kind of back up and relax with them some. And, I think understanding these kids helps me understand other kids too.

Kilbourn: Are any of your general-level kids in any of these groups?

Larson: Not this year, but that's just worked that way. They were last year. I had three or four kids last year from the general level. The problem with general-level kids is these jobs demand time out of class, and you get so much of a hassle from other

> teachers that for me, it's just not worth it. Like I need a kid to take a picture at three o'clock and he's supposed to be in typing and I can't get him out of typing to take a picture, so the program suffers because of it.

Class "A" and Teaching

The group of 32 students I observed could be described as very likable, cohesive, and academically aggressive. A number of the prefects for the school come from class "A," and volunteers from this class tend the plants, animals and weather station in Mr. Larson's classroom. We talked about the difference between Mr. Larson's class "A" and his two other advanced classes. He made this comment:

> "The kids in class 'A' have been hand picked. They're the instrumental music class, you know. Traditionally class 'A' has been the band and has been collectively of higher intelligence than the other advanced classes. [With class 'A'] you can get them excited about [the work] and they can carry it through to completion. Half those kids in the other advanced classes start petering out, maybe 10 minutes before the end of the period."

I was present for nearly all of the unit on "The Functioning Animal." Table IV.1 shows the titles of the daily activity sheets, all developed by Mr. Larson. Unless indicated otherwise, all the sheets require written answers to questions, a lab exercise and a drawing.

I have selected several excerpts from the observations in order to provide a picture of the operation of the class. As previously noted, Mr. Larson has total control of his classes. As a result, he had relatively few disruptions; one of the reasons for this is his persistence in control, even with class "A." For example, Mr. Larson began Activity #3, "Respiratory System of a Grasshopper," with a considerable amount of talk about what students were supposed to do and see. This statement followed:

> "Now this is the first dissection that you've done and you will get as much or as little out of it as you're willing to put into it. Like I said, they're not easy. You have to dig. Two things about dissections — we're going to be doing two more. First of all, we must treat them with respect. I don't want to see anyone practising darts with the pins. All right? If you're asked to open it up and pin it down, that's different. I don't want to see anyone flicking parts around the room or showing any type of disrespect for the material. . . . All right, the second thing is, if there's anybody fooling around while they're doing the dissection — especially because this is the first one, I want to establish some rules — an outburst of laughter or a scream or anything like that, you'll sit in the penalty box for the rest of the period. All right? The penalty box is your seat. You just have to get out of the action for the day. All right? I want you to ap-

proach this the same that you did everything else that we've asked you to do this year. Any questions about that?"

Table IV.1 – Activity-Sheet Titles for "The Functioning Animal"

1. How Living Things Breathe	(prepared microslides)
2. Determining Percent of Oxygen in Air We Breathe	
3. Respiratory System of a Grasshopper	(dissection)
4. The Breathing Organs of Humans	(seat work — textbook)
5. Digestive System of an Earthworm	(dissection)
6. Digestive System of a Frog	(dissection)
7. Digestive System of a Perch	(dissection)
8. Testing for Reducing Sugars	
9. Testing for the Presence of Lipids (Fat)	
10. Testing for the Presence of Protein	
11. Detecting the Presence of Water in Food	
12. The Gastro Intestinal Tract: Food	(filmstrip; no drawing)
13. Gastro Intestinal Tract: Glands and Secretions	(filmstrip; no drawing)
14. Gastro Intestinal Tract: Digestion	(filmstrip; no drawing)
15. Food and Energy	(seatwork — textbook)
16. Blood Typing	
17. Circulation	(seatwork — textbook)
18. Composition of Blood	(seatwork — textbook)

The following day, the class did Activity #4, "Breathing Organs of Humans." This activity required that the students work at their desks, read three pages from the text, and answer questions (for example, "List and explain the function of the following organs of the breathing system: nose, pharynx, trachea, bronchi, lungs"). Mr. Larson uses the text primarily as a resource. Usually, during "seat work" students are referred to specific passages or diagrams in the text. Students told me that they seldom read the text on their own unless specifically told to by Mr. Larson or by the activity sheets. Although Mr. Larson tends not to engage the class as a whole, except for procedural matters, he does circulate about the room and deal with questions individually. Here is an instance:

Student: I'm trying to find the function of the trachea, or whatever it's called.

Larson: The trachea?

Student: Yeah.

Larson: Now, where is it, to start off with?

Student: Windpipe?

Larson: Windpipe, right.

Student: It's the same thing?

Larson: Yup, the same thing. . . . Remember, it's the windpipe and it goes from the back of the throat to where it breaks out into the two bronchial tubes. . . . Remember yesterday you were looking at tracheal tubes from the grasshopper?

Student: Oh, yeah.

Larson: They connected the sphericals to the inner sacs. It's just the piping. You get the air coming from the outside to the organ of breathing. . . .

At the beginning of this period, Mr. Larson commented to the class about the workload — an issue provoked by some discussions with parents at Parents' Night:

> "Your parents, you know, are asking 'Is that normal?' and my answer to everybody that asked me was, 'Yes.' Remember at the beginning of the year I explained to you that you would be doing a lot more work than you did last year. Because you're in an advanced program, we're gonna pile the work on you and leave a lot of it for you people to do on your own. Your organizational skills are getting better, you're figuring out for yourselves what you should be doing in class and what you can leave to do at home. . . . You're in secondary school now, grade 9, year 1, so, you know, things do change. The workload does get a little heavier, especially in advanced programs. So don't get discouraged, all right? I think that you people are doing a fine job, as far as your notebooks are concerned and your day-to-day work, and that's a general comment to everybody."

On the next day, the class did Activity #5, "Digestive System of an Earthworm." This activity sheet, which is typical of many of the activity sheets in this unit, is reproduced in Table IV.2. In a later interview, Mr. Larson explained that the "recall" nature of the questions on the activity sheets and the final test is typical only of the early units, in which he is attempting to build a foundation for work in the second term, work that engages students in more complex material (such as ecological relationships) and more complex thought processes. The remaining two dissections (frog and perch) also pertained only to the digestive system. The "L5 Only" refers to "Level 5" or "advanced" students; all students receive the same activity sheets but only advanced students do the L5 portion. As he circulates about the room, Mr. Larson frequently deflects questions back to the students and a good portion of his interaction with students could be described as stroking, or maintaining rapport.

Table IV.2 – A Typical Activity Sheet

Functioning Animal Activity #5
Digestive System of an Earthworm

1. Cut the worm from mouth to anus with a sharp pair of scissors.
2. Using pins open the worm through its entire length.
3. Using charts, models and your text locate the following parts of the digestive system: pharynx, oesophagus, crop, gizzard, intestine.
4. Do a drawing of the earthworm digestive system as it appears in the tray. Label the parts.

L5 Only:

1. Explain how the earthworm digests food. To do this, list each of the parts mentioned in step 3 above and explain the function of each part in the system.

Larson: [Moves to a group of students.] Say, doctor, nice piece of surgery here.
Jill: [laughs]
Brenda: Let's go, we've got to draw it now.
Larson: Locate and identify the parts first.

Although Mr. Larson occasionally refers to previous work ("Remember yesterday you were looking at tracheal tubes from the grasshopper?"), there tends to be little explicit transitional talk as students move from one biological system to another in the activities. As Mr. Larson pointed out in an interview, those transitions are largely implicit in the logical sequence of the activities:

> "The kid should be able to see when he sits down with [his notebook] in front of him and he flips through it that we did the thing on breathing systems, organs and breathing and stuff like that; and we did the thing on the digestive systems; here are the physical parts; and we had a look at them; and now we're going to start talking about the chemistry of digestion."

The fast pace and workload were eased considerably with the four food tests (activity sheets 8 to 11). Even though these are simple tests and take only a few minutes to do (most students were finished in 10 or 15 minutes and spent the remainder of the time talking quietly among themselves), Mr. Larson intentionally has them do only one test (one activity) per day in order to give them a breather. The heavy workload picks up again with the three filmstrips on the gastro-intestinal tract. These filmstrips and associated activities involve a considerable amount of technical terminology (for example, "Define each of the following: pepsin, hydrochloric acid, gastric pits, rugae, chyme and rennin."). In these activities, Mr. Larson does address the whole class by going over the activity sheets and answering students' questions:

Student: What's cellulose?

Larson: After our green plants unit you ask that question? Think of your typical all-Canadian plant cell. What substance is it made from?

Student: Oh, yeah.

On the day before the multiple-choice test (which has questions of the form, "The small tube extending from the pharynx to the stomach of the frog is called (a) mouth, (b) oesophagus, (c) trachea, (d) gullet"), Mr. Larson reviews the unit by going over each activity sheet. Here is a sample of the review:

> "'Number Five: Digestive system of an earthworm.' You cut the little critter apart. You located the pharynx, oesophagus, crop, gizzard, intestines. And for the Level 5 you were asked to explain what each one of those did as far as digestion was concerned. O.K.? So you should have some idea what the pharynx is used for, and the oesophagus, right? And you find that when these words are used, from organism to organism, funny thing, usually we're talking about the same part and usually the part has the same function. So, if we're talking about the oesophagus of an earthworm and the oesophagus of a human being, probably there's a connection. Because it's the same word and spelled exactly the same way, and has the same or very similar meaning, when you're talking about the two things. So, if you said that in the earthworm it's the tube that connects the pharynx region with the crop, then probably there's something about the oesophagus that is similar in other organisms.
>
> "And, lo and behold, when you talk about the human digestive system, you can see that there's an oesophagus and it's a tube that comes from the mouth area and goes down in the stomach area. Now, the earthworm didn't have a stomach, but, if you looked at the definitions of those things, you could probably find something that may act as a crude stomach.
>
> "Don't forget the earthworm — he's not a very developed critter. He's not exactly what you would call one of your higher organisms on the ladder of life. Who sits at the top of that, by the way? You've heard. You're looking at us. We, and other animals like us, are the most complex. O.K. What's the simplest form of animal life? If you start at the top with us and forms like us and move down through the different levels, what would you find at the bottom? The one-celled animals, eh? But whether you have one cell, or whether you have millions of cells, you still need food. You still need to get rid of waste materials. You still need to somehow digest that food. First of all you have to ingest it, and whether you

have a mouth, or whether you just blob around it to take it in, the idea is still the same.

"Number Six:. . . ."

Hard and Fast but Interesting

I conclude this account with excerpts from some of the students' responses to my question, "How is grade 9 science different from the science that you had in grade 8?" (Readers should remember that these students have had neither Steve Henning nor Ron Sills for science in grades 7 and 8.)

Student 1: It's so much harder and there's more work. You get something new so you never know what you're going to do next. [In grade 8] you knew what you were going to do every day unless he started something else. And like the questions were easier and the workload wasn't as heavy. Plus, if you didn't get something done he'd say "Well that's O.K.," and like he wouldn't make a thing out of it if you didn't have it done. As long as you had most of it done then that was O.K. We wouldn't get our notebooks checked or anything; we would just get tests in grade 8.

Student 2: I found grade 8 pretty easy and I didn't have much trouble with it. Just studying was the hard part because he wanted definitions and diagrams. I think the hardest thing about grade 9 science that I've found so far is not so much the hardness of the work, it's the amount of it.

Student 3: In grade 8 science you could just do anything, eh? Grade 8 science was mostly what the teacher does and grade 9 science is mostly up to the individual.

Student 4: More work. More detail. More responsibility. You have to understand. This is more detailed, he explains more and it's more work. . . . In ways it's better because you learn a lot more.

Student 5: We do much more work and it's more concentrated and you have to do it in a certain amount of time. It's faster. It's much more interesting.

V. Junior Secondary Science at Northend School

P. James Gaskell

Northend Secondary School is a large urban school in the lower mainland of British Columbia encompassing grades 8 to 12. This case study concentrates on the junior secondary science program (grades 8, 9 and 10).* The focus on the junior secondary program stems in part from the concern expressed in the 1978 *British Columbia Science Assessment Summary Report*[1] that a large proportion of students avoid science courses in grades 11 and 12 after completing the junior secondary program. A key recommendation of the report was that a major revision of the junior secondary science program be carried out.

This study is not an evaluation of the junior secondary program at Northend. No achievement data were collected; no judgements are made about the aims of the program. The study seeks to describe what is provided for the students and to convey a sense of the context in which the program operates. It looks at the context from the teacher's point of view and describes some of the institutional and social influences on the program. It emphasizes what is common among teachers rather than what is specific to particular individuals.

---

*The author gratefully acknowledges the assistance of Gaalen Erickson in developing the proposal for this study and in selecting the site.

Northend School

Northend School is located in a densely populated, largely working-class area close to commercial-industrial facilities. In contrast to other districts, the north end is an area where the inhabitants tend to be less affluent and to have less formal education. They also tend not to have English as their first language. In general, housing prices are lower, housing densities are higher and community facilities such as parks, day-care centres, libraries and hospitals are fewer.

The community contains a mixture of ethnic groups. The duration of a family's residence in Canada varies from a few days to a lifetime. Approximately 60 per cent of the student population speaks a language other than English at home. The relationship of the school to the community is summarized in the school's latest external evaluation report:

> "In summary, the school is well thought of in the community because of its diverse educational program, varied communication procedures, outreach into the community through student groups in choirs, bands, drama productions and 'Community Recreation 12' projects, and positive reaction to complaints. In addition, the school's efforts to increase involvement in the School/Community Committee appear to have developed a small but strong parent voice, which is extremely supportive. Another significant indication of community support for the school is the fact that a number of scholarships and bursaries are provided by individuals as well as by organizations in the community."

Part of the school building is over 50 years old. A major wing was added about 20 years ago. Most of the science labs are in the newer part. Although the school's enrolment is declining slowly (from 2300 to 1700 over the last few years), the school is crowded, and several portables are still in use.

Northend School operates on a semester system in which most courses run for half a school year. A class meets each day for 57 minutes. Teachers teach four blocks out of five each day. Whereas courses in an unsemestered system are based on 120 hours of class time, courses in a semestered system have about 95 hours available to them. (The important implications of this fact for the science program are discussed later.) The semester system does, however, allow for a wide range of courses and electives for the students. Approximately 200 different courses are listed in the school's course description booklet.

Although the students are not streamed, the designation "modified" is applied to one of the five grade 8 classes, one of the six grade 9 classes and one of the four grade 10 classes in general science. Students are timetabled into sections by a computer.

The relationship between teachers and students can be characterized generally as one of mutual respect. As one science teacher commented during an informal conversation between classes:

> "Kids here are good, especially if you treat them with respect. Some teachers expect the worst, treat them terribly and then wonder why their cars are vandalized and they are given a harsh time."

Teachers who do expect the worst from the students would appear to be a small minority. In my conversations with a wide variety of teachers at lunch time and during my observations of science classes, I did not encounter any such teachers. There were moments of frustration but no expressions of hostility.

The positive atmosphere of the school in general was apparent in a number of ways during observation in science classes. One was the willingness of teachers to leave students to get on with their work while the teachers momentarily left the room. For example, during an observation of Mr. Daley's modified class, we went into his prep room to talk once the students had begun to work on their own, and later Mr. Daley went to the office to get some duplicating done. Similarly, Mr. Green talked to me in his prep room with the door closed for most of one class period while his students worked quietly on their own. In general, the teachers do not feel they have to stand over their students all the time and badger them to get their work done or to behave properly. The development of trust is worked at consciously. Risks are taken by teachers in this process and there are dilemmas. The tension was perhaps best expressed by Mr. Foley while we made our way to the teachers' lunchroom during the morning break. He had left the classroom door unlocked so that students could go in and out. "I don't lock my door, but I don't like to leave it like that for long, especially with animals in it. You never know what someone might do to one of the frogs. But basically the kids are good." This comment expresses the tension between trusting the students and worrying about the consequences of an incident that might happen because a few students might "lapse."

It was not possible to compare the students in Northend School directly with those in schools in more affluent areas. One teacher who recently moved to Northend from a more affluent area summed up the difference in the following way:

> "Of the people I know who have taught in both systems, I consistently hear them say how much more down to earth and honest, albeit perhaps loud and not knowing they are rude, these kids are here. They don't play a lot of the little games some of the more sophisticated kids play. They are more upfront about practically everything. They get very much more attached to you here. The things they will come in and talk about and tell you about either just before school or after are something I have never experienced anywhere else but here. I feel I get my little ears full of all kinds of things that I find even rather shocking."

Mr. Arnold summed up his feelings towards the students from the community in the following way: "I like the kids in this end of town. They're rough. Like rough diamonds they need polishing."

Although teachers respect and like the students at Northend, they recognize that the background of many of the students presents special difficulties. The most common problem is language. Difficulties with English are experienced by Canadian-born children as well as by recent immigrants. Mr. Foley put it this way:

> "Kids here don't have the background skills that kids in other schools have. Their written work and the way they express themselves are really fairly poor, and this includes Canadian-born kids."

Mr. Barnes talked explicitly about the problem of children who probably understand the concepts but cannot convey that understanding in English:

> "Kids' backgrounds are very variable, and there has been a change in the last few years. There are now a lot of students who don't speak English very well. Kids from Hong Kong have taken a lot of science, but they can't speak English."

Aside from the question of language, the less affluent character of the community creates added pressures for particular students. One teacher commented that it is rare for a grade 12 student at Northend not to have an outside job. A special education teacher mentioned at lunch that there are several cases of students who, because of particular family situations, bring younger siblings to school to care for them. As shown in Table V.1, the percentage of students graduating from Northend in 1981 who went on to community college or university (37.5 per cent) was slightly below the city average (44.6 per cent) and sharply below the figures for a school of comparable size in a more affluent area (66.2 per cent).

Table V.1 – Percentage of 1981 Graduates Enrolled in Community College or University in the Fall of 1981

	Community College	University	Total
Northend	19.1	18.4	37.5
City average	20.4	24.2	44.6
Comparable size school in more affluent area	27.0	39.2	66.2

In sum, there is an overall atmosphere of mutual respect between teachers and students at Northend. The students, who come from an ethnically diverse, generally working-class community, have difficulties in school that tend to reflect the character of the community. They use English less fluently, and more often have to cope with circumstances resulting from financial pressures. They are less likely than students from schools in more affluent areas to go on to higher education. Although life at Northend runs relatively smoothly, it is not without its idiosyncrasies (such as the soap bubbles that regularly overflowed from the sink in one lab as the home economics class above it started their dishwashers), or its moments of alarm (such as the time when a firecracker was rolled under a science teacher's door while the room was blacked out for a movie). Such isolated events can be found in most schools, and coping with them is part of the job of teaching.

Teaching Science at Northend

A Northend science teacher teaches four 57-minute science lessons five days a week for approximately 37 weeks a year. Each day of the semester, the same group of 30 students comes in at the same time. Each teacher has a spare period at the same time each day. There is a routine to the job of teaching, but it is a routine of hard, intellectual and emotional work. The formal routine of the timetable acts as a reminder of the daily pressures to prepare materials, mark books and manage interactions with a diverse collection of willing and unwilling students. The working conditions of teachers act as an important constraint on what is provided to students. Mr. Foley expressed it well:

> "When I look at it overall, I think there is a lot of good talk until you're in the classroom with the kids in your cramped space, in your cramped time with the age group that you've got. It is not an easy thing to translate all the pretty things you hear and all the good theories."

The following section describes some of the job pressures Northend science teachers experience.

Marking and Preparation

The junior secondary science courses are built around labs. Under the constraints of the semester system, not every lab is done, but on average there are about three a week per class. As one teacher remarked, this creates a very severe marking and preparation load. "It's a headache for most teachers but that goes with the job." Different teachers create different solutions to the problem of too much marking. Some skim the books to make sure they are complete and only occasionally check in detail. One stresses the presentation of reports by checking whether headings are underlined appropriately and diagrams labelled as directed. Another concentrates on giving detailed comments to one or two classes for a period of time and then switches attention to another class.

In addition to marking lab reports, teachers must mark quizzes, tests and homework assignments. In a semestered system, there are two reporting periods each semester, as opposed to three reports in a year in an unsemestered system. The physical production of report cards takes a great deal of time. The apparently simple need to enter a mark on a report card directs the teacher to create tests and assignments that will produce such marks.

The pressure of lab preparation parallels that of marking. As Mr. Arnold explained, "When you have four labs a day, it is a lot to keep organized." Locating and organizing equipment for the labs is a constant process of "search and negotiation" for most of the science teachers. Searching is necessary because not all equipment is housed in a central storeroom; much of it is stored in the separate laboratories. Negotiation is necessary because some teachers feel possessive about the equipment stored in their labs. Negotiation is also necessary to avoid conflicting demands for simultaneous use of a single set of equipment. Organizing equipment is harder for the junior secondary general science teachers because five of them teach in five different rooms. At the senior level, where the courses are split into physics, chemistry and biology, one teacher teaches all sections of a particular course at a grade level. Thus, if a teacher accumulates the equipment for Physics 11 in his or her lab, there is no demand for it from other teachers.

The special demands of marking and preparation encountered by junior secondary science teachers are recognized by Mr. Daley, one of the senior science teachers, who also teaches some junior science:

> "I enjoy thoroughly teaching Science 9. I enjoy thoroughly teaching Science 10. Part of that is because I don't teach it every single semester. If I taught it every single semester I think I would find it hard. Particularly the marking is very, very heavy. The lab preparations are very heavy too."

Covering the Material

Marking and preparation create time pressures for the teachers and, in response, the teachers create strategies for managing those pressures. Teachers also expressed a different sort of time pressure, one of rushing to cover the material in the time available. In talking about the time constraints operating against the inclusion of new material relating science to everyday life, Mr. Barnes said, "I feel very pushed for time all the time. Just having 95 hours, it's very difficult to get through everything you would like to get through." A major contributor to this rushed feeling is the time constraint imposed by the semester system. The advantage of increased preparation time under the semester system is offset by the pressure it creates on teachers in the classroom to cover material quickly. Mr. Barnes expressed these mixed feelings when he talked about a possible return to an unsemestered system:

> "We would have more time for the courses. We'd have 120 instead of 95 hours. There would be less pressure on us. Now it seems like we're teaching two years in one and it's really a strain. But the whole problem of losing preparation time is the main disadvantage, I think."

Mr. Cole expressed a similar pressure when talking about teaching the grade 10 chemistry unit:

> "I think chemistry is important, but when I've finished chemistry, I feel they haven't really learned it too well. But I have to go on; I have to do another unit. If I had 10 months I'd spend more time on it."

Mr. Foley's "gut reaction" to returning to an unsemestered system was, "If it will slow things down a bit, get rid of it [the semestered system]." He went on to talk about some of the changes that might come with more hours:

> "I think there are a lot of things you could do in 30 hours, such as field trips, such as guests coming in, such as just stopping for an entire week and saying, 'All right, we are not going to look at the texts; we're going to do something related to interdisciplinary issues.'"

Even though the department as a whole has agreed on what material should be emphasized and what can be ignored given the time constraints, the junior secondary science teachers still feel rushed. The sources of this pressure are varied. Provincial assessment programs and school board competency tests create pressures to prepare Northend students to the same standard as students in nonsemestered schools. Internal pressures to give students as much of an introduction to science as possible, and a feeling that government guidelines should be followed, also contribute to the sense of strain.

Coping with Kids

The stress of teaching junior secondary students does not come just from the daily demands of organizing labs, marking, and getting through the course. The stress also comes from the demands of teaching children in that particular age group for whom science is a compulsory subject. When asked how he would compare teaching in the junior secondary grades to teaching in the senior grades, Mr. Barnes gave this reply:

> "It's probably harder to teach the juniors. You don't have the discipline problems generally to worry about in the senior grades. They're more interested, and they're taking the courses because they want to rather than because they have to, so it's easier to teach the seniors than it is to teach the juniors."

Mr. Foley expressed similar sentiments:

> "So junior high to me is a really special time because the kids have no choice, and it immediately gives you a group of little people for whom you've really got to bend over even further backwards. It's not like the 11s and 12s who have chosen it, who are somewhat interested. They're more mature anyway. If they hate it, they will persevere or have more discipline, or think ahead that they need it, or won't be as rude. . . . When you look at your kids up to grade 10, that's a really critical time. If you really turn them off, if they hate

> it, if you bug them, if you don't understand their needs, what their hormones are doing right now, I mean they're out. Kids at that grade level, 9 and 10, it's a time when you either lose them completely or else something amazing can be happening. . . . It's such an in-between, baby years and grownup years, it's a really important age, and I think people should have them a bit and move on. I don't think you ought to grow old teaching that age group because I think you grow stale. . . . You have to bring to it a level of interest and excitement which can be very exhausting."

The extra energy needed to teach junior secondary science was acknowledged in a conversation between two of the older teachers who teach senior grades most of the time:

Evans: I most enjoy teaching the grade 8s because they are the fun kids. They have the most enthusiasm in the school and it gets less and less.

Daley: I'm getting too old for grade 8s.

Evans: In another four or five years probably I'll be getting too old for them.

Daley: First thing in the morning, yes. Last period in the afternoon, no.

Teaching is increasingly acknowledged as being a stressful job. The evidence from interviews and observations in this case study suggest that the job of teaching junior secondary science is especially demanding. This conclusion is consistent with the *British Columbia Science Assessment Summary Report*, which found more dissatisfaction among junior secondary teachers than among either elementary or senior secondary teachers.

Career Stability

Given the pressures of teaching, it is interesting to note that most of the teachers in the science department have been teaching in the school for a long time. Three teachers have been teaching in the school since they began teaching — one 23 years ago, one 13 years ago and one 12 years ago. Two other teachers have also spent a long time in the school, although they previously taught elsewhere. (One has spent 17 years of a 31-year career in the school and the other, 16 years of a 21-year career.) Only two science teachers are relatively new to the school. One has been at Northend for three years and the other is in the first year. The career stability of Northend science teachers suggests that there are some advantages to staying at the school. It is likely that opportunities for transfers would have arisen over the years if individual teachers had wanted to move. Teachers' jobs are centred on their interactions with students, parents and colleagues. Career stability is related to the extent to which there are problems in any of these areas.[2] The attitude of the teachers towards the students suggests that interaction with the students at Northend, while exhausting, is no worse than it is elsewhere and in some ways is better because the students are more open and honest. There are some advantages to staying in the school, in terms of interaction with parents and colleagues.

Parents

One of the advantages of working at Northend, in terms of job stress, is the lack of pressure from parents. Comments from interviews illustrate this fact:

Evans: There is very little parental pressure in this school anywhere. It occurs every once in a while, but as a wholehearted pressure, no. . . . I think teachers in this school, just because they are teachers, are more respected by members of the community because they hold education in a higher plane than most. . . . The teacher does know best, and it is not the parents' job to interfere.

Barnes: Parents couldn't care less. On parents' night I had no one show up out of a potential 120.

This latter comment illustrates some of the ambivalence teachers feel towards the lack of parental involvement. It may be less stressful to have parents at a distance but it is also frustrating when, for professional reasons, teachers want to meet parents to talk about their children.

The contrast between teachers' experiences with parents at Northend and with parents in more affluent areas is illustrated in the following comments:

Daley: Parents here send their kids to school and say, "We assume the school is going to do a proper job with our kids," and that's that. Again, it is very different from the other side of town where my son has just been through school. I personally have been to the principal there several times about this and that, and I have phoned his teachers and talked to them about this and that. Whereas here, in 16 years maybe once or twice I have been contacted by a parent.

Gaskell: Would you like to have the parents here come to you with the same kinds of concerns and pressures as you put on your son's teachers?

Daley: Concerns yes, pressures no. I'm not too sure how I would like it teaching there, putting up with people like myself.

Another teacher (Mr. Foley) characterized parents' attitudes with this comment:

> "This is the first school I have ever been where a parent hasn't phoned me. In schools on the other side of the city, parents would be on the phone right away about all kinds of things."

The issue of parental involvement is particularly interesting at Northend because the majority of students will not go on to post-secondary institutions. It could be argued that students going directly into the job market have different curricular needs than students preparing for further academic courses. Mr. Daley, for instance, implicitly accepts this argument in his answer to a question about what is important to him as a junior secondary science teacher:

> "Certainly the content is important, but when you are teaching a junior secondary class you are not trying to train all of them to be little physicists or biologists. You're trying to show them a little bit more about science and its importance to an ordinary person who is going to go out, perhaps a few years later, into the job market. At the same time, you have got kids in the room who are going to go on and go to university and possibly take a science degree, so you have to have an awareness that you are doing both these jobs."

However, in the absence of any consistent community pressure to define and provide a different science education for students going directly into the job market, the major emphasis in Northend science teaching is preparation for future academic course work.

Colleagues and Equipment

Career stability tends to increase a teacher's control over working conditions, particularly in terms of getting responsibility for desirable courses and access to equipment. In answer to a question about how it is determined who teaches what, Mr. Evans made this comment:

> "Basically, the 11 and 12 program has been set as to who teaches what, and that is historical, not necessarily by seniority. Now, more or less because we three have been here for so long, we have become known as the triumvirate by some members around here."

In my experience, science teachers with university degrees in science (which all Northend science teachers have) usually enjoy their subject. They enjoy telling people about it and getting students excited about it. It is easier to get those subject-matter rewards in the senior grades.

A science teacher new to the school expressed a strong feeling of wanting access to teaching in the senior grades:

> "It should not be a matter of working your way up. I would not stay very long where I felt I had to relate to just one age group. Everyone should have a kick at the can at grade 11."

The reason given for this view is that teaching the higher grades is an important element in maintaining a personal interest in the subject:

> "I am interested in my field and I would really like to delve into it and I am excited about it and I don't want that beat out of me. One of the quickest ways to beat it out is to teach only grade 8 and 9 science for 10 more years."

While seniority at Northend will not guarantee control over courses taught, it does increase leverage in negotiations.

In science, ready access to equipment is a must if labs are to go smoothly. People who have taught for a long time in the school have a greater opportunity to organize equipment to their advantage. A conversation with two of the "triumvirate" illustrates this point:

Daley: Evans and I are crusty old fossils and have been around a long time and made sure we have what we need.

Evans: Between the two of us we are equipped to teach everything, and we keep it that way.

Daley: If somebody starts nosing around after our equipment, to some people we'll say, "No, we haven't got it" and we actually have. That's just a question of self-preservation and previous experience. We know that if this person took this equipment away, when it came back it would not be in the same condition it left. Parts would be lost, *if* it came back. We are just plain miserable when it comes to equipment.

One of the problems of the newcomer is finding out what is tucked away in different storerooms around the school. For a newcomer there is virtually no permanent lab equipment in the classroom. Everything has to be searched for and negotiated.

The process of search and negotiation is made difficult by the absence of architectural or institutional arrangements for bringing the science teachers together on a regular basis. In general, the science department acts as a series of isolated small groups or individuals working alone. One of my regular interview questions was, "Do teachers in the science department work independently for the most part, or do they work closely with other teachers in some way?" Typical of the answers are the following:

Barnes: We generally work independently.

Arnold: I communicate with Mr. Cole next door but there is not extensive communication in the department. I never talk to the people downstairs about their program. It is like two whole different groups, those downstairs and us up here.

Evans: Two of us work together well. One thing lacking in the department is a sense of working together.

One teacher disagreed with his colleagues. He felt the department worked very closely together and that it was the tightest department in the school.

Marking, preparation, covering material and coping with kids mean that teaching science at Northend is hard work. Over time, teachers can reduce some of the pressures by gaining more control over the courses they teach and more access to the equipment they need. Patterns of survival are established. If large schemes for change in science teaching are to make any headway, they must take into account the lives of teachers in schools and the efforts of teachers to make an open-ended workload manageable. This is not to say that innovation cannot or does not take place. Teachers at Northend do work to improve the program by making appropriate changes. But there are limits to the extent of change that can take place without large-scale reorganization of patterns of survival that have been established.

The Curriculum

The science program that is provided for the junior secondary students at Northend is largely determined by the prescribed textbook for each grade.[3] At each grade level the same textbook is used throughout the province. Each of the three books was written by a team of British Columbia science teachers, and each was written to correspond to the most recent science curriculum guide published by the Ministry of Education. The grade 8 and 9 texts have undergone recent revisions (in 1977 and 1979 respectively), but the current grade 10 text is still in its original 1970 form. The three texts reflect the emphasis that the curriculum reform movement of the 1960s placed on developing knowledge through laboratory work. The original 1970 texts, in fact, contained little descriptive text material; they were mainly a series of instructions for carrying out experiments. The recent revisions embed the experiments within descriptive material on the topic under study. The following section describes the kind of science that is taught at Northend, looks at its relationship to the students' lives and gives examples of some of the ways the science teachers adapt material to suit their particular circumstances.

Using the Textbook

The way in which the textbook can shape the science lesson was illustrated in one of the first lessons observed. It was a grade 9 class in the middle of a nutrition unit. On the board was the following information:

4-22 Testing for Fats

Aim: To learn a practical way of testing for fats without using chemicals.
Method: p. 535
Part I (steps A-D)
Do questions 1-5 at end.

At the front of the room on top of the raised demonstration counter were supplies of starch, glucose, oil, egg white and bits cut from brown paper bags. The teacher's introduction went as follows:

> "The stuff that you need is where you found it last day. The egg white is in the same corner; the glucose is in the same spot; oil is in

the corner; starch is in the same corner. Every table has a lamp. You don't have to use it.

"For the lab, the only thing that you are going to need other than egg white, oil, glucose and starch is a piece of unglazed brown paper.

"What I am going to say is absolutely nothing more. How about if I say 'That is it.' It's 4-22, the test for fats. If you want help with an aim there it is, but don't feel you have to use that one. We're doing part I only. The questions assigned at the end are 1 to 5. When you are done and you are tidied up, over on the left-hand side are two sections. I don't really think you'll want to call that homework because the lab is quite quick and when it is finished how about continuing on with that.

"Have a nice lab."

A fair amount of bustle ensued as the students went up to collect their materials and then settled down to do the lab. The teacher moved about the room handing back lab reports and spending a little time with each student, going over the report. In the process, the criteria for a good write-up were reinforced. There was an emphasis on communicating in a clear, logical manner in enough detail that someone else could repeat the lab. The work that they were to do on completion of the lab was defined as follows:

Read 4-21, "Fats," on pages 533-34.
Questions 1, 4, 6, 7 on page 535.
Read 4-23, "Protein," on pages 537-38.
Questions 1, 2, 6 on page 538.

This assignment is interesting because the reading sections were interrupted by the pages describing the day's lab assignment. The questions based on the readings ("The Chemistry of Fats" and "Fats in Your Diet") were taken up the day following the lab on "Testing for Fat." This arrangement illustrates the relationship between the lab and the reading: one is not in a logical relationship to the other. They are about the same topic, but the lab neither flows from questions raised in the reading nor feeds data back into questions raised in the next section. The lab simply develops a testing technique for fats.

The questions at the end of the reading section require, for the most part, a repetition of sentences from the text. Thus question number 1, "What elements are fats made from?" is answered in the first sentence of the text: "Fats are made from exactly the same elements as carbohydrates (carbon, hydrogen and oxygen)." A view of the questions as being straightforward, low-level, recall questions mainly designed to ensure that the text has been read was reflected in comments the teacher made to the class the following day when the questions were taken up. The class discussion of the questions went quite slowly. Finding people with answers to the second assigned question, "Name the two main groups of fats and give an example of a fat from each group," seemed particularly hard. Somewhat frustrated, the teacher responded in the following way:

> "Do you know what I'm gathering from this? That you're reading the question and you're not answering it too fully because I think a lot of people put down what it was and didn't give examples; and what concerns me, I guess, with what you did is that this kind of thing is pretty straightforward from the reading. We should just really check answers, see that everything is O.K. and get on to the lab. We really don't want to spend a whole lot of time on things that you really should have done quite carefully yourself. So, if you are looking at page 534, in great huge bold orange print where it says 'Saturated Fats' and 'Unsaturated Fats,' it explains where they come from and it gives examples."

There is a stress on learning the products of science, on mastering laboratory techniques and tests and on finding correct answers, a pattern described by Roberts as a "correct explanations" curriculum emphasis.[4] This emphasis was common in all grades and for all teachers. The differences among teachers centred on differences of style, and, in particular, on the style of a teacher's interactions with the students. The more informal style of the teacher described above (illustrated by the comment at the end of the instructions, "Have a nice lab") was the exception rather than the rule.

The emphasis on correct explanations flows directly from the textbook and its structure and layout. The questions at the end of the lab exercises seem designed to ensure that a correct explanation of the phenomena has been obtained. The questions at the end of the reading sections seem designed to ensure that the scientific information given in the text has been retained. The grade 10 book has lab procedures mainly, with little text material, and teachers compensate by providing appropriate explanations. For example, in a grade 10 class on microorganisms, the teacher began with a lengthy note-taking activity. He wrote the notes on the overhead projector as the students copied them into their books. The notes contained the scientific knowledge the students were to know, as illustrated by the first sentence:

> "The basic unicellular organism contains all the same cell structures that the basic specialized animal or plant cell contains (nucleus, mitochondria, Golgi bodies, endoplasmic reticulum, etc.)."

Although this teacher probably gives the students more detailed information than do other teachers, the basic pattern of the lessons is the same — presentation of background scientific knowledge followed by an illustrative lab.

Laboratory Exercises

The purpose of the labs is to offer demonstrations of principles of science, to practise procedures and to become familiar with particular pieces of equipment. This point of view was emphasized in a meeting with a school board team that was conducting a survey of laboratory facilities. At this meeting, a team member asked whether the courses were student-oriented or teacher-oriented. A senior teacher responded that they were teacher-oriented. In response to a question as to whether they were lab-centred or demonstration-centred, the same teacher gave the following answer:

> "Oh, it's lab-centred. I believe in process — the process of learning to handle equipment. For example, how are you going to organize ticker tape so that you can use it? Discovery stuff is unreasonable. You can't expect them to discover stuff it took the best minds to discover. Not without some help."

Another way of looking at the purpose of the labs is to observe what happens when things go wrong, when procedures do not work out. One such instance happened during the lab on testing for proteins:

Student (to teacher): Please come here. Nothing happened with our egg white.

Teacher: Report what you found. But it does seem a little strange. Compare it with your neighbour's. In your conclusions, speculate a little bit. Report what you found but say it is different from your neighbour's and that it is a little strange because egg white is protein. You can indicate that maybe your method got fouled up.

This episode points up an interesting tension between, on the one hand, maintaining a pretence that this actually is an "inquiry" and that therefore the student's observation might be what "actually happens" when you add nitric acid to protein; and, on the other hand, the full knowledge on the part of the student and the teacher that what happened ought not to have happened. This is not an inquiry; it is practice at testing, an exercise in learning part of the craft of science — certainly a legitimate aim in itself. The book makes it clear that the student's result is not correct. In the section on procedure the book states the following:

> "(e) Remove the test tubes from the water and stand them in the rack. What does nitric acid do to protein? *What does nitric acid do to the other kinds of food?*
>
> (f) When the test tubes have cooled, add 2 cm of ammonium hydroxide to the egg white. *What does ammonium hydroxide do to protein that has already turned yellow in nitric acid?*" [emphasis in original][5]

It is obvious from the last procedure that, at the very least, the egg white should have turned yellow in the nitric acid.

In a grade 8 class that was doing a lab on light reflection using ray boxes, the teacher made it clear that the data-gathering from the ray boxes was again a demonstration of a known law. The students drew, on graph paper, lines that traced the paths of light rays as they impinged on, and reflected from, a mirror. The final "good" diagram, however, was not based on the actual data gathered in the course of the lab. The teacher handed out a clean sheet of graph paper and said:

> "I want you to do a diagram without the ray box rays on this, just for the sake of labelling it. The diagram is on page 271. Label it the same way it is labelled there."

The diagram on page 271 makes it clear that a textbook mirror produces angles of incidence and angles of reflection that are identical.

In a later lesson on the path of rays through convex and concave lenses it was interesting to observe students who had finished the official experiment early. I watched as one student played with the two lenses (one concave, one convex). He put them together and saw that each cancelled the effect of the other. He moved them about intently, testing the effect on the rays of the distance between the two lenses and the closeness of the lenses to the ray box. As the teacher approached, the student asked, "Is this right? Are they supposed to go straight if you put them together?" This example shows the possibility for more complex exploration above and beyond the formal objective of drawing a diagram. As I moved around the class I observed at least two other groups engaged in the same activity.

The Curriculum and the Student

Student: Can you tell me what we're learning science for?

Gaskell: You tell me.

Student: I don't know. It's not going to come in handy. If you're going to be a mechanic, you don't need to learn about the moon.

* * *

Student: If I see another ray box, I'll die.

* * *

Gaskell: What stands out for you about your science program this year?

Student: The biology section. It can teach you what to do to make you healthy and not to damage your organs. For example, if you eat too much vitamin C it might damage your kidney and some other parts.

In general, the course material is not seen to have any intrinsic interest for the students, although there are exceptions. In a grade 10 biology class I observed a lab in which the students typed their own blood.

The students were obviously involved and interested in the lab. Many of them seemed to have a hard time accepting that there was not a right answer or a preferred type. Students asked several questions of the sort, "I'm type A; is that bad or good?" and "Sir, is there something wrong with being AB?" One student excitedly exclaimed, "I don't have any antibodies! I don't have any antibodies!" giving the impression that this was clearly a result to be valued. After the class, I commented that the students seemed to be interested in it. The teacher responded:

> "Yes, it's one of the few labs they do that they actually enjoy. They learn something about themselves. It's not part of the program here, but I've added it. Otherwise the lab on blood doesn't make much sense. They would be just looking at animal cells and not their own. The lab is actually a Biology 11 and Human Biology 11 lab but I asked the department head and he said it was O.K. if I did it here."

This statement points out a number of issues. First, most labs are not seen to have intrinsic interest; as a result, teachers must adapt the course materials to create interest. Second, teachers must show sensitivity when using labs that are a part of the next year's course. Third, the way to create interest is to have students learn something about themselves.

Not all students, of course, respond in the same way. In most classes there are some students involved in what they are doing and interested in the intellectual challenge. In the lab on unicellular organisms, for instance, one group of students came prepared with a book from the library called *Life in a Drop of Water*. One student in particular talked knowledgeably about what he saw and was respected for that by his friends.

By and large, however, teachers find it hard to engage the students intellectually. Even going over rote questions is difficult, as noted earlier. Labs, however, are easier. Students can talk about a variety of social things while working through clearly laid out steps that require little thinking. Occasionally, teachers try to develop a discussion, but there is little reward in it and it is easier to get it over with and get on to the lab. This situation was sharply illustrated in a grade 8 class in which a film on the boyhood of Edison was shown. In the discussion after the film, the teacher tried to introduce a number of issues "relevant" to the students. The teacher observed how Edison was belittled by his father and other adults, and then asked the students, "Is that something adults do to kids?" After a comment on how Edison's mother was important to his development, the teacher asked, "Did it have to be his mother? Could it have been his father, aunt, hanger-on?" But the students had a hard time responding to the large issues and answered in particular and diverting ways, as in the following excerpt from the discussion:

Teacher: Edison felt that school was stifling to the creative spirit. A lot of school is learning how to please teachers, how to pass an exam. You can't set up a lab on a train the way Edison did.

Do you have a feeling this is true? Can you share your thoughts on this?

Student: I think we should do it.

Teacher: What?

Student: Everything.

Student: Was that a real guy?

Teacher: No, an actor playing him.

Here is a teacher who is accepted by everyone, including the students, as competent and caring. Yet the difficulty he has in breaking out of the established pattern of low-level intellectual routine with his class is enormous.

Some units in the curriculum are directly related to students' lives. For example, in the grade 9 unit "Energy and Living Organisms," the relationship between energy and food and the rules for good nutrition and diet based on *Canada's Food Guide* are discussed. I was interested in the extent to which the scientific knowledge presented to the students affected their behaviour outside the classroom. In my initial observations, most of the lessons on nutrition did not appear to be much different from lessons on light rays. They consisted of scientific information to be learned and lab procedures to be worked through. Students needed to know the chemical composition of fats, proteins and carbohydrates, how to test for each, and which foods were examples of the four food groups in *Canada's Food Guide*. However, the teacher also invited a nutritionist to come to the class to make a presentation and answer students' questions about diet.

The visit of the nutritionist indicated some of the difficulties teachers face in integrating "outside experts" into the classroom. In this case, although the nutritionist was well-meaning and well-prepared, her lack of skills in the craft of teaching made her less effective than a teacher in responding to the students. She was less aware of cues, less flexible and had less of a sense of timing. She was not able to build on previous lessons and, as a result, much of her presentation repeated material previously covered in the lesson on *Canada's Food Guide*. Nevertheless, there was some time left for a few questions at the end. The students mostly asked for advice: "What can I eat to get fatter?" or "What foods are good for body-building?"; others asked for explanations: "Why can you only count one serving of potatoes?" and "How come I eat and eat and don't get any fatter even though I put on weight?" Except for the potato question, all the questions came from the personal experience of the students. There was little evidence that bridges were being built between the chemistry of foods and the advice on diet.

In order to gain some evidence of the possible effect of the unit on students, I interviewed a small group of them chosen by the teacher as representative of the range of students in the class. I asked the students what effect the nutrition unit had had on their diet. They gave the following answers:

Student 1: I get out of the room now when my father smokes. I watch what I'm eating more, exercise more and take care of myself more.

Student 2: I got my mom to quit smoking.

Student 3: Everything I eat I check it out. I didn't do this before the unit.

Student 4: I got the idea of looking at the labels and seeing what was in the food.

Student 5: I told my dad to stop smoking and he cut down.

It should be noted that the interview was conducted after a speaker from the Cancer Society had talked to the class about smoking and health. Although I specifically asked about nutrition, three of the five students responded about smoking, which is part of a later unit on respiration. However, students' ways of dividing up the world are not the same as ours. Possibly these students were responding to a wider concept of health rather than to a concept involving compartmentalized systems in the body.

The students' comments obviously cannot be taken as evidence of scientific knowledge having long-term impact on their or their parents' behaviour. Students' control over their own nutrition must be marginal at best, as they are largely dependent on what the family buys for them. Still, the positiveness with which all the students responded is interesting. Student interest in their own health and physiology seems high; however, the kind of knowledge that best reflects this interest is unclear. When the ingredients are listed on a food package, you don't need to know the test for sugar to test your food. Junior secondary students are not going to be able to judge the merits of nutritional advice they are receiving and will have to rely on the authority of experts chosen by their teachers. Students are more likely to respond to general rules of thumb. The structure of protein and the test for fats will remain isolated academic exercises. The tests done during the blood-typing lab, on the other hand, are different; in the blood-typing lab the students found out something new about *themselves*. By contrast, there was little doubt in students' minds about the contents of the food they tested.

Teachers try in a variety of ways to relate science to their students' lives. The blood-typing lab is one example; the bringing in of a nutritionist is another. Yet another way of making science relevant involves the use of practical examples, which one teacher used extensively. In discussing light reflection from a mirror, this teacher talked about the construction of periscopes and their use in submarines and in crowds, and he also related reflection to the use of mirrors on a rotating ball to scatter light at a dance. In introducing lenses, he talked about eyeglasses and reminded the students of the necessity of being able to see properly. The classes in which these examples were observed illustrate a point that needs to be kept in mind as pressure to reintroduce practical applications of science increases. Simply including more references to practical applications will have little effect on students if the underlying structure of the curriculum remains unchanged. The real work in this class consisted of doing the labs and learning the science associated with them. The lack of eye contact between teacher and students, the low number of questions asked and the continuous student murmur in this class suggest that practical examples by themselves have little effect on student interest and, by inference, on their understanding.

In response to a specific interview question about their reaction to the possible inclusion of more material with a science and society emphasis, all the teachers expressed support. The suggestion evoked in most teachers recollections of a 1950s-style science curriculum based on *Science in Action*.[6] This approach emphasized the practical applications of science in the everyday world. Teachers want to increase the relevance of science to children's lives provided that the skills needed to do grade 11 and 12 science are not forgotten. Other considerations were expressed as well. Mr. Barnes would like to see more material on the uses of science in Canada and examples of Canadian research. He is concerned about the lack of support for scientific research in Canada and wants to encourage students to vote for people who would support science. Mr. Arnold would like to include topics of current concern such as genetic engineering and energy, believing that it is important to deal with moral issues and to push students into thinking through moral decisions. In addition, he feels that, if students had an idea of the relationship between science and society, the academic material would become more meaningful. Mr. Daley, on the other hand, sees knowledge about science coming first; for example, one has to understand something about chemistry before one can understand how chemistry is important to the fertilizer industry.

Although there is general support among these teachers for a greater focus on science and society, the constraints of time, textbooks and ministry guidelines are mentioned as reasons why teachers cannot include such topics at present. However, some adaptations of the present course to make it work better have taken place.

Course Modifications

Evidence suggests that the science teachers at Northend work conscientiously at improving the programs they offer, but within certain limits. As Mr. Arnold commented:

> "I believe in change. I try to change things all the time except, of course, the basic structure. An atom is an atom."

Teachers work to adapt the material to facilitate students' understanding of it and to accommodate their programs to available resources. However, the basic structure of the curriculum is determined by ministry guidelines and the prescribed textbook remains unchanged. Mr. Arnold and Mr. Evans both mentioned changing the chemistry unit so that valence is not presented in terms of rings and fasteners. Similarly, the gremlin model of electricity that appears in the textbook is ignored. More extensive changes are made to the material developed for the modified classes, for whom a variety of different texts have been tried. At lunch, a special education teacher commented favourably on the work that had gone into developing the modified science program. She contrasted the readability of the science material to that of other subjects in which she would have to put the textbook on tape in order to make it accessible to the students. One of the science teachers described his version of the modified grade 10 program as a personalized adaptation from a number of sources. The sources include a new textbook he has helped to pilot-test, lab sheets he has developed and modifications from other textbooks.

Although this study focusses on the junior high school program, some significant innovations at the senior level are relevant to it. The head of the department has been one of the key people involved in a locally developed course, Human Biology 11. Two other teachers have worked hard to integrate basic computer programming into their science program. This work was finally defeated when the computer terminal was removed from their room and put into the Business Education Department for use in that department's Computer Science 11 and 12 courses.

These examples suggest that the teachers are prepared to put substantial amounts of their time into creating new programs and modifying old ones. It is instructive, however, to recognize some of the constraints on the type of innovation that can take place. For example, in the meeting with the school district facilities team, the issue of moving to a more project-oriented curriculum was brought up. As some teachers pointed out, however, one of the constraints opposing such a move was the lack of available space to store projects between periods. With the school as crowded as it is, there is no extra room available at present to use for this purpose. More interesting than such physical constraints, however, are some broader institutional and value constraints that operate to shape the curriculum in particular ways. If significant change is to take place, the impact of these constraints must be recognized and taken into account.

Influences on the Curriculum

The junior secondary science program reflects the influence of a number of institutional and social factors. Of particular interest are the influence of the senior secondary program on the junior secondary program, the influence of the university on the whole of the school science program, and the influence of broad social values on school science.

Senior Secondary Influences

The influence of the senior secondary program is most clearly felt in talking to teachers about how decisions are made about what to emphasize and what to leave out, given the time constraints of the semester system. There is general agreement that what is emphasized at the junior grades is what is considered to be the best preparation for work in the senior grades. Thus the rationale for the curriculum emphasis on correct explanations is the need to provide a solid foundation for further work. Mr. Evans expressed the justification for the grade 9 focus on chemistry in this way:

> "Each of the teachers teaching senior science have been asked, 'What would you expect a student coming out of grade 10 to have?' We all put our two cents' worth in. Essentially, as I recall from Mr. Daley, he doesn't really require that much in physics coming out of grade 10. He feels that the way physics is approached in 9 and 10 is totally backwards and has no bearing on what would take place in 11 or 12. As long as the student is academically competent, he feels he can get enough in 11 or 12. Whereas, I feel with the chemistry that there are certain fundamental skills a student must have that we don't have the time to teach in either 11 or 12; for example, balancing equations, computing molecular mass, understanding formulae, knowing what the subscripts mean, what coefficients mean in front of formulae in an equation, basic understanding of the periodicity of the table of the elements."

The science department head explained that the earth science unit is not taught because it is not needed for preparation for a next course. At Northend, the new courses in Earth Science 11 and Geology 12 are not offered. Mr. Daley reiterated the general department position in his interview:

> "I guess the criteria there is what is going to be most useful to the kid next year in school. Those that are going on to grade 11 science have to be given priority. This bias is because I teach grade 11. If I didn't, perhaps my priorities would be somewhat different."

Interestingly, the only person whose priorities appeared to be different is the new teacher who teaches only junior secondary science and who had not participated in the department meeting where it was decided what to emphasize and de-emphasize. This teacher would prefer to teach some of each unit, rather than a lot of some units and none of others.

In looking at the impact of the senior high expectations on the shaping of the junior high courses, it is important to remember that a senior science course is not currently a requirement for graduation, although it is a requirement for university entrance. For many students, grade 10 science is their last science course.

University Influence

The pressure to prepare students for the next level continues on through the senior grades. There it becomes preparation for university. Thus the university, in a variety of ways, becomes a major influence on the school curriculum. The influence of the university was raised as an important issue at the very first meeting with the teachers. The department head asked this question:

> "Are you commissioned also to look at outside influences and measure their impact in science teaching? For instance, the universities come down on us and can mould the way science goes as they have been doing. That's a very serious impact."

The influence of the university is exerted in two ways. One way is through the teachers who feel that the curriculum must reflect preparation for success at university so that no one is denied the opportunity to succeed, even if only a small number of students actually go on to university. Mr. Cole expressed it this way:

> "Every kid should have the opportunity to go on to university. So we had better give them all the stuff they may need, even if maybe only five per cent go. We want kids to be successful if they go to university."

The second way in which the university influence is felt is more direct. Each year the University of British Columbia (UBC) sends each high school the marks that that school's students obtained in their first-year university courses. The implication appears to be that schools should use these results to evaluate the effectiveness of their programs and standards in terms of preparing students for university.

The university also influences the science program through its acceptance or nonacceptance of courses for credit for university entrance. At Northend, Human Biology 11 has been developed to attract students into a senior biology course. The course is having difficulty surviving, in part because it was not accepted by the universities or other postsecondary institutions as fulfilling the science requirement. Other admission requirements affect the number and variety of science electives that students can reasonably fit into their programs. For example, an examination of data on enrolments in science courses province-wide shows a dramatic decline in 1977-1978 when the university announced it was reinstituting a language requirement for university entrance.[7] More recently, teachers have been concerned that changes in the University of British Columbia's Faculty of Science admission requirement to include a science 12 course will reduce the number of students enrolling in courses such as Earth Science 11. In the past, students going into the Faculty of Science often elected a third Science 11 course in addition to the Physics 11 and Chemistry 11 courses required by the ministry. These students are now replacing that elective with the Science 12 course required for admission to UBC. (The introduction by the Ministry of Education of two new compulsory courses, Consumer Fundamentals and Composition 11, is causing a similar concern about the restriction of electives for students.)

A distinction should be made between preparing students for university and preparing them for scholarship exams. The senior science teachers made it clear that they do not emphasize preparation for scholarship exams, as that involves only a small number of students, two or three a year. Mr. Evans made this comment:

> "I prefer to teach and have them follow the government guidelines religiously so that it prepares every student for university essentially. I wouldn't want to direct all my efforts at scholarships. I would find I would lose two-thirds of the students right out the door quickly."

I inquired about the practical effect of this distinction. He explained that teaching for scholarships is done by analyzing past scholarship examination papers and emphasizing those topics and types of problems that have appeared most frequently. "It's quite evident what to do and what not to do." However, in May he does get together with scholarship students and go over problems with them separately. This procedure contrasts with that followed in schools in more affluent areas of the city where the teaching is heavily influenced by scholarship preparation.

Influence of Social Values

The pressure for university preparation does not come explicitly from Northend parents. As explained earlier, there appears to be an insignificant amount of parental pressure exerted on the science teachers. Where, then, does the pressure to prepare students for university come from, given that less than half of all Northend students go on to university?

One answer is that the pressure comes from a fundamental value position of the teachers. It is expressed as a responsibility to those who will succeed, with success being defined as doing well at university. For example, Mr. Daley spoke to me about introducing the applications of science to the modified classes. When I asked him if he felt that that approach would be more appropriate for modified classes, he made these comments:

Daley: No. No, I think it would be just as appropriate obviously for anybody, except that we have to teach them chemistry and physics, electricity and stuff, and so we can't... we don't have time to...

Gaskell: We have to do that because...

Daley: I haven't really thought about it. We have to do that because those that are going on have to have this knowledge. They must start to learn balancing an equation, Ohm's law, meiosis and mitosis. They have to learn it somewhere, to start at some point learning the facts. Where do you start?

Gaskell: What it is then, essentially, is the grade above filtering down the expectations.

Daley: Yes. What does society expect a kid coming out of the education system at a particular level to have? The educational system is like a sort of fractionating stack and the products pop out. There's various levels of the stack. . . . So what they teach in Science 9 is a reflection of those expectations.

He went on to say that he feels that the parents at Northend reflect these expectations less than the parents of more affluent students. Thus, whereas this pressure is spoken of as a pressure from "society," it may in fact be pressure from a particular class within society.

Social values are reflected in the curriculum in other ways as well. The notion of what constitutes science, for example, has affected the structure of the curriculum. One issue highlighted in the Science Council's Science and Education Study is the role of technology in science education.[8] Interestingly, there are courses on technology at Northend. They are listed in the course handbook in the industrial education section. At the junior secondary level there are courses such as Electricity 8 and Electronics 9/10 that emphasize practical applications of scientific principles and involve students in project work. The division between academic "pure" science located in the science department and practical technology located in the industrial education department reflects the different status in our society accorded to mental and manual labour. The prevailing view that "pure" science has higher status than "applied" science was at least partly responsible for the opposition of science teachers in England to Project Technology.[9]

Another way in which the curriculum reflects social values is illustrated in the nutrition unit. The emphasis in the unit is on the responsibility of individuals to ensure an adequate diet for themselves, once they are given information on what constitutes an adequate diet and the reasons for it. The students' responsibility is to themselves, for their own good. Thus, nutrition is abstracted from its social content. An alternative, for example, would be to put the topic in the context of an individual's responsibility to the state to remain healthy and the state's responsibility to its citizens to ensure an adequate diet for everyone. In these alternatives, health is not just a scientific and technical product, but a political one as well. The Canadian state has assumed a large measure of responsibility for the provision of health care for its citizens, but this fact does not form part of the context of health education. In East Germany, in contrast, the political dimension is part of the biology curriculum.[10] Science curricula, like other curricula, reflect the political systems in which they are used.

The junior secondary school science curriculum is influenced by institutional and social factors such as pressure from senior secondary teachers, expectations of the universities and dominant social values. Any large-scale attempt to change the curriculum in fundamental ways will have to take account of the close connections between what occurs in schools and the powerful institutions and values that shape the curriculum.

Conclusion

The science education that is provided for the junior secondary students at Northend School is the result of a complex web of factors. A report such as this must necessarily highlight some and downplay or ignore others. The main feature of the curriculum is an emphasis on learning correct explanations for a variety of phenomena that are seen as important to science as a discipline. The major purpose is to provide a solid foundation for further courses in science. Although some attempt is made to break the pattern, it is generally acknowledged that the science content is of little intrinsic interest to the students. Lessons are built around the prescribed textbook, which is designed to follow ministry guidelines.

The extent to which teachers can adapt the material is constrained by their work situation. The main problem is to devise strategies to contain an open-ended job. Teaching junior secondary students is particularly stressful in terms of dealing with the emotional needs of that age group. The rewards of teaching come less from working in an area of academic interest and more from developing personal relationships with students.

Although the major outlines of the course are set by the textbook, teachers make many modifications where their experience has shown them that the textbook approach does not work well. Teachers are open to including more science and society material in their teaching but feel constrained from doing so by pressures of time. These pressures are exacerbated by the shortened course time resulting from the semester system.

In addition to job pressures, changes are also constrained by the relationship of the curriculum to other institutions and social values. The universities' significant influence on the school curriculum is apparent in the priority teachers give to preparation for university. This emphasis reflects the teachers' feeling of special responsibility to those who have the best chance of success, where success is defined as continuing with formal education. The tension between preparing people for university and preparing them for "life" is highlighted at Northend because the majority of its graduating students go directly into the job market. Where the science curriculum touches on people's lives, as in the nutrition unit, there is an emphasis on an individual's responsibility to himself or herself. This is consistent with a political system that stresses individualism in contrast to socialism. The influence of institutional constraints and social values must be taken into account in any effort to alter fundamentally the junior secondary science program.

Notes

1. E.D. Hobbs, W.B. Boldt, G.L. Erickson, T.P. Quelch and G.A. Sieben, *British Columbia Science Assessment Summary Report*, British Columbia Ministry of Education, Victoria, BC, 1978.

2. H.S. Becker, "The Career of the Chicago Public School Teachers," *American Journal of Sociology*, 1952, vol. 57, pp. 470-477.

3. The three textbooks are: M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy, eds., *Introducing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, 2nd edition, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, Ontario, 1977; M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy, eds., *Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, 2nd edition, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, Ontario, 1979; and M.C. Schmid, ed., *Extending Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, Ontario, 1970.

4. D.A. Roberts, "Developing the Concept of 'Curriculum Emphases' in Science Education," *Science Education*, 1982, vol. 66, no. 2, pp. 243-266.

5. M.C. Schmid and M.T. Murphy, eds., *Developing Science Concepts in the Laboratory*, 2nd edition, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, Ontario, 1979, p. 540.

6. G. Paterson, *Science in Action*, Dent, Vancouver, BC, 1955.

7. British Columbia Ministry of Education, Statistical Services, *Organization of Secondary School 1980-81*, Publication No. 10, Victoria, BC, 1981.

8. D. George, *An Engineer's View of Science Education*, Science Council of Canada, Discussion Paper D81/2, Ottawa, 1981.

9. B. MacDonald and R. Walker, *Changing the Curriculum*, Open Books, London, 1976.

10. E. Jungwirth, "Science Education and Politics," *Science Education*, 1981, vol. 65, no. 3, pp. 253-258.

VI. Science at Derrick Composite High School

Patricia M. Rowell

This report is based on observations made in the classrooms of seven science teachers over a period of four months. Extended discussions on a one-to-one basis with four of the teachers, in addition to conversations with administrators, provided the opportunity to explore the science classroom from the perspectives of the teachers. My interaction with students in the science classes was minimal, and this study has no claim to represent what it is like to be a student of science at Derrick Composite High School.

Recognizing that the activity labelled as science education occurs in a school setting that is itself part of a much larger and complex societal context, this report is presented in two general sections. The first section provides a description of the situation in which the teachers work: the location of the school and its clientele, their colleagues, the tasks of the school and the organizational framework that fulfills them. These factors contribute to what I shall call the institutional context for science education in this particular high school. These institutional characteristics are a consequence of past and present beliefs that led to the formulation of social demands for certain kinds of education. Consideration of this broader social context which encompasses the institutional features is beyond the scope of this study, although an awareness of the constant interchanges between the two spheres is essential.

The second section of this report attempts to portray the daily activities of teachers who have assumed the responsibility of educating students in science. The beliefs and assumptions on which such activities rest are tentatively explored, in the hope that we may reconstruct the world in which the teachers find themselves, that is, their pedagogical context.

The Institutional Context

Students

Roughly 1600 students, the majority of whom range in age from 15 to 18, attend Derrick Composite High School, which was established in the late 1950s. Soon after 8:00 each morning, students unload from school and city buses, and the parking lots fill with student-driven cars. The school is one of 10 such institutions in an urban school system that maintains an open boundary policy; students may attend the senior high school of their choice. The majority of the students opt for the school established within their residential zone, although between 100 and 200 students travel out of their zones to attend this school.

Located in a district reflecting a broad spectrum of socioeconomic conditions, the school is in the vicinity of an affluent, professional, residential district, in which parental expectations for the education of their offspring are articulated frequently and fluently. These parents purport to be seeking a high school program that will prepare their children for successful entrance to university and other professional programs, by offering a rigorous, intellectual challenge. This parental interest in the securing of credentials is acknowledged by the science department, which states as one of its goals, in the school handbook, that it will "attempt to meet the expectations of parents and students in the preparation of students for further learning institutions." The establishment of substantial provincial scholarships for students accumulating honours standing in grades 10, 11 and 12 has added to the competitive spirit of the educating process. Noted one administrator, "Not only students but parents get involved in the grading system. . . and for scholarship marks you are now competing as of the first grade 10 report card mark." Thus, although discouraged by the administrative staff, students will withdraw from classes in which they are not obtaining sufficiently high marks, in order that they may reregister with another teacher. One teacher reported that, although it is normally students who bargain for marks or arrange course transfers, he has had parents telephone to complain about "the kind of marks he is giving."

The community demonstrates its concern and support for the school by high attendance at "Meet the Teacher" nights. In the last annual survey, 93 per cent of parents polled expressed satisfaction with the performance of the science department, the highest rating in the school. And yet it was pointed out by one teacher that community involvement in terms of the daily activities of the science department is nonexistent, and only minimal interest is generated by the methods or content of science teaching.

Teachers

Eleven of the 60 teachers at Derrick Composite High School are members of the science department. This year, student registrations and timetabling arrangements allow for two teachers of physics, four of chemistry, four of biology and one teacher of chemistry and biology.

The four teachers with whom I had extensive discussions gained their first degrees in science or education at the local university, and have maintained somewhat tenuous links with the university personnel in their fields. One of the teachers completed his MEd degree at a distant university, and another taught overseas for four years, but, in general, the teachers have spent nearly all of their teaching careers in high schools within this particular urban system. Contact with colleagues in other schools occurs intermittently, at provincial and local (teachers' association) science council meetings and during the two days of the annual teachers' convention, but not necessarily during professional development days. Contact with colleagues within the science department of the school is limited to moments snatched between lessons, and the occasional staff meeting. The science staff room, providing office space for all but two of the department members, is seldom occupied by more than two or three teachers at one time. At the beginning and end of the day, there is the opportunity for nothing more than the cursory comment on current events. Hiring practices of the school administrators favour teachers who are prepared to become involved in extracurricular activities such as coaching teams, sponsoring clubs and organizing for the yearbook or graduation.

Mr. Davis arrives in school 15 minutes before the beginning of his first class, and goes directly to the room in which he will spend all but one of the eight class periods of the day. The first students are awaiting his arrival in the hall, and enter the classroom with him as the door is unlocked. They chat informally with Mr. Davis as he prepares for the daily sequence of classes in which he will attempt to interact with 180 individuals, a task which he is finding increasingly frustrating. His first class is the first of four nonstreamed grade 10 groups that he will encounter during the day. He feels badly that he doesn't have the energy to develop the individual relationships with the grade 10 students that he thinks are an important component of school life. He notes that "there is some limit to how much I can reach out." He says that he doesn't try to teach the same sequence of topics to these classes, because of the dreariness of repetition. He will also meet a grade 11 and grade 12 class. Mr. Davis generally spends his one spare period in the staff common room, chatting about current events over a cup of coffee, or completing minor chores. This is the only time he has to himself during the school day, because he devotes his lunch hours to the organization and meetings of a school club. After school, he works with colleagues who are preparing computer programs for school implementation.

Tradition and Task

Students who cross out of their residential zones to attend Derrick Composite High School are, for the most part, those who are attracted by the academic "tradition" associated with the school, a feature frequently referred to by several of the teachers. A senior administrator attributed this so-called tradition to three factors. First, the school offered a very restricted program in its early years: the only alternative to the academic core-plus-science was business education. Second, the first principal recruited a staff whose priority was traditional academic excellence. And third, the expectations of the clientele from professional backgrounds were satisfied by a traditional academic approach. Today, the program is considerably broader, including home economics, industrial arts and drafting, and the same administrator expressed the opinion that it is no longer appropriate to describe either the program offered in the school or the achievement of the students as being distinctively "academic." However, the fact remains that 50 to 60 per cent of the students who graduate from this school proceed to postsecondary institutions, having received the necessary credentials during their three years of attendance. On inquiring about the origins of the statement of school objectives included in the school handbook, I was told that as far as the teachers are concerned, the statement's chief purpose is to satisfy the requirements of the school board. The goals of the school appear to be tacitly shared by its staff, as this teacher had never participated in an open discussion of them. But, he noted, "teachers, even with the best intentions, are concerned only with instruction."

Program Selection and Organization of Classes

Students qualify for a provincial high school diploma if they obtain 100 high school credits, which must include credits for one science course. Matriculation satisfies the basic entrance requirements for university, and requires that students attain an average of 60 per cent on their high school diploma, including credits for five grade 12 courses. During the recruitment of grade 9 students from the eight feeder junior high schools, students are advised to select courses for their senior high school program on the assumption that they will matriculate. The majority of grade 10 students will select two science courses from physics, chemistry or biology (see Appendix A). The program adviser commented, "In accordance with university program selection, you see chemistry as being the core [science] course, and either physics or biology completing the pair. There are no limitations for good students, who may take all three subjects in grades 10 and 11, and then make a selection for grade 12." This advice has resulted in 7 physics classes, 15 biology classes and 16 chemistry classes in the current grade 10, with a similar distribution in grades 11 and 12. Students are assigned to course sections by computer; in the classes observed, there appeared to be a more or less even distribution of boys and girls.

Junior high students who fail grade 9 science are placed automatically into a Science 11 class, a "terminal" course of introductory science units, ostensibly reflecting the "needs and interests of students," but essentially satisfying the diploma requirement for credits in one science course. Students may proceed from Science 11 to Biology 10, Chemistry 10 or Physics 10 if they succeed in passing the course with the teacher's recommendation to continue.

The school year at Derrick consists of two five-month semesters. The grade 10 and 11 courses (three credits per course) are presented in daily, 40-minute classes for one semester, in contrast to the grade 12 courses (five credits) for which the daily 40-minute classes extend over the whole school year. In order to accommodate students who make a late decision to include science in their grade 12 program, one or two semestered courses are offered in which students attend daily 80-minute classes for one semester only.

Students are provided with the opportunity to obtain credits or improve grades for science courses in summer school programs of three to six weeks' duration. The course administrator and the physics and chemistry teachers were quite outspoken about the conceptual difficulties that seem to confront students who advance into senior science courses via the summer school route. Such courses are a prime example of learning for credits: "You are not tested on something you haven't had presented to you, and you can't cover in three weeks what you take in five months, so obviously you're being examined on a narrower sample of material."

Resources

Students are required to purchase the textbooks prescribed for each of their science courses (see Appendix B) – a considerable financial burden for some families. Concern over this fact guided the biology teachers in their decision to use a single text for the grade 10 and 11 courses. Although some teachers favoured retention of the *Biological Sciences Curriculum Study* (*BSCS*) "Green" text for Biology 20 on the grounds of its strength in ecology, other teachers noted that students find the *BSCS* "systems" approach confusing, preferring the factual presentation based on plant and animal classification, as in Otto and Towle (*Modern Biology*). Class sets of supplementary texts (of variable vintage) are available for all the science courses, although they are rarely used in the chemistry courses.

The city school system has an extensive film library from which one-week loans may be requested. However, teachers pursue an individual sequence of instruction, and because a film may be requested only once per semester per school, its arrival in school may be appropriate for only one of the four biology teachers. The other three must then decide whether to "fit in" the film, thus interrupting attention to the topic in hand, or to ignore the film altogether. The former strategy is illustrated in a grade 12 biology class that has commenced an examination of cell transport mechanisms when a film on photosynthesis and respiration arrives in school. The teacher introduces the film:

> "Today I want to interrupt what we've been doing, to take a look at a film on photosynthesis and respiration, because the very next topic that we're going on to is respiration, and the film is here now, and we won't be able to get it back again later. So you should be prepared to make notes; make yourselves a heading on a new page, 'Respiration and Photosynthesis,' and put in brackets, 'film,' so you know where the information came from."

The film, of the 1960s era, was watched passively by most students, who did not take notes. Several private conversations were conducted very discreetly until the conclusion of the film, at which time the teacher commented, "We will be going on to respiration very soon, but right now we'll get back to transport mechanisms." I gained the impression that for students who have grown accustomed to the superb visual effects of *Star Wars* and *Cosmos*, 15-year-old movies are somewhat tame, if not dismal. Perhaps this reaction underlies the attitude of another teacher, who offered this reflection on his occasional use of films:

> "I don't use a film as an instructional tool any more. I used to give a good build-up, have the film, and then a good discussion. Now I tend to use the film as an illustration of what I've been talking about, or as an introduction to a topic."

The school library holds 25 000 books and is staffed by two librarians and two aides. The library budget allocated $17 000 for the acquisition of new books last year. All members of staff are urged to participate in the selection of new materials, although the librarian suggested that the onus lies largely on him to choose titles from catalogue lists. The physics section included titles on astronomy and the earth sciences and in the biology section, a broad range of publications dealt with inventions, acupuncture, genetic politics and evolution.

Many of the features of this institutional context have been inherited from times when teaching was viewed as the transmission of expert knowledge, and learning as the assimilation of the same. Such views are not necessarily taken for granted by the teachers of this school today, but the organizational framework born of these views encompasses the individuals within it. The physical arrangement of classrooms and the characteristics of timetabling limit the possible interactions between teachers and students. One teacher of four daily grade 10 classes expressed the wish to give a single lecture presentation to his grade 10 students, and spend the remainder of his scheduled time in seminar-type groups. This could not be accomplished in the present context, or permitted by current scheduling. Another teacher who recognizes that learning progresses at an individual pace finds himself forced to lockstep his students "simply because of the demands of the rest of the school." He suggested that other course commitments would overrule any time flexibility provided in his classes.

Assessment of Student Performance

Unit tests are administered at the conclusion of each section of each course, and it was not uncommon for students to be tested in the same week that the information was presented to them. An apparent contradiction exists between the teachers' sense of responsibility to equip "their" students for further stages of education by providing a solid foundation, and the necessity to provide a series of numbers representative of short-term recall performance. Many unit tests and all final examinations are composed of multiple-choice items only. (Written assignments are limited to one per course.) The type of questions employed in the unit tests apparently is the cause of some concern for teachers who wish to follow student thinking patterns. Multiple choice items are of no assistance here, but sheer numbers force their use. Remarks one teacher: "I've had to lower my standards [of assessment] because of unusually large classes; I have to use a combination of multiple-choice and problem-solving questions, instead of all problem-solving."

This science department has compiled a bank of multiple-choice questions, although some of these are of questionable value. One teacher made this remark to his grade 12 class:

> "I just want to make a comment about number 5. I like to make my diagrams reasonably accurate; I'm not sure where this diagram came from. I think someone was half asleep when they drew it, or they weren't too concerned with accuracy. But I want you to see that the curve should actually be bimodal; it should have a peak between violet and blue, and another one between orange and red. Even the colours at the bottom are not in the correct order. So it wasn't a very accurate diagram; but the best answer obviously is the one given, even though the lines are not accurate."

Within each discipline area, mark allocations are carefully structured to provide uniformity across class sections. Biology 30 students are provided with a mark sheet that details the allotment of points for up to 15 specified components of a research paper, which is "worth" a maximum of 15 per cent of the course grade. Final examinations (25 per cent of the course grade) are common to all course sections, in response to board and school administrative policies of striving for uniformity of standards. However, teachers acknowledged that it was not unknown for examination questions that related to topics not covered in class to be "cut" from the mark total.

A dominant factor in the determination of this institutional context seems to be the recognition that students need to acquire credentials for further education and training, and this being so, it is the task of the school to provide these effectively and efficiently.

The Pedagogical Context

Underlying the patterns of daily activities and interactions are teachers' assumptions about the nature of knowledge and what it means to be engaged in science education. These assumptions are reflected in teachers' expectations for students and themselves, and in all aspects of teachers' communications to students, communications which in themselves create conceptions of schooling and knowledge. Implicitly or explicitly, science teachers impart messages about science during their daily discourses.

Knowledge and Learning in School Science

The prevailing conception of curriculum as a body of knowledge external to both the learner and the teacher, and embodied in the provincial curriculum guide and prescribed texts, appears to direct most of the school science activities. The teachers demonstrated an unswerving commitment to the course content of the curriculum guides, to the acknowledged neglect of more interpretive aspects of course implementation. Each course is organized into discrete, sequenced units of information, the assimilation of which may be assessed by specific, objective unit tests. The Chemistry 10 course was described to me as being "essentially five units: (1) a descriptive unit about the elements and learning formulae; (2) writing and balancing equations; (3) conversion of gram to molar mass; (4) conversion of molar mass to gram; and (5) combining all the above knowledge." More than one teacher commented favourably on the "cut-and-dried" nature of the chemistry program, which utilizes the *ALCHEM* kits: "You don't have to go running around, looking in different books, and developing your own materials," and "It's fixed, there's only one right answer. Because you don't have to be making decisions about what to include or not to include as content, you are able to conduct a much more spontaneous interaction with the students."

One of the biology teachers has assembled learning packages for every unit of each course; these include a statement of the specific objectives, such as developing students' ability to identify structures, define terms, state concepts or explain the significance of concepts. Also listed in the learning packages are learning activities that will assist students to achieve the specified objectives. Such activities may involve reading the textbook, labelling diagrams, performing laboratory exercises, attending lectures or watching films. The final activity for each unit is the writing of the unit test. The teacher indicated that these packages present a framework within which students may begin to make connections, a process we call learning. However, the packages also provide the teacher with a measure of control — first, over the knowledge that is to be assessed, and therefore valued (for, as one teacher remarked, "Even if some of the topics are incredibly dry, they can be made more interesting with something the kids don't have to know"); and second, over his accountability to students and parents, school administration and school board.

A consequence of this packaging, given the institutional context, is that nonassessable or nonexaminable aspects of the official curriculum, such as attitudes, values, interpretations and critical thinking, tend to be neglected. These are the aspects that cannot be standardized because they are dependent upon ways of knowing that are idiosyncratic and ill-defined. The interpretive stance of the student is denied when it is required that he or she appropriate the teacher's or expert's knowledge framework in order to succeed, in terms of scoring marks. The following transcript illustrates the point; the teacher is providing a summary for the overall pattern of photosynthetic reactions, with the aid of a handout sheet on which the reactions are printed:

Teacher: These hydrogens are used in the next series of reactions with carbon dioxide, and the product is something which we'll write as CH_2O, and though the actual product of photosynthesis is not this (it's something else), it has these elements in that ratio. And what else is produced? Anything else? Well, there is water as a by-product. Here's the carbohydrate, and the carbohydrate that is actually synthesized by the plant is PGAL. What is the full name? You've seen this one before in respiration.

Student: Phosphoglyceraldehyde.

Teacher: That's right. So the actual product of photosynthesis is not sugar, not glucose, it's phosphoglyceraldehyde. And the plant will take those PGAL molecules and combine them into one molecule of regular sugar. . . .

Following the return of the marked answer sheets for the unit test (multiple-choice questions) on photosynthesis, one student was obviously puzzled by the fact that apparently he had misinterpreted the identity of the photosynthetic sequence.

Student: Can I ask a question about number 24?

Teacher: Yes.

Student: Why are sugars the end product in photosynthesis?

Teacher: Sugars? Well, PGAL is a product; the only thing is that the other things listed with it are not products. So the best answer has to be sugars, because all of the answer applies.

Student: Well, there shouldn't be any answer right.

Teacher: No. ATP, oxygen is a product, water is a product, and so are sugars.

Student: Well, I thought that after you go to the PGAL stage, that that had nothing to do with. . . [photosynthesis].

Teacher: Well, yes, the PGAL combines in a series of reactions to form sugars.

Student: But the sugars have nothing to do with photosynthesis.

Teacher: Well, no, they're the end product of photosynthesis, even though the actual molecule generated is phosphoglyceraldehyde. The plant will then take the phosphoglyceraldehyde molecules, and change them into sugar molecules, so obviously sugar is a product of photosynthesis. It's not direct; it's not the actual product produced by the photosynthetic reaction. It's only a step away from PGAL to sugars. If you look at any book, you'll see that the end product is given as sugars, not PGAL. It's just a matter of interpretation; you're going one step further. . . .

This student was unusually persistent in his attempt to put across his interpretation of the information with which he had been provided. On the whole, students adopted the line of least resistance, except when marks were at stake.

There were notable exceptions to the view of curriculum as factual knowledge. Open acknowledgement that a student's view of the world may differ considerably from that of an expert occurred occasionally. In these classes, the teacher had taken considerable time and effort to characterize knowledge as provisional and personal, and not as certain and expert-derived. Statements such as, "We talked in class about not accepting as 'fact' what the experts tell you," resulted in a nonthreatening atmosphere in which students could reveal their ideas without fear of ridicule. Similarly, student conceptions about natural phenomena are uncovered by their written answers to questions such as, "What do you think causes gravity?" In subsequent class discussions, this teacher has some knowledge of the students' frameworks.

More generally, students preferred to reveal interest in a specific topic by questioning the teacher during a private or small-group discussion, rather than in the full class. The following exchange occurred towards the end of a grade 12 class. The teacher had given a lecture on the theory of blood transfusion, and, following an open question period in which more factual information was provided, the teacher advised the students to use the remaining class time for reading from the text. One student stopped the teacher as he passed by:

Student: Why do we have the [blood type] antibody?

Teacher: I can't think of any natural use for the body being able to fight foreign blood protein. It's part of the genetic make-up of the individual.

Student: You can't, in nature, transfuse blood.

Teacher: No. But then, there's no use in your having different skin protein, different muscle protein than me. In nature, there's no need for my heart to be placed in your body. And yet that difference exists.

Student: It's just a coincidence.

Teacher: Well yes, although I'm not sure I agree with the term. It's more of a characteristic of the uniqueness of the individual. Everyone is unique because of your genetic make-up. It's one of the characteristics of nature.

Student: This thing may have some use, but we don't know what it is.

Teacher: Yes, I'm just shooting in the dark; it's just a theory.

The distinction between school knowledge and everyday knowledge persists in many instances. One teacher rationalized the existence of the gulf in this manner:

> "Maybe they'll never use the content, but it's the actual procedure they're going through in learning the stuff that is maybe important. Maybe that will help them to learn something else which is important. And then, of course, how do you know it's not going to be important?"

This separation of school and everyday knowledge seems to be closely associated with the taken-for-granted necessity of preparing students for either the next course in the high school sequence, or for the university courses. A chemistry teacher put it this way:

> "You've got to do the core, because the next course is based on the core. The options are interesting, but not necessary as far as moving on to the next unit. [The options] are just extensions, generally practical, everyday industry-type extensions on the core material."

It takes a lot of time, practice and drill in the physical science classes to bring student performance on the core concepts to a satisfactory level. Consequently, very few of the optional topics are included in the Chemistry 10 and 20 courses, or the Physics 10 and 20. In the grade 12 courses, one elective unit on radiation chemistry is presented in Chemistry 30, and one on the speed of light in Physics 30. Concern for the continuing progress of their students in postsecondary institutions directs the physics teachers in supplementing the prescribed physics core material. When viewed as a preuniversity or pretechnical college program, the current high school physics program has some "gaping holes which must be filled. We know what [the students] need to do at university and technical institutes."

The fact that Science 11 is viewed as a "terminal" course removes the necessity to provide a solid grounding in technical information for future courses; without the imposition of a detailed provincial guide, teachers feel free to mould the course around the interests of the students. One teacher expressed the opinion that Science 11 classes should offer something that students "will want to know later in life." At present, this criterion is interpreted to mean topics in human physiology.

The Science 11 course has the potential to provide an interpretive approach to scientific activity, but "unfortunately has acquired a certain stigma," remarked a school administrator, "and tends to be reserved for low achievers." In voicing the need for less theoretical, less mathematical courses, physical science teachers were quick to specify that such courses would have to be acceptable to the university, which is seen to be the gatekeeper of legitimate knowledge. At every level in the school system, the university community is viewed as authenticating school knowledge.

A notable exception to the separation of school and everyday knowledge has been the implementation in Biology 30 classes of a six-week course in the techniques of cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (CPR). All the biology teachers are qualified instructors for the course, and give up their lunch hours and spare periods to assist each other with instruction and testing. Teachers and students were highly enthusiastic about this project, valuing it as something that would always be useful to know, outside school.

An attempt to bridge the gap between school and everyday knowledge is made in a school-developed course, Ecology 20. This course offers students an opportunity to study the features and implications of local ecosystems. For the teachers of this class, a significant challenge arises in planning activities for the polarized groups of high achievers (the specialists) and low achievers (looking for easy credits) who make up the class.

Science and School Science

I have described a prevailing conception of school knowledge as being given, sequenced, standard and measurable; it is also distinct from common sense, everyday knowledge. These features describe, for the most part, the nature of knowledge to be acquired in school science programs. The "facts" are the products of much investigation, "a compounding of information gathered over the years." There is so much information that the teacher sees his task as that of "boiling down the information to the most important parts of it."

I heard very little discussion of science as an activity; critical consideration of the methods employed by scientists past and present played no part in the development of most topics. Research on cell membrane structure was portrayed to a grade 10 class in the following manner:

> "One of the labs at the university has been working on this for years, and they may never know the answer. The little bit that they uncover, they publish. Someone else happens to pick it up and do a bit more, and they add to the knowledge; and then someone else will come along and put it all together, and you come up with another model."

The big breakthrough is represented as being the consequence of years and years of "slogging" by large numbers of different groups of investigators.

Another aspect of research activities coming to be recognized by some science teachers in their classrooms is the politics of scientific investigation. I was told by one teacher that he mentions the interrelatedness of research grants, industrial applications, big business and politics. For him, the activities of scientists are not neutral and value free, and it is becoming increasingly important to discuss these ideas in class so that students may think about them and formulate their own informed opinions.

The provincial curriculum guide for biology specifies that historical aspects of the Biology 30 topics should be given "general coverage only," and teachers adhere to this guideline. They observe that it is difficult to generate enthusiasm for another era, given the advanced state of present-day information. All Biology 10 students should associate the names of two European scientists with the cell theory, advises the guide, but says nothing about why students should do so. Is it to consider the nature of theory and its relationship to the progress of science? One teacher put it this way:

> "Now it seems kind of simplistic today to come to the conclusion that living things are made out of cells. You've known that since you were in grade 1 or 2, when your first science teacher scraped something off a plant and put it under a microscope for you to look. But back in the 1800s, these two individuals, Schleiden and Schwann, came to the conclusion that each of the things [plants and animals] they were dealing with was made of cells. This particular statement, that living things were composed of cells, was a big breakthrough in the development of the cell theory."

A little later in the lesson, mention was made of the debate between church and science over the origin of life, but because the theories about the origin of life had been "covered" in the last unit, the issue was not discussed again.

Characteristically, the science classes studiously avoided rigorous discussion of the conflicts in which scientists have engaged. The current physics curriculum guide directs specific attention to the historical development of physical theories and to the manner in which the activities of physicists may be seen as reflecting the values and aspirations of the society in which they lived or live. But while this approach is felt to be commendable for a history course about physics, the teachers feel it is sadly lacking in the practical components of a physics course. The prescribed texts are considered to be adequate as long as the teacher has a good working knowledge of the concepts of physics and their practical applications. (Supplementary class texts are also used; see Appendix B.) One teacher explained how he adds practical applications as he teaches:

> "Magnetic fields cause electrons to swerve, and I talk about how it does this in the picture tube of a television set, because I know how it works. But the television tube isn't mentioned in the book at all. All they mention in the book is that J.J. Thomson developed this cathode ray tube and he was able to bend electrons. But it doesn't strike home unless you can show them an example, and I can show them that."

The classical dispute about the nature of light was presented to grade 12 students in the following way:

Teacher: Generally, as we go through the readers, we keep name-dropping. And can you guess which one, in terms of the development of the theory of light, we start off with?

Student: Isaac Newton.

Teacher: And Huygens. We're talking about 1680, and the intellectual argument between the two groups. Newton's idea was that the behaviour of light is basically similar to that of particles, and so we have the corpuscular theory of light. Huygens, on the other hand, suggested that light behaves in a manner similar to waves.

The teacher then correlated the behaviour of particles and waves with the characteristics of transmission, reflection and refraction:

Teacher: The other argument is diffraction: waves tend to diffract. What was diffraction last week, Max?

Student: Particles diffracting off a mirror.

Teacher: Diffraction. You've got to know these terms.

Student: When it goes around a corner.

Teacher: Right. Bending around a corner. You can't see light bending around a corner in 1680, so you have a problem. This takes us roughly to the 1800s when a guy by the name of Young set up an experiment with the diffraction gratings, narrow slits and so on and was able to observe diffraction. This experiment is on page 253 in your text. . . .

Students are thus presented with a depersonalized development of the theory of light. In contrast, students in another class may be requested to stand in the shoes of an early scientist, and consider what it was like to be working at the time of Galileo. Students are asked to make their own value judgements in written responses to questions such as, "Do you think Galileo was treated fairly?" and "Do you think the same sort of thing could happen to a scientist today?" The teacher reflects: "It's difficult to mark, but I just want them to think about it." Using the historical development of physical concepts as a vehicle for the discussion of social, political and moral aspects of activities labelled as science is frequently frustrating for this teacher, who finds that the grade 10 and 11 students are not accustomed to class discussion; nor are they prepared to do routine practice for homework in order to accommodate class discussions. Grade 12 students do seem to avail themselves of the opportunity, but even then, "they don't seem to know anything that is going on around them."

The theoretical tools of scientists are given generally minor attention in school science classes. In two grade 10 classes, the following descriptions of two common scientific tools were given:

> "Models are not meant to be the final explanation; a model is an attempt that explains something. If you can build a model that explains different things that are happening, your model will be acceptable until such time as somebody else comes along and changes it slightly. Models are meant to try to explain things that are happening. They are meant to be changed; they are not the answer. I gave you a reference to a short paragraph in your text about the importance of models; this gives you a good idea of the importance of models in the development of theories."

* * *

Teacher: All the calculations are based on a theory that we're using all the time. What theory is all of chemistry based on?

Student: Mass.

Teacher: Not conservation of mass.

Student: Atoms.

Teacher: Theory of atoms. Now why is it called the atomic *theory*? *Theory*?

Student: [inaudible]

Student: [inaudible]

Teacher: How do you prove it? Nobody has seen these atoms. We don't know for absolutely positive that these atoms exist. There's no real proof, and yet we use the atomic theory. Why is the atomic theory so widely used?

Student: Because it works.

Teacher: Because evidence supports the theory. But I think Tom's answer is the simplest, that it works.

Laboratory Activities

There were more than 32 students in many of the classes observed. Teachers pointed to the logistical problems associated with arranging more than 30 inexperienced students around lab benches. "They've only got 40 minutes to get in there and gather data. So they have to be prepared before they go in, and know what they're supposed to do." Most teachers prepare for laboratory work during the preceding class, handing out detailed instructions and demonstrating the use of equipment. In all the sciences, laboratory classes involved illustration or confirmation of concepts theoretically derived in prior classes.

Teacher demonstrations seemed to be a popular alternative to class experiments; they tend to be less frustrating for the teacher and are certainly time-efficient. Grade 10 and 11 chemistry students are afforded little opportunity to develop manipulative laboratory skills. The course content leaves little time for lab classes, maybe one per unit. For example, the Grade 10 chemistry course is in its last few days, and there is insufficient time for the class members to individually confirm the law of conservation of mass by a quantitative investigation of a copper/silver nitrate reaction. The demonstration begun in one class by a substitute teacher is completed in a subsequent class by the regular teacher, who begins by writing the equation for the chemical reaction on the board and continues by writing down the calculations for the grams-to-moles-to-grams conversion. Turning to the class, he makes this comment:

> "Now that's how much we should get. See, this is what's called the 'theoretical yield'; based on the amount of silver nitrate we used, we should get this much silver: 1.94 grams. Now, let's see how much it weighs. I'll weigh the filter paper plus the silver."

The teacher weighs the filter paper and its collected silver on a beam balance on the front bench. Students provide the weight of the filter paper before filtration, and the necessary subtraction is made to give the weight of silver.

> "So you actually got 1.97 grams, but we should have got 1.94 grams. Well, that's almost right on. There could be various experimental errors. Let's calculate the percentage error. What's the difference between those two values? 0.03 is the difference. Now, let's assume that the theoretical one is the correct one; that gives us only one or two per cent. I think in this kind of lab, if you're within 10 per cent, it's good."

The nature of the possible errors associated with the weighings was not discussed further, even though the error was substantially larger for the copper.

Grade 10 physics students actively participate in a teacher-directed determination of acceleration due to gravity, in which particular attention is paid to the potential errors in the investigation.

Teacher: Now, what other things do we have to worry about with these stopwatches?

Student: When I dropped it [steel ball], you could hear "click, click, click. . . ."

Students: Yes.

Teacher: How are we going to deal with it? There certainly is going to be a problem with people's reaction time. Maybe we'll need a bit of practice with the stopwatches. And maybe we'll have to count a little bit before. I'd like you to think about it: how could we account for reaction time, and determine a way of determining what the reaction times are, for the timers?

What I find most often is, he's given you a clue as to when to start, right? He says, "Ready, 3, 2, 1, go." Well, there's a little bit of a reaction time there, but with people watching the ball, they see it fall, and they anticipate when it's going to hit. And they get in sync with that, and they set the watch off exactly when it hits. Is that good or bad?

Student: Good.

Student: Bad.

Student: Bad.

Teacher: Why is it bad?

Students: [no reply]

Teacher: Well, if it took them time to start the watch at the top, we should also make sure that they take time to stop the watch at the bottom as well. Then they might counteract each other. So I'm wondering if watching the ball on the way down is a good idea.

Student: Listen for it.

Teacher: He could say "Go," and everyone would take their time to start, and then when you hear the fall, you would take the same amount of time for it to stop. Because you're listening for his word to start, but you're watching for the ball to stop. That's not using the same reaction times. So we'll probably be wise to try to use the same sense. . . .

Later, the teacher added this point:

Teacher: Now, one thing. I'm wondering about the drop. He's counting and he's dropping. Would that increase or decrease the error, do you think? Because if he counts and he drops, he can perhaps anticipate it. So what would you suggest?

Student: Someone else counts.

Teacher: All right, Mark counts. Times all reset. Don't look at it.

And later still, the teacher commented on the results.

Teacher: So we have two determinations here. In one case, we had reasonably good precision; some of these values are pretty close. In the other case, we tried to get rid of some of the errors due to reaction time and whatnot. We're not exactly sure which is better; here we think we got rid of some of the errors due to reaction time, but these results are a little more precise than these.

This teacher studiously avoids the "right answer" syndrome, implicitly recognizing that knowledge is created by individuals doing certain activities. This understanding is reflected in comments such as "We can call this the experimental value, and that one the book value, because you can go to a book and look it up, because some other scientist has done it again and again and again and done it very precisely." A further point is made in the following exchange:

Teacher: Do you think that's a reasonable percentage error for an experiment?
Student: Yes.
Student: No.
Teacher: Now, based on this experiment, would you strongly believe that the acceleration due to gravity is around 9.8 metres per second squared?
Student: Yes.
Teacher: You would? Based on one experiment?
Student: Not really.
Teacher: That's why we're going to do another experiment tomorrow. . . .

Access to laboratory space and materials is not a difficulty in this school. Four teachers meet all their classes in laboratory classrooms, and the other teachers work in classrooms adjacent to laboratories. Two technicians work in a spacious prep room to supply all needed resources. And yet I gained the impression (which was confirmed by one teacher) that true experimentation or investigation does not take place within this institutional context. A biology teacher told me that when pressed for time, the laboratory exercises are sacrificed. He explained: "Lab work often is supplementary to what you've already taught. It can create a lot of interest, questions and curiosity. But the pressure to cover the material is killing that." The Biology 10 course provides students with the opportunity to study the characteristics and organization of cells in a variety of organisms. Apart from making wet mount preparations of onion epidermis or cheek cells, examination of representative cells and organisms is limited to commercially prepared slides and preserved specimens. Students are rarely expected to complete formal laboratory reports or scientific drawings. Dissections of earthworms, frogs and foetal pigs are completed in one or two class periods per dissection, with the objective that students be able to recognize the organ systems previously described to them.

The Biology 20 course is viewed by teachers as consisting of two major sections: ecology and genetics. A component of the ecology section is a field trip to a poplar forest beyond the city limits, during which students are introduced "to some of the procedures conducted by a field biologist in the study of a natural ecosystem." Such procedures include vegetation analysis using a quadrat or transect, analysis of invertebrate distribution, soil analysis and the recording of physical conditions. Students work in groups of three or four, gathering data for assigned procedures. In subsequent classes, the analyzed data are compiled and tabulated for the whole class, and students are required to write a report or answer a series of questions related to the interpretation of the data. This ecological investigation is intended to illustrate to students the orderly and methodical features of scientific inquiry, and students are expected to discuss possible sources of error and the limitations of any generalizations drawn, and to identify new problems that come to light. One teacher described the project as unrewarding for both himself and the students. His experience has been that students have only "a superficial understanding of the scientific process (hypothesizing, testing, inferring), and even though the junior high school science program emphasizes these process skills, when it comes to being analytical and able to evaluate data, even the brightest students have difficulty doing that." However, this is likely to be the first extended biological investigation conducted by these students.

Messages about Science: Chemistry

In the classes that I observed (portions of which have already been described), the emphasis was on students' acquisition of a set of principles accepted by a majority of the educational community as being the foundation for further study. The first priority in these classes is to provide a recipe for arriving at the correct answer to any question that might occur on a test. It is felt that students require a great deal of practice in applying the rules derived from any particular concept, and considerable class time is devoted to the working of examples by students. Students must learn the conventions in terminology, as is indicated in the following dialogue:

Teacher: Let's have a look at number 14. It's a common one, ammonia.
Student: I don't understand why it wasn't nitrogen trihydride.
Teacher: O.K. We never say dihydrogen oxide, do we? We always say it's water. It's the same with this one. If we use the correct molecular terminology, it's nitrogen trihydride, but we don't use the correct one because these are common chemicals and we just have to memorize their names. We know this is water, and we know this is ammonia. That's all. What are some of the other common names you must know?
Student: Methane.
Teacher: Good.
Student: Ozone.
Student: Ethanol, methanol.
Teacher: Now, don't confuse this ammonia with this one [writing on the board] $NH4^{+}$. What's $NH4^{+}$?
Student: Ammonium.
Teacher: That is your ammonium complex ion. Now ammonia you can have as a pure compound, a jar of ammonia. But you can't have a jar of ammonium ion, because ammonium has to go with something.

Overwhelming concern for the drill of these core concepts has resulted in the elimination of elective units, which present opportunities for understanding everyday phenomena in terms of chemical principles.

Messages about Science: Physics

Students in grade 10 classes are exposed to a number of intertwining themes about science: science not just as a body of knowledge but as a series of human events, each with a particular social context and social implications; scientific knowledge as provisional and personal.

The grade 10 year seems to be sufficiently distanced from university entrance requirements to afford flexibility in approach, but the grade 12 year falls under the shadow of grade expectations, and recipes for correct explanations are almost inevitable. As already mentioned, teachers supplement the grade 12 core material in anticipation that students will have need of this information at university.

Messages about Science: Biology

The prevailing message about biological studies is that there is a vast amount of basic information that students should acquire, even if they are not going on to become professional biologists. Teachers talked about "information overload," but they were reluctant to select any areas that, given the option, they would delete from the high school program. The Biology 30 course entails a study of human physiology; because the systems are interrelated, none can be omitted, although the teacher "may choose to give a superficial treatment of the biochemical aspects of some [topics], such as muscle contraction."

Considerable chemical terminology is retained in topics such as cell respiration and photosynthesis, although students have little experience of the practical significance of the terms.

Struggling against the surge towards correct answers, satisfactory grades and future course requirements is a wave of interest on the part of students and teachers in understanding and possibly controlling everyday phenomena. On several occasions, the need to talk about topics that are interesting and useful, but not detailed in the curriculum guide, was expressed. The implementation of the grade 12 CPR project illustrates one way in which this interest is demonstrated. Another illustration is provided by the topics for the grade 12 term paper; students select one of the following biological problems for a structured, written account: cancer, molecular genetics, nutrition or environmental control.

Social Interactions

The secondary school timetable requires a teacher to face a large number of groups of students for short periods of time. This arrangement tends to stress group rather than individual relationships, the latter being somewhat fragmented and almost impersonal. For teachers who acknowledge that knowing and learning is an individual process and who see themselves as facilitators of that process, the large classes are a perpetual frustration. They must devote their attention and energies to the motivation and control of groups, not individual learners. Commented one teacher: "It's a very fine balance that has to be maintained between keeping them involved and motivated, and total chaos. I have to go with them, bend with the wind." And another teacher: "You have to be able to play the students like instruments." The implicit assumption of teachers and students alike is that it is indeed the teacher's responsibility to motivate and control the discourse in each class; for the most part, students passively conform to the directions and expectations of teachers. Such expectations include regular and prompt attendance, and cooperative responses to teacher-posed questions. The doors of most science classrooms remain open during the instructional periods, and the occasional latecomer is overlooked. However, I observed one grade 12 group that had succeeded in generating considerable antagonism between itself and the teacher by not observing these expectations. Persistent late arrivals were confronted by locked doors on several occasions, to be climaxed by the total cancellation of class on a day when seven students sauntered in minutes after the class had got under way. The teacher offered these comments on the reciprocal nature of teacher-student responses: "You recognize that with an unresponsive class, your own reaction reinforces the somewhat negative attitudes among students. If the kids are not interested, you use the same old material, which is dull and turns the kids off, which makes you fall back further. It's a vicious circle."

I observed that many teachers relied upon "trading for grades" to motivate student cooperation and response. The dates of unit tests were prominently displayed in every classroom and, in some classes, there were frequent references to the "next" test. Some teachers appeared to go out of their way to assist students in coping with tests:

> "The first thing to do is go through and answer all the questions you can do easily. Then go back and do the ones you know you can do, but have to calculate. Get those done. Then go back and do the ones you're having difficulty with. And at the last resort, guess. Make sure you get all the marks you can."

Another teacher offered this advice:

> "I suggest very strongly that you write your final physiology exam around the beginning of May. It seems only logical to write the final [immediately] after you've finished doing the unit, instead of having a month in there without doing any physiology, and then having to come back and review it. I'm proposing we'll build a review week into the end of April, and then you write the final."

I have already mentioned that the organization of their day essentially isolates teachers from their colleagues. Several teachers spoke of this; one teacher had begun his teaching career by team teaching, an experience he valued for the exchange of ideas and opportunity for reflection on the art of teaching that it provided. He has now become acclimatized to the fact that there is only "me and my classroom," with the occasional student teacher or researcher observing, a situation that has persisted throughout the 11 years of another teacher's career. This lack of shared experiences leads to stagnation. It also contributes to a "live and let live" attitude, in which teachers find themselves accountable primarily to themselves. Depending on the individual, this may contribute to, or protect him or her from, concern about effectiveness. Another aspect of isolation was the concern expressed for keeping in touch with the scientific community, its current developments and issues. After eight years of teaching, another teacher remarked that he felt he was beginning to lose touch: "You can keep up-to-date by reading appropriate articles, but that is not the same as being in the field."

Following an extended discussion of the many alternatives available in teaching science, one teacher told me that he had never before considered such possibilities; his daily routine does not normally allow for such reflection. But another teacher countered the suggestion of seminar sessions for science staff, pointing out that they would place still more demands on the teachers. And indeed, attempts to stage a group discussion of science education objectives during this study were unsuccessful.

Yet despite the daily routine, the teachers have an implicit understanding of what can be expected of them by the school administration, students and parents. Over the years, course materials have been adapted, so that in each section of a course students are exposed to a similar breadth and depth of information. Standardizing the course content in this way satisfies the administration's concern for uniformity, but it also provides the teachers with a collective strength for influencing classroom activities and implementing changes. One administrator noted:

> "I'm much happier being the facilitator of change if it comes from a group of teachers. Individuals, I'd be pretty cautious about — that it isn't just some kind of bandwagon he's on for a few months. But if the whole department thought it through, and the department head is acting as the immediate leader, and if I agree with it, I suppose I'd have to be fairly enthusiastic, too."

The teachers in this science department have recognized that, although the educational institution resists individual modifications and innovations, collectively they may exert influence. Thus they have successfully modified provincial prescriptions for investigative student projects in terms of what is practically feasible and what will appeal to the students. Commitment to the CPR unit as a biology project is one result of this collective action.

Tensions in Teaching

My conversations with the teachers disclosed underlying tensions between the responsibilities and the rewards of teaching. These science teachers indicated that they view their primary responsibility to be that of effectively preparing students to succeed in their continuing education. They achieve this end by ordering the prescribed content of each course into a logical, testable sequence of objectives, by providing the resources and opportunities for learning and by evaluating students' achievement with respect to the objectives specified at the beginning of each unit. In addition, teachers consider themselves responsible for maintaining an accurate record of students' attendance and achievements, for preparing lessons to ensure that instruction proceeds smoothly and for keeping informed about current scientific topics and issues.

Unanimously, these teachers linked the rewards of teaching with the establishment of positive interactions with students. Rewards were not dependent upon student understanding or achievement in school science but upon student response, particularly enthusiasm or cooperation. One teacher put it this way: "I would much rather win a kid over to being [in school] than to learning all the ins-and-outs." And another teacher: "It's the quality of the interaction that is important. The secret is to know the course content very well, so that you can devote your energy towards interacting with the kids on a personal level. You might as well use video if all you're interested in is course content."

One teacher said he found difficulty in experiencing the "feeling" that he felt he had to generate in each class of the day. This teacher felt a personal responsibility to "appear enthusiastic, pleasant, in control (but not worried about it), and enjoying himself, even at the end of the day." For this teacher, every class is an encounter that holds the potential for establishing a rewarding relationship with students as individuals. It is not enough to lecture about science or to provide instruction in the techniques of science. There is a compulsion to reach out to students, and in so doing, to give meaning to the act of teaching.

The institutional context imposes the necessity for grading students' performance in order that students may be directed into appropriate channels of training and further education. This requirement involves the efficient processing of hundreds of students, all needing a series of grades for credits. Teachers are confronted with a demand for marks that is incompatible with a personal interpretation of science and its activities. Some teachers take it for granted that the high school curricula are bodies of information to be transmitted; others feel constrained to comply with this view. Assessment procedures are incompatible with a view of science as a human interpretive activity, yet they satisfy the demand for credentials.

Teachers are faced with a series of contradictions and conflicts. They seek personal interactions with students, yet are confronted daily by large groups. Some teachers rely on this group social interaction for their motivation and reward, while others find it perplexing and frustrating. The task of providing an education in science is overridden by the goals of supportive group membership, enthusiastic cooperation and teamwork. The occupational isolation of teachers prevents the sharing of teaching experiences and reflection on their meaning. In the effort to fulfil their perceived responsibilities, teachers have no time to pause. Their many responsibilities, perceived and actual, effectively remove teachers from active scientific inquiry, yet they are expected to keep abreast of new developments. For many science teachers, the experience of teaching involves a daily search for a reasonable balance between responsibilities and rewards.

Appendix A

The following course descriptions are found in the 1981-82 program guide for students:

Science 11 (3 credits)

For students who want to meet basic requirements for a high school diploma, Science 11 is a general science course that covers introductory units in biology, chemistry and physics. The course reflects the needs and interests of students.

Biology 10 (3 credits)

Biology 10 is an introductory biology course adapted from the BSCS program. Units of discussion include the microscope, the cell, classification systems and an overview of plant and animal life. Wherever possible, laboratory work is included.

Biology 20 (3 credits)

Biology 20 introduces and pursues in some depth four of the topics that constitute the biological sciences. The topics – cell division, genetics, evolution and ecology – are supplemented with discussions of developing research and appropriate laboratory work.

Biology 30 (5 credits)

The emphasis of the course is on biochemistry, molecular biology and physiology. Students will study units in energy conversions, human physiology, current biological problems and process development. Biology 30 is designed for students with a strong interest in biology or who will be entering a postsecondary school for which Biology 30 is a prerequisite.

Chemistry 10 (3 credits)

Chemistry is the study of compounds and the interaction of these compounds. Chemistry 10 deals with the structure of the atom, chemical formulae, balancing chemical equations, the mole concept and the mathematics of chemistry. Laboratory work accompanies the study of each of these topics. Mathematics basic to chemistry will be taught.

Chemistry 20 (3 credits)

Chemistry 20 examines the following topics: Chemistry 10 review, solution chemistry, the mathematics of solution chemistry, chemical bonding and organic chemistry. Laboratory work accompanies each of these topics.

Chemistry 30 (5 credits)

This course consists of a short review of Chemistry 20, followed by a study of chemical energy, oxidation-reduction reactions and acid-base reactions. The material studied is closely integrated with laboratory investigations. Optional units of interest are studied at the conclusion of the core material.

Physics 10 (3 credits)

Physics is the scientific study of the relationship among matter, energy, space and time. The topics are kinematics (motion of objects) and dynamics (the causes of motion of objects). Algebraic and graphical description, analysis of forces, and motion are prevalent in this course.

Physics 20 (3 credits)

The major emphasis in Physics 20 is the study of the laws of conservation of momentum and energy and the nature and propagation of waves.

Physics 30 (5 credits)

Physics 30 includes topics on light, magnetism, electricity and some atomic physics. An additional unit on mechanics deals with the interrelationships of force, mass and energy.

Ecology 20 (3 credits - Special Project Credit)

The course is restricted to Grade 11 or 12 students who have a keen interest in nature study and conservation. It provides an opportunity for students to study in some detail the structure and function of ecosystems, and the effects man has on them. World ecology will be included but Alberta ecology will be emphasized. There will be an opportunity to conduct field studies, enabling students to develop biological sampling techniques, followed by laboratory study and analysis of the sample.

Students will be expected to be able to work effectively, both on individual projects and in groups. Students who are considering Ecology 20 should discuss this possibility with their science teacher, the science department head, or a grade coordinator.

Appendix B

The following texts are purchased by students:

Biology 10:	James H. Otto and Albert Towle, *Modern Biology*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston of Canada, Ltd., Toronto, 1977.
Biology 20:	Biological Sciences Curriculum Study, *Biological Science: An Ecological Approach*, BSCS Green Version, Third Edition, Gage and Co. (Rand McNally), Agincourt, 1973. (To be phased out in January 1982 and replaced by Otto and Towle.)
Biology 30:	John W. Kimball, *Biology*, Third Edition, Addison-Wesley, Don Mills, 1974.
Biology – IBP:	W.A. Andrews *et al.*, *Biological Science: An Introductory Study*, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, 1980.
Chemistry 10:	F. Jenkins *et al.*, *ALCHEM 10*, J.M. LeBel Enterprises, Edmonton, 1979.
Chemistry 20:	F. Jenkins *et al.*, *ALCHEM 20*, J.M. LeBel, 1979.
Chemistry 30:	F. Jenkins *et al.*, *ALCHEM 30*, J.M. LeBel, 1979.
Physics 10:	Douglas Paul, Denny Peirce and Kenneth Stief, *Physics, A Human Endeavour, Unit 1, Motion*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston of Canada, Ltd., Toronto, 1976.
Physics 20:	Douglas Paul, Denny Peirce and Kenneth Stief, *Physics, A Human Endeavour, Unit 3, Energy and Conservation Laws*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston of Canada, Ltd., Toronto, 1976.

Physics 30:	F. James Rutherford *et al.*, *Project Physics, Unit 4, Light and Electromagnetism*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc., New York, 1975.
	F. James Rutherford *et al.*, *Project Physics, Unit 5, Models of the Atom*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc., New York, 1975.

The following texts are retained as class sets for reference use in school by students:

Biology 30:	Richard W. Wagner, *Environment and Man*, Second Edition, George J. McLeod, Ltd., Toronto, 1974.
Biology – IBP:	W.A. Andrews *et al.*, *Biological Science: An Introductory Study*, Prentice-Hall, Scarborough, 1980.
	William T. Keeton, *Biological Science*, Third Edition, W.W. Norton and Company, New York, 1979.
	Karon Arms and Pamela S. Camp, *Biology*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc., New York, 1979.
	Helena Curtis, *Biology*, Third Edition, Worth Publishers, New York, 1979.
Chemistry – IBP:	Ernest R. Toon and George L. Ellis, *Foundations of Chemistry*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston of Canada, Ltd., Toronto, 1978.
	Ernest R. Toon and George L. Ellis, *Foundations of Chemistry, Laboratory Experiments*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston of Canada, Ltd., Toronto, 1977.
Physics 30:	James T. Murphy and Robert C. Smoot, *Physics: Principles and Problems*, Charles E. Merrill Publishing Company, Columbus, Ohio, 1977.
	Robert Stollberg, Faith Fitch Hill and Marvin H. Nygaard, *Fundamentals of Physics*, Canadian Edition, Thomas Nelson and Sons (Canada) Limited, Don Mills, 1968.

VII. Science Teaching at Red Cliff High School

Lawson Drake

The School

Red Cliff High is a rural high school offering grades 10, 11 and 12. There are some 750 students, the majority of whom come from rural backgrounds. They are the children of farmers, fishermen and tradesmen. A small percentage have parents who are in the professions.

The school operates on a full-credit semester system, which means that students take three or four full credits during the first half of the year and three or four different full credits during the second half of the year. Most courses are offered in both semesters. The school day is divided into four 80-minute periods, beginning at 9:00 a.m. and ending at 3:30 p.m., with a one-hour break at noon. The teaching days are arranged on a six-day cycle. In the science subjects observed in this study, each class has one period per day per subject. Minimal graduation requirements stipulated by the Department of Education are 15 credits, of which four must be at the grade 12 level and not more than six at the grade 10 level. However, the school administration encourages all students to earn at least 18 credits over the three years and requires that at least one science course be taken in each year.

The classes observed were grade 10 science, grade 11 physics and grade 12 biology. A minimum of three periods of observation were made in each class. From tape recordings and written notes, a record of classroom observations was made and given to the teacher to be checked for accuracy. After receiving the teacher's agreement that the record of classroom observations was accurate and fair, one or more discussions were held with each teacher. Transcriptions of the classes and discussions were correlated with the record of observations. A second account of the classroom observations, expanded to include relevant excerpts from the discussions, was submitted to each teacher to be verified for accuracy and fairness.

Grade 10 Science: Learning by Discovery

This class of 27 students meets in their teacher's homeroom, an inside classroom with no windows. A periodic table of the elements hangs on one wall. There are no services and no demonstration table. The class is using *Introductory Physical Science* (*IPS*), an "academic" science course, in which, according to the school handbook, students perform a variety of laboratory experiments, and from these experiments draw conclusions that advance their program in the study of matter. Grade 9 academic science and a good mathematics background are listed as prerequisites for the course.

Mr. Bond, the teacher, was asked about the importance of *IPS* in the life of students at his school.

Bond: I would hope that students particularly interested in science would take it, and that's true in most cases. We have three science courses and *IPS* is supposed to be for those with the most aptitude for science. We can't stream the students, because they come to us from other schools; I think that the final choice is left to the student, but I understand that they receive some direction from their junior high school. We get some students with very little ability in math and it's very hard for them. I don't know just how much counselling they get.

Drake: What about their background in general science, coming up from the lower schools?

Bond: I wish they didn't have any! It creates problems for me. Students have the idea that science is a story, like history, that they can read. It's not a way of thinking for them.

Drake: In terms of a story, do they come with their facts straight? Do they know the story?

Bond: They know far too much. They know all about atoms, molecules, compounds, elements; whereas we have to start with simple things like measuring mass and volume, and the nature of measurement, which they have never considered before.

Different classroom activities characterized each of three periods I observed. At the beginning of the first, the teacher called the class to order and took attendance. Students interrupted to ask, "Do we go to lab today?" There seemed to be an eagerness to attend lab.

During the preceding period, the class had done an experiment on fractional distillation. The teacher asked the students to refer to their lab notes and results from the experiment and to their reports on which they had been working at home. He set up a table on the blackboard, listing properties of the three fractions obtained and asked the students to provide the data. Students who had not already done so were told to include this table in their reports. The teacher then questioned the class on entries to the table: "What is the evidence that fraction two is a mixture? That fraction one is pure and fraction three is pure?"

Students referred to the "intermediate" nature of some properties of fraction two. They had some difficulty in establishing the identity and/or purity of fractions one and three, however. Alcohol and water were the suspected substances, but densities and boiling points were not in agreement. The teacher said that the density determination might not be accurate and asked why. A student replied, "Because of the small sample size," and the teacher referred to the effect of error of measurement on small and large amounts.

The student's response, and the teacher's comments on it, serve to illustrate what this teacher saw as one of the principal challenges in teaching this course:

Bond: What I find most frustrating is teaching the students measurement and getting them to accept that a measurement is uncertain. It takes a couple of months before many will accept that. When they come in, numbers are exact and certain; it takes a lot of experience, a lot of class work, before they realize that a measurement is uncertain, that you have to think about these measurements before you can come to a conclusion.

Drake: What happens in their minds if they make two measurements and they don't agree?

Bond: When they first go into the lab they'll try to make them agree. A lot has to do with reading the instrument, and the book emphasizes estimation when making a measurement. For example, on a ruler, the smallest division has ten equal parts, and one can estimate between these. This is a completely new idea to them, but if you can get them to do that then I think that they start to believe in the uncertainty of measurement. If they just read to the nearest division which is there, then I don't think they will believe.

The teacher continued to discuss the results of the lab work. Having decided that fraction one was the alcohol, the teacher asked what kind of alcohol it was.

Students: Peroxide. Hydrogen peroxide. Methanol. Isopropanol. The density is fairly close, boiling point is close.

Student: Butanol?

Bond: Why not tertiary butanol?

Student: The melting point is way off.

Bond: Yes, it would have been a solid at room temperature.

Student: What two things are in fraction two?
Student: Very first boiling point curve should show two liquids, right?
Bond: Yes, and all subsequent data confirm this.

This kind of interchange led us to consider the way in which *IPS* is supposed to be taught.

Drake: The philosophy of this course is learning by discovery, right?

Bond: That's right. Something which should be said about the whole course is that the investigation approach, or the inquiry method, where the student finds things out for himself, is a lot of baloney. It should be obvious to anyone who thinks about it that the course is very structured and you're deciding what questions the students are going to ask and you're deciding exactly how they are supposed to find the answer.

Drake: Do you think that students require too much leading and too much direction?

Bond: There is certainly a temptation for a teacher to lead them too much and give them too many directions. We all like to get right answers.

Drake: Is it at all a question of impatience at the speed of the thing? Do you want to be getting on with other things while they are floundering around trying to find an answer on their own?

Bond: Well, I try not to push them too fast. This year I didn't even try to complete the course. We'd lost a few days through storms and I did not make the effort.

The teacher now assigned questions 17 and 18 from the end of chapter 5 and told the students, "You have five minutes." The remainder of the class period was spent analyzing a recent class test. Each question was dealt with in detail, and students were advised to take notes on "what you got wrong, because you will be having another test on this material." Points mentioned by the teacher included rounding off of numbers, recognition of significant digits, correct use of units, setting up ratios and plotting graphs. Following the analysis, the remainder of the period was spent making grade adjustments.

It was interesting to note that the analysis of test questions showed that students were having problems with the mathematics rather than with the scientific concepts involved. In an earlier discussion, on the content of junior high school science, the question had been raised as to whether a more rigorous approach could be taken in those grades, and this same teacher's reply was that it definitely could be. "They've got the math skills at grade 6 or 7; the math is very simple," he had said. But in view of the mathematical abilities displayed by the students in his class, the accuracy of his assessment is doubtful.

In the second lesson I observed, the class was given a reading assignment from the text. While the students read, the teacher moved through the room; no questions were asked of him. When the reading was completed, a question-and-answer session ensued. To initiate discussion, the teacher put the heading: "Petroleum (Crude Oil)" on the blackboard.

Bond: Petroleum is formed from what, Nathan?

Nathan: Dead plants and animals.

Bond: How did they become petroleum, Ann?

Ann: They died.

Students: Compressed.

Bond: Yes, by pressure of layers of rock above them.

Student: This is another way?

Bond: No, this statement tells how it happened. How do we extract it from the earth? The book explains how crude oil is found in porous rock. It is not a pool, but a sponge-like formation as in the diagram on page 72. Nonporous layers above and below keep the oil in place. How do we get it out, Nancy?

Nancy: A well.

Bond: It is not quite like a water well. How is it different?

Students: It gives oil. The bit is different. It's much deeper.

Bond: How do we lift it out of the well?

Student: Pumped.

Bond: Not all wells require a pump. How else may we get it? What is another source of pressure?

Student: Capillaries.

Bond: No. Nathan?

Nathan: Gas pressure.

Bond: Yes, gas pressure pushes oil to the surface.

Student: They use steam to loosen it up, too.

Bond: Yes, that's in older wells and sometimes they pump water down into the well to float the oil up. Then you learned about refining, which is an interesting form of fractional distillation. Page 7 [in the book] lists the different substances in petroleum, with their boiling points and densities. Don't need to know them all, but there are three main products. What are they, Darlene?

Darlene: Methane?

Bond: No.

Student: Fuel gas, gasoline and kerosene.

Bond: Yes, let's list these by properties. Tracey, what is the boiling point of methane?

Tracey: Minus 161.

Bond: So that will boil at 20°C, won't it? Even the butane will boil. Now, the middle fraction is gasoline, which also has numerous substances, all of which boil above 20°C. Why is this important?

Student: They would explode at room temperature.

Bond: No, they would evaporate, not explode. The third fraction is kerosene, the substance with the highest boiling point. Now another product is left behind when these are separated.

Student: Asphalt.

Bond: Yes, when you get to an oil refinery, whereas you used a test tube in fractional distillation, they use huge stills hundreds of feet high. What is asphalt used for?

Student: Paving roads.

Bond: Yes, mixed with sand and gravel.

This concluded the introduction to petroleum. The remainder of the period was to be spent in the laboratory.

Bond: Today we do a new experiment on separation. See page 74, "Separating a Solid from a Liquid." Put this definition in your notes: "Filtration: a method for separating insoluble solids from a liquid." And that's the method we'll use today in experiment 5.4, page 74. [Writes on chalkboard: Purpose: To separate a mixture of soluble and insoluble solids.] Look on page 75, you'll see the device used. It's called a filter paper, which you fold a certain way and place in a funnel. Soluble solid passes right through the filter paper. A solution will be clear, meaning that the dissolved substance is made of very tiny pieces, small enough to pass through the holes in the filter paper. Anything that won't dissolve won't pass through the filter paper. I will give you a substance which you should examine to see whether it is a mixture. Then you dissolve the substance. How will you recover the soluble substance?

Student: By evaporation?

Bond: Yes. The procedure is explained in your book. Just follow directions. What could prevent all the soluble substance from dissolving?

Patricia: May have a low solubility.

Bond: How can you be sure to dissolve it all?

Patricia: Add more water?

Bond: In the procedure there will be one small change; rather than use a clamp to support your test tube, put the test tube in the rack. [The teacher diagrammed the setup on the blackboard and students copied the diagrams.]

Student: What should be in our observations?

Bond: Well, we want to know if we have separated the substances. How can we tell? What did we do earlier?

Student: We tested flammability and stuff like that.

Bond: Yes, we call these the characteristic properties. What are they?

Students: Flammability, odour, colour, density, boiling point, melting point and freezing point.

Bond: We don't have time, and we don't want to identify all these. How do we test for flammability?

Several ideas were offered, none of them very useful. The teacher advised them to place a small amount of the substance on the end of a spatula, hold it in the flame of an alcohol lamp for a short time and then remove it from the flame and look for evidence of burning. After receiving a homework assignment for the next day, the class moved out to the science lab. This room is well equipped, with seven tables (each seating four students), each fitted with sink, cold water, gas and electricity. The room also contains a teacher's table and two movable tables, undertable storage (for alcohol lamps, evaporating dishes and heating stands), wall storage (for stock equipment), side tables around the room, a fume hood, a safety shower, an eyewash, a projection screen and a blackboard.

Students located and organized their apparatus. The teacher demonstrated how to fold filter paper, how to fill the funnel with water and how to exclude air bubbles from the space between the filter and funnel wall. He cautioned the class that measurements are approximate only. The students proceeded with the exercises; the teacher circulated, observing the procedure and answering questions. Some students worried about the residue in the test tube after pouring the contents onto the filter. The teacher reassured them that they need not get it all out. Students discussed their observations with one another. Some groups had difficulty demonstrating flammability of substance number one. One group did not hold the wet material in the alcohol flame long enough to ignite it; another group used a butane lighter rather than the alcohol lamp and mistook the accumulation of carbon from the flame as a sign of burning. One alert student noted the change in the colour of the flame when substance number two was tested and asked if this constituted flammability. She concluded that it did not.

Supervision of the technique was not easy. There was much spattering from evaporation dishes; students seemed to quite enjoy this, saying to one another, "Look at the snow!" as the white crystals spattered about. Also, there were accidents. One student had her long hair singed in the flame of a burner, hot evaporation dishes were picked up (and dropped), and a funnel was broken. Several safety-conscious students wore protective goggles. The exercise was done and clean-up completed before the period ended. I asked Mr. Bond how *IPS* fitted in with the rest of the science program.

Drake: What do you think of *IPS* in relation to the kinds of courses taught in grades 11 and 12?

Bond: It's a very good introduction to chemistry and physics.

Drake: The discovery approach is not emphasized in grades 11 and 12 to the same extent, is it?

Bond: That's right. In grade 11 chemistry we're back to the story book, which students find easier.

Drake: Is there a let-down from grade 10 to grade 11?

Bond: For a very small number of students, perhaps. For most of them it is more familiar — lecture, memorization, etc.

Drake: Is there a carry-over in lab skills?

Bond: Yes, definitely.

Drake: What about the content? You say it is a nice blend of chemistry and physics; could you see integration of life sciences in this course?

Bond: None at all. I think students have to have a basic understanding of measurement and experimentation before they can do anything and I think they already have quite a bit of experience in biology. Maybe there's a place for biology at the grade 10 level in another course.

The third and final session I observed began with the return of a test and its analysis. Mr. Bond next took up the homework assignment involving applications of their work on the separation of substances. A discussion with the students established their understanding of the problems and their solutions, and was summed up by Mr. Bond in these words: "So there are practical uses for the method of separation performed last day."

Bond: Today I'll do a demonstration. Here's a definition: "Chromatography: a method of separating coloured substances." Now, what is the purpose of experiment 5.7?

Students: To find out what black ink is made of. To separate coloured substances. [Teacher puts up a roll of chromatography paper.]

Bond: The book does not explain how this experiment actually works, but I know how to do it. This is special paper.

Student: Why?

Bond: It's absorbent. Make a point on the end of the paper and put the substance about one inch up from the pointed end. [The teacher applied the ink, but then found that this cylinder was too narrow for the paper strip; he found a wider jar.] O.K., now I lower the tip into the water. And the water is now rising on the paper.

Student: Capillary action!

Bond: You can do this for yourselves at home. Take home a strip of chromatography paper. There are all kinds of things you can test at home. Here are some things you can try. Food colouring.

Students: You mean, use that instead of ink? What about tinfoil?

Bond: I don't think it's necessary. Your book tells you it prevents evaporation of water.

Students: Can you use a jam jar? How long do you leave it?

Bond: Until you get separation. [The teacher notices that in the demonstration the paper had touched the side of the jar.] We have a problem here. [He readjusts the paper strip.]

Teacher and students then completed a list of coloured substances likely to be available in homes. The list included mustard, ketchup, iodine, mercurochrome, mascara, flower petals and leaves. Mr. Bond finished the lesson by giving the homework assignment, which was greeted by expressions of dismay. Students asked whether they should keep their notes, and Mr. Bond replied that because they would need to calculate densities, their notes would be useful. The students worked singly or in groups on this assignment. If they had questions, they came forward to the teacher's desk. Meanwhile, they were watching the progress of the chromatography demonstration. One student asked, "Will the material move right up to the top of the paper and off?" The query wasn't really answered. As the chromatogram proceeded, the students could see four colours in the black ink. No one asked why this should be or commented on the particular colours. There was some talk among the students about how colours combine to produce black. The matter was not pursued.

In going over the lesson we discussed its purpose:

Drake: You asked the students what the purpose of the experiment was. One said, "To find out what black ink is made of." Another said, "To separate coloured substances." The first student took a very specific view of what the experiment was about, but another student took the more general view that you were going to demonstrate a method for the separation of coloured substances, which to me is what chromatography is all about, and so I ask, do you find it common, in a course like this, for some students to go for the very specific, when, in fact, you may be trying to promote the general?

Bond: No, I haven't noticed that. I think I would say that when you begin an experiment most students feel that it has a very limited purpose. I think I would say that the majority of the class would think that it was to find out what black ink is made of. Perhaps when you have finished the experiment or done another similar experiment then they may be led to some general statement. That's certainly true in the first part of the textbook when they do experiments on the conservation of mass. I'm sure that when they are doing these they regard them as very specific questions but after they've done a number of them it is easy for them to see that there is a general conclusion they can come to.

Drake: So it would be fair to say, then, that students' perceptions do change as the course goes on.

Bond: Hopefully.

Drake: Yes, hopefully! And hopefully in this direction, from the specific to the general, which is the direction you want, I take it.

Bond: Yes, that would be a fair statement. That particular experiment doesn't add all that much to the course; it's interesting, students have fun doing it at home, but it doesn't really add that much in terms of general principles.

Drake: Would it be any more striking or any more interesting if it were done with plant pigments?

Bond: Every year I explain to students, according to directions in the textbook, how you should be able to separate pigments from plant leaves but none of the students has tried it yet. But neither have I.

Commentary

Three periods of observation of grade 10 science allowed me to see a number of teaching methods, as the following list indicates:

- Directed reading from the textbook, in the classroom
- Classroom discussion of the reading assignments
- Analysis of tests, with emphasis on teaching objectives as well as course content
- Preparation of students for laboratory experience
- The laboratory experience itself
- Postlaboratory follow-up: preparation of the report, discussion of data, comparison of results, etc.
- Classroom demonstration
- Discussion of assigned homework
- Solving problems in class

The physical environment of the classroom was stark, with little visual reference to the physical sciences except the periodic table of the elements. The laboratory, however, had the appearance and the appurtenances of an area where "science was done."

Mr. Bond said that he wanted to bring his students to an understanding of science not as a story but as a way of thinking, to emphasize calculations and the importance of measurement. He did not feel that the "discovery" method was really discovery, but rather a carefully programmed exposure to ideas, and he recognized certain danger areas:

> "Most of the things that the students are 'discovering' are the products of many fine minds and much hard work in the past. We devoted maybe one hour to 'discovering' the law of constant proportions, something which took many scientists many years to work out."

The discovery method can make science look too easy, but then, in his opinion, so can the "story-book" approach. He found that students came up from the junior high school, knowing "all about atoms, molecules, compounds and elements, whereas we have to start with simple things like measuring mass and volume, and the nature of measurement, which they have never considered before."

Are students turned off when they realize that there is a lot of careful work that has to be done to arrive at the information that is fed to them in a single sentence? Mr. Bond said, "Yes, in the past they've had colourful texts with diagrams of the nucleus, electrons, etc. It looks like it can all be learned in one page, whereas in five months in this course they never get to the nucleus." He is critical of the science taught in the earlier grades. "I don't think it's science at all. We give them a story, a history, but not science."

He said he would be the first to acknowledge, however, that the program has limitations. "There are no courses that are suitable for all students; streaming is required. Personally, I feel that we are wasting our time teaching students science, or telling many students stories, but obviously I am a minority in that view." But what of the contention that a knowledge of science is necessary for people to function as citizens?

> "People who say this don't really mean it. They don't really mean a knowledge of science, because if you want a knowledge of real science you have to take a course like *IPS*, in my opinion. What these people are referring to are story books in the lower grades, in junior high school. They even have 'science' in elementary school! And in university I'm sure that there are lots of story-book courses."

Grade 11 Physics: The University Stream

The school handbook describes this course as an academic course worth one credit towards graduation. It is not a required course, but many students in the "university stream" elect this course. The handbook describes the course as follows:

> "Physics deals generally with the study of matter and energy and their interrelationships. More specifically the. . . course covers the topics of measurement, motion, work, energy, heat and the kinetic theory of gases. The course includes a laboratory program which is a major part of the course, consisting of labs which are designed to reinforce course theory. [The course] is designed as a course for university preparatory and/or technical students, the only prerequisite is a good background in math problem-solving logic."

Two classes were observed. One class with 23 students (with roughly equal numbers of boys and girls) was described by the teacher as the "high achievers"; the other, with 25 students (about 75 per cent boys) was not considered by the teacher to be of the same academic calibre as the high achievers. Both classes covered the same work during the time I was in the school. The most noticeable difference in the teaching of these classes was that the teacher led the second class through many of the problems, whereas the first class was left much more on its own in working out solutions.

The physics laboratory is a small room furnished with eight tables, each designed to accommodate four students. There is a demonstration table at the front of the room and electricity is supplied to all tables. The teacher pointed out that the nominal capacity of 32 students caused overcrowding and that usually not more than 25 students used the room at any one time.

When I began my visits, both classes were studying the mathematical analysis of linear motion, a topic that had been introduced two days previously. The first five pages of chapter 5 in the text had been assigned for reading, with two or three questions from the text to be answered. In the period immediately preceding the observation period, this material had been discussed and the six formulae variously relating distance, time, initial, average and final velocities, and acceleration had been explained.

When the class of high achievers had been called to order, the teacher announced that the formulae given out the day before would be reviewed, but that first a question sheet would be distributed. Students were advised to try to answer the questions from their memory of yesterday's work, and to go to their notes only when they were unable to recall an answer. Students were allowed 15 minutes to work on this; during this time the teacher circulated, overseeing and giving aid when asked. Students asked about choice and application of the correct formula and about how the units combine. At the end of the working period the teacher called on individual students for their answers to questions on the handout.

The first and second questions of the handout concerned linear motion. The teacher said she wished to establish in students' minds the ideas that motion in a straight line might be uniform or accelerated. The fact that motion is relative to some other frame of reference did not appear to be stressed, while the constancy of uniform motion was stressed. The third question concerned symbols used in writing the formulae. Students were required to write the meaning of, and to give the units of measurement for, each symbol.

The differences between velocity and speed were noted but not stressed, and acceleration was accepted as marking a change in speed, either positive or negative. This seemed to be an accurate reflection of the textbook emphasis on these matters. Several students inquired about the relationship between negative acceleration and deceleration. The teacher said she was confident that the students had a grasp of these ideas and that the stated objective of the day's lesson was for students "to gain control of these formulas, to memorize them (if that's not a dirty word) in the hope that a little bit further along, they can apply them in different situations."

When I raised the question, "Will mastery of the formulas lead to a better understanding of linear motion, or should an understanding of linear motion lead them to develop the formulas?" the teacher's response was, "Well, when the formulas were introduced, I said, 'Here's one set for uniform motion; here's another set which will cover accelerated motion.' They are being set up for something which is coming." Upon further questioning, the teacher said that this day's lesson was not developed in response to a perceived need of this particular class; it was, instead, one of a standard sequence of lessons that experience has shown to be useful and effective in teaching this material.

When asked to rate student interest in this part of the course, the teacher, Mrs. Able, replied:

> "It's difficult even to rate their interest in physics generally. This class really goes for marks; whether the interest is in the topic or in the marks, I don't know. They are keen, but it's hard to judge the motivation. A lot of it may just be a means to an end."

When asked to give a personal rating of the importance of linear motion as a topic in the physics course, the teacher replied that the treatment of the topic was very mathematical; the students got a lot of it again in their mathematics through graphing, and so on.

Able: We are using a lot of tools, like the sine, for example, without going into the mathematical whys and wherefores, and when students complain to me about a lot of new things in physics, I try to explain this to them.

Drake: Does this provide an opportunity to show correlations between two disciplines such as math and physics?

Able: Yes, and having taught math for 10 years, perhaps I tend to overdo it. Students' problems are mainly with the math. Math skills need to be reviewed constantly, if students are to see appropriate applications. For example, to put metres over seconds and make a fraction just the same as by putting 2 over 3. Perhaps I'm putting my biases forward, but transposing a formula is a skill which they need if they are going to be adept at problem solving. The earlier they can get working with these things, the easier they'll find it.

Mrs. Able also pointed out that the Department of Education did not provide any specific guidelines for presenting the course in grade 11 physics. She relied for guidance on a course outline prepared by a colleague some years previously.

When the analysis of the handout sheets was completed, the students were assigned problems from the text. Mrs. Able led the class in solving the first few problems, questioning the students as to the formula required and the known and unknown elements in it. She then worked through the problem on the blackboard, emphasizing the importance of getting the units correct. "Your answer is not right," she told the class, "unless your units are right."

Having provided this model of solving problems, the teacher assigned further problems for work in class. The students were told, "Read the problem to find out what you're looking for and try to match that up with the appropriate formula." Mrs. Able moved through the room checking students' progress, offering help, answering questions and continuing to emphasize the choice of appropriate formulae and getting the units right. If a particular problem gave a number of students difficulty, she moved to the chalkboard to explain and work through the problem, while students copied the solution into their notes.

These events were the standard feature of the presentation of this topic. During my second observation, the class received a corrected test that covered vectors, force and motion. Correct solutions to the test questions were projected on the screen, and as the teacher analyzed each problem, the students corrected their errors. Later we discussed these events:

Drake: The sense of direction I get is that teaching physics is to provide a lot of problem solving, in the process of which, or in preparation for which, you provide a lot of examples. You work along with students, to show them the thought processes and the actual steps which have to be carried out to give them a sense of how to solve the problems and what the logic of the problem is.

Able: That seems fair.

Drake: So, why have you decided to do it in this way?

Able: That has evolved, I guess, as much as anything, from what I had to go by in terms of guides and outlines. That was how it was done previously, so. . . .

Drake: Would it also have been the way you were taught?

Able: Yes. The first year I had the course I sort of floundered around a lot looking for direction and guidelines, and one thing I did was to go back to my old college notes and I found that the way other teachers dealt with the course was very similar to what I did back then.

Drake: We are dealing with a topic of physics here — motion — which lends itself very well to this approach. Do you see physics mainly as a matter of problem solving, and do students acquire a view of physics as mainly solving problems? What appreciation do they have for theory and for descriptive aspects of physics?

Able: The earlier chapters in this text would give the impression that there is a lot of problem solving, but as they work into the grade 11 chapters, and for sure in grade 12, the theory becomes more prominent. The text becomes more theoretical, with fewer practical problems, as they get on into it.

Drake: Do you notice any change in students' attitudes toward physics as the emphasis shifts?

Able: Not to a great extent, I guess. It's an even split. Some really enjoy the problem work and don't take to the theory questions; written answers will be as brief as they can make them. Then there are others for whom the math aspect is not the first love; they see beyond that to get a kind of overall picture. I can't say one more than the other.

Later in this session the teacher introduced a new topic by assigning text material for classroom reading. While students scanned this material, the teacher wrote on the blackboard: "A body whose speed is increasing at a steady rate is considered to be undergoing.positive acceleration. A body whose speed is decreasing at a steady rate is considered to be undergoing negative acceleration."

Students copied these statements while the teacher supplemented them by pointing out that another term for negative acceleration is deceleration. The teacher also raised the distinction between speed and velocity, pointing out that speed denotes distance travelled in unit time, whereas velocity is a vector, denoting speed and direction. Students also copied notes on positive acceleration and on the nature and value of "g." The students were then directed to problems on falling bodies and, as previously described, were led to choose formulae, identify variables and work towards a solution.

In our discussion of the lesson, I asked Mrs. Able whether the ready acceptance of values for acceleration due to gravity, and the like, was surprising:

Able: Unfortunately, no. It frightens me, sometimes, how docile they really are.

Drake: Can you judge where the students place the major emphasis; is it on the right answer or is it on the method of working towards the right answer? Do you think that they see the formulas which you give them as the key to reaching the right answer or as an embodiment of the reasoning inherent in the solutions of any particular problem?

Able: I would have to say that they see the formula as a tool to the right answer; it's the right answer which is the big thing.

Drake: In your teaching, how do you see yourself in relation to this question?

Able: Again, I'd say I'd like to think I am getting to the logic, to the reasoning behind it, but I'm probably not.

Drake: I am interested in whether certain classic classroom demonstrations are performed. For example, the movement of a coin and a feather through an evacuated tube?

Able: We don't do that one; we observe the fall of coins, as described on page 86 of the text.

Drake: In the text, the discussion of the motion of falling bodies is introduced with a description of Galileo's thought experiment. What, if anything, would students make of a thought experiment, and how would they relate that to his actual experiment of dropping various massive bodies?

Able: I'm not sure how to answer that. However, later in the course, when the contributions of Galileo and Newton have been recognized, students go to the library to prepare some biographical detail on those men. Whether that means much to

> them, I don't know. We don't really do the history the justice we could in many areas. The library has filmstrips which help the students in this area.

The third observation period involved laboratory work. In this course, laboratory exercises are done in conjunction with the class work, the exercises being chosen from those recommended in the text. Upwards of two class periods may be spent on a laboratory exercise; the experiment is first explained to the students, then performed in the lab and, after it is written up, the data are compared and the experiments are analyzed.

After the class was called to order in the classroom, the teacher directed the students to the lab manual. The teacher proceeded with an introduction to the experiment "Graphical Analysis of Motion."

> "The problem you're attempting to answer is: How can the motion of a body be analyzed? In your answer you will have to summarize the procedure and the conclusion. You have the theory from Friday; 'Gathering the Data,' page 36, is where you will begin today. What is the period of vibration of the timer? Not the number of dots per second, but the time to make one dot, 0.01 to 0.03 seconds. Hopefully the timers have the period marked on them from when you used the timer last. Your name and the timer period should be on the box the timer was in. When you go to the lab, find your own timer and you won't have to determine the period all over again. Otherwise, you will have to go back and measure the period. How to do this is explained in the lab manual — move the tape through the timer for a measured three seconds, count the dots on the tape, divide the three seconds by the number of dots to find the time for one dot. Repeat three times and take an average value."

In this vein the teacher continued on through the rest of the exercise, emphasizing points of procedure and how to tabulate and interpret data, particularly with reference to preparing a speed-time graph. The teacher then reviewed the list of equipment needed, referred again to correct identification of the timer and advised students to gather their data as quickly as possible so as to have time to analyze the tape and prepare the graph.

The class adjourned to the laboratory where, following the teacher's earlier instruction, students acquired the necessary equipment to perform the exercise. The class was organized into teams of two students, with two teams to each laboratory table. Space for the most effective performance of the experiment was limited, but the teacher felt that using the smaller space was preferable to having teams wait in line to use the longer surface afforded by the demonstration table.

The strings by which the 200-gram masses were attached to the cart had been precut, and, as the equipment was assembled, I noted that the strings were too short, for when the carts were drawn back far enough to allow an adequate run of the cart along the table top, the 200-gram mass was 80 to 90 centimetres from the floor, instead of the recommended 30 centimetres. Thus, when the mass struck the floor during the actual experiment, the cart had neared the edge of the table and had little or no space left in which to decelerate.

Most teams were able to assemble the equipment with little difficulty. There were some minor problems with releasing the carts correctly and in having the carts "run true." No one complained about the length of the strings. No team felt it necessary to determine the period of the timer used, and all relied on the value accompanying their timer.

Heeding the teacher's earlier admonitions, the class quickly performed the experiment, put away the equipment and went to work on their data. The teacher circulated, observing progress, making suggestions and providing assistance when requested to do so. Questions related to calculation of "t" (number of dots x 10 x period of the timer), the method of determining "s" and the significance of having fewer values from their data than seemed to be required by the table in the text. Most speed-time graphs, when plotted, showed only accelerated motion, so that students were unable to select points of zero acceleration and negative acceleration. Later, I discussed the lab with Mrs. Able:

Drake: What do you see as the correct place of the laboratory in the course overall?

Able: The way that the text and the lab manual put it together I find works better than the *IPS* approach where they do the lab and then go to the text to build up the theory. I like this way of giving the theory in class, then repeating it in the lab manual and saying, "You are going to test this." Reference to the textbook is good reinforcement of theory, and I think reinforcement of the theory is better than the discovery method.

Drake: Having said that, do you feel that labs really teach or demonstrate procedures in the real world of science? Are they a relevant experience in that sense?

Able: In the real world of science? I would hope that they do. In chapter 3 we spend a good deal of time on dependent variables and independent variables, on what you measure and what you control and general experimental technique. I hope that they are getting an appreciation for accuracy and are learning techniques of use in the field of science.

Drake: What happens if the labs don't generate the data they are expected to? Does that ever happen?

Able: Oh yes. Earlier on, they just report what they find. But as the course goes on, and at the grade 12 level, since they are working toward an anticipated result, they should in their conclusion give per cent error and explain how close to the mark they came, and look for reasons [for discrepancies].

Drake: How would a student transfer this to the perceived situation of a scientist doing an experiment where he doesn't know the answer? Does this make students more or less sceptical of the results of real scientific work? Or do they relate their failure to get the "right answer" to vagaries of equipment or their own ineptitude?

Able: More the latter; I think that they probably feel that things are so absolute that if they are not getting the density of water to be one gram per cubic centimetre, then it must be their fault, they're doing something wrong.

Drake: And they don't think that a technologist, a scientist in the lab, would make the same errors?

Able: A lot of them really have no idea of how precise a technologist in a lab would be, and certainly the only shot at working toward an answer they don't know is in grade 10, and they have certainly matured a lot by grade 11. If they were working toward discovering something, they would be better geared for it.

Drake: In both grade 10 and 11 there is a good deal of "dry lab" preparation, and you attach a good deal of importance to this — that students should go into lab mentally prepared for what they are going to find, rather than have it sprung on them.

Able: Yes.

Drake: Do they like the labs? Girls more or less than boys?

Able: I find the girls at this age a lot neater, and the boys seem to be at an awkward stage. Girls have a little better skills, organization skills for sure. As for liking it or not liking it, there is no difference that I can see.

Observation of three periods of instruction in this course certainly bore out the significance of the statement in the school handbook that "the only prerequisite is a good background in math problem-solving logic." How adequate this background is for many of the students may be inferred from the emphasis the teacher placed on teaching simple mathematical skills.

Much of the teacher's previous experience was in teaching mathematics, and she more than once confessed to a possible "math bias." She provided this description of her objectives for the grade 11 physics curriculum:

Able: I'm pro sciences and I'd like them [the students] to get an exposure or a science background in high school if they can, because according to my way of thinking, it is important that they do get this background. That would be one objective. Another thing I would like to see done, and I know we're fairly short on it, is sort of seeing where physics fits into the overall picture and how they can use it later. I don't know what kind of a "PR" job is needed. Physics usually. . . each year I'll get one or two students who will come back and say, "I was scared; I always heard it was so hard and I'm glad I took it because I didn't find it that way." I don't know what we can do to dispel that idea because, with all the new technology and so forth, physics is becoming more and more necessary for students.

Drake: Is it a question, then, of really relating it to the world they live in?

Able: I think so, but I don't know how. I don't know where it has gotten this mystique, that you don't consider physics unless you're. . . .

Drake: Marked for university?

Able: Yes. It's too bad, really. I'm teaching grade 10 and registration is coming up for next year, and there will be all kinds of questions when they are told that they have to take a science in grade 11, and that the choices are chemistry, biology, physics, agriculture and home economics. They don't have any problem with home ec or agriculture, or probably with biology; the questions always are, "What's chemistry?" and "What's physics?" and to say that in chemistry you do this, this and this and in physics you do that, that and that. . . . I don't know how, other than getting into it, they will really find out what it's like.

Drake: Are there things you'd like to do, but don't do, and why?

Able: I'd sound complacent if I said "No," wouldn't I? One thing I'd like to think they are learning beyond physics is some skill at organizing their thoughts, whether in writing a lab report or whatever. A certain amount of self-discipline, which goes with any study but with science in particular, the regular keeping up with the work, that could stand them in good stead at any time.

Commentary

The presentation of this course is not just the reflection of this teacher's mathematics bias. She is teaching physics as she was taught physics, and as some of her colleagues teach physics. She follows the text closely because the text gives order and direction to activities of the class. She uses the textbook illustrations and demonstrations and chooses laboratory exercises from among those recommended by the text. There is not a lot of innovation from year to year. Her strategies are straightforward, and may be summarized as follows:

1. Introduce a small amount of theory, with some demonstrations, but with chalkboard and overhead projector as major classroom "tools."
2. Show the application of the theory through problems, and develop the problem-solving logic through emphasis on formulae and units.

3. Drill for learning, using textbook problems and additional problems and questions by handout, then reinforce the theory with a laboratory exercise and move on to the next small amount of theory.

Grade 12 Biology: Teaching by Objectives

Grade 12 biology is the academic course in biology. The student handbook offers this description:

> "The chief topic of the course is the Animal Kingdom. Invertebrate and vertebrate organisms are studied with emphasis on evolutionary relationships existing among the various phyla. The last section of the course deals with the development of man and various aspects of human biology as time permits."

The textbook, *Biological Science*, by Gregory and Goldman, is used for both grade 11 and grade 12 biology. Grade 12 biology is essentially zoology; cell biology and botany are covered in grade 11.

I met the class first in the biology laboratory, a room with desks (each seating four persons) arranged around the sides of the room, leaving a large open space in the centre. The room also contained a teacher's table, a preparation table with a sink, a growth chamber (climaterium) not in use and two aquaria. Compound microscopes were available from wall storage cabinets. Teaching aids included plant and animal charts, meiosis and mitosis models and a selection of microscope slides. Dissecting trays and kits of instruments were present in the storage space of each desk. A project room and a greenhouse were accessible from the laboratory.

During my first visit, the class was engaged in dissection of the frog, using preserved and injected leopard frogs. The teacher handed out the specimens, and students resumed dissecting at the point where they had stopped the day before. The system to be dissected first on this day was the digestive system. Students worked from a manual, with the textbook and a handout diagram of the bullfrog for assistance. A wall chart of the frog dissection was also available. The teacher circulated to give directions. Students seemed to prefer to use instruments more than their fingers. There was a good deal of comparison between dissecting teams. The manual's instructions related to pithed frogs, which the students had not seen, rather than to preserved material. The class did not observe live frogs. Some students made notes, but there were no lab drawings made. One group tried to study lung structure, using a dry lump of tissue on a slide. They had difficulty interpreting what they saw.

As dissection of the digestive system was completed, the teacher gave some general instructions on how to proceed with the circulatory system. He noted that the manual was deficient in detail and that both the textbook and the handout would be useful supplementary material. Above all, he emphasized that patience and painstaking care were called for in this phase of the work, as the vessels were traced from the *truncus arteriosis* outwards. The students took care to wash out the specimen and clean up their instruments at the end of the lab period.

The next meeting with this class took place in the biology classroom, which has no furnishings to distinguish it particularly as a place where biology is taught. The subject of the day's lesson was the vertebrate classes Reptilia and Aves. The class began with the teacher distributing an objective sheet. The teacher first went briefly through it, suggesting what might be required by some of the objectives and indicating which ones would be supplemented by films, and so on. He then proceeded to deal in detail with the objectives, beginning with the textbook page on which reptilian characteristics are presented in chart form. The teacher prepared a blackboard listing of these characteristics and elaborated on each:

Aspen: Right off the bat we can think of exceptions [to reptiles having two pairs of limbs]. What are they?

Student: Birds?

Student: Snakes.

Aspen: Yes, no legs on snakes; maybe tiny bulges sometimes. Recall from yesterday's film the modifications of sea turtles' limbs for swimming. [Teacher writes on the board, "Heart imperfectly divided into 4 chambers 2 auricles."] What is another word we use instead of auricles?

Student: Atrium.

Aspen: Yes, pluralized, Donald?

Donald: Atria.

Aspen: Yes, two atria and an imperfectly divided ventricle. I'll come back to this in a little while. For the crocodilians the division of the ventricle is complete, with important implications for the efficiency with which the organism functions.

He continues to write: "Respiration always by lungs." Students make no comment. Then he writes:

> "Body temperature variable. Fertilization internal. Compare with amphibians as to extent to which they are adapted to life on land."

Aspen: What were some of the shortcomings that amphibians had to contend with, Chris? [No immediate response. Then, under prodding, these comments emerge:]

Students: Suitability of limbs for life on land was not great. Eggs had to have enough water. Reptiles lay eggs on land. Lung had to be assisted by skin respiration. Skin of amphibians had to keep moist.

In this manner the lesson continued. The students were led, by questioning, to an appreciation of the necessary adaptations to a life on land. Characteristics of groups studied earlier and references to the film seen the previous day were part of the interchange. When Mr. Aspen came to the third objective on the objective sheet, he set a deadline for the required essays on dinosaurs and bird migration. The 200 to 250 word essay on characteristics of birds that enable them to fly was to be done to the students' own satisfaction and retained for exam purposes, not handed in. The sources for the essay on dinosaurs were articles in *Scientific American* and *National Geographic*, and the teacher asked for information in three specific areas: (1) a system of classification suggesting relationships, (2) a comment on the pros and cons of warm-blooded dinosaurs and (3) some possible reasons for the extinction of dinosaurs. The teacher advised the students to expect to find numerous theories, none of which would be satisfactory to all critics.

The class worked through the objective sheet, making notes as required. In dealing with reptile classifications, Mr. Aspen spoke of how authorities could disagree over the number of living orders. He wrote the following on the board:

Rhynchocephala — tuatara
Chelonia — turtles, tortoises
Squamata — lizards and snakes
Crocodilia — crocodiles, alligators, gavial, caimans.

Student: What are these last ones?

Aspen: Smaller members of the crocodilians. There's an article here in the September 1978 *National Geographic*, "A Bad Time to be a Crocodile." I'll just refer to a couple of items here. Not bad pictures, Brian, of the various kinds. [Reading] "They are not very cuddly; they don't have big eyes like baby seals. What's happening worldwide is that many of these species are near extinction." [He reads further from the article, referring to the use of crocodile skin and the wanton hunting of these creatures, showing some of the illustrations. He notes the strong sense of territoriality and shows a picture of a frog being eaten.]

Student: But doesn't the frog have poison?

Aspen: Toxins of frogs vary from species to species and may do little more than spoil their taste.

Students: Aren't they eaten by birds?

Aspen: Perhaps just after hatching.

The pattern of classroom activity was unchanged during the third observation period, described by the teacher as a clean-up session. His plan was to deal with questions at the end of the text chapter on birds, to show an introductory film on mammals, then distribute an objective sheet and initiate a discussion on it. This is exactly what happened. In dealing with the text questions the teacher first ensured that he received a satisfactory answer, after which he encouraged some free discussion or took the opportunity to introduce some novel idea. In our discussion of these classroom events, the following points emerged:

Drake: What is the purpose of the objective sheet?

Aspen: It outlines what I want to achieve in a particular chapter. It gives students clues to my expectations of them in the various chapters. And it is a control on myself so that tests and evaluations will be related to what was done in the classroom. I do a reasonably good job of that. The first of these purposes [to provide an outline of the chapter] is the most important. I encourage that as a bare minimum and encourage the outside reading as enrichment or an application of science not presented in the text.

Drake: So, the objective sheet takes them back to the text?

Aspen: My objectives tend to be fairly close to the book, supplemented by outside reading, whether from *Time, Newsweek, Scientific American, National Geographic* or whatever. Those are things which in many cases don't relate to what is covered in the text and which will take the students beyond the text; they are pretty well limited to things I have read and found interesting. However, I am basically guided, in objective formation, by my own sense and experience as well as by the text emphases. There is no direct influence from the Department; they suggest chapters only.

Drake: In the classroom you prefer a free-wheeling atmosphere. Do you have any tricks for encouraging dicussion?

Aspen: One criticism over the years has been that I do not allow enough discussion.

Drake: Do the students feel inhibited, or what?

Aspen: No, it's a matter of them feeling that I talk too much. I don't have the facility to develop that interest which becomes contagious and leads to all-out discussion. That depends, of course, on the students and on the topic. If I'm teaching genetics, things are much livelier.

Drake: Do you have any special techniques for using films in your teaching?

Aspen: Well, of course, the big advantage of films is that they show living things in action in a way that textbooks can't do. I try to use them as a springboard from which a text chapter is developed.

Drake: Are there other strategies you wish to mention?

Aspen: I think that in terms of my effectiveness (or lack of same) in the classroom, my personality contributes more than any particular body of information or the value of my instructional methodology.

Commentary

While the text and its accompanying laboratory manual are at the core of the course, Mr. Aspen makes considerable use of outside reading materials, mostly magazines. The presentation of the course is descriptive rather than experimental, qualitative rather than quantitative. The use of an objective sheet by Mr. Aspen gives order and direction to the classroom presentation, but does not inhibit digressions as appropriate themes come up. Mr. Aspen is also vice principal and hockey coach, so that his relationship to the students is somewhat different from that of some other teachers. The excerpts from the observation record give a good picture of laboratory and classroom events during the observation period. Inasmuch as the presence of a researcher in a classroom is a powerful determinant in the presentation of any course, and in particular recognition of this teacher's closing statement, this commentary deals primarily with aspects of the teacher's philosophy and outlook that have not been specifically highlighted in the record of classroom events.

Drake: Let me ask you, what are your major objectives in teaching grade 12 biology?

Aspen: I start on the basis of a fairly divergent group in this class, students with varying commitments to biology as a subject area. So I try to provide two sets of objectives – one set for the minority who want a basic introduction to biology which will enable them to carry on in a biology program later, not only not at any disadvantage, but with a few ideas about biology which will lead to a commitment. Secondly, to meet what I see as the needs of the majority – those who will take no more biology – I try to provide an appreciation of the majesty, the extreme complexity and the order that exists in a living organism, with an attempt to provide students with a very logical and natural acceptance of the existence of a supreme being, in terms of things where they are today, that our planet is still being very much directed by some superior force.

Drake: Does that give you any trouble with evolutionary theory?

Aspen: It doesn't for me.

Drake: Does it for the students? Do you try to relate the two?

Aspen: I do, without intimidating, or making people who find a view of evolution rather distasteful, too uncomfortable. I believe very strongly in evolution, but in a God-directed one; I don't at all see why the three to six billions of years during which life is thought to have existed should not reflect God's way of increasing the complexity of the whole planet.

Drake: On this whole theme, do the students evince much interest in it?

Aspen: I don't know whether they come into my class feeling that way beforehand, but I think that the majority of them leave feeling that way.

Drake: So it's one of your objectives, at least to awaken this idea in their minds?

Aspen: Without intimidating those for whom it is going to be distasteful, and it's difficult at times to get that as a compromise. So, as to a very broad general objective, it would be that kids appreciate the complexity of life, to maybe relate that to our Christian heritage in terms of life in this province. A little more specifically, it would be to allow youngsters who will never take more biology to be a little more appreciative, a little more aware, of some of the issues they're going to have to deal with as voting citizens in our society.

Drake: How about biology as a science; do you try to make that part of your presentation?

Aspen: I think I do. I'm not sure I'm successful in providing kids with techniques of experimentation or of taking accurate data, and so on. I don't think I achieve that as thoroughly as I should.

Drake: Much biology is not quantitative in the sense that physics and chemistry are. Do you think that students therefore see biology as a soft science, and do they recognize its close relation to the physical sciences?

Aspen: I certainly try, at the start of my course each year, to indicate that if they are going into science after high school, they must have chemistry, physics and math. I don't impress that on them on a daily basis, though.

Something which I do try to stress is an understanding of our system of classification, the importance of Latin names when no one learns Latin any more. I spend a good deal of time on that – the need, the historical development, why it has ended up as it is, and so on.

And something else we have not seen during the observation but which I try to do a lot of is attempting to relate the study of biology to some of the moral, but not necessarily religious, aspects of biology. For example, pest control policies, implication of new technologies in medicine, the patenting of seed stock, and so on. I try to address matters like these in a general way, to get students to understand that these things are the stuff of biology and are important issues for the citizens of Canada in the late 20th century, and that they should have at least a minimum understanding of biology in order to cope with them and with the social and political issues. I don't know how well I do it, but I do address it and feel that it is an important part of the study of biology.

VIII. Lavoisier: Science Teaching at an École Polyvalente

Pierre-Léon Trempe

When I was asked to participate in this project, the prospect was an exciting one. At last, science teaching was to be looked at from the inside, from the perspective of the actors themselves as they live their daily lives. This, in contrast to the somewhat myopic vision of the outside observer who meticulously gathers facts to feed into a computer.

For a while, I hesitated, and for good reason. This was a risky business. It would be necessary to trade the security of preformed hypotheses, of refined instruments, of rigorous statistical analysis . . . for the insecurity of the unexpected.

Would I find something significant? Something other than trivia? Above all, something of help to science education?

I did, however, have two questions in mind: how is science taught, and why is it so taught?

So I met teachers and students in their own world — the classroom, the cafeteria, the halls ("agora"). I watched, questioned, listened. And progressively, I perceived a pervasive malaise — difficult to identify, until one day it all seemed to become clear. This malaise, it seemed to me, was clearly one of alienation. Was I right? You be the judge.

The Context of the Study

This research took the form of a case study — a fairly recent phenomenon, at least in education, particularly in Québec. Case studies, as conducted by anthropologists and others for many years, normally rely on formal and informal interviews, personal documents and, most important, the technique of participant observation. In this study we used all the above techniques, which complement each other. Using only one technique would not have produced the same quality of results.

Methodology

A study of this sort depends largely on correct procedure for its success. I therefore prepared a short paper setting out the purposes and methods of the study and sent it to the teachers involved. This document was the spearhead of the study, so to speak. It had to be drafted with great care, and because it was used to set the stage for the study, I reproduce a part of it here to indicate what I said to the teachers at the outset about my intentions:

> "I should make it quite clear that my purpose and that of the other researchers working on the study is not to produce a comparative study of the various situations, nor to *judge* them – still less to judge the various parties involved in them – but to *understand* as much as possible about the situations and what has made them as they are. You will probably reply, quite rightly, that it is very difficult to keep from judging. I agree this is so, and I am no better than the next man at resisting the tendency. I can assure you, however, that I will do everything possible to abstain from passing judgement, and use my resources primarily to understand as much, and as thoroughly, as possible.
>
> "By this point you will probably be wondering what exactly this research is aimed at. Two questions will provide the focus for this study. They are closely related: *What learning situations are actually offered to students in the sciences?* and *What factors have a decisive influence on these learning situations?*
>
> "Let me clarify by illustrating each of these two basic questions with subsidiary questions. In connection with the first: What set of objectives does the teacher actually pursue in class? What material does he or she actually use in his or her work? What teaching strategies does the teacher actually use to achieve his or her objectives? What does the teacher actually emphasize? and so on.
>
> "In connection with the second: What constraints (imposed by students, their parents, superiors, the Ministry, and so forth) must the teacher work with? What are the working conditions (rooms, timetables, regulations, availability of material and so forth)? What support does the teacher have (education consultant, monitor, col-

leagues, university teachers, specialized library, and so forth)? With what types of clientele does the teacher work? What room to manoeuvre does the teacher have, or in other words, precisely how independent is he or she? What does the teacher want to ask for? Does he or she perceive science teaching otherwise than as it is really practised? If so, how does he or she perceive it, and what prevents the teacher from implementing his or her perception? and so forth.

"How shall I go about gathering this information? I must make plain from the outset that a case study cannot be planned initially with the same precision as a traditional descriptive study, with its standard questionnaires, statistical analyses, and so forth. This is a *field* study, such as anthropologists carry out. Its exact procedure unfolds as the study progresses: hypotheses occur along the way, and appropriate research methods are chosen to suit them. Nothing is eliminated a priori, so that if an event of interest (as regards the study) occurs, attention is directed to it, and time is taken to examine it thoroughly. Unlike traditional studies, which deal only with general trends and whatever is generally applicable, the case study deals with singular events, so as to grasp the underlying truth. In this type of research, the important thing is not to find what is similar, but to try to understand what *is*."

I sent the document, from which the preceding extracts are drawn, with a covering letter to the director of the school board governing the target polyvalente. He discussed the matter with his staff, including the principal of the polyvalente, and agreed to my request. The director, his staff and the principal met with me briefly and we soon reached a complete agreement. They all showed great interest in the study. The principal undertook to call a meeting of his science staff some weeks later (in mid-June) so that I could make contact with them. I sent a personal letter to each of the eight science teachers, asking them for their cooperation. Enclosed with it was the document given to the administrators. A few days later, another letter was sent, asking the eight science teachers to attend the information meeting scheduled for the end of June. The meeting was held. Everyone came! After two hours' discussion, I wrote in my notebook (which I took everywhere after that), "I feel they have reservations, but they all agree in principle. So I shall make individual appointments with them for the end of September. We're off and running!"

At the end of September, I met with each teacher privately. Tape recorder in hand, I put my two questions to them: "How is science taught and why is it taught that way?" I listened, and asked more questions for clarification. They quickly became relaxed and communicative. They spoke spontaneously about everything: the way they taught, the material they used, the problems they encountered, the students, relations with management, program requirements, society and everything under the sun.

My recordings, nearly an hour each, were transcribed, giving a total of some 200 pages of typescript: a substantial body of information. A preliminary examination uncovered a few possible themes, but nothing clearly defined. Behind the teachers' anecdotes and personal opinions, I felt an uneasiness common to them all, but I could not identify it.

In late October, November and early December I was at the school again. This time, with the teachers' permission, I went into the classroom. I attended lectures, laboratory sessions and exercise periods. I observed, listened, questioned and, eventually, even helped teach a few students who were having trouble. I spoke with teachers, individually or in groups, between periods, at noon hour and after 3:30. Sometimes I made appointments; other times I came unexpectedly: sometimes in the morning, sometimes in the afternoon, sometimes for the whole day; at the beginning of the week, or near the end — rarely in the middle.

I went all through the school to soak up its atmosphere: the cafeteria, the assembly hall, the library, the cloakroom. I listened, watched and asked a few questions now and then. And I took notes. Everything went into my notebook. When I left in December, I had more than 120 pages of handwritten notes. Sometimes I wrote my notes wherever I happened to be; other times I withdrew for a moment and came back later. I never postponed taking notes, however, for fear of forgetting.

From late October to early December I must have spent roughly 80 hours at the school. As I grew to know the place, my vision grew sharper. I was increasingly aware of what interested me: the various signs of possible alienation among the participants. During the period January to March, I reviewed the literature on alienation and its chief symptoms, and designed the theoretical model described in the next section. During the period March to April, I examined all the information I had amassed in light of this model and completed a preliminary report.

In May, the preliminary report was distributed to the eight teachers concerned but to no one else. A few weeks later, the entire group met, away from the school. Everyone had a chance to air his or her views. A few changes were made to the text. The session was taped. This confrontation with the preliminary report was an integral part of the study. An addendum was prepared for the revised preliminary report, outlining the highlights of the latest meeting. The final report was now ready.

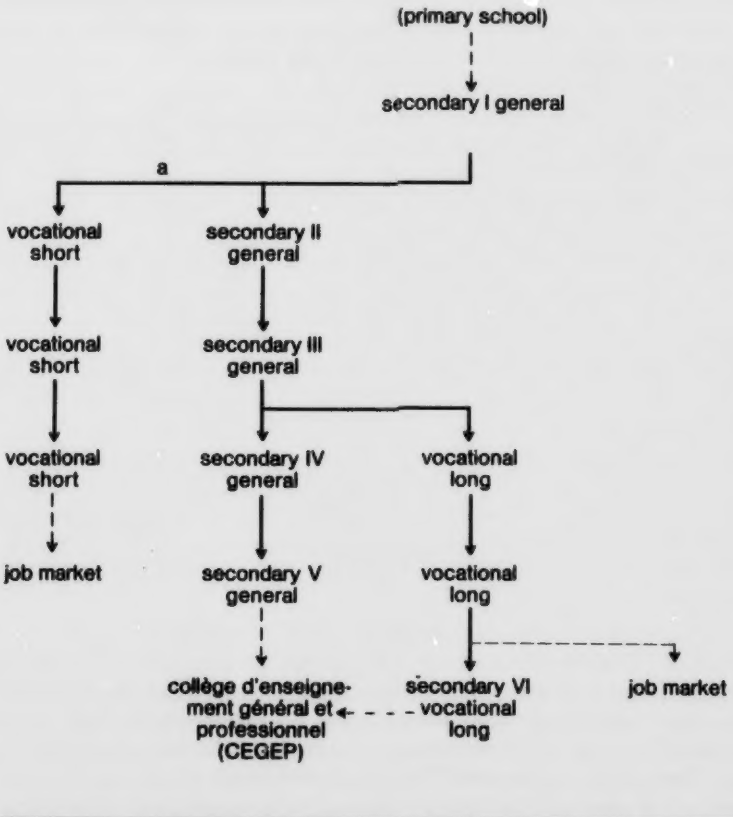
Setting and Actors

The polyvalente which was studied is a French-language institution near the centre of Québec. It has approximately 1500 students and 125 teachers. It is served by a system of school buses which carries a mixed urban, semiurban and rural population, drawn in part by the vocational training offered by the school. Nearly a third of the students come from economically disadvantaged backgrounds.

The administrators say that, on the whole, the school is fairly representative of polyvalentes in Québec: not too big or too small, not too avant-garde or too conservative, with the same types of problems as elsewhere. In short, it is no better or worse than anywhere else, as one teacher said. I share this view.

The school serves a varied clientele. It offers two streams, vocational and general, for students from secondary I (grade 7) to secondary V (grade 11), and also secondary VI for two trades and a short vocational program for assistants in certain trades. Figure VIII.1 shows the possible paths offered by the school.

Figure VIII.1 – Chart of Possible Paths


(primary school)
secondary I general
a
vocational short
secondary II general
vocational short
secondary III general
vocational short
secondary IV general
vocational long
job market
secondary V general
vocational long
collège d'enseignement général et professionnel (CEGEP)
secondary VI vocational long
job market

---

[a] If the student is 15 years old and a "battery of tests" shows the transfer is justified.

The science department comprises eight teachers. To preserve anonymity, I shall refrain from describing them in full. I shall only say that men are decidedly overrepresented and they are all approaching or past 40 and have taught for over 15 years. Of the eight teachers, two teach physics, two teach biology and two teach chemistry. The seventh teaches ecology, and the eighth, who has just been "parachuted" (as they say here) into science after teaching mathematics for 17 years, teaches an "introduction to physical sciences." All except the last have been teaching science for many years.

The physical appearance of the school deserves a few words. It is a large concrete structure set in a huge green field, surrounded by shopping centres and a fairly new subdivision.

Let us go in and take our first look at the building. The time is 11:48. I happen to have chosen the entrance leading into the hall. This is a very spacious room; at the centre, the ceiling is some 10 metres high. Opposite, huddled against a wall, is a little glassed-in booth for the supervisor of students. Everything is quiet. The sun streams in through windows near the ceiling. A few people are lounging on the benches that run all the way around the room.

A bell sounds. My watch says 11:50; I move on. . . 11:52. Suddenly there is a blast of music with a heavy beat (which a student later tells me is "progressive" music!). Then a flood of students surges from all directions. There is almost no jostling, but they move quickly. Many of their faces are striking: sad eyes, drawn faces, very few smiles. (I have a feeling of unreality.) The crowd seems to be moving in one direction. I follow it. We come to the cloakroom: low lights and a low ceiling, only three metres high. Straight lines of lockers, hundreds of lockers. Doors slam, locks bang against the metal walls, making a deafening din. People bump into one another, pulling on their raincoats and making for the doors, or grabbing a bag and heading in a different direction. I follow these people to the cafeteria, a large room with glaring fluorescent lights. At one end is a big bay window overlooking the bus parking lot. The tables and chairs are made of metal tubing and veneer. The noise is very loud but bearable. On the concrete blocks of the wall are two enormous, brightly coloured posters from the Department of Social Affairs depicting fish, fruit and vegetables. Opposite is the line-up for the lunch counter.

Leaving the cafeteria, I am again struck by the deafening music in the hall. I feel my muscles tense as if for a spring. I find a staircase and go up. Behind a closed door at the top is the gymnasium. It has a high ceiling, so it seems like a large cube of some 20 metres. Some students are playing ball. I retrace my steps and ask a student where the library is. "In the basement," he answers, "but it's closed this time of day."[!] I ask when it is open, and he replies, "During class and at recess." Fleeing the music, I take the first corridor I find. At intervals along the walls are brightly coloured murals with violent contrasts, no doubt painted by students at the school. Then classrooms. They all look much the same — well lit, with tables and chairs of metal tubing, green chalkboards. I continue walking, and find a washroom — locked! I shall have to wait for the next one. The linoleum floor of the corridor shows hundreds of cigarette burns. Another washroom, also locked! (Later I am told that they are always locked up!) I turn back towards the hall, guided by the music, and run up against a dead end. The doors from this corridor to the hall are locked with a chain and padlock. I turn back.

Finally I come to the hall. Hundreds of students are sitting around on the benches, leaning against the massive pillars, sitting side by side on the staircases or simply standing around. Many are unkempt: shirts hanging out, scruffy jeans and half-laced work boots. I make my way through the crowd with difficulty. Despite the din, some seem to be talking! Laughter breaks through here and there. Some people seem to be watching the passers-by casually. Then comes the principal, silent and inscrutable, on his tour of surveillance. A bell rings above the bedlam. Time to go back to class. The crowd begins to move, slowly, towards the corridors. The music is switched off suddenly. Silence returns to the walls shrouded in cigarette smoke. The supervisor shuts the metal grill leading to the cloakroom and bars it. I leave in a daze.

Teaching Practices

"Three 60-minute periods in the morning and two in the afternoon." What do these periods comprise in the sciences?

It varies. Apart from ecology, science teaching consists of four types of activity: occasional lectures, several laboratory periods, frequent exercise periods and regular examinations. Ecology has hardly any "labs" and comparatively few lectures; in essence, the only two activities are examinations and exercises on "work sheets" based on the textbooks. We should note in passing that physics, chemistry and biology are optional courses offered only in secondary IV and V. Introduction to Physical Sciences is another optional course at the secondary III level, while ecology is compulsory in secondary I. Classes comprise between 20 and 30 students as a rule, with roughly equal numbers of boys and girls in each.

Lectures

Lectures more or less parallel the textbook: *PSSC* for Physics 452/552 and 422/522; *CHEMStudy* for Chemistry 462/562; *Biologie humaine* (Désiré et al.), *Biologie* (Cournoyer and Garon) and *L'homme dans son milieu* (Couillard et al.) for Human Biology 412; *BSCS* and *Biologie moderne* (Otto and Towle) for General Biology 422; and *ISP* for the Introduction to Physical Sciences. Ecology is taught mainly from an exercise book entitled *L'écologie au secondaire* (Dubé) and two textbooks, *Les êtres et leur milieu* (Viscasillas) and *Perspectives écologiques, introduction à la biologie* (Thibeault et Daoust).

The students do not own these books, which are merely made available in the relevant science rooms (where most of the various teaching activities take place). With the teacher's consent, students may take the books home from time to time. I was told that this arrangement makes the books last longer and keeps the students more motivated, for few students want to work at home.

As a rule, lectures follow laboratory work. They summarize the information which the students are supposed to have gathered from the labs. The labs thus provide a "concrete" basis on which the teacher's presentation rests. The lecture also rounds out the material that needs to be covered and prepares the students for the exercises at the end of the chapter and the examination that follows. Some teachers also show films from time to time.

Students usually sit at lectures, pencil in hand, waiting to copy down in their notebooks whatever notes the teacher writes on the board. The rest of the time, unless they are exceptional students or something of special interest comes up, students doodle, chat with neighbours or simply stare vacantly into space. The teacher writes whatever he or she considers important on the board, often in full sentences; the criterion for determining importance is the probability of the point occurring in an examination set by the provincial department. To capture students' attention, teachers say such things as, "This is important, the Ministry asks for it three times out of two!"

There seems to be tacit connivance between teachers and students in this. It seems that the students know that, whatever they may do while the teacher is speaking, they cannot miss the information required for the examination if they are careful to copy the teacher's capsule notes on the board. Because the important thing is the examination, or rather the final mark, why should students listen to the presentation if the capsulated notes guarantee them success? All the more so because many students say "teacher talk" is boring. The teachers, for their part, reason that, because students do not know how to take notes, they must be told exactly what to write in their notebooks. "That way, at least they may remember something of what they copy. We could give them mimeographed notes, but they refuse to read. In fact, they can't read! So we have to write the notes on the board."

The teachers are aware that students do not pay attention during lectures, and have their own ways of trying to attract students' attention. They may slip in a joke (sometimes in questionable taste): "I know the girls won't understand," they smile (remember that all classes are mixed). They may use bizarre catchwords such as P-MAT (a mnemonic for the sequence prophase, metaphase, anaphase and telophase) or they may direct an unexpected question to a student who is obviously daydreaming. They may raise their voices, or drop the magic phrase "for the exam"; they may give examples from daily life, or use any of a number of tricks.

When I attended lectures (given by five or six different teachers), I sat at the back. I listened to what the teacher was saying, but my attention focussed rather on the noise, as well as the students' behaviour. I was amazed at the noise level prevailing while the lecture went on: the ventilation system, chairs moving, whispers, occasional bursts of laughter, echoes in some places, shuffling papers and so forth. (Not to mention the times when the intercom interrupted the lecture, as often happened when I first visited the school. At such times there was even more noise: no one seemed to want to hear the announcements.) The noise level where I sat was so high that sometimes I could hardly understand what the teacher was saying. Eventually the noise made me quite tired. It may be different for people who are used to it, or maybe they no longer notice. Perhaps, however, they are still affected by it.

I mentioned earlier that there are few formal lectures; in fact, they take up no more than a quarter of total class time. They are fairly short because of time wasted, especially at the beginning and end of the period. They seldom begin less than a good five minutes after the start of the period, for students trickle in slowly. Some talk with the teacher while others find a seat, take out their papers, settle down, chat with Tom, Dick and Harry and so forth. Then the teacher takes attendance and waits a moment for the class to calm down. Finally the lecture begins. Towards the end, five or even 10 minutes before the bell, the students may begin packing up their belongings and watching the clock. Thus, actual teaching takes up only about 40 of the 60 minutes. Indeed, a teacher told me, "I say to them, 'If you listen to me for 50 minutes, not 60 — maybe only 40, in fact, with all the little jokes I throw in — you won't have to waste time studying at home.' That gets them! I hear them saying to each other, 'What's he talking about?' I repeat it and explain what I've just told them. I tell them that their attention span is finite."

Laboratory Periods

Roughly equal proportions of laboratory and exercise periods make up the largest part of teaching time, with a good 30 per cent of available time devoted to each activity (except for ecology, where laboratory work consists of only three sessions with the microscope early in the year).

Labs always follow a very precise written procedure. Sometimes students are given handouts and sometimes they must copy down what the teacher writes on the board and discusses. Sometimes they must copy into their notebooks from a published laboratory workbook. The procedure may be quite explicit, depending on the situation. It may take the form of instructions for a set of operations or a series of questions.

Two examples follow. The first example deals with determining the freezing and melting points of naphthaline. After listing all the materials required, the teacher writes on the blackboard. The secondary III students copy into their notebooks, without seeming to pay much attention to what they are writing. As the teacher writes on the board, he pauses to let the students catch up and adds information orally:

Procedure:

1. Put the beaker stand on the board.
2. Fill the beaker three-quarters full of water and put it on the stand.
3. Set up two retort stands.
4. Insert the thermometers into the corks.
5. Lower a thermometer into the water and attach it to the stand by the cork.
6. Lower the test tube containing the naphthaline into the water and attach it to the stand.
7. Light the burner and place it under the beaker.
8. Heat until the naphthaline is completely melted. Insert the other thermometer in it and note the temperature.
9. Record the water temperature and remove the burner.
10. Results: [The teacher provides a table into which students must insert their results.]

Record the temperature at which the naphthaline solidifies. Chart results. Draw two curves: one for the water temperature and the other for the naphthaline temperature. [The teacher draws both these curves on the chart, in any case.]

In the second example, the teacher hands out two mimeographed sheets. The following is an extract from them. The secondary IV students have just used a disc on an air cushion, which gave them a series of points on a sheet of paper. The lab deals with the movement of a projectile:

1. What is the shape of the trajectory followed by the projectile?
2. How long was the projectile in flight?
3. Measure its range.
4. Measure object's horizontal speed at 0.10-second intervals and draw up a chart.
5. What is the average horizontal speed?
6. What type of horizontal movement impels it?
7. What is the variation in horizontal speed between:
   (a) 0.0 and 0.2 s
   (b) 0.0 and 0.5 s
   (c) 0.0 and 0.6 s

8. Calculate the acceleration in the above intervals.
9. Measure the horizontal distance travelled by the object between:
   (a) 0.0 and 0.2 s
   (b) 0.0 and 0.5 s
   (c) 0.0 and 0.6 s
10. Using the equations for this movement, calculate the horizontal distances travelled by the object during the time intervals in 9 above.
11. Are the results of 9 and 10 comparable?
12. Calculate. . . [and so on up to item no. 31].

The students are thus led step by step along a narrow path. At the end, they are asked to draw their conclusions, unless the conclusions are simply given to them. When they have to draw their own, they find it very difficult; sometimes they do not see the conclusion, even though it is right under their noses. For example, a teacher told me that in studying refraction, students are led step by step to observe that the relation of the sines is constant. When the time comes to draw a conclusion, they fail to see that that is precisely the conclusion to be drawn from the experiment! In defence of the students, however, we should not overlook the circumstances in which the experiment was conducted. Nevertheless, when they are escorted so closely, we may wonder whether they can really play an active role in the process, especially since they never approach an experiment with a coherent question in mind, a problem to be solved by empirical research. The reasons offered to me to explain this lack are, "We don't have enough time for that. Anyway, they don't want to ask themselves questions. What they want is something clear and concrete. They want to be told what to do. They tell us, 'We want written facts in front of us; we won't discover them, but leave us alone and we'll learn them.' "

In fact, the actual word "experiment" has a very special meaning for these students. To them, conducting an experiment does not have the usual meaning of testing a fairly explicit hypothesis so that a phenomenon occurs in set conditions, but rather something like perceiving a fact empirically, seeing a phenomenon occur before their very eyes so as to be certain of it, as they say. Touching something oneself seems to be a measure of its reality: "It's true, I've done an experiment." As if direct experience attested to reality! One day, I asked two students working with a microscope why they were doing what they were doing. "To see," they said. "To see what?" "Things." But the teacher had already shown them. "Yes, but that's not the same, we're seeing for real"! Another time, I put the same question to two other students who were drawing curves representing uniformly accelerated movement using the air cushion disc. "Because it gets us points," they answered. A few minutes later, I repeated the questions. One of them replied, "To learn." "Learn what?" "That when you have a slope, you have constant acceleration." Did they not know that? "Yes, but we're not supposed to know it." What did that mean? After hesitating a few moments, he said, "Well, now we know it better," with a face and a gesture that seemed to say, "That's the way it is. To make sure, you have to do the experiment, hold it in your hands; anyway, that's what the teacher wants."

These and many similar incidents lead me to believe that the students (with perhaps a few rare exceptions, which my many efforts did not succeed in unearthing) have no idea of the reasons for what they do in the laboratory, apart, of course, from a few ideas about the steps to follow and sometimes a clear notion of the results to be obtained!

I discussed this with a few of the teachers. They are aware of the situation, but they do not see how it can be changed in the present circumstances. Among the reasons they cite are the fact that students' attention is dissipated among various subjects with diverse requirements; the hour-long periods are too short to allow real involvement; the programs are too heavy, perhaps, or cover too diverse a range of topics; the dilemma experienced by teachers who are torn between pursuing educational objectives they think worthwhile and teaching only those subjects dealt with in departmental exams; and the fact that "students have never learned to look, to make an effort, for they have always been spoon-fed before they even had to ask for anything." "It's the push-button generation," one teacher told me.

Exercises

Exercises are based, as a rule, on the questions at the end of every chapter in the textbook. After the teacher works out a few answers on the blackboard as examples, the students have to complete the rest by themselves, in teams (normally of two). The teacher then goes from group to group helping those who have trouble; or the teacher may stay at the front of the room so that students can come and consult him or her. Often this is a time when the teacher can make students understand a concept, law or formula that they have not yet grasped.

When a student asks the teacher a question, he or she does not always receive a straight answer. Often the teacher asks the student an easier question in return (and step by step, question by question, leads the student to answer the original question); or the teacher may give the student a more basic explanation than was asked for at first. Sometimes the teacher gives both kinds of responses at once. But students do not always appreciate teachers behaving in this way. Hence the teacher must compromise and sometimes give a direct answer.

I also observed that during the exercise periods many students were very active. They were anxious not to waste a minute; the problems simply had to be solved because similar questions would appear on the examination. When I followed the teacher's example in giving a hand to students in difficulty, they were usually quick to show their displeasure if they felt I was trying too hard to make them understand what they were doing. "What we want to know is how to solve that problem," they would say, implying that the rest was of no interest!

After questioning many students from different groups, I realized that the important thing for them was knowing how to solve problems; in other words, what trick or formula or procedure (knowing where to look for the answer in the book, for example) would work. The rationale for the trick and the meaning of what they found by using it did not interest them at all. There may be students who are exceptions, but I did not meet any. I even spoke to students reputed to be bright, who on closer inspection turned out to be very skillful at using the tricks, but showed hardly more depth of understanding than their fellows.

I also found that students often set out to solve a problem before really grasping its meaning. If I asked a student, "What are you being asked in this problem?" he or she would read the problem to me. If I asked the student to say it in his or her own words, he or she would do so with difficulty, if at all. Sometimes a student might know what was asked for, but would have forgotten the information in the statement! Never did I find a student who began by trying to grasp the problem intuitively and perceived the form and/or the rough dimensions of the solution. Faced with a problem, students begin by asking, "Which trick should I use?"

I discussed this situation with some of the teachers, who are aware of it. They offered several explanations:

> "All the students want is their marks, and the more easily they get them, the happier they are."
>
> "Students don't know how to read; they don't even try to guess the meaning of a new word. If a sentence is at all long, they get lost."
>
> "Students have a lot of trouble with mathematics. Imagine, in secondary IV, 20 divided by 12. That gives 1 with 8 left over. I hear them say, 'Sir, do I write 1.8?' There are at least 10 students out of 30 who can't do division if there are decimals."
>
> "Students are not used to having an overall view. With all the methods where they have to find the missing word, and all the multiple choice tests, they do everything in tiny stages, without really understanding what they're doing. It may be easier for the teacher to mark, but it doesn't train the students."
>
> "Students have been exposed to too many things, they've seen too much. Now they don't focus on anything any more."

Examinations

Examinations are normally held in the middle and at the end of a term. Since there are four terms in a year, there is an average of one examination per subject per month. I did not have an opportunity to be present during an examination period. What information I have on the topic derives mainly from studying examination papers received in response to a written request I made in mid-December. I wrote in my letter, "I would be most grateful if, as soon as possible, you would use the enclosed stamped envelope to send me a copy of an examination that you have given to your students recently." I received examinations from seven of the eight teachers.

Analysis of these documents yielded the following five observations. The first is that all these examinations were pencil-and-paper tests. Despite the generous time allocated to lab periods, examinations did not call for any manipulation (much less actual research). I see in this further proof that labs are considered to be nothing more than an activity which allows students to see the phenomena discussed by the teacher "for real." Furthermore, none of the questions called for ability to carry out research; for example, there were no questions asking, "What hypotheses would you formulate in the face of a given empirical problem?" or "How would you test a given hypothesis"? Obviously, something other than empirical research is being evaluated in these examinations.

The second observation has to do with the importance of memory work. In biology, most questions call for nothing but memorization. Some require definitions; for example, "Define the term 'muscle,'" or "What is an endocrine gland?" Other questions called for the converse: given the definition, students are asked to supply the appropriate term (for example, "To what do the following descriptions correspond: (1) The double membrane full of pores which surrounds the nucleus; (2) The groups of tubules arranged perpendicularly and located near the nucleus. . . ?"). Other questions entail describing the components of something, or the factors contributing to a phenomenon, or the differences between two things. None calls for reasoning.

Ecology also relies on simple memorization. There are, however, questions involving calculation; for example, given so many animals of this, that and the other species, so many plants of this, that and the other species, "What is the population of the farm? How many animal species are there? Plant species? What is the rabbit population?. . . " or "A field has an area of 8000 m^2 and is grazed by 25 cows. Calculate the density of the cow population."

The Introduction to Physical Science course asks only two types of questions on the examination — questions entailing calculation and questions calling for interpretation of charts.

The following are examples of the first type:

> "Give the solubility of the following substances in grams per 100 cm^3 of water: (1) 5 g in 55 cm^3 of water (2) 15 g in 45 cm^3 of water. . . (12) 15.2 g in 45 cm^3 of water."

A question using the rule of three (*règle de trois*):

> "The maximum quantity of potassium nitrate that can be dissolved in 100 cm^3 of water at 100°C is 240 g. How many grams can be dissolved in: (1) 50 cm^3 (2) 75 cm^3. . . (10) 300 cm^3?"

An example of the second type:

> "Using the charts on page 60 of your text, find the maximum mass of potassium nitrate that can be dissolved in 100 cm^3 of water at: (1) 85°C (2) 50°C. . . (10) 80°C."

Physics questions for the most part call for the application of formulae:

> "A 50 g marble moving at a speed of 12 cm/s hits an 80 g marble travelling in the same direction at 2 cm/s. After the collision the 80 g marble moves at a speed of 7 cm/s. What is the speed of the 50 g marble after the collision?"
>
> "A ball is dropped from a height of 98 m. Calculate the time taken for the ball to reach the ground: (a) 4.5 s (b) 3.2 s (c) 10 s (d) 20 s (e) 40 s."

A few questions involve defining a term (such as "inelastic collision"; multiple answers are provided for students to choose from) or understanding a phenomenon, as in the following example:

> "Which of the following statements is TRUE?
>
> A ball is thrown horizontally, at a speed of 20 m/s, from a height of 2.0 m.
>
> A. The ball's horizontal acceleration is 9.8 m/s^2.
>
> B. The ball's vertical acceleration is 9.8 m/s^2.
>
> C. The ball's vertical speed is constant.
>
> D. The ball's falling time depends on its horizontal speed.
>
> E. The horizontal distance travelled by the ball does not depend on its falling time."

In chemistry, we find questions dealing with: (1) understanding certain phenomena; (2) interpreting charts; and (3) understanding certain concepts. One example of each type follows:

> "Given a particular chemical reaction [a balanced chemical equation is given]. . . . If a particular substance is added, what will happen? If the pressure or temperature is changed, what will happen?"
>
> "Given a series of charts representing the respective concentrations of products and reagents for a particular reaction, select the description which corresponds most closely to the situation."
>
> "How many moles of molecules are there in 180 g of water? [The chemical formula is given.] What weight of HI (g) is formed in a mixture of 0.10 mole of H_2 (g) and 0.20 mole of I_2 (g)? The temperature and pressure are such that 20% of the hydrogen is changed into HI."

The third observation is that, when the questions do not actually call for simple memorization of terms, concepts and formulae, they mainly require students to carry out elementary mathematical procedures, such as applying the "rule of three." Overall, little consideration is given to the actual natural phenomena. Thus a student who can read correctly, carry out the required mathematical procedures and reason a little need only retain a few facts in order to obtain good marks on these examinations. (With the multiple choice questions, even less thought seems needed: a little common sense can often rule out the less probable answers and select the right one.) One may well wonder whether these examinations really assess the objectives set for science teaching or whether they measure reading, arithmetic and elementary logic skills. During the autumn I had opportunities to discuss the matter with a few teachers. They seem conscious of the problem but cannot see a good way of avoiding it. One teacher told me, "If the students had the basic skills (French, mathematics and intellectual work) and, more important, were willing to use them, we could go much farther, and do real science. But they're so poorly prepared, and they can't be bothered to work."

The fourth observation is that none of the questions deals with problems of daily life. If these examinations were the sole basis for assessing the content of the science "message," we would have to conclude that science teaching was completely dissociated from daily life. The questions do not reflect in any way the problems that may concern students nor the natural phenomena that surround them (such as a toaster that breaks down, a cake that rises, the sun sometimes turning red as it sets, the phenomenon of pregnancy, the effect of certain drugs, the manufacture of plastics and so forth). Nor is consideration given to how science may contribute to social welfare: the students are not faced with any moral dilemmas. Nor is anything said about the persons who made science or about the sociocultural context of the most important discoveries. Moreover, the connection between science and technology is not explained. The science which emerges from these examinations is disembodied and sterile. Even the style of the questions is cold and detached: X, Y, and Z are used in place of things and quantities, and instructions are given in the infinitive mood. The student is never involved in the adventure of discovery or faced with a challenge; in short, the student is never faced with a real problem that has a practical meaning, and concerning which the student could put into practice what he or she has just learned.

The fifth observation is that some questions, fortunately quite few, raise doubts about their meaning, if not about the message conveyed by science teaching. Some examples follow:

> "A large number of one cent coins are placed face down in a box. The box is closed and shaken. Predict what will happen when the box is opened."[!]
>
> "A 300 m^2 garden contains 25 carrot plants, 50 tomato plants, 12 bean plants and 200 corn plants. Calculate the density of the carrot, tomato, bean and corn population." [No information is given about the minimum spacing required for each of these plants!]

> "Why does a gas enclosed in a balloon exert pressure on the walls of the balloon? Possible answer: gas is a spongy substance. When compressed, it exerts greater pressure on the walls of the container; but when the pressure is reduced, it occupies a greater volume and the pressure it exerts on the walls decreases. Which of the following experimental findings cannot be explained by this model?
>
> 1. A gas fills the container;
> 2. When pressure is increased, volume decreases;
> 3. When the quantity of gas increases, pressure increases;
> 4. A gas has mass;
> 5. When a gas is compressed and cooled, it becomes a liquid." [!?]

Conditions for Alienation

The preceding overview suggests the disquiet I mentioned at first and the existence of alienation. We need an analytical framework to guide the remainder of the study, and to permit a deeper exploration. The theoretical perspective on which the interpretation of this research is based can only be described adequately at greater length than this report permits. Readers who wish a detailed explanation may consult "Le concept d'aliénation et ses principales manifestations en milieu scolaire" by the same author. Because this model is the cornerstone of the study, we must at least present its basic outline, if only very briefly.

Alienation is a difficult topic to discuss, for there are various opposing schools of thought about it. Forced to choose among them, I have singled out the concept of "breakdown": the breakdown of a social structure established to serve a particular society. Alienation occurs when a social structure (institution, association or whatever) not only does not meet the objectives for which it was set up but also imposes a pattern inconsistent with the objectives that gave rise to it. Thus we can only speak of alienation in the schools insofar as the school as an institution makes its students and teachers function in a way that impedes young people's development, which it was established to promote.

This conception of alienation presupposes the existence of a potential that can be developed and actualized through experience, given a favourable social context. To analyze the phenomenon of alienation, I use five dimensions: structural power, functional power, intelligibility, consciousness and belonging.

Structural Power

Structural power is related to the degree of responsibility actually possessed by students or teachers with respect to young people's development in a given environment. The question to be answered is whether teachers or students can control this development within the school; to do so means being able to make decisions. If the answer is "Yes," I would assume that each group, students and teachers, would have at least the following, according to their level of maturity:

- access to appropriate information;
- decision-making power and ability to judge;
- an atmosphere of confidence and cooperation;
- attitudes such as flexibility and tolerance, acceptance of uncertainty and a sense of responsibility.

Functional Power

Functional power is the capacity to express and actualize oneself, to project oneself outward in the world of school. The question to be answered is whether our two groups can effectively actualize their potentials in the school environment. If so, as well as possessing appropriate information, I would expect that:

- both teachers and students could exercise the ability to construct, design, plan, repair, diagnose, create, carry out research, express oneself. . . and grow;
- both teachers and students would possess qualities such as a taste for some degree of risk, initiative, self-confidence, independence, perseverance and so forth.

Intelligibility

Intelligibility depends on being able to give meaning, significance to the school world. One might ask whether participants find any significance in the natural and cultural events that unfold within the school system. If they do find such significance, then I assume that they have:

- appropriate vocabularies;
- a frame of reference suitable for decoding the physical, mathematical, historical, psychological, sociological aspects of their world;
- abilities such as reading, locating and relating information, discriminating, evaluating, analyzing, synthesizing;
- aptitudes, such as critical thinking, curiosity, tolerance of ambiguity, openmindedness, acceptance of the temporary validity of knowledge.

Consciousness

Consciousness refers to the ability to grasp the effects of one's own and other people's actions, to conceive of one's daily life at school as determined by the identifiable actions performed by oneself and others. The question to be answered here is whether students and teachers can determine their place in the school. If so, it would imply that teachers and students:

- have access to appropriate information (including historical information, of course);
- possess the appropriate points of reference;
- are able to decode relevant information, interpret ordinary events and predict the consequences of their actions;
- have a perspective on events, critical judgement, a desire to know their place, social awareness, a feeling of mutual solidarity and mutual assistance, self-respect and respect for others.

Belonging

Belonging, the fifth and last dimension we shall consider, relates to the quality of contacts and relations that the two groups of actors can establish with their peers and surroundings. The question is whether the actors see themselves as people in the school world. If so, I would expect that they have:

- personal roles;
- appropriate space facilities and time arrangements;
- an identifiable peer group;
- a relaxed atmosphere of mutual respect, genuine relationships, freedom from competition and mistrust, openness to others, tact and so forth;
- an ability to express ideas and feelings in small and large groups, to appreciate other people's experiences, establish stable relationships and personalize their surroundings.

Each of the factors listed under the five dimensions can be used to analyze the phenomenon of alienation from the point of view of that dimension.

In addition to using these dimensions to judge (from the "inside") the degree of alienation in a particular situation, we may also use external indicators to identify "blind spots" within those dimensions and, consequently, further unsuspected conditions of alienation. Such external indicators of alienation can include (1) self-estrangement, (2) vandalism and the need for surveillance, (3) depression, (4) dropping out, (5) drug use.

The last four categories may not call for much clarification, but the first should be explained. Self-estrangement, as the neologism suggests, is the state of an individual who is not connected as a person with his action, who is a stranger to it; in other words, he or she acts essentially to gain a reward, not for the sake of the action itself. Thus to all intents and purposes, the action has purely instrumental value, and little or no intrinsic value. An example of a self-estranged person is a student who works solely to obtain marks, not to learn.

In brief, the model we have adopted considers alienation not as an individual phenomenon, even though it may be experienced and felt as such, but rather as a collective one: a phenomenon that varies in its scope and impact but that is always characterized by a breakdown between a given community of people and the social structure in which they are situated. Externally, a state of alienation may show itself through a certain number of indicators (self-estrangement, vandalism and so forth), but to study its essence, I have chosen five dimensions (structural and functional power, intelligibility, consciousness and belonging), each of which gives me a set of criteria to guide the rest of my study.

Following is an analysis based on those dimensions.

Analysis

Structural Power: Students

Here we are seeking to determine the extent to which our actors can make decisions in their daily lives. We shall look at the students' situation and then at the teachers'.

In considering students' power, we should draw a distinction between structural power within the classroom and within the school in general.

In the classroom, students obviously have no power at all: they can only comply with the teacher's decisions. The teacher alone decides the sequence of activities, their content, the procedure to be followed in each, the time at which they are to take place, the performance criteria and so forth. As for the actual material, the teacher determines everything (although of course he or she must meet the far-from-negligible requirements of the ministry of education and other authorities): the content considered important, its order of presentation, its rhythm, the assessment procedure and so forth. If a student asks a question outside the material laid down by the teacher, he or she usually receives a very curt answer or is told to wait until the class comes to that part of the program. In the lab, students have no choice; they must follow instructions. They are not encouraged to formulate hypotheses in response to an empirical problem (in fact, no one, not even the teacher, formulates a hypothesis). Not only are they unable to plan the steps in their observations, whether experimental or not; they do not even collaborate with the teacher in planning them. The entire process is dictated to them by the teacher, often down to the smallest details. Even the conclusion is in fact determined by the teacher: if the students do not obtain the results expected (by the teacher), that means their "experiment" went wrong, and they must have made a mistake along the way. The teacher is always the arbiter of truth (the students continually ask their teacher, "Is that correct?" "Did I get it?"). Here again, the teacher decides. Furthermore, students regularly wait for the teacher to give the answer, and simply say, "It's right, because the teacher said so." All the exercises have to be done by everyone, and they are assigned by the teacher, not designed or chosen by the students themselves. Nor do students have any more choice as regards the examinations, which are devised by the teacher and must be taken when the teacher decrees. The same rules apply to everyone.

As for discipline within the classroom, it is certainly not imposed by democratic consensus, but dictated and enforced by the teacher alone. This statement should be qualified, however, for students sometimes find ways of undermining the teacher's authority in the classroom. The following example was recounted by a teacher from his personal experience:

> "The incident began when several students were talking together during class. The teacher stopped speaking and waited for the students to be quiet. He had to wait five minutes. When he began again, he informed the students that he would make up the five minutes at the end of the period, at 3:20. When the bell rang, he was prepared to continue, but seven students got up and left even though he ordered them [his term] to stay. The next day he refused to allow these students to enter the room, telling them that he would come out and talk to them in the hall in a few minutes. Soon after the students came in without his leave: they had obtained the principal's permission!"

This does not seem to have been an isolated incident, for the teachers repeatedly complained that the rules, as they said, had no "teeth"; "If [the students] break the rules, there are no punishments." "The administration doesn't back us up, and the students know it and take advantage."

Let us continue by examining students' structural power within the general organization of the school.

This year, for the first time in many years, a students' council was elected at the instigation of one of the teachers on the student leadership committee. The council is made up of student representatives from the school's various grades and programs, elected by the students in each grade and program on 20 November. In late March the principal told me that the council had been meeting regularly (with a teacher) since November and was making suggestions to him from time to time, but the council was never consulted by the school's administration, and was not integrated into the decision-making structure of the school! Thus students have no power in the decision-making process at the school.

Nevertheless, the students do have a certain kind of power, as I discovered on one occasion. One day I was, I confess, pleased to find that the volume of the music in the hall had been turned down. During lunch hour I was sitting, as I often did, on one of the benches that encircle the hall, and, as usual, observing. I noticed a sheet of paper making the rounds: a petition. When it came close to me, I saw that the sheet had no text but bore many signatures. I heard the fellow who was circulating the petition tell those sitting near me, "It's to get the music turned up." And the students signed. After he moved on, I asked one of them why he had signed. "It takes five hundred signatures to get it changed," he said. "But who decided to turn down the sound?" "Dunno." "Did you ask him?" "No."... "What do the students think of the principal?" "They don't like him." "What do they think is wrong with him?" "Nothing.... It's because he's the principal... and you never like the principal." "Why?" "That's the way it is."

A few days later the music was back at mind-blasting level.

Extracurricular activities were introduced this year for the first time, under the auspices of the student committee. Students may, in fact must, choose one activity from among 30 or so offered, following a survey at the beginning of the year to determine which of over 60 possible options were most popular.

Students can also "choose" some of their subjects, especially from secondary IV onward, provided of course that they have completed the prerequisites. (The prerequisites are, however, comparatively easy and sometimes quite revealing. Physics 452, for example, the course offered to all those who wish to take physics, or must take it because of CEGEP requirements, requires a pass mark in Math 320. "Just scraping through" is enough, one of the teachers told me. I presumed that this was a demanding mathematics option, but my informant said, "Oh, no, just middling! They also have to have passed the introduction to physical sciences.")

At noon, if students have to stay at school, what choices do they have? Ping-pong on one of the three available tables (whose nets seem to have disappeared); ball in the gymnasium (where there are comparatively few students — perhaps 30); homework (for 10 or 20 students) in the cafeteria, for the library is closed during lunch hour because of insufficient staff, the authorities told me; or, for the vast majority, the hall, where they can look around nonchalantly, gossip with their neighbours above the deafening noise and smoke cigarettes, letting time slip past or waiting for something unusual to happen, as I observed several times. If, for example, a few students rush off in one direction, a crowd instantly follows them. Once I asked one of the few students who stayed behind what was happening. "A fight, I guess" — as if it were nothing out of the ordinary. It seems to me to be clear evidence that students do not have enough to do, at least during the lunch hour.

Structural Power: Teachers

What we have seen so far may have given us the impression that teachers wield a great deal of structural power. A closer look at their overall situation shows that their power is quite limited. In the matter of discipline (abiding by the rules), for example, as we saw, their authority is so circumscribed that, as one teacher said, "The students have the idea that everything is so mixed up they can do anything at all; for no one knows who is doing what any more in this school."

As regards the actual material to be taught, the programs and, in particular, the examinations supplied by the Québec ministry give teachers very little room to manoeuvre. They often show dissatisfaction on this score, criticizing features of the program and also the general orientation given to it by the examinations. To all intents and purposes, they are forced to train their students primarily to give suitable answers to examination questions – questions which cover only a small number of the objectives that they are supposed to pursue. Anything that is more difficult to assess, such as genuine heuristic skills and attitudes, largely goes by the board. Furthermore, because the programs are heavy and often difficult for students (who the teachers feel are too young to cope with such an abstract subject as the cinema, for example), teachers can seldom pursue sidelines such as topics of regional interest. Teachers are also concerned about what they see as arbitrary and ill-judged cuts in the program. "The ministry may have thought province-wide results were not good enough, so 'they' cut it. Now the program doesn't make sense. For instance, 'they' took cell division from Biology 412, and how can you teach evolution without that? So I put it in all the same." Teachers can, of course, make representations to the ministry, but few do so (only one teacher in this school does it regularly). For the most part, they consider "those guys are too far away. . . out of touch with reality."

Still on the subject of actual teaching, polyvalente staff suffer from fragmentation of work, a symptom that is often linked with alienation. To all intents and purposes, they work on an assembly line: one "pours in" French, another biology, another mathematics and so forth. Thus, teachers have a limited control over the product of their work and, consequently, a rather limited responsibility. Maybe a genuine cooperation between them could help overcome at least part of their problem. By "genuine cooperation" I mean something like sharing a collective view of the educational "product"; adjusting, as often and as regularly as possible, their activities with their colleagues; and defining and/or redefining constantly their short-term and long-term projects following an assessment of how the "product" evolves. Not only is this not happening, it seems practically unthinkable under teachers' present working conditions: their workload may run to 22 or 23 periods per seven-day cycle in several subjects, and they may each teach over 100 students of varied backgrounds. Low morale is also a problem, as one teacher told me.

When we move from actual teaching to view the teachers' situation in more general terms, we see a number of significant features.

There is some degree of tension in relations with the administration. Teachers repeatedly complain that the administrators do not support them. "When you spend most of your time on surveillance in the hall and the cafeteria," the principal told me, "sorting out timetables for months on end and checking up on attendance and so forth, you don't have much time left to think and to provide leadership for teachers." Moreover, as mentioned earlier, teachers do not feel that the administration stands behind them as it ought in matters of discipline. Some also complain of lack of consultation: "They [school administrators] act as if the school belonged to them," one teacher complained. "Not long ago, an assistant organized a visit by parents without even consulting the teachers. They take all kinds of decisions without consulting us."

To do the principal justice, he told me himself how he regretted his administrative overload, especially the timetables (which he told me should not be part of his normal duties, but he had to do them because no one else could) and the surveillance (he told me, "Here, I have to lend a hand so that the monitors feel I'm backing them up. We can't let up on surveillance."). Since I deliberately confined my studies to the situation of teachers and students, I have little information about the principal's situation, but I presume it is no "rosier" than anyone else's.

Let us look again at leadership. Some teachers maintain that the leadership is abysmal, but we should bear in mind a highly unusual development this year. At the beginning of the year, as mentioned earlier, some staff members (many of them science teachers) decided to set up a student leadership system, which entailed electing a students' council, organizing extracurricular activities (one afternoon every other week), assigning advisers to students (who were free to choose any teacher, within certain limits), publishing a daily news bulletin and setting up cells of about 20 students who met regularly with their adviser. The administration was, to its regret, forced to close down the cells on 11 November because of pressure from the union, the principal told me. The union also opposed the extra work created by the extracurricular activities (because teachers who happened not to have classes were pressed into supervising such activities). Despite these pressures, however, the extracurricular activities are continuing, because some teachers openly opposed the union by waiving their right to grieve the matter (a copy of a letter to this effect signed by some of the teachers was posted on the board in the staff room).

The science room occupied by the teachers who instigated the student leadership project quickly became a veritable beehive of activity. Colleagues and students were always dropping in to discuss problems connected with organizing student leadership. I felt the room to be practically the nerve centre of the school, pulsing with good humour and a spirit of cooperation. I even asked these teachers whether they were not, in the final analysis, the real power behind the school. They acknowledged that they did indeed have a great deal of power. (When I discussed this with the principal, he seemed to agree, and showed great appreciation for the commitment of these teachers. He was also pleased with the salutary effects of this and similar projects on the life of the school.) I infer that the situation in the school is in the process of improving.

To complete the picture, we should also consider a darker side of it, a side which casts a shadow on other dimensions, as we shall see: the phenomenon of "bumping." For those unfamiliar with it, I should explain that "bumping" is a yearly occurrence that lasts from late April to as late as August. It begins when a position is abolished because of lack of enrolment (due to lower birthrates, shifting population, program changes, requirement changes and so forth). The teacher who loses his or her position must then, if he or she wishes to go on teaching, displace a colleague who is teaching elsewhere in the school or school board, provided the colleague has less seniority with the board. The displaced colleague then repeats the procedure with a more junior teacher; the ripple continues until the most junior teacher is laid off. Laid-off teachers may be assigned to various teaching duties by the school administration, such as replacing teachers on leave. As the ripple — or rather ripples, for several positions have been abolished each year in this school board recently — reaches them, teachers naturally try to find positions in their own fields, but that is often impossible. Consequently, teachers trained in one subject may teach another, or they may move from the general to the vocational sector or even go from regular teaching to special education.

And every teacher is quite powerless either to halt the process or to have recourse from it. Only the most senior teachers (with over 17 years' seniority at present) are spared. But even they, like the students, suffer the very serious effects of the process on the atmosphere of the school: fear, suspicion, confrontation, discouragement – all of which profoundly affect school life, not only from April to the end of the school year, but to some extent throughout the year. Protests have been lodged with all the authorities. Everyone considers "bumping" to be the worst calamity with which teachers are faced, the biggest cause of lack of commitment and lethargy. Neither teachers nor administrators can do anything to halt the implacable machine. Even if they are not directly affected, they all suffer the fallout. One teacher told me, "Just try to talk about education in May. All anyone talks about is bumping, and it's understandable."

Functional Power: Students

Here we turn to students' ability to express and "actualize" themselves as people. Judging from how idle they are at lunch time, the students seem on the whole rather poorly equipped for self-expression. There are the few exceptions who play ping-pong or ball, and the people who change the records in the little windowless closet. But, except for the occasional film in the auditorium, no activities are organized at noon.

Viewing a film is not, however, an activity that allows students to express themselves by building, creating, designing or the like. On their own, students organize almost no activities, even though to do so would be a form of self-expression. There is little or nothing but idleness.

What happens in class? If they are not all idle, at least a good many of them are; in some classrooms nearly a quarter of the students do nothing. I did not see any class without idlers (although, of course, I did not see every single class). Another striking thing is how docile most students are, even if they are not all idle. Teachers told me, "If you tell them to go to the left, they go to the left. If you say go to the right, they go to the right, without asking any questions. And if you say nothing, they do nothing. They're not all like that, but that's the general rule." "There are lots of students who are like shellfish; you'd think they could adapt to anything." Once when I was speaking with four teachers, one commented, "The students are like zombies; you'd think they were programmed robots." The others nodded agreement, with embarrassed smiles.

On the whole, students show very little initiative. I was in a secondary III class with 22 students. They were studying the expansion of solids in the lab. They had to heat tubes of various materials one after the other by directing water vapour through them. One end of the tube was clamped to a wooden stand; at the other end, a little rod with a needle attached to it at right angles rolled under the tube, moving as the tube expanded.

I approached two students who were hard at work. At first I thought they understood what they were doing. They were, however, finishing up work that they had begun the period before.

I asked them whether they could put the needle under a different part of the tube. "Well. . . ." The student turned to the teacher, who was not far away. "Sir, could we put our needle there or there?" he asked, pointing to other parts of the tube. The teacher answered, "Yes, but it's more sensitive at the end." Soon after, I returned to something they said to me at the beginning of our conversation, namely, that the thin aluminum tube expanded more than the thick aluminum tube. I asked them why. "Well, the bigger one has more volume in it, so it takes more heat." "Sir," (the teacher was again working a short way from us) "how come the thick tube expands less than the thin one?" The teacher offered more or less the same explanation as the student, but added that if the thick tube were heated longer, it would attain the same expansion, because both were aluminum. The student turned to me, obviously pleased: "It's the way I thought." Since he did not seem to have taken in what the teacher added, I went on, "So is it the same or not?" "It's the same, because the big one needs more heat, so it expands less." "If you heated it longer, would it expand as much?" "I don't know." "How would you find out?" From a table nearby came the mocking answer, "Ask the teacher." I kept prodding my student (whose partner seemed lost in the clouds from the beginning): "How could you find out on your own?" "In a minute the teacher'll give it to us in the conclusions."

I left them for a few minutes to record the exchange in my notebook. Then I came back, to find my group's table quite bare. I asked them if they had finished. "Oh, yes." "And what did you find?" "Well, the glass tube expands less than the others." "How come?" "I don't know. We'll see in the conclusions he gives us." I asked them (though it was always the same student who answered me) what their own conclusions were. The student told me that metals expanded when heated. I asked whether glass was a metal. "No!" I asked whether they had tried with anything else, such as wood. "No." "Why?" "Well, we followed what the teacher told us." "Would you have liked to try it?" "But we didn't have time!" "Do you guys think it would have expanded?" "Yes, wood expands in water." "But we're dealing with heat here, not water." (I had forgotten that they were using water vapour to heat the tubes.) "That's so. Then I don't know." "What about plastic, would that have expanded?" "I don't know. . . . It would have melted." "Couldn't you've tried with a straw?" They both looked at me and smiled. "But we didn't think of it, and we didn't have time." The other student (finally) added, "When we do something different, the teacher doesn't like it." "But doesn't that depend on what you do?" "Maybe. . . ." The bell rang for the end of the period.

The teacher told me as I left that this was one of his better groups. He added, "You know, with 22 students, they'll do it [show initiative, seek explanations], but with 34 students. . . ."

From this and many similar incidents in secondary III, IV and V, it is obvious to me that, for the most part, students simply carry out the teacher's orders to the letter, without deviating from them and without thinking.

Let us look at another incident, which I think shows even more clearly that students operate mechanically, without really using their intelligence. As one teacher said, they are just "plugging away" without thinking.

I was in a secondary IV class with a team of two students reputed to be bright (which means they get very good marks). They were doing their lab work.

Once again I found they were following the prescribed procedure very closely. They were following the instruction, "Calculate the average of the horizontal speeds." I saw from their sheet that they had obtained the figures 3.3, 3.4, 3.4, 3.4, 3.4, 3.4, 3.4, 3.3 and 3.4. Note that these figures were recorded in isolation, without reference to specific units (I found that most students record their observations in this way; later we shall discuss this very revealing point). One of the students took out his calculator, added up the figures and divided them. While he was doing this, I asked him why he did not do the operation in his head. "I don't feel like it," he answered. When he had finished, I asked his partner to tell me what he had observed. "The horizontal speed remains constant, but the vertical speed increases." "Does it increase regularly?" "I don't know. We'll see that in question 14." At the time they were on question 5, and the set of points on their big data sheet clearly showed that the speed increased regularly.

Never did I see students involved in any project that entailed designing, planning, creating or the like, a project through which they could really express themselves. The only opportunity I had to see anything approaching self-expression — and in a very limited form at that — was when a girl in secondary IV left her class in the middle of a lab to go to the student leadership committee room next door and proudly show her mother, who was a teacher and committee member, the drawing she had just completed: the emblem of Québec! It was interesting to observe how her mother, looking relaxed and happy, studied the drawing carefully and then spoke of other matters with her daughter, who returned to the laboratory after a minute or two. I neither saw nor heard any reference to the work which should be done in a laboratory, as if it were unimportant in comparison with what she had just done! It is significant, as I discussed with the mother and her colleagues a few minutes later, that this girl seems to be perceived as one of the healthiest in the school, and that is my assessment also. Although her academic performance is considered acceptable but not outstanding, she is interested in many things (other than school subjects), is on good terms with her peers and, most important, she seems alive, she seems to have a soul which makes her radiant, instead of empty as many students appear to be. It was at this time that a teacher described most of his students as zombies.

Functional Power: Teachers

After what has been said about the effects of bumping, it is not surprising that teachers are not very keen to become involved in projects. They have not given up entirely, however, as the student leadership project shows. There is no project directly connected with teaching, however. Each teacher normally operates alone; he or she prepares "his or her courses", "presents his or her material" in more or less the same way year after year. There is no real pedagogical renewal, no actual research, no attempt to offer a new approach, no newly designed teaching material. Such things occurred in the past, but have been unknown for several years. "Why get involved in a new project, I mean a project of any scope, when you don't know if you're staying on from one year to the next? A project like that takes time and energy, and it can't be done in a year. . . . And then, think of the people who have to change subjects. They have to spend a lot of time retraining. How can you expect them to find the time — and the energy — to embark on a project? There are limits to people's enthusiasm." Another teacher told me, "People are aware that there are problems; it has to change. They [the administrators, I suppose] want us to find solutions, but they don't give us the means to find them. It can't cost anything! So what can you do?" A third teacher told me, "It's hard to do something when you don't have the parents' support. We used to have it, but we don't any more. I don't want to generalize, but there are many of us who have given up. We have more family problems than we used to — lots of separations — and also parents have less time to look after their children because they work outside the home. So we're not really encouraged. . . ."

From these comments we can see that the problem is not that teachers actually refuse to innovate, but that the context is not conducive to innovation: insecurity as to the future, the need to retrain, the lack of financial support, parental apathy. Some teachers would also add that the programs are too heavy. "There are too many things to cover in the programs for us to have time to do more interesting things. Myself, I have just enough time to get through the program, at top speed, otherwise I couldn't manage." Another factor was also mentioned by one teacher: the present timetable makes students study a different subject every hour. "If we had a modular timetable, made up of half days for example, instead of the one-hour periods we have now, heaps of projects would become feasible, because less time would be lost and the students could become more involved in what they're doing. At present, they're supposed to be involved in five different subjects a day!"

Intelligibility: Students

For the sake of clarity, we may distinguish between three levels of intelligibility. At the first level, the learning process results in students' mastery of a concrete or conceptual tool so as to have access to something real and/or to acquire the functional power to achieve an ambition. In this way, students' learning is intelligible to them. Young Inuit hunters or apprentices probably operate at this level.

At the second level, learning results in mastery of a concrete or conceptual tool so as to obtain the social and/or personal status conferred by its possession. This may be called instrumental intelligibility. Our *collèges classiques* probably used to function at this level.

At the third level, learning does not actually result in mastery of the tool but rather in behaviour that is characteristic of someone who has mastered it. In this case, the goal of learning is not the tool itself or even the status it confers, but certain behaviour patterns. If we can still speak of intelligibility, this is accidental intelligibility.

My opinion is that the students I encountered functioned on the third level, for the most part. I was in a secondary IV physics class where students were completing a film lab. I was close to the teacher, who was surrounded by students experiencing technical difficulties. A girl came and asked me whether I was a physics teacher and could help her. I said, "Maybe. Explain what you're doing." "Here, I have 6.2 and there I took the average." "The average of what?" "Well, the average!" "O.K., let's go back to the start. What did you have to begin with?" "That." She and her partner showed me a series of points recorded by the air cushion machine. "What's that?" "A URM." "A what?" "A URM." "What does that mean?" "But aren't you a physics teacher?" "Yes, but that doesn't say anything to me." "Well, I don't know!" She looked at her partner, who said, "I wasn't here when he explained it" (meaning the teacher). Both of them turned towards the group behind them and asked, "What's a URM?" Their classmates hesitated, obviously trying to remember, and then answered, "It's a uniform rectilinear motion." I turned back to the first two students, and asked what that meant. "A motion is something that travels. Rectilinear, ah. . . ." The other student carried on: "It goes in a straight line. And uniform means it's the same." "What's the same?" "The points!" "What about the points?" "Well, they're the same." She pointed with her finger to the even spacing between the points.

What strikes me as revealing here is that the students handle concepts, terms and formulae without connecting them with the corresponding physical reality, whether in physics, chemistry or biology. I have amassed enough examples to show that the phenomenon is quite widespread, and some teachers later confirmed my findings. From all indications, the students seem to think that these concepts, terms and formulae exist in a vacuum. That is all they see. These are not conceptual tools used to describe or represent physical realities; they exist independently!

In the example cited, uniform rectilinear motion is not the motion of a *real* object travelling at a constant speed in a certain direction but rather a series of evenly spaced points lined up on a page. Similarly, speed is not the distance travelled by a *real* object in a certain time, or even its value (what is obtained when the distance *travelled* by the object is divided by the time taken to travel it – and we should limit our discussion to URMs for fear of committing worse errors). Speed is simply a space divided by a time!

Acceleration — but it has to be uniform — is a speed divided by a time! The same holds true for density, in secondary III. After several labs dealing with the concept of density, a student who considered herself fairly good in the "Introduction to Physical Sciences" course told me, "Density is mass divided by volume." I responded, "I know that's how you calculate it, but that doesn't tell me what it is." "I don't know. I haven't got the precise explanation. I know it in my head, but I can't put it into words." The same is true of the concept of an average; for example, the average speed is nothing but the total of the speeds divided by the number of speeds, without any direct correspondence to a physical reality.

In biology we see the same phenomenon: as a rule, definitions are learned "by heart," without any reference to reality. One student told me, and the people around her agreed, "Biology is stuff you learn by heart. If you study [this word is regularly used to mean 'read so as to retain what is written, without necessarily thinking about it'] you get good marks." Another girl in a different class said, "Biology helps us understand the human body. I know, for example, that the body is made up of 108 bones [sic], and muscles have the properties of excitability, contractibility, elasticity and tone." I retorted, "And what has knowing all that changed for you?" With a slightly embarrassed smile, she answered, "Nothing! I know it, that's all."

The situation is scarcely different in chemistry: calculations and definitions, and little else. One day, for example, after the students had spent several lab periods weighing, decanting, filtering, washing and so forth, the teacher wrote those words on the board and asked the students to write down what the words meant. Several students then came and asked the teacher for a dictionary! I'll forego discussing students' concept of the mole!

In short, to the students' minds, science is little more than a "heap of definitions and formulae." In fact, as several teachers confirmed, any student who is good at French and mathematics and works at all will get good marks in science.

Let us look at a slightly different aspect of this phenomenon: physical quantity. The speed of a car is in "*milaleur*,"* not miles per hour, as we find when we ask a student to give a car's speed in metric units and he or she answers, as a rule, in kilometres! (A teacher told me this.) For the most part, indeed, units of measurement mean little to students, except that the teacher seems to care about them. In the example cited earlier, I asked what the student meant by 6.2. "Well, 6.2!" "But six what? Horses? Carrots?" "I don't know. It's the speed." "And what is speed expressed in?" "Oh, in centimetres"! A teacher recounted an amusing anecdote which illustrates the point well. "At the beginning of the year (in secondary IV), I asked them whether a litre would fit into the classroom. They didn't know. If I ask whether a litre of milk would fit, they have no trouble!" As if a "litre of milk" was a phrase that had nothing to do with the concept of litre.

We may even wonder whether 6.2 is deemed to be a little larger than 6. As I found several times, many students seem to deal simply with figures, not sizes. A teacher told me in this connection, "If you ask students in secondary IV or V to do simple multiplication, say 17 times 26, they may well give you an answer in the millions, if they make a mistake or push the wrong key on the calculator, as often happens. And it doesn't upset them; they don't notice on their own that it doesn't make sense." Figures, nothing but figures.

---

* A contraction of *milles-à-l'heure.* [Translator's note]

To the students' minds, the presence of figures separates science from other subjects; they actually say that measurement makes it "scientific." But if measurement is not connected with physical size, it is just a hollow name. The only reason students take measurements is because the teacher tells them to. Never do they test a hypothesis; they are not even concerned with a basic problem. They "measure," or to be precise, they collect figures, which they can "play with" later. And if, as in biology, they do not take measurements, they *look*. That is what they call "observing"! In this case, the criterion for an activity being "scientific" seems to be the use of so-called scientific instruments!

Students see science as a series of statements which have already been formulated. The manipulations they carry out — for they do not make real observations (experimental or otherwise) — are designed, as previously stated, to make "certain that's how it goes." To all intents and purposes, science is thus a type of dogma transmitted by the teacher and the book. The criterion of truth for an observation is the teacher (and/or the book), not the actual physical reality. If the "experimental data" do not confirm the dogma (for confirmation is what is sought), the "experiment" must have been carried out incorrectly.

Moreover, students take note of only the most superficial part of these statements: a few concepts and formulae. They seem to take no interest in explanations or theories, even though these could help them understand the phenomena a little better. This is understandable, for explanations or theories do not figure large in examinations, if at all. Since they are not "worthwhile," they are neglected.

This science has none of the traits of a human activity. The students can barely accept that it was developed by people. Indeed, scientists only "discovered" it, as if it were always there. Neither is it localized in time or space, nor linked to a culture. Still less is it a way in which humanity has sought to make nature intelligible; it is reality in itself. No need to mention its development, except to say that science progresses by adding new truths to those that have already been discovered; science is never wrong. We shall leave aside its social repercussions, especially its relations with technology, for that is not on the program. . . .

Intelligibility: Teachers

I wonder whether teachers' perception of scientific activity does not correspond to their students' beliefs to some extent.

In the laboratory, for example, teachers strongly emphasize observation. But since they do not start out with a question to be answered, how can there be real observation? Does it not come down, as the students say, to a way of seeing for oneself, so as to be certain that it happens as stated in the book? And why do they attach so much importance to quantifying when there are not even any hypotheses to be tested, unless it is because quantification looks "scientific"? Why do they encourage students to get the right answer, instead of searching *with* them for what produced the results they actually obtained, if they themselves believe that the criterion of truth is the actual physical reality, not what they learned from an "expert"? (Teachers would say, of course, that they do not have time, but is that the only reason? And even if it were the only reason, how can they bear such a contradiction?) Why do they plan the procedures for the students, often down to the last detail, if they conceive of science first and foremost as a search for truth, a challenge to be faced, a human adventure? Again, they do not have time and there are the programs. But what image of science do they project if not the image of a completed structure? If this is not the case, how can they bear this second contradiction? And if they see science as a human adventure, how can one account for the fact that, when they "give their courses," they leave aside the essential aspect of science as a "thought seeking to understand"? Do they not also present science as a set of rigorous, bald, indisputable and rational statements, leaving no room for doubt, intuition or history, not to mention the effects of the prevailing culture at the time of a discovery. (Moreover, perhaps they misuse the term "discovery," for students think that scientific facts are discovered in the same way that vipers are discovered under a stone.) Do they not also present science as simply a description of a reality that excludes humanity rather than a convenient up-to-date representation conceived by the human mind to account for the phenomena it perceives? Thus, even if teachers' conscious conception of science is not as naive as that of their students', their actions simply do not reflect this difference.

How can it be otherwise, given their scientific training at university or in teachers' college? Since the training I see nowadays being dispensed to my university students conveys this naive conception of science, I have every reason to believe that what they received a few years ago was no different. Thus it seems unavoidable that they should in turn pass on this conception. One might also argue that they are not working in a context that favours this type of reflection. They must, in fact, act like "firefighters," always in the thick of the action, and cannot step back to take their bearings and put their work in perspective.

Let us consider for a moment these teachers as teachers, not as teachers of science. I have very little to say on this topic, for I did not devote much attention to it. I did observe, however, that the common assumption that science teachers are first of all physicists, biologists and so forth was barely warranted in their case, if at all. On the contrary, they struck me as teachers first and foremost, teachers who, on the whole, were very sensitive to their students. Furthermore, science teachers were the instigators of the student leadership movement.

The teachers' understanding of what they were doing as teachers seemed to be based primarily on the experience they had acquired over a long career (at least 17 years) in teaching, and on the whole they were satisfied with this understanding. Some of them regretted that they had too little time to bring their knowledge about teaching up to date.

Some of the teachers also regretted that, because of lack of time, money and so forth, their teaching activity was reduced, for all practical purposes, to transmitting, or "inculcating," knowledge, whereas they believe in learning through rediscovery and active student involvement. One more contradiction to live with.

Consciousness: Students

By consciousness we mean the ability to comprehend the implications of one's own actions and those of other people. "The students are very conscious of the system," a teacher told me. I agree. Within limits, one could apply to them Claire Chamberland's observations on student conformity.[1] She found her students had three types of roles: prescribed roles, adopted roles and hidden roles. The first is a role defined by students' perception of teachers' expectations, the second role is played openly and the third is played in secret because it is at variance with accepted standards. Only the first two roles were in evidence in our study. The third type of role probably does exist, but appears negligible to me, and was not especially useful as a category for study.

As regards the prescribed roles, as in Chamberland's study, the students know, whether they acquiesce or not, that a "good student" is one who gets good marks, "works," shows an interest in the subject, makes the teacher interested in him or her, shows that he or she wants to learn, in short, plays his or her role as a pupil.

In reality, a quarter of the students, the best or most docile, conform to this role, while another quarter openly refuse to do so, and "drop out" in spirit. In the middle are the lukewarm students who try to cope, sometimes quite cleverly. One teacher told me, "To get through secondary school they only have to know three answers: I don't know, I can't, and I didn't understand. That way they don't have to get involved. Because if they get involved, they may find I am pushing them further, but if they give those answers, nobody bothers them and they don't have to make an effort."

Students know that in order to pass, they have only to learn, or "retain," the capsules that the teacher feeds them in the lectures, and know how to handle the formulae correctly. In this way they will earn their marks, and that is nearly all that counts. Because students are in the habit of working in small groups, they have developed techniques for making as little effort as possible, because "what counts is what gets handed in to the teacher." So they "share" work, and thus do not have to play hidden roles. They also know that whatever they do, so long as they are within the middle range, they are sure to pass. In any case, the results of ministry examinations are standardized. "They know it, and they take advantage," said a teacher. They know what each individual teacher demands, and each student complies with it more or less, depending on whether or not the majority of the class complies. What matters is to do roughly what the other people do and, overall, as little as possible!

Students seem fairly aware of the difference between really learning and merely getting good marks. Several times students corrected me when I said, "It seems you're good at physics [or biology or chemistry]." "I'm no good at it, but I get good marks, because I study what the teacher gives us."

Without any doubt, students have an ultra-utilitarian attitude towards school, an attitude which can be seen not only in their day-to-day classroom behaviour, but also in their choice of options. With few exceptions, unless they have to take particular courses required by the CEGEP (if they wish to go there), students choose, whenever possible, the courses that are said to require the least work (such as visual arts) as these courses will still give them their "units." As a rule, they openly admit that the reason they are taking science courses is "for the CEGEP." If the CEGEP requirement were abolished, hardly anyone would take science courses.

Students are also aware of certain areas where the administration and the teachers differ as to the application of disciplinary rules, and they take advantage of this division, as has already been noted.

Students are aware that the old motivation — the prospect of a good job for those who worked hard at school — no longer holds good, for they know that young people find hardly anything in the job market.

They are aware of how bumping affects their teachers. They also perceive that traditional values are being eroded — the value of work, honesty, religion and a sense of responsibility — throughout society, and they follow the trend. They do not commit themselves, they wait.

In short, they seem to me to be quite conscious of their situation, on the whole; that now, they are the victims of a system. They have struck a balance, even though it is an artificial one. It seems to me, therefore, that their consciousness stops at this point, a rather low point because they seem unable to see themselves in a broader perspective. It would be surprising if corresponding behaviours did not persist outside the school.

Nor does science teaching seem to help the situation, as was pointed out earlier (in the "intelligibility" section). One may even wonder if science teaching, through adopting a naive view of science, contributes to this low level of consciousness.

Consciousness: Teachers

Here we should distinguish between three areas of teachers' consciousness: their awareness of the effect of their actions as teachers, their awareness of the effect of their actions as science teachers and their awareness of the effect of their actions as employees answerable to the school administration.

The teachers seem fairly aware of their students' consciousness of the system. I wonder, however, how aware they are of their own influence on students. They recognize that they themselves play a role in students' perceptions, but I wonder how well they comprehend how some of their daily actions affect these young people's development. Do they, for example, consider the effects of their emphasis (in practical terms, I mean) on marks, on examinations, on conforming, on exhibiting behaviour associated with learning rather than on actual learning? They would say, of course, that they are compelled by the system and even by the students and parents themselves, to emphasize these things. But if they were really aware of the harmful effects of their attitude, would they choose to maintain it so readily? And if they were fully aware of the issue, how could they live with this disharmony?

Are teachers truly aware of the meaning of their actions as science teachers and, specifically, of the image of science they pass on to their students? I am inclined to think that they are not. I suspect that they are even less aware of its potential to damage their students' cognitive development by producing blind submission to authority, dependence on experts, abdication of inquisitive thought, absence of genuine criticism, overestimation of rationality (other people's, to boot!), feelings of helplessness and so forth.

What of the third area, teachers' relations with the school's administration, the ministry and the teachers' union? Teachers seem to be very aware of the effects of their actions with respect to the administration, and vice versa. Even if there is occasional friction between them and the administration, teachers seem to perceive clearly what goes on and what is at stake. We may wonder, however, how far this awarenesss extends beyond day-to-day concerns. When do teachers and administrators have a chance to come together and discuss the total effect of their actions on the students, the type of education they actually provide, the ideology on which they act and the type of society they are helping to build? A committee formed to design the school's educational project did indeed produce a report recently. I was only able to skim through the report, but it seemed to deal only with life inside the school. That is a worthwhile topic, to be sure, but the report did not consider teaching as such and did not provide any substantial information about the meaning of the "message" transmitted to students by the school and teacher.

Teachers' attitudes towards the ministry appear sharply divided. On the one hand are those who see the Ministry of Education as a huge impersonal machine that dictates everything and which teachers are powerless to influence; on the other hand are those who are familiar with its workings and some of the people running it, and who act to influence its decisions and orientations.

I was surprised to find that the union, whose actions and views are supposed to be rooted in its members' needs and aspirations, was actually seen as an organization so dissociated from its members that it was liable to victimize the teachers themselves! For example, on its own initiative and without consulting the teachers, the union lodged a grievance to block volunteer work on extracurricular activities by teachers and to claim pay for services already rendered. Moreover, all teachers agree that bumping, at least as it occurs at present, is a pointless exercise, for in the end everyone suffers. But even though they would like to see it abolished (as would the school board), they do not know how to go about it! Thus even the union has become a factor in alienation.

Belonging: Students

A person who "belongs" is aware of himself or herself as an integral part of his or her environment and is in touch with others who share that environment. As a rule, teachers and students do not use the formal "vous" in referring to one another, and everyone is on a first-name footing. Relations are rather cordial and sometimes quite familiar. At first sight, then, the distance between the two groups is not as great as it used to be. It would seem that relations between students and the administration are equally close (at least on the surface, for we should remember the student who said that the principal isn't liked, because he's the principal).

Furthermore, since the student leadership project was introduced, students and teachers have more opportunities to get together, at least in theory. Since the union's legal action took effect on 11 November 1982, the cells in which 20 or 30 students could meet with their adviser in a regularly scheduled period have had to be disbanded. All that remains is individual meetings arranged by the student or the teacher. But because there is no "slot" for such meetings in the timetable, which is already very full, the meetings must be held on the run, between two consecutive periods, or in time stolen from student's class time. This is sometimes done, but as one teacher said, "We mustn't do it too much." It is not possible to meet after school because the school bus system (the "yellow peril") will not allow it.

In class, some student-teacher contact is possible, but it is restricted by the volume of "material to be covered" and the number of students (20 to 33 per class). Moreover, since a student spends only three to five hours a week in contact with each teacher (he meets five to seven different teachers a week), the potential for real contact is further limited.

Some degree of contact with classmates is possible, but a student mixes with so many in his various courses (roughly 100 in secondary IV and V, though somewhat fewer in lower grades) that close bonding is hardly fostered. Bonds may, of course, be formed over the lunch hour, but we have seen how idle students are at that time of day.

The fact that students have to move from classroom to classroom and have no real meeting places apart from the hall, the cafeteria and the ping-pong room (all three of which are as noisy as they are impersonal) and the gymnasium and library (which are reserved exclusively for sports and reading and draw very few students) definitely does not help to develop a feeling of belonging. With what can students identify if there is nothing they can shape in their image? There are the murals in the corridors, but they are several years old by now. What is left? As far as I can tell, there is only the music! The music in the hall at lunch time, morning recess and immediately after school. I find it symptomatic that students insist so strongly on such loud rhythmic music. Is it to meet their need for escape and self-assertion? Because they cannot make their walls more personal, they claim possession of space through their music — indeed, they attack the whole school! A pity I was not there when the amplifier vanished, for I would have liked to study how the absence of music affected the dynamics of the school.

Finally, because bonds of friendship often grow in shared work projects and there are no such projects (or very few of them) in or out of class, we may wonder how much the school really wishes to develop such bonds.

Belonging: Teachers

Turning to the teachers, we find that most of them look for contact with the students — a matter of vital interest to some teachers. But, as mentioned when we discussed the situation of the students, there is little opportunity for real contact. We should consider, too, that each teacher meets with over 100 students a week for a very few hours. How could they have time to come to know their students well? They may know some of them, perhaps 10 or 20 or maybe even 30, but certainly not 125.

Among themselves, teachers develop some bonds. But unless their offices are in the same place, they have few chances to meet. Even for those working in the same room, these bonds only infrequently lead to real collaboration. Everyone tends to work alone. I even noticed traces of distrust between teachers, slight but unmistakable. (I am inclined to attribute this to the general climate of the school and the effects of bumping.) Teachers are also somewhat distrustful of the administration, although these relations seemed fairly cordial on the whole. At least some teachers and administrators seem able to speak very frankly to one another.

With parents there is almost no contact. Once a year a parents' night is held, but very few parents come (about 15 per cent at best, according to the staff). Those who do attend are usually the parents of students who are doing well.

Relations with school board officials are almost nonexistent. "They are far away, and they don't know what's going on here. They should come and take our place now and then, that would bring them down to earth," a teacher said to me. This does not mean there is confrontation, but only lack of support. With one exception, the teachers have no contact with the Ministry of Education. All contact is one-way, through official documents.

We should say something about the rooms where teachers work. First, there are the laboratories. Because all their courses are "given" (to use the teachers' term) in one of the seven laboratories, and normally each teacher keeps to his or her own laboratory (except that sometimes two teachers share a laboratory), one might expect to see a teacher's individual stamp on each room. On the contrary, the rooms are almost all equally impersonal. The same is true of the three staff rooms: there is almost nothing to identify them. These rooms have been taken over by laboratory equipment, so that the teachers are practically working in a storage room. In my view, the state of the laboratories and the staff rooms points to the absence of a feeling of belonging and also to the downplaying by the administration of the teachers' need for identification, even though that is quite a basic need.

In the same connection, I feel it is significant that social activities are very poorly attended by teaching staff. One teacher told me that when a party is organized, "You see barely 20 per cent of the teachers, and always the same ones."

The Indicators of Alienation

I began my discussion of alienation with the idea that when a social system like a school functions in a way that impedes the very development it was intended to promote, a condition of alienation may then exist. Taken together, several potential sources of alienation may help us understand why students and teachers place such a stress on instrumental rather than on intrinsic sources of satisfaction (leading to self-estrangement) and why students and teachers "tune out" of their world. Self-estrangement and dropping out, which we have examined in detail, are only two indicators among several of a state of alienation. It is reasonable to think that vandalism, depression amongst teachers and students, and drug use are also evidence of a state of alienation. We have only obtained limited data on these matters. Although vandalism has reduced considerably, there are still many instances of it, and the degree of surveillance is also significant. As regards depression, the principal and teachers had different perceptions, the latter claiming that the phenomenon was widespread among both teachers and students. "This is the first year," one teacher confided in me, "that I have seen so many depressed students," and his colleague added, "I estimated that depression affects 15 to 20 per cent of the teachers, and that only includes severe depression." As for drug use, it appears to be on the decrease, but we have no data with which to examine this situation further. More research is needed on this point.

Self-Estrangement or Instrumental Values

It is obvious — and the teachers acknowledge it — that the students' primary motive with regard to science courses is to obtain marks. Nearly all their actions are dictated by the hope of getting marks, because these will enable them to get their "units." (To earn a diploma and qualify for a CEGEP, students must complete a certain number of units, and for some CEGEP programs, they need units in particular disciplines.) When they are no longer concerned with these units, they drop out, in body or spirit. This is readily apparent from their thoughts and general behaviour. They are very docile in carrying out tasks set by the teacher: "I've got to do it because the teacher said so," "I'm doing it because I want my marks," "I need it to go to CEGEP." Other forms of behaviour are also revealing: the feverish activity of some students in labs or exercise periods, for example, where they are basically trying to finish work as quickly as possible "to get their marks." The fact that students do this work without really trying to understand what they are doing is symptomatic of their obsession with marks. As a rule, students do not pay much attention to the teacher's explanations, unless he or she is giving technical information relevant to the work, and hence to the marks.

The teachers continually deplore the fact that "students no longer want to make an effort; all they want is to get their marks as easily as possible." One teacher told me: "Nowadays you don't see effort and work. You have to make an effort to understand; the students don't any more, and the [academic] results show it. . . . The future doesn't motivate them any more, though before, people used to work for the future. They trust the standardization of marks. The administration even tells us that some of [the students] are only there for looks. . . . For a gang, the threat of marks and the promise of something more positive means nothing. Since students are very easily led, especially the youngest ones, the others are tempted to imitate them; repeaters are often looked up to as heroes! Ten or 15 years ago, even the dummies tried to make an effort."

This last point, the absence of effort, also seems to me to indicate the instrumental significance of the students' actions. The "law of least effort" surely comes into play when an activity does not have enough intrinsic meaning, when it is only a means to an end, a desirable end. Of course, each of our actions always has a mixture of intrinsic and intrumental value. But if intrinsic value predominates, the concept of effort and hence the "law of least effort" are irrelevant. If instrumental value predominates, on the other hand, effort is a factor to be considered, and the least effort is given. Consequently, I do not think the absence of effort is blameworthy, as the teachers do, but is rather another symptom of alienation.

There would seem to be, in effect, two realities in the school: one implicit and the other explicit; one based on experience and the other based on intentions. The marks game belongs to the first, the unspoken reality, while the action which is supposed to be directed at learning, developing research strategies, developing logic, reasoning and so forth belongs mainly to the second, explicit reality. These two realities are generally seen as existing side by side, by both teachers and students. Talking to me or to their students, the teachers emphasize the second reality. But in the way they run their classes (saying, "You have to hand this in to me by the deadline" or "The ministry examination has this three times out of two [sic]"), and by the very form and content of the examinations, they give clear priority to the first, unspoken reality, for, as they all say, "We have no choice." The students give obvious priority to the first reality ("I'm doing this because the teacher told me to" or "to get my marks" or "to get through my work"). Very seldom did I hear anything like "I'm doing this to learn." But for students the word "learn" has a very vague basic meaning, and is essentially intellectual (in that it does not really express a fully conscious experience). It serves as a justification that sounds good, and echoes what students have heard their teachers say many times over. It is not a reason for action grounded in personal experience.

Teachers and students seem to be living in two worlds and seeking to come to terms with a basic contradiction. Those who fully accept the unspoken reality, the "drop-ins," adapt to the contradiction by striking a kind of balance which, though artificial and temporary, seems to suit them fairly well. The others feel hemmed in, uncomfortable and dissatisfied. They may react in two opposite ways. Either they may drop out, literally or in spirit, justifying their actions in their own terms ("School is boring, I can't wait to leave"; "It's the other guys' fault, the ministry's or the teachers' "). Or else they may discharge their meaningless obligations and go on hoping that sooner or later the picture will change and it will all be more interesting.

In the meantime, they taste very little of the fruits of their labours (the satisfaction of knowing something new, the pleasure of mastering a new tool, the pleasure of meeting a challenge, the satisfaction of achieving something of value on one's own, whatever it be); they get marks! They are thus locked into a situation like that of the worker, lamented at length by Marx and others, who is denied access to the produce of his labour and receives only a few "green slips of paper" of token value.

The situation is still worse for students motivated primarily, if not solely, by the desire for good marks. Unlike a worker who can immediately exchange his token slips for the goods he wants, the student is a worker whose services are rewarded by a slip of paper that may, if conditions are favourable at the time — and these conditions depend not only on the student but also on imponderable and sometimes arbitrary factors — give him or her an opportunity to work at something else, which the student hopes will be more interesting! If we are ready to believe that workers are alienated, even though they can enjoy the results of their labour indirectly in the very short term, we should be even readier to recognize alienation among students, who have to work for nothing but marks.

Let us now turn to the teacher. One afternoon, I was in the science teachers' room, talking with a teacher about how he regarded his work. He had just received the computerized results of the last examinations. They were pitiful: 20 per cent, 30 per cent, with only a few 70s or 80s. The problem was not confined to his own subject, for he showed me the marks for other subjects, which were hardly more encouraging. At one point he said, in front of a few colleagues, "The longer this goes on, the more I feel I'm only here to get my pay. I have to present the material. You can take it or leave it, I don't care. I think it's serious when you get to thinking like that. I'm sure it's common; most teachers think that way." A few minutes later, in the same conversation, I asked another teacher who had been listening to us, "In the end, is the pay the only motivation?" "That's practically all that's left, along with job security. . . . After a while, you get hardened to it; you take it one period at a time."

Still in the same conversation, I asked them whether there was not a sort of tacit agreement among them to avoid the questions we were discussing. They agreed that there was, with a rather embarrassed smile. One added: "We each have our escape hatch. Mine is do-it-yourself work. At home, I go down to my shop and putter about. It helps me forget." Another said, "The worst is when you don't feel like doing anything any more. If you can't find anything to do, you think about it all the time; and that's bad." A few minutes after this conversation with the three science teachers, the lab technician, who had listened to our talk in silence, told me that at this time of year (early December) the teachers were tired and subject to depression, while at other times they were less pessimistic.

Immediately after this conversation, I went to another place where I found two other science teachers with a woman teacher from another discipline. (These teachers are very interested and caught up in a student leadership project they have been working to set up since the beginning of the school year.) As usual, I found them full of enthusiasm. Nevertheless, I asked them what would happen to them if they did not have student leadership. They all said without hesitating, "Depression!" For them, student leadership seems to be the "escape hatch" to which the other teacher referred. For it is important to note that this work is supposed to be incidental to their real job, which is teaching science.

Tuning Out

We can also begin to understand why students "tune out" by thinking of this behaviour as a symptom of alienation. In nearly every class there are two or three students who do nothing at all, and are only there for "looks," as one of the teachers said. "They're waiting to be old enough." These students seem to influence some of their classmates, for one teacher told me (and a colleague who was talking with us at the time confirmed it), "You know, we used to have regular bell curves in our classes. Now there are inverted curves: only very good and very poor students. It's the same in every class: math, physics or whatever." Dropping out in spirit, or "tuning out," seems to be a fairly widespread phenomenon.

The absentee rate also struck me as rather high. The principal still did not have the statistics for the current year at the end of March, and could not tell me whether there were more student absences in that year than in previous years. He estimated the rate to be five to six per cent, as compared to an acceptable rate of three to four per cent. He believes, however, that the school attendance committee which was set up recently to monitor student absences, should make a greater effort to lower the rate. The science teachers, for their part, think that the absentee rate is seldom over one per cent in their classes.

Teachers seem to be rarely absent, but their absentee rate rises noticeably in February and March, according to the principal, because of fatigue and early spring depression. Personally, I was surprised to learn of several instances in the fall when teachers took a half-day or day off "to rest," as if it were almost an accepted custom. However, I am unable to judge how widespread the practice may be. The principal confided to me that when a teacher has used up his or her statutory sick leave, he or she could be expected to stay away longer, knowing that the bonus that would have been paid at the end of the year had been lost. The work does not seem to inspire teachers greatly. Moreover, teachers told me several times that, to their regret, teachers tended to "disappear" when they do not have a class. (Note, however, that this practice is allowed under the teachers' collective agreement.) This behaviour seems to me to be further evidence of disaffection. I should add, however, that I have found science teachers working hard outside their class periods, some of them quite often. Perhaps science teachers are less given to wandering off, but the practice does exist.

There is also wasted time to consider. This is a conspicuous phenomenon which both students and teachers seem to accept as normal (but can be regarded as a form of "tuning out"). In addition to the five or ten minutes lost at the beginning and the end of each period, time is wasted during all the time when students' minds are far away. More time is lost in making "fair copies" of laboratory procedures, for instance; in doing nothing while the harassed teacher finds an answer to a student's question (that the student could probably have answered for himself or herself, if he or she had made the slightest effort); time wasted at the end of an activity because there was not enough time left to begin another; time lost in team work. I noted a typical example of unproductive teamwork in my notebook as follows:

> "I am in X's class. Everybody is hard at work (an exercise period or the end of a lab?). I hear background noise here and there, zero point something, zero point something else, chairs moving, occasional laughter. . . . I go quietly up to a group of three students absorbed in their work. One is dictating data, another is working out figures and writing them down, and the third is eating licorice!"

There is also much time lost at the beginning of the school year, even though this year (for once!) there was no strike. For example, several teachers expressed dissatisfaction because the secondary II and III timetables were revised late, so that some classes could not get under way until the very end of September!

We should also mention the time that is wasted when teachers are absent temporarily and are replaced by supply teachers brought in at the last minute, unprepared to carry on the regular teacher's work. All too often, in the teachers' view, supply teachers are unavailable.

Postscript

In my view, students' instrumental values and "tuning out" are symptoms of a state of alienation. This view is supported by the preceding analysis. Though I am well aware that such a conclusion is quite controversial, I have tried to be as circumspect about it as possible and explain to the teachers how I arrived at it. To ensure that the facts were representative and the interpretations correct, I decided I had to give the entire report to each of the eight teachers who figured in the study. They met with me to study my report page by page. The meeting was held away from the school and lasted a full day. Only one teacher was absent.

The teachers did not ask for any major changes to the original text. Their comments were used to flesh out some passages and slightly alter others. Therefore, the picture of the situation painted here has the unanimous support of the actors in the research, who consider it a faithful and representative account. They wished to emphasize, however, that the report describes the situation prevailing in the fall of 1981. They consider this an important point because the situation changes somewhat over time: the program content is altered, teaching procedures are revised, the students become more mature and experienced, end-of-year pressures and spring fever show their effects and so forth. Still, the general life of the school remains largely the same (except that the bumping cycle peaks at one point during the school year).

The teachers as a group formulated a number of comments and asked that they be included in my report:

> "At present there are very few (too few) connections between the various secondary science programs, except that the secondary V programs follow on from the secondary IV programs in the respective disciplines.
>
> "This year, as in the past, we have found that in secondary V science, students' abilities and attitudes improve substantially throughout the year. Not infrequently, some of the students suddenly become "clued in" during the second term. On the other hand, others tune the material out when they find that the CEGEP program they have decided upon does not require the course they are taking.
>
> "Two other issues deserving attention should be added to those mentioned by the author in the conclusion to this report. The possibility of bringing together students working at nearly the same level in one polyvalente should be studied, with a view to having more teachers in the same subject so that they could set up work teams; and the possibility of promoting a feeling of belonging among students and teachers, and continuity between some subjects, by having one staff member teach several related subjects (such as the different sciences and mathematics) to a few groups of students should be studied.
>
> "Your work among us and your report have made us more aware of how we teach and under what conditions we work. We felt these things, but now we can put them into words. We have also become more conscious of the objectives we are or are not pursuing. The study also helped establish bonds between us.
>
> "Next year we plan to introduce changes at our level. We hope, however, that the publication of this report will instigate further changes at higher levels."

Some teachers said they felt the final report did not go far enough. They thought its fine shadings and qualifications did not bring out the gravity of some situations clearly enough. Since I wished to steer clear of alarmism and polemics, I preferred to keep the report in its present form.

Readers who teach science in a different environment are certain to find that their situation differs in several ways from the one described above. This is to be expected. But I wonder whether they may not also recognize overall and underlying similarities.

Of course, these similarities may be difficult and unpleasant to recognize. But only when the sources of alienation are identified can we try to change the situation. The considerations I have grouped under each of the five dimensions used to analyze the phenomenon of alienation might be the basis for constructive change. Ways of improving teachers' and students' structural and functional power, intelligibility, consciousness and sense of belonging could be studied. I shall not go into the details of the changes that could be made, but I would like to point out a few major issues that I believe deserve careful consideration.

Issues for Deliberation

It is very obvious that the practice of bumping should be reappraised. I do not know enough about the matter to put forward a sound alternative to it. Could exceptions not be made, however, at least for teachers engaged in innovative teaching projects of a certain scope? Such an exceptional measure could stimulate the continuing improvement of teaching.

I also wonder whether it might not be advisable to study the present timetable format and consider the feasibility and advantages of introducing a modular timetable (with half-day periods, for example). Such a timetable would necessarily entail substantial changes in class organization but would probably involve students more in their work.

We should not, of course, assume that changing the organization of classes would improve the quality of learning; changes in students' and teachers' attitudes are even more important. It might be useful to thoroughly re-examine the place of inquiry in learning (for students) and teaching (for teachers). I do not wish to imply that the student should find out everything on his or her own; to do so would be utopian. I am only suggesting that, at least at the beginning of some of the basic units of material to be explored, the student should have the opportunity to test and hone his or her research abilities. Things subsequently learned (the rest of the "chapter") could then be reconciled with what the student has already discovered for himself or herself, even if this process results in contradictions. I am aware that I am simplifying here, and this approach must be thoroughly developed before it becomes acceptable; moreover, it has its limitations. Nevertheless, I believe this is a path to be considered.

With regard to teachers, perhaps their status as "distributors of information" could be altered so that they too could become involved in inquiry into the subject of teaching itself. I wonder whether such a change, together with more opportunity for contact with students, might not increase teachers' motivation to teach. This would presuppose several changes in teachers' working conditions, such as the possibility of taking sabbaticals, the possibility of setting up research teams (which would include university teachers, for example, but also regular staff members) and lighter teaching loads. I know these changes cannot be made without others, and will not be easy to achieve, but I think they at least deserve to be considered.

Might it be possible to bring teaching material much more into line with students' daily lives? This does not mean that education would be reduced to a cafeteria smattering of natural and/or cultural phenomena selected at random, but rather that certain subjects of study (to be determined) would be tied to students' experiences in the real world. It would also mean that teachers would try to involve students in projects that would make the learning experience more concrete. Obviously, this approach would entail major changes in the programs. Students would not "cover" as much, for example, but at least they might learn something meaningful and useful, which is perhaps more than they learn at present.

Also, should we not consider overhauling examinations so that they correspond more closely to the objectives science teaching is supposed to pursue? At present, most examinations serve primarily to assess how well a student has retained (not necessarily understood) certain data, and how well he or she can apply a set of "formulae." Others appear to measure only how well a student has mastered the technique of answering multiple choice questions! I know how difficult this problem is to solve , but I think that the quality of education seems to depend on it.

In the same vein, perhaps the impact of the "marks game" could be softened so that the symbolic importance of marks did not impinge on actual learning; for example, marks might be given more for a student's achievements — as indications of heuristic capability (skills and attitudes) — than for the student's ability to conform and follow instructions. I am not saying that knowledge as such should be set aside, but I think it should receive less emphasis, at least in theory; for in reality, knowledge is often only a thin varnish that must be renewed every year, and sometimes completely replaced!

Lastly, should we not give prominence to the human side of science? By this I mean giving attention not only to the people who have built up and are building up science, and their cultural milieu, but also to the positive and the negative social implications of science (which often result from technological change). I agree that it may be difficult to distinguish clearly between the "positive" and "negative" effects of science. Yet I think that it would be educational for young people to be exposed to matters of this kind from time to time. It might contribute to their mental development and, in particular, to the development of a measure of social consciousness. I know these suggestions are not original ones; but viewed in the light of my findings in this study, they may have some value.

In closing, I would like to express my deep gratitude to these teachers and their students for letting me learn so much through contact with them. This study allowed me to immerse myself in a real-life situation and has inspired me to become more involved in the day-to-day teaching of science. I hope that this report will contribute not only to improving science teaching but also to the general education of young people in our polyvalentes. If it does, I shall feel that the trust placed in me by the students and teachers at this school has borne good fruit.

Notes

1. Claire Chamberland, "L'étudiant conformiste et l'enseignement du français au CEGEP: Une étude de rôles," *Recherches sociographiques*, September-December 1980, vol. 21, no. 3, pp. 283-316.

IX. Science at Prairie High School

Glen Aikenhead

The School

The students of Prairie High come to grade 9 from a kindergarten-to-grade-8 elementary school. For these students, Prairie High represents a totally new social setting, involving 500 to 1000 students. Events, such as wiener roasts and dances, are held to welcome the newcomers and ease their transition to Prairie High. The students come to the school from well-established middle-class communities. Their behaviour in the corridors is courteous, even jovial at times. It was always pleasant for me to flow with the crowd during class breaks and to be acknowledged by students who took it upon themselves to say "Hello." During the day, students can walk or drive to a nearby shopping area. While some students "escape" from the school at the first possible moment of the day, many make the school their social focus. The school offers a large number of extracurricular activities such as sports, fine arts and clubs.

More accurately, perhaps, the teachers offer these activities. Teachers are expected to lead several extracurricular activities for two or four hours per week. These responsibilities are in addition to other activities these teachers are normally expected to carry out, such as planning instruction, gathering materials within the school and outside the school for science labs, assisting students by giving extra help with their studies or with science fair projects, serving on professional committees (within the school, provincially and nationally), and administering charity projects in cooperation with students. Classroom teaching thus constitutes only a portion of the teachers' daily workload. Teachers also gave freely of their time to participate in this case study, increasing the already heavy demands placed on them even further. Yet not only did I sense that the teachers accepted me, I felt genuinely at home in their school. Factors that contributed to this feeling were their curiosity and enthusiasm for the case study from the very beginning, their willingness to let me join their classes at any time without notice, their ease in talking candidly and perceptively about their teaching, and their thoughtful analysis of the classroom events that we shared.

The teachers in this study are no strangers to the classroom. Their experience at Prairie High ranges from five to 22 years, with the majority having more than 10 years' teaching experience. All but one of the teachers have a Bachelor's degree in education and three have Bachelor's degrees in science as well. Two have Master's degrees in education while one has a Master's degree in science. Some teach mathematics, English, arts or geography in addition to their science courses. Others, who teach the senior physics, chemistry and biology, also teach grade 9 physical science and grade 10 chemical science. Class sizes range from 14 to 34 students, averaging 27 students per class, and most classes have equal numbers of boys and girls.

With only one exception, provincial curriculum guides were conspicuous by their absence in all discussions with the Prairie High science teachers. Teachers have adapted these guides to suit their own practices; the one major exception to this settled adaptation of curriculum guides was the grade 10 course. The province has recently adopted an approach to physical science that emphasizes chemistry, and this new syllabus has replaced a variety of grade 10 courses throughout the province. The new text for grade 10 is *Physical Science: An Introductory Study*. One teacher thought it really did not matter how the grade 9 and 10 curriculum was written, or what approach was taken, as long as the students were doing science. Another expressed dismay over the new curriculum and the experiments in the textbook that did not work out properly. However, he liked using the text because, in addition to science, he taught reading skills, such as the ability to abstract the "key idea" from a paragraph. In some classes the text was followed closely ("because I'm going through it for the first time"), while in most classes it was used as a point of departure. In all cases, the text was used very differently by each teacher. One teacher said that he supplemented the textbook "with the atmosphere in a classroom, his personality and his background." He did this to such an extent that some students felt he was "too smart to be a teacher."

The science teaching staff at first hoped that this case study might serve as an assessment of their science instruction. This expectation had to go unfulfilled. Assessment of individual teachers was not possible because the case study was not planned to be a case study of individual teachers, nor was it planned to be evaluative. Instead, it is a case study of science teaching at Prairie High School, with each teacher contributing episodes to the total case study. Each episode is like a small fragment of coloured glass; when many are assembled, a mosaic may emerge. The picture cannot depict one teacher's instruction because the picture is an expression of the whole.

Similarly, there isn't just one approach to science at work here. In Mr. Epp's grade 9 class, for example, an introductory section on "What is Science?" dealt with the assumptions made by Aristotle and Galileo. But then a discussion developed into an analysis of the logic and assumptions of current television commercials. "If you apply the scientific method, you will see through these commercials," Mr. Epp concluded, in attempting to relate science to everyday life. Down the hall another grade 9 class was instructed to read the same passage and to begin the first lab in the text. Mr. Bews had decided not to discuss the passage "because the students have had it all before," and he felt strongly that the students ought to get involved in science as soon as possible by doing a lab. Mr. Epp had not prepared the "Burning Candle" lab that day, while Mr. Bews had not monitored student understanding of the passage. Each teacher's decision to select a particular approach came from a different perception of how best to introduce grade 9 students to high school science. Each teacher provided his students with a very different experience based on the same textbook passage.

This report reflects what all the teachers had to say about significant issues for science education; as we shall see, they spoke with diverse voices. Reflection on these issues has meant probing the conscious and unconscious decisions they made and, at a deeper level, analyzing the beliefs and perceptions that guided their decisions and even dictated their objectives. My task was not to make sense of the classroom events that I saw; it was to get the teachers themselves to make sense of these events. My ultimate purpose was to permit the reader to understand science teaching better from the teachers' point of view. To do this I have organized the teachers' comments and reflections under a number of headings. These headings reflect a balance of interests; some of the topics were of greater interest to the teachers; some were of greater interest to me. All are significant, I believe, for science education at Prairie High. The story begins with what may be the most important issue for the teachers — coping with the range of student abilities they find in their classes.

Teaching Science and Students' Abilities

The science classes at Prairie High are streamed according to three levels of students' abilities, and teachers hold different expectations for these different classes. In all science classes at Prairie High, students worked from the same textbook, regardless of the ability level of the class. There were a number of advantages to this practice, including ease of student mobility from level to level, ease and efficiency of teacher preparation for classes at each level, and a basic belief in the value of the content of that text.

Mr. Dareichuk's "bright" grade 9 students studied significant figures during two classes of meticulous algebra practice. His students were expected thereafter to state observations in a form called "scientific notation" (where 6100 metres becomes 6.1×10^3 metres). Mr. Dareichuk compared this same instruction to his instruction of an "average" grade 11 physics class:

Aikenhead: What was the reason behind the decision to use scientific notation and exponentials with 9th graders instead of using the strategy you used with the 11th graders?

Dareichuk: For one reason, they should be more capable. And secondly, they're going to be, probably most of them will be, ones that will make use of those facts much more, later. And so, therefore, their knowledge is much more exact.

Aikenhead: Does this affect the way you design your tests?

Dareichuk: I have to be careful not to put any real thinking questions on the test. It's just very simple, almost very similar to what they've done in class; otherwise it really bothers them. . . . They wouldn't touch these [application type of questions] because it would be foreign to them. "What do I do?". . . You've got to lay down sort of rules; "Here's how you should form this so it works well." And then you get fairly good results. I've laid down the rules for them; say if you're doing convex/concave mirror calculations; I've sort of laid down steps that they should try and do so they get that process going. So I give them four or five steps where I said, "O.K., now when you're doing concave mirrors, what does the question ask? Draw your diagram, put on the different parts of the measurements we're working on. Which ones do you know the values for, which ones don't you? Let's make a list of these. What do you know; what is asked for?"

This step-by-step precision was noticeable in Mr. Dareichuk's grade 11 physics class where 30 students, about an equal number of boys and girls, sat in pairs at tables watching him at an overhead projector with a triangle-shaped piece of glass. The materials for the lab were in front of each pair of students: cardboard, pens, glass triangle, a mimeographed sheet with the outline of the glass triangle giving the students explicit directions where to place the triangle on the sheet.

Mr. Dareichuk pointed out that the two angles chosen for the experiment will give good results by not confusing internal reflection, and showed how to set pins into the cardboard surface to define rays. He sketched on the overhead projector what the results of the lab should look like ("just to show you how these rays are going to work in general"). He then had students predict what bending of light should take place, based on the students' past work with water. Finally, he reviewed the geometry constructions and the mathematics calculations that students would do with their results in order to calculate the index of refraction twice, on entering and on exiting from the glass.

The price teachers pay for not making every detail clearly explicit is student confusion. Mr. Almon's grade 9 "average" class assembled equipment for a pendulum lab without reading the lab instructions, in spite of Mr. Almon's unambiguous directions to read these instructions right there in class. He found himself moving around the room from group to group repeating the same directions, causing students to wait to have their procedures corrected or for guidance on how to begin. When asked if doing the lab as a demonstration might have overcome the problem of students not knowing what to do, he made these comments:

Almon: I don't like that kind of experiment, in general. There are some experiments that are so difficult that you have to do it that way, or the class is of so low a level. For example, if I had a totally low-level class, I might have to try that with them. I guess that defeats the purpose of an experiment in some cases.

Aikenhead: In what sense?

Almon: Well, they're not inquiring on their own, you know. I'm inquiring for them [and] they go through the motions, but it doesn't go through their heads. Also, I really want them to read instructions. And they have improved on that. I've seen a marked improvement on reading and listening to instructions I give them.

There seemed to be a constant compromise between achieving ideals — in this instance, inquiry — and matching instruction with students' abilities in order that they might improve in some obvious way. Mr. Almon was willing to invest the time with his "average" class, but predicted that it would not be a wise investment for a class with a "low level" of ability. There seemed to be a critical balance between mildly challenging students and overwhelming them.

Epp: You see, this is the dilemma you're in. You stand up in the class and you explain to them what the observations are [in a lab], and what the conclusions are. And yet when they go to write their lab reports they don't do that. They have something altogether different. Whether they haven't been paying attention or whether they think theirs are right, I don't know. But they all should be handing in the same lab. I'm trying to help them, but they're not listening.

Mr. Epp did not see any way out of his dilemma. He did try with all his energy to help students, but some would get it wrong anyway.

An interesting opportunity presented itself when I was able to observe how teachers put their ideas about coping with different ability levels into practice. I was able to observe variations in the same lesson taught to three ability levels when Mr. Cheney introduced his grade 11 biology classes to classification. Students had previously collected insects. (Higher-ability students had brought in one insect from each of 10 orders, while lower-ability students collected fewer; that is, they had the same assignment, but different things were expected of them.) The lesson had four major parts: copying definitions from the board (kingdom, phylum, class and so on); discussing the classification of everyday objects as a characteristically human activity; applying these ideas to how common things are classified (for example, a telephone directory, volleyball players and products in Safeway), thereby explicating important characteristics of the classification process; and using the household mutt, *Canis familiaris,* as an example of genus and species, then family, then order and so on.

All students kept on task for the whole period in spite of interesting distractions such as large coloured photographs of flowers covering one wall and, on another wall, body systems charts hanging above shelves of reference books and specimens – both pickled and stuffed. Equipment littered the workbench that extended the full length of the room. The room was visually exciting and was without doubt a biology classroom.

The first class I observed was an "average" group. After the class, the teacher and I briefly talked about his plans for that day, specifically for the low-ability students:

Cheney: That's something that isn't worked out really well in my mind. I'd like to get some things across to them as happened in here [the "average" biology class]: about grouping, [that] it's useful, and [to give] the basic rules for it. But I know they're not going to stand for that vocabulary. This bunch didn't stand for it very well.

Aikenhead: Yet, they were very attentive.

Cheney: But my first [higher-ability] class just loved it. . . . So [for the lower-ability biology class] I think I'll have to adjust a little bit, expand the middle portion of the lesson so they really get the idea of grouping.

Aikenhead: Essentially the same lesson but modified, then.

Cheney: This bunch, they're quite special to me; but you obviously can't do the same things with the same outcomes as you can with the others. So we'll just have to play it by ear and see what happens. . . . I always judge this group by a finished product. Like, many of them when we started the projects never did anything for hours and hours and hours. And then when it came down to the crunch of handing things in, many of them were in overtime on their time, something that never happens in other classes. So they were slow starters, but if you don't give up on them it seems that there's going to be a

> product. So we're going to concentrate on product here, and maybe get them to know a little bit of biology.

And did Mr. Cheney change his plans in midstream? Dramatically! The notes copied during the first part of the lesson were completely different. "I've taken some of the information from chapter 14 and have summarized it for you," he told them. The students copied the notes, exhibiting the same concentration as the "higher-ability" students. The second part of the lesson – the introduction to classification – lasted 30 seconds compared with 6 to 10 minutes in the other classes. The students then were quickly pushed into the activity of describing how common things were classified and what criteria were used. Mr. Cheney moved around the room to help various students get started. The activity and answer-sharing would have taken just as long as the other classes took, except Mr. Cheney had added a few extra common things to the list (newspaper, school yearbook). Instead of tracing *Canis familiaris*, the students compared such trios as whale, fish and horse, or grasshopper, crayfish and lobster, in order to speculate on structural similarities. Then quickly their attention was drawn back to the overhead projector where Mr. Cheney went through a key that would distinguish among four common objects. The students, in pairs, were given the task of picking out four students in their class and devising a key that would distinguish among the four. The key was to work in the same manner as a biological key. Some of the students were prone to use such biological features as "virgin/nonvirgin" in addition to hairstyle and hair colour. The assignment took approximately 15 minutes and with it ended the period.

With these lower-ability students, Mr. Cheney changed his speech patterns. He spoke in a more staccato manner; each phrase came out like a mild verbal punch and there were seldom moments of uncertainty in his voice. However, the message content for the lower-ability students had a greater frequency of positive reinforcements. Mr. Cheney's disarming smile broke out with the same frequency as it did with other classes where his speech style was more reflective, tentative and rich with biological examples.

Teacher Beliefs

Later that same day I talked with Mr. Cheney about the three biology classes. The lower-ability course, he said, had been developed to respond to a need in the school. Two objectives of the course were to develop an appreciation of the environment, and to develop the knowledge and skills to interact with the environment. When asked to compare these objectives with those for the "average-" and "higher-ability" students, Mr. Cheney explained that for the lower-ability students the priority was the former objective, while for the other students it was the latter.

Cheney: They [the higher-ability students] can handle activities in more of an abstract way than the [lower-ability students] can. So you could still do the same kinds of methods with each group, but your outcomes are somewhat different. You can use somewhat the same style if you like. I've been trying it. It seems to work well. . . . If you have some well-defined boundaries and have them either fuddle their way through it or all of a sudden start to snowball and catch on, that's good. That's the way it should go.

Aikenhead: Those boundaries are better defined for the less able group?

Cheney: Yes, indeed. If we have to, we'll funnel them in a few times to get them thinking "there really is something there, if we just try and figure it out." But the problem with the less academic group is that they don't have the patience, and the frustration level is much higher.

Aikenhead: How do you benefit, from a teacher point of view, from changing that style in the way you described, from the more subtle to more explicit? How does that serve your purposes?

Cheney: Well, one of the things I told you this morning is that the lower academic group deals with product. If we concentrate more on product, it makes for all-round good feelings. I'm happy when they get something done. They're happy to get it done. They feel better about being able to do something. Whereas if you go into a situation where they just can't do it – and it's not a question of repetition and drilling or whatever – it's just not worth that kind of scene. Well, how can we come away with any kind of good feelings? At least here there are a number of things they're going to do. And some will do them extremely well. . . . The feeling is there, and yet [the work] is academic.

There were many practical reasons why teachers altered their instruction for different student abilities: reasons of survival; reasons of pride; and reasons relating to the wellbeing of the students. This wellbeing was most often rationalized in terms of socialization and preparation for academia. While I saw basically the same course taught to different students, teachers expressed the view that significant modifications had been made.

In Mr. Cheney's three biology classes described above, the students had similar assignments and similar lessons, although the emphasis and expectations were greatly different. Mr. Cheney seemed concerned that the work be perceived by colleagues and students alike as "academic." "Academic" was what the higher-ability students did. "Academic," understandably, related to what is done in, or in preparation for, university biology, where Mr. Cheney once taught for several years. Mr. Cheney was adamant that the academic content for the lower-ability students was not an illusion. He believed that these students could accomplish academic work. He had results to support his belief. Students did learn grouping strategies to some extent. They did learn to devise and use a key to some extent. They did show pride in their insect collection. In this sense, then, they did experience success in the academic work as Mr. Cheney conceived it. He felt happy. They felt happy. He hadn't altered his goals, just the priority of those goals. It appeared to me that he had conserved his belief in the value of academic work.

Similarly, Mr. Almon valued quantitative problem solving in physics very highly. Project Physics was too nonmathematical, he believed. He used a modified Physical Science Study Committee (PSSC) approach in his class.

For one grade 12 class I observed, he had carefully gone over how to do a kinematics problem and how to pick the appropriate equations to use. Five kinematics equations were printed on a cardboard sheet hung at the front of the room. In discussing this lesson with him, I asked him about quantitative problem solving as a focus for physics work:

Aikenhead: I guess it comes to the very general question, "What's the point of doing problems?"

Almon: The overall answer is to get through the problems in order to learn some problem-solving techniques that apply in a number of different places, from physics to science, and then to all of life. . . . Kinematics serves as a base for all the other mechanics in physics, so the material is important to future problem solving they do. On the whole, the material is probably secondary to the problem-solving techniques. But kinematics is vital.

Aikenhead: You mentioned before "use in life." What's the payoff in everyday life for this kind of problem solving?

Almon: Well, I think whenever you have any kind of problem in life, the person who writes down what the "givens" are in a situation and then systematically solves a problem usually, in my opinion, comes up with a better answer, a better solution compared to the person who just tries the hit-and-miss technique.

Aikenhead: Does that mean that by doing these kinematic physics problems, something is transferred to everyday situations?

Almon: I think there is. I don't say that by doing these problems today there is. But through the whole year we do an awful lot of problems of different sorts, but all have the same basic technique. I think there is a transfer. There was for me. I've learned to solve problems in life like I've learned to solve physics problems. I don't know when that took place, when it got into my head, but it surely did happen.

As the above discussion evolved, I probed the worth of learning quantitative problem-solving techniques. The ultimate justification for

Mr. Almon turned out to be the preparation of students for the next level of education. I suggested including in his physics class an everyday situation, like buying a car, but he did not find that idea attractive, perhaps because such an activity would detract from the quality of preparation for the next level of education. It just wasn't "good physics."

When we were discussing choosing the items that constitute an exam, Mr. Almon expressed the view that students who could not achieve on the "application" items could achieve on "comprehension" items – those problems practised in class and for homework. He believed that this lack of understanding the applications of physics was compensated for by the problem-solving techniques they learned from mastering the problems. Consequently, he felt that students who could do problems deserved to pass his physics course. When given the choice of either altering the curriculum content so that students could succeed at application questions (that is, on questions other than quantitative problem solving), or altering the exam content to include easier items of a quantitative nature, he chose the latter alternative. Mr. Almon's allegiance to problem solving was firm.

Mr. Dareichuk also stressed problem solving as part of his "theory of physics." On the first day, he introduced his class to physics by asking "What is physics?" He wrote down student responses on the blackboard, mysteriously categorizing them into two columns, and later labelling the two columns "theory" and "application." The students were told that they would be studying the theory and then the application of those topics written on the board. When I asked Mr. Dareichuk about the function of physics applications in his course, he remarked that this everyday aspect of physics was the course content that "reaches the students," especially the average-ability students. I pushed Mr. Dareichuk on this point: "What if you taught grade 11 physics to the average-ability students from the basis of application, and brought in theory only in spots?" Mr. Dareichuk said that the consequences would have been twofold. First of all, the teachers at Prairie High would have to change the grade 11 physics course, and this would conflict with teachers' preparation of students for postsecondary institutions that require the theory. Secondly, the theory tied everything neatly together, giving meaning to physical phenomena. This parsimony of meaning would be lost in a course taught on the basis of applications to everyday life. Not only did the theoretical nature of physics have pragmatic value for Mr. Dareichuk, it also had aesthetic value. He appeared to be guided by these beliefs in many of the curricular decisions he made.

Goals for Science Education

Much of the instruction in science classes at Prairie High, as we have seen, emphasizes the discipline's content (learning the correct explanation of natural phenomena) and obtaining a solid foundation for the next level of instruction (preparing for university, technical institutes or the next grade level). However, I also observed instances where teachers emphasized certain characteristics about the nature of the scientific enterprise itself. I must warn readers that the teachers generally associated me with this particular emphasis. We discussed the possibility that my being there might encourage them to teach more about the nature of science than usual. The following data comes from those instances where the teacher and I both believed that the data represent typical science classes.

I was present for most of the September introductory classes in science. The question "Why do we study science?" was posed to students in more than one classroom. The answers given in Mr. Epp's class were typical: "To understand the true meaning of things around us"; "To learn the facts." These responses reflected a view of science as the accumulation of facts in order to know the truth about nature. In Mr. Bews' class, the question "Why do we study science?" was rephrased after a student laughingly said, "Because I have to." When Mr. Bews asked, "Why does society insist that you study science?" more socially pragmatic answers emerged.

Views of science can be communicated explicity to students by the messages they hear or read in the classroom. Although all teachers at Prairie High communicated implicit messages about science, several talked explicitly about the nature of science. These teachers' classroom events constitute the major source of data for this section of the case study.

In a grade 11 "average-ability" biology class, Mr. Cheney was discussing criteria used for classifying, and had elicited from students criteria for the biological groups "animals" and "plants." He said to the class:

> "On the cover of your textbook there's a very interesting living thing that uses light to produce food. Yet it's a real problem in classifying. Do you classify it as a plant or animal? Obviously our neat little categories are somewhat disrupted. But still useful for the most part."

This emphasis on scientific knowledge being useful as opposed to being truthful, repeated itself in many forms and on many occasions in Mr. Cheney's classes. For example, in reinforcing a student's rationale for learning the biological classification system ("You could put things in order"), Mr. Cheney wrote on the board in large letters, "VERY USEFUL." In a grade 10 class discussing the experimental findings of a solubility lab that used graphic techniques, Mr. Cheney said, "So a graph can give you a whole lot of useful information and, whenever possible, we in science try to show our results in graphs. It's a picture, and it is useful mathematically."

I spoke with Mr. Cheney about the way he used the object depicted on the textbook cover with the higher-ability classes:

Aikenhead: One student said, "What is it, really?" They were saying, "What is the truth?" And you said, "You can't classify it!" and left it at that.

Cheney: They don't like that [laughter]. Some of the ones who aren't prepared to do some thinking about it don't like that. Some of the ones that are prepared to do some thinking on it will be quiet about it and come back to you later, or when you come back to them they'll have at least thought about it. And some of the ones don't get the point of any of it. Now when I threw out that same thing to my [higher-ability group], not one of them asked that question.

Aikenhead: What does that communicate to kids about the nature of science?

Cheney: Well, and I always try to get that point across, that science doesn't know everything. I guess that's true of the general public, they just have more faith in science's ability than people right on the frontiers have.

The nature of science became an explicit topic in Mr. Dareichuk's higher-ability grade 9 class, where students read about observations, direct and indirect evidence, experimental design, dependent and independent variables, conclusions, hypotheses, generalizations and models. Small groups of students discussed these ideas among themselves for several days and then wrote a test. Mr. Dareichuk was disappointed with the results. He carefully went over the topics listed above when he took up the test in class. In a discussion about the nature of scientific models, he encouraged the students to draw upon their own ideas about models. From their ideas, he developed the idea of a scientific model. Many of the student responses on the test had not been specific enough to meet Mr. Dareichuk's standards of a "good answer." The following discussion shows how Mr. Dareichuk provided his students with the standard of answer he expected of them:

Dareichuk: What is a model?

Student: A construction or reconstruction of [inaudible].

Dareichuk: A reconstruction. O.K., that's a little bit nebulous. I'd like you to answer a little clearer than that.

Student: A mental picture.

Dareichuk: A mental picture. Judy said that. O.K., and now if we want to. . . . How can we record that a little bit more, when we say a mental picture?

Student: A model is something which looks like the real thing but is smaller or larger.

Dareichuk: O.K. Now, how are you forming that model? How do you know when that model is like the other real thing. What do you mean by "one being like the other"?

Student: [inaudible]

Dareichuk: O.K., by observations. . . . How do you form this mental picture?

Student: An educated drawing or picture of something. . . [inaudible].

Dareichuk: What do you mean? What is an educated drawing or a picture?

Student: You have some education. . . .

Dareichuk: But, uh, what is, when you say you're making an educated guess, what is this so-called educated guess as opposed to an uneducated guess?

Student: You know something about it.

Dareichuk: All right. You know something about it. . . . What is your understanding of an atom? What are some ideas you might have?

Student: All things are made up of atoms.

Dareichuk: All things are made up of atoms. O.K., now what are atoms?

Student: They all have small [inaudible].

Dareichuk: So they are very small. You're saying small particles then, right? I noticed you said neutrons and protons. So there's another statement that gives us two different ideas. They're made up of small particles. You mentioned at least two different kinds. Anything else?

Student: The electrons circling around.

Dareichuk: The electrons circling around. O.K., so there's another particle we've mentioned. We're getting a bigger picture here then. And you say now circling, eh? All right the ideas I'm after when you say a mental picture, a mental picture is formed by what, then?

Student: [inaudible]

Dareichuk: Right. Information or a series of ideas. So we need lots of ideas to try to formulate any kind of model. And so with the model here, most of you were familiar with building models of different types, and you're saying a model is usually a replica of a smaller size or a larger size, but I wanted you to realize that this didn't have to be concrete, or three-dimensional. It could be series of ideas that you need to put together to make this thing.

In Mr. Bews' grade 11 higher-ability chemistry class, I noticed that he enunciated ideas about the nature of science with unusually high frequency. The class had collected data that, when graphed, suggested a relationship between gas pressure and volume. For Mr. Bews, the lab served the purpose of getting students "back into the groove" of quantitative work. In our discussion before the class, he indicated that, while the lab write-up was a mathematical exercise, he wanted students to think about the relationship between the mathematics and the behaviour of nature. However, he recognized that students would likely be satisfied with just the mathematical aspect of the write-up. The verbal interaction between Mr. Bews and his students contains several messages about the nature of science:

Bews: All right, well then, let's infer a relationship between gas volume and gas pressure, for a given sample. Are there any other qualifications you'd like to make? [pause, no student response]. Something you didn't worry about, but it is something probably in the back of your mind [pause, no student response]. You did this lab with a fixed sample of air and at a fixed. . . [pause]. It starts with "T."

Student: Temperature?

Bews: Temperature! [Looking at the straight line plot on the board of P versus 1/V] What would you do if you were to extend that line? What would that mean? You have no data down here [blank region of the graph]. What right have you to extend your line? You're assuming something. What are you assuming?

Student: [Says something about the rest of the points following the average.]

Bews: Are you absolutely sure that would happen?

Student: Fairly sure.

Bews: Absolutely sure?. . . . You are making an assumption and you must recognize that. When you extrapolate that line beyond where you have data, are you not assuming [inaudible]. And on that basis? Careful, this is very, very, very meaningful; this intercept [points to the intercept of the line with the z-axis]. Besides doing it, make sure when you find that intercept that it is very, very, very, very meaningful, not just an intercept. . . . Then you plot 1/V against P. What did you get, Lisa?

Lisa: I got a straight line.

Bews: Did you really?

Lisa: Uh huh.

Bews: Perfect?

Lisa: No.

Bews: Not perfect. Why not? O.K., are you perfect?

Lisa: No.

Bews: Is the apparatus perfect?

Lisa: No.

Bews: Am I perfect?

Students: [laughter]

Student: Is it just error that we didn't get a straight line? [referring to her results, for which only one data point out of five wandered from a straight line].

Bews: Well, let's just take that.

Student: Mine is wrong.

Bews: Yours is wrong? Maybe theirs is wrong!. . . You don't think you have the right answer until you collect a great magnitude of data. But that would take a long time [laughter]. Most people think it's a straight line. The guide says it's supposed to be a straight line. O.K.?

Student: It has to be a straight line.

Bews: A straight line through most of your points. I think you'll probably find that is reasonable.

During the discussion afterwards, I suggested to Mr. Bews that he had, in his teaching, raised issues about assumptions, qualifications, meaning, accuracy and authority:

Aikenhead: Is this a style that characterizes your teaching? You take time out in class to do this?

Bews: Most of that is deliberate. I don't think it is accidental. And some of it, perhaps, does come through accidentally without forethought specifically. But those things I believe!

Aikenhead: There's a time to discover and there's a time to [inaudible]. Are there some other statements that I would write down that just didn't come up — other beliefs about science?

Bews: Well, I think that it pays off to be tentative. I think that's true. I think if that doesn't come through then something is missed.

Aikenhead: That's the observation that one gets from an experiment. One should be tentative.

Bews: Sure, and [inaudible] be larger than that, too. One should be tentative about issues, as well as data that you generate in a class situation. It pays to be tentative, to be reserved about gung-ho things, about what's right and what's wrong, particularly scientific things. Morals play a part, too. Not in Boyle's law. That's pretty difficult, to bring morals into Boyle's law, but there are issues in science which are not clear-cut.

Similarly, in September Mr. Epp emphatically stated that science is a verb. "We're here to science," he told his students. He defined this as observing carefully, forming conclusions and communicating to others. Mr. Epp was one of the few teachers who consistently mentioned the names of scientists. While he talked about doing science, he expected students to use their computers (his metaphor for brains) to store a library of precise facts. This expectation was particularly evident when he discussed the decline of academic standards and student grades, an issue considered later in the case study. The precision of knowing specific facts and explanations was not only a characteristic of his testing, it was also evident in his classroom teaching:

Epp: The particles are moving faster; then they're moving further apart. If the particles are further apart, what do we know then?

Students: [many inaudible responses]

Epp: What becomes less?

Student: [inaudible]
Epp: No!
Student: Things will become [inaudible].
Epp: No! [pause] That's true! Yes! Pardon me.
Student: The attraction becomes less.
Epp: Exactly!
Student: You got it.
Epp: Don't give me a grade 9 answer: "The space is larger." Where? Which one?
Student 5: The space between the molecules of water are larger so liquids have larger spaces than solids.
Epp: Good.
Student 5: We're learning something, Mr. E.
Epp: Right. You guys are really going to get there someday.
Student 6: [Asks a question about the upcoming test.]
Epp: You've got it up here in the computer [points to his head]. Total recall. The other kind of question I ask you is what happens, when? [pause] What happens when I put cobalt chloride in water? For three marks, three things happen. What's one?
Student 1: It dissolves.
Epp: A grade 9 answer! You're in grade 10.
Student 2: The water turns a different colour.
Epp: That's one, but that isn't good enough, is it?
Student 3: No.
Student 2: O.K., it's, uh. . . .
Epp: Not for you guys, you're sharp.
Student 2: The colour.
Epp: What colour?
Student 2: The colour of the liquids inside changes.
Epp: No, no, no, no!
Students: [Simultaneously] They blend. They mix. They combine.
Epp: What colour!?
Students: Red. Scarlet.
Epp: Right! Or burgundy or crimson.

Mr. Almon expressed a highly empirical view of science when we discussed what students gain from doing experiments.

Aikenhead: To what extent were the series of labs an inquiry?
Almon: It was an inquiry in that they controlled their own experiment, although many used models from before — the tables and things — and that was fine, but they had to apply what they learned previously to a new situation. It seemed to be just the right amount of new thoughts that were required. They were able to make that transition quite well and they learned a lot by making the transition from one experiment to the next. But those were very similar experiments. They didn't know the answer. Some predicted wrongly in their hypothesis,

still. And some even wrote down the wrong conclusions looking at the results because they wanted to make their hypothesis true, which I pointed out to them.

Aikenhead: But isn't that what scientists do?

Almon: [Laughter, more nervous than jovial]

Aikenhead: Isn't that how the Millikan electron drop experiment was?

Almon: I guess the first time it was.

Aikenhead: You want them to be logical and stick with their data.

Almon: Oh yes, if they can't believe their data they should do enough additional examples so that they can prove it to themselves.

Aikenhead: But the fact is that some big scientists don't do that.

Almon: Well, it's only through bad training. In the long run, it's a real danger. There are scientists who do that today and come up with wrong conclusions. In general, you have to stay away from that, that good results do not outweigh the bad. There's been so many bad ones. You run into it in terms of testing for safety of products. So many of those tests can be falsified, and the public suffers for it, not just science.

Mr. Almon did not seem to provide his students with experiences that illustrated the complexities of scientific inquiry. Instead, the lab experiences suggested an idealistic view of scientific inquiry, one in which data controlled conclusions in a strictly logical fashion.

Apart from deciding what to convey about the value of science, teachers also felt that the emphasis on teaching the nature of science topics took time away from the content of the discipline and compromised the efficient use of students' time. This idea emerged when Mr. Dareichuk and I were talking about alternate ways his students might carry out the lab on refraction; inquiry had been mentioned:

Aikenhead: When you get some hypothesis, and then you can predict what should happen. . . . But that takes a long time, for people to play around.

Dareichuk: Yes, and try to experience. I've thought about the idea, but it's trying to work it in somehow, and get them to work more, so eventually they become more efficient that way. But I just haven't been able to resolve for myself a way to try to get them to carry through on that, day by day, until finally I covered the year to make it work that way. I think I'd have to experience the situation under somebody that does have it working.

Aikenhead: Covering the syllabus, that's pretty difficult to do.

Dareichuk: That's what I feel, too. Because [the students] need so much more time, to begin with, to try to get their ideas sorted out, to find out which way they're going to go. And, in my mind, I think, too, you can make use of your time much more efficiently. They can get their ideas out of it if you still keep them thinking and trying to arrive at conclusions, and so on.

> I know they're losing this idea of that inductive approach, but what we're saying is, it's much more inefficient. And we don't have that much room for that particular approach in our courses.

Technology

The relationship between scientific content and its technological application was mentioned by all of the teachers when they discussed their teaching, but in the classroom, technology was seldom emphasized. Mr. Dareichuk believed that too much technology content could detract from the quality of his physics course. Nevertheless, technological applications did surface from time to time in his class. Across the hall, Mr. Cheney cited instances where science and technology interacted; for example, the effect of the microscope on altering classification schemes. Mr. Cheney also coloured his lectures with numerous environmental applications. These technological examples would seem to move students closer to his espoused teaching goal — appreciating the environment.

Mr. Almon clarified his view of technology content in the classroom during one of our discussions. He had finished justifying the use of hand calculators in his physics class by pointing out their uses in everyday life. I wondered if this everyday justification would also apply to the technological world of his students:

Aikenhead: Would the same argument apply to, for example, starting a unit in optics with technological things like cameras, microscopes and lasers, and learning some of the technology and drawing upon the science content in order to teach some science?

Almon: Yes. Definitely. It's a very difficult thing to do because of the material that you'd need. I try and do that, if at all possible. For instance, we were talking about refraction and critical angles and things like that. So we were able to talk about fibre optics, and I purchased a five-dollar fibre optics lamp [that] showed critical angles. To me fibre optics is a very important thing for kids to learn about right now.

Aikenhead: When you take the time in class to work with fibre optics, it does take away time for studying physics.

Almon: It certainly does.

Aikenhead: Some people would argue that it's also much less rigorous than problem solving. I'd like your reaction to the same argument we used about calculators, bringing in these technological examples.

Almon: Well, I think it makes [the students] much more able to relate to the problems once they see them as relating to real life. If I did a whole series of problems on critical angle, and a student had never seen what a critical angle actually means. . . they're doing a bunch of abstract things that mean nothing to them.

Aikenhead: So you see the advantages of those demonstrations outweighing the time taken to do them?

Almon: Yes.

Aikenhead: That must be a difficult decision for a teacher to make — how much time to take out of a class to do things which have this motivational aspect.

Almon: Yes.

Aikenhead: And when do you stop motivation and say "O.K., it's time for physics"?

Almon: I would do motivational things all the time if I had the materials, and I would give them the math to do at home. I don't have the materials, or the knowledge to do those motivational things. Those are the things they remember when those kids come back two or five years later to ask for help on university physics and problems. They remember the demonstrations. They even remember the concepts behind them. They don't remember any equations.

Aikenhead: That makes you feel like you've accomplished something.

Almon: Yes, and I also like to have an atmosphere in the class with a little bit of enthusiasm and excitement about science.

Mr. Almon thought that technology had value as a motivational device, and as a way of relating physics to the phenomena of everyday events. The phenomena, however, were generally restricted to the course syllabus; for example, rainbows, sundogs, mirages, telescopes and microscopes were discussed in class as phenomena related to refraction. I noted a subtle difference between Mr. Almon's view of technology – concrete demonstrations of abstract principles – and a broader view of technology – that which students experience in everyday life. Mr. Almon found the latter view of technology to be too complex; if he subscribed to it, he would run the risk of detracting from the science of physics. The motivational value of simple technological demonstrations encouraged Mr. Almon to use them as much as they were available to him. But where did he draw the line so that the time required for motivational material did not cut into the time required to cover the subject matter material?

Almon: Well, I guess that depends on whether the motivational things include much science, and whether those motivational things can make up for themselves in terms of students being more willing to put in more effort. In many of my classes I won't claim that the kids use the full class time effectively, right now. But it seems that the more motivation you can give them, the more effectively they are going to use class time.

And in many cases they are much more willing to do homework if they are motivated in your class.

Aikenhead: So, not trying to squeeze that extra four minutes out of them has a lot of payoff in terms of the work they'll do at home for you.

Almon: Yes. And it's not necessarily going to take away from the physics. Because if they understand the application, they may be able to think through a problem much faster. . . . You know, I'm really sorry that when I went through university I didn't pick up very many of the everyday applications, in order to understand the physics. When I look back, that was lacking. I don't know if it was the fault of the teaching or my fault. Maybe I was preoccupied with the mathematics. I was able to do very well in physics because of the mathematics. But I don't understand physics [the everyday aspect] as well as I would like to.

Science and Society

Mr. Bews brought up the science and social issues topic as we explored the ways in which he felt students should learn the value of being tentative:

Aikenhead: In what sense were you thinking that students should learn to be tentative about ethical statements?

Bews: I don't think that sort of thing creeps in very often in most of the work I do. Maybe I haven't thought that much about it. Or maybe I'm not competent. I'm not sure. It is something I would treat usually only in passing. It concerns me, and I don't really have the answers, and I wonder if the answers are out there.

Treating topics in passing was also a characteristic of Mr. Epp's teaching. He drew upon T.V. commercials as content to analyze in a scientific manner. When introducing students to "heterogenous" and "homogenous" substances, he discussed how dairies homogenize milk. In the midst of a classroom discussion over what names of elements students would have to memorize, in particular *kalium* (potassium), Mr. Epp mentioned potash mining in Saskatchewan, and the special process carried out there at the town of Kalium. A few days later we discussed this class and the function of digressions. Mr. Epp believed the curriculum did not include science and society topics:

Aikenhead: What are you trying to accomplish with that group with those digressions; for instance, potash mining and homogenized milk?

Epp: It's trying to keep these people's interest alive. If a person asks you a question and you say, "Well, that's not part of the course," you deflate him right away. I don't want to do that. I want to get them so they're asking questions and becoming interested in what's going on. I welcome a digression because it gives a student a chance to say something.

Aikenhead: The digressions are a way of allowing you, then, to cover those points.

Epp: Yes. The other thing is that [the students] have to learn a lot more than just the three R's at school. . . . That's a dangerous responsibility to put on a teacher because you can sway a student, I suppose. They become interested in what you're doing. . . . Where do you sit in a situation like that? These are results of many digressions.

However, with less able students, Mr. Epp worked to keep them on task and, consequently, discussion of science-and-society topics rarely occurred.

In a staff meeting, Mr. Epp alluded to students' ignorance of a uranium refinery controversy that had taken place a couple of years ago at Warman, Saskatchewan. I asked him if the uranium refinery issue ought to be a part of the science curriculum:

Aikenhead: What is your general reaction to spending class time, let's say grade 10, dealing with that kind of subject matter?

Epp: It's absolutely essential that we have that. Because after 19 days of the Warman refinery discussions, I found so much ignorance about the nuclear world that I was determined that some of these grade 10 kids I have will discuss *both* sides of it.

Aikenhead: What would you actually teach them in terms of scientific content?

Epp: Well, for example, people are concerned about yellow cake. One lady expressed concern that yellow cake was transported through Warman. She said, "What if one of them upset, would my husband become neutered?". . . You have more radiation from your watch. But this is the fear they have. When I listened to those guys at Warman I said to myself, "These people have graduated from high school, or are university students, and yet they really don't understand what the issues are." And I'd like these students to graduate from grade 10, or from high school here, with some knowledge, general knowledge, of what [the energy crisis with all its complex ramifications] is all about. And sooner or later they're going to be faced with a decision on whether they are in favour or not in favour of nuclear energy. Well, people are going to be faced with these issues. . . . So you have to have some background, and so then you come to deciding on a nuclear issue. . . . A person will say "I remember this about it, and this about it," and they have to make up their own minds based on both sides.

With the exception of Mr. Epp, most teachers did not find enough academic value in science-and-society topics to warrant their systematic inclusion in the classroom. However, the teachers certainly discussed such issues with students informally and outside of class hours. On several occasions, creation-evolution seminars spontaneously occurred in the biology lab after school. Students typically found all of the teachers most approachable. The teachers appeared eager to engage students in discussions that were beyond the scope of the curriculum, but not during class time, unless the teacher felt such discussions had potential for motivation or for clarifying the subject area.

Maintaining Interest and Assessing Learning

When it came to teaching, Prairie High teachers made it clear that science, society and technology issues posed problems for them. Mr. Bews was asked how he would assess students' understanding of science-society issues:

Bews: When I can say all those things, and give an exam or a test, I don't ask those things at all. I don't think I do. It's not deliberate. I don't sit and think "What am I going to ask them to respond to that would check whether they think this way?" I pretty well go right for the quantitative stuff.

Aikenhead: You feel strongly about that.

Bews: Yes.

Aikenhead: What is it, do you think, that keeps this [science-society issues] from being content on the test?

Bews: Maybe it's not just a way I would hope that students felt. If it's a way that they feel, I don't really care, frankly, if they ever act about that. Maybe also it's a question of trying to judge what they say, which is very subjective. My preference is for judging the quantitative things, quite frankly. I think I can be honest about that in keeping my point of view separate. I don't know. I haven't given that a lot of thought, quite frankly.

Aikenhead: Then it seems to me the big issue is that what happens in the classroom equals what's on the test. . . .

Bews: Yes. I spend a lot of time emphasizing. I spend most of my time emphasizing the quantitative nature of work they do.

And what was Mr. Bews's perspective on nature-of-science questions that were not objectively quantitative, but instead were more subjectively qualitative?

Bews: I shouldn't cop out, if it is subjective. There are teachers in other areas, and institutions, whose lessons are all subjective, and they learn how to handle that very nicely. I suppose it's my problem. I just haven't gained the confidence that I need, perhaps, or maybe it's that I'm not gutsy enough to do it. Period!

Aikenhead: But what is the difficulty in [marking subjectively]?

Bews: Probably nothing, quite frankly. If I got off my butt and did it.

Aikenhead: You'd have to feel quite strongly about that area of knowledge?

Bews: Yes I think I do, but I don't. I'm being inconsistent here, I suspect. I do feel strongly about it, yet don't pursue it with any significance at all in my testing.

Aikenhead: There must be good reasons for this inconsistency, though.

Bews: Maybe it's just easier to do it the other way.

While it was easier, it also conformed with the ethos of rigour, expressed through quantitative problem solving, so strongly prevalent in the beliefs of most teachers at Prairie High.

Objectively scored multiple-choice tests were used by Mr. Dareichuk because his marking was often done in the evening, and economizing on time was important to him. If he allowed students to justify their choice of an answer, he had to spend much more time marking their tests. Mr. Dareichuk's experience showed that only the "brighter" students took advantage of justifying answers.

Dareichuk: Yes. I have used that idea [writing a justification for a choice], and it works not badly for the brighter ones. The weaker students, of course, shouldn't be in this class. They generally don't use that advantage. They'll just pick out the multiple choice and stop at that point anyway. But some of the brighter ones do take advantage of this to express themselves. So, it might be a wise way to try out. . . . And partly my choice too, is, when you're trying to mark in the evenings, and if you allow too much extra variation like that, your time element is too big a factor.

Aikenhead: Yes. It would cut down on the amount of questions you could ask.

Dareichuk: Yes. If you can get your questions a little bit more objective, then you can mark faster than you can with a more subjective type.

A somewhat different viewpoint was expressed by Mr. Almon, who gave part marks to students showing the correct reasoning, although their final answer may have been in error:

Aikenhead: Is that something that you evolved yourself, or is it something that happened to you and you like it?

Almon: Well. Maybe it didn't happen to me and I didn't like it. It's easy in physics to make a ridiculous math error. . . . I don't do multiple choice anymore. I started out using multiple choice quite a bit, because it was easy to mark. . . but the validity of the testing just didn't seem to be there. Bright kids could mess up the test just because it was multiple choice. Students feel better about their marks.

In his higher-ability classes, Mr. Epp had included a number of science-society digressions. But, from his perspective, the digressions were not legitimately testable, because he had included them for interest's sake only. (Mr. Almon and Mr. Dareichuk included technological content in their lessons for the same reason.)

Aikenhead: When you set the exams, then, you have in mind the material they've covered in class that they should be able to remember.

Epp: Yes.

Aikenhead: Now, as far as the digressions are concerned, that's also very important for the students who can handle that, the brighter students. Do you have that content on the exams?

Epp: No, I don't. Digressions, no; because it's primarily of interest to one student. Now the other students maybe, but they may not be interested. . . . You'll find in this class (grade 10 "bright" students), these guys are all struggling for marks – the most important thing they can get. I don't know, we've got a mark-happy society. . . . If I put a digression in [a test item], I'd have to have written it on the board [for their notes] and explain the whole thing. Maybe that would be something to think about.

Of course, tests were not the only form of evaluation. Mr. Cheney mentioned how he evaluated students in the "subjective" realm of the nature of science.

Aikenhead: This [the nature of science] is a pretty important idea to you, obviously, because you've spent time on it in class. Does this kind of learning show up on your evaluation of students?

Cheney: It does in a number of ways. One of the ways most teachers use is they have a "fudge pot." The only thing the parent is interested in is the mark. And yet most of the students know that there is a hell of a lot more to school than just that mark. But they're prepared to play the game. And so by having the "fudge pot," things like 47s can be turned into 50s; things like 57s can be turned into 60s. Whereas three marks aren't very important to me, it might be very important to the parent. . . . So I use the "fudge pot" to paint on the proper thing for the parents.

Mr. Cheney went on to describe that this type of learning by students was not expressed in written form, but by how students carried out labs and projects. He felt confident that when he and the student interacted one on one, he could assess their inclination to do some inquiry and to do some thinking in science.

Testing served different purposes for different teachers at different times. I asked the teachers what role testing played for them. Mr. Epp felt that testing set standards for students, and showed areas where students were having problems. Mr. Epp's standards demanded that students remember *specific* information:

Aikenhead: It seems to me, as an outsider coming into your class, you value a kind of learning that makes students interested in science. You said that to me the very first day. Students' interest in science is a good goal.

Epp: Yes.

Aikenhead: But on the other hand you're saddled with a curriculum guide; it has specific information. Now, when it comes to evaluating and standards, you seem to have chosen the curriculum guide content. But something more important to you fundamentally is the knowledge that relates to the interest in science. And so the thing I find confusing in my mind [is that] when you talk about standards, you relate standards to something you feel saddled with, rather than to something you value highly.

Epp: I try to use both. It's very difficult. I'm not pleased with this course. . . . Students were more interested in the other course. But they're developing an interest now.

Aikenhead: How would you relate giving them credit for tangibly expressed interest [in the course]. Is that "low standards"?

Epp: Well, no. It is all part of the evaluation process. One thing that is important to me is response in class. When I ask a question I get the same four hands up in every period. That is disconcerting. I'd like to see different people. I don't think you can evaluate that, but you do keep that in mind when discussing with parents.

Mr. Epp, like most of the science teachers, distinguished between classroom events for motivation purposes and classroom events for evaluation purposes. If scientific inquiry or science-and-society topics were introduced primarily for their motivational value (from the teacher's point of view), this content was not evaluated. Students had to learn which classroom events would be tested and which wouldn't. The first test of the year provided students with grounds for making this distinction.

The first test of the year in Mr. Almon's physics class turned out to be unusual, but it served the purpose of motivating students.

Aikenhead: You mentioned to [the students] that this is the first test and it won't be hard. . . . What's behind your decision to make that kind of test?

Almon: Why start with an easy test? I guess it results from other years. . . . It is also an idea that kids are a little bit afraid of physics, even top-level kids, and they really are if they fail the first time. . . . If they do poorly they're going to hate physics for the rest of the year. It's even more important with a lower-stream class — you get some guys who are really interested in physics, and then if they fail it the first time, they're [going to say], "This is just going to be a credit, maybe, if we're lucky, and I'll plug through it, but I won't enjoy it."

Many of Mr. Almon's classroom events — interacting with students, and so on — appeared to address the basic issue of motivating students. Mr. Dareichuk used a similar tactic to arrive at an acceptable balance among student achievement, student effort and student self-motivation:

Dareichuk: I want them to sharpen up. . . . Some of them are very good, others are very low in their effort.

Aikenhead: Does this affect the way you design your tests?

Dareichuk: It does. . . . It's just very simple, almost very similar to what they've done in class, otherwise it really bothers them.

For many of the teachers, the idea of working hard always came up in discussions about testing. Mr. Almon returned to this topic, and others, during a subsequent discussion about teachers having full control over what items they put on the test and therefore having full control over the marks students receive. Mr. Almon saw it as his responsibility to challenge every student on his tests. But it was also his responsibility to make sure the mark distribution did not discourage students. He achieved a balanced student achievement by the way he set his tests, by his attempts to motivate students in the classroom by rewarding effort, and by expecting his students to push themselves in their studies. Moreover, the value of a challenging test reflected Mr. Almon's belief that the best secondary school science is that which approaches, in both content and methodology, science as it is taught at university. However, this ideal had to be compromised occasionally (by asking students to complete easy comprehension questions, for example) in order to motivate students by ensuring their achievement. Thus testing presented Mr. Almon with a dilemma. For Mr. Almon, resolution of the dilemma involved a number of interacting trade-offs and counterbalances:

Almon: Ideally, I would like to see a lot of kids with A's.

Aikenhead: But you set the exam. You determine that.

Almon: I want to have it so it evaluates everybody. So everybody is evaluated in how they are doing. I still get a kid who gets 100 per cent on an exam. I don't want to have an exam that, for some, isn't challenging. Everybody I want to be challenged. So it spreads them out. If I could teach well enough, I should have all A's.

Aikenhead: You feel that all students are intellectually capable of getting there?

Almon: The abilities are there, if they could be tapped.

Aikenhead: When you say "tapped," you mean motivated?

Almon: Yes, motivated well enough.

Aikenhead: What would they have to do, once they are motivated, to get A's?

Almon: To work through enough problems so that they could figure out the steps involved in a problem. To be motivated to push themselves to make the abstractions. Some students seem almost too lazy to do the kind of thinking required to solve a complex problem. Some others just haven't had the experience of problem solving. Experience really helps. If they really are too lazy to do the thinking, they are never going to make the progress through the further steps. If they were motivated to take the time to push themselves, then they would make that jump to a higher level of thinking. But they aren't. I haven't been able to motivate all the students.

Mr. Dareichuk had used testing in a different manner with his grade 9 higher achievers. Their first test of the year had given him feedback concerning the efficacy of a teaching methodology he had just tried out. He was disappointed in his students' achievement, so he decided to alter his instructional methods for the next unit of work. He shifted from a "small group discussion" approach to a much more "structured approach with the whole group moving together." On the next test the students did much better. I was present in Mr. Dareichuk's class when he went over the first test. Afterwards, we analyzed the test. There was a multiple-choice section (taken from the textbook's teacher's guide) and a short-answer section. I expressed surprise at the difficulty of the subject matter; for example, students were asked to select dependent and independent variables from a description of an experiment. I mentioned that my second-year university students were having difficulty picking up the concept of variables, let alone dependent and independent variables.

From Mr. Dareichuk's perspective, the results of the test were valid because, he said, he had taken it from the teacher's guide. Therefore, if students did not do well, it was due to inappropriate instruction, insufficient effort on the part of the students, or inappropriate placement of students in a higher-ability class.

A postscript: Mr. Dareichuk decided to give the students "a break" to help them get over their low marks on the first exam. He was delighted by their response to his suggestion of not necessarily counting the first test. What was their response? They dug into their science work with a fervour rarely seen all year. It would appear to be an artful, almost intuitive, decision of when to swing the balance towards "strict standards" and possible low achievement, and "softened standards" with a resulting high motivation. However, perhaps the phrase "softened standards" is a misnomer for the realistic perception of the problems inherent in testing and evaluation.

Somewhere and somehow, teachers developed these views about evaluation. Several teachers mentioned that their experiences as high school and university students probably served as personal events upon which their beliefs were formed. For example, speaking of the stress placed by teachers on quantitative problem solving, Mr. Bews had this to say:

Aikenhead: This view of the quantitative and how it is helpful. Is it possible to pinpoint or even describe where you developed this value yourself?

Bews: I don't know the right answer, but I suspect that a good portion of it came from [premedical training]. Science was particularly quantitative from morning to night. Literally, I can't say I revelled in it. But I came to see how quantitative things could be, and the kinds of skills you had to have or develop if you wanted to be reasonably successful. And since I was relatively successful, I suppose I still think they are good values.

Aikenhead: Right.

Bews: Because I struggled at [quantitative work at university], I think I was better from the process, because I had to struggle. And I know what some of those people out there are going through.

Mr. Almon, on the other hand, was sorry he had not seen his physics work in a different light at university:

Almon: You know, I'm really sorry that when I went through university I didn't pick up very many of the everyday applications, in order to understand the physics. When I look back, that was lacking. I don't know if it was the fault of the teaching or my fault. Maybe I was preoccupied with the mathematics. But I don't understand physics [the everyday aspect] as well as I would like to.

Experiences at colleges of education were also mentioned. Teachers talked about individual instructors who had made a very positive contribution to their experiences of teacher education, or who had been ineffectual because of their isolation from the real world of teaching. Professors at colleges of education who had isolated their course content from the "infection" of classroom realities were perceived as offering sterile courses; idealism and theoretical constructs were most often cited as the antiseptics. Only one-half of the Prairie High science teachers had actually taken a science methods course at a college of education. The others had had their science training at the College of Arts and Science.

The following discussion with Mr. Almon illustrates how these teachers viewed their teacher training:

Aikenhead: We've been talking about testing and choosing what should be in the curriculum. Where do you see these ideas coming from for you? From your science classes at university? From the college of education classes? From your experiences? Where do some of these ideas come from?

Almon: The majority of the ideas come from my own experience as a student, from what worked on me. Very few of my ideas, that we've talked about, would come from the college of education. . . . But my original ideas would come from high school and university physics classes, and other classes in related fields.

Our discussion turned away from the college of education and went on to explore inservice teacher education:

Aikenhead: Talking about changing in a classroom, the changes that you're talking about are changes in how to achieve those goals. You're not dealing with changing those goals?

Almon: Well, I would certainly be open to changing those goals, but I would have to go to a situation where I could see the benefits of changing my goals. I like my goals right now, but just as science changes, my goals could change as well. Like, I have known [physics] teachers who stay away from the math a great deal; you know, try and teach only the physics without any math. And they've told me they've been very successful. Now if I could go and work with them a while and see what happens to the students, you know, even watch what happens when they go to university or go on to everyday life. . . . Quite possibly my goals would change.

Aikenhead: When you're talking about arguments, you're talking about personal experience.

Almon: That's the way I learn. I don't learn very well by theories or arguments. If I could actually see the results, then I'm sure I could change. . . . My goals are based on what I've seen over the years, and so the only way I'm going to change is, you know, if somebody would give me a different set of experiences to make me see their point of view.

The Student, The Subject and The Work of Teachers

Tests in science classes at Prairie High seemed to emphasize objectively scorable, singularly precise answers. If testing alone taught students something about the nature of science, it was that science is a rhetoric of conclusions. Classroom content that strayed into the divergent, qualitative and somewhat subjective realm was not seen to be amenable to testing. However, such content was generally perceived as important for motivating students and, in some cases, for evaluating them in ways other than by testing.

What was important to know about science seemed to be related to what students could learn from science. Habits of orderliness learned from an orderly subject were important. Getting the interest of the student was more important than forcing compliance through sanctions. Take the case, for example, of the grade 9 students and the low-ability students. These students were often the objects of attention whenever the topic of student socialization came up. Ninth graders were seen as needing self-discipline, especially in study skills, and teachers assumed the responsibility for taking appropriate action. When discussing grade 9 students, Mr. Ford indicated that he would not hesitate to detain a student after school for not handing in an assignment. It was important to the teacher that students got the message that they must do whatever the teacher feels is worth doing. When students did work well, then the teachers could view classroom events in terms of serving other curricular ends. I explored this idea in greater depth with Mr. Almon in discussing how students were to do their lab reports:

Almon: They have to learn that when I say it is to be handed in the next period, that's what I mean; and I'll mark it.

Aikenhead: Why's that important?

Almon: Because they have to learn the responsibility in terms of, you know, when they're told they must hand it in, that doesn't mean that they can come the next day and say "Well, can I have another day, I didn't have time."

Aikenhead: What would be the consequences if you were to allow something like that?

Almon: Well, then eventually students would just forget about labs; they wouldn't bother doing them. They learn that they really don't have to do all the things you assign them. Then the class becomes less significant to them. I've been more lax some years when, you know, "I'll give you an extra day or two," but usually those things just drag on and on.

Learning responsibility appeared to be delicately related to the objective of taking class work and the teacher seriously. As we have seen, marking served as a traditional, extrinsic reward to reinforce responsibility and the work ethic.

In addition to marking students' work, all the teachers assumed it was their responsibility to encourage students to work hard. All teachers established a business-like atmosphere in their classrooms. Yet most enriched this basic atmosphere with other feelings that naturally emerged from their personal traits. In order to illustrate different classroom climates, I have selected two of the teachers who gave this enrichment a high profile in their classroom — Mr. Almon and Mr. Cheney.

As Mr. Almon moved around his room helping students with their work, I noticed that he consistently positioned himself in a way that guaranteed direct eye contact with the student. He listened actively and patiently. In the first class of the year, Mr. Almon emphasized "considerations for other people" when he went over the "Atmosphere and Rules" of his classroom (the classroom "constitution"). I discussed this with him:

Aikenhead: There's a high priority in your mind about how kids feel in your classroom. What are your objectives in this area?

Almon: Well, one reason I want them to feel good about the classroom is because I want them to feel good about science. . . . Science is an interesting subject, an enjoyable subject. . . . I found such a difference when I was in school. That atmosphere in a classroom made a difference to whether I enjoyed that class or whether I even worked in that class, or whether I fought the system. I get fewer students who will fight the system, or fight me personally, than I would get if I tried to make a more structural or authoritarian-type classroom. We do things like voting on when tests are. It seems to alleviate areas of conflict between students and teachers.

Mr. Almon coped with behavioural problems by showing concern for the student. This tactic usually had the effect of circumventing confrontations in the classroom. The "good-feelings" atmosphere, although it affected classroom behaviour, also enhanced Mr. Almon's curricular objectives.

Almon: So I like them to take away from the class, not just problem-solving skills and formulas, but a feeling for science and an understanding of the phenomena. They seem much more able to take away the things I've done a demonstration with.

Aikenhead: That makes you feel like you've accomplished something?

Almon: Yes, and I also like to have an atmosphere in the class with a little bit of enthusiasm and excitement about science.

The social climate in Mr. Cheney's classroom could be characterized by his full, warm smile that broke out spontaneously, especially when students needed to be put at ease. At the very beginning of the year, he made a conscious effort to establish personal contact with each student "before the atmosphere becomes more business-like around report card time." His dapper, three-piece, blue suit, his chatting with students in the hall, his questions about how students' mothers are doing, and his reminiscences with students over camping trips were part of the opening-day patter. Although his three-piece suit evolved into a two-piece suit and then into more casual dress, his personalized interaction with students continued throughout the months.

In each class at the beginning of the year, Mr. Cheney talked to his students about his guidelines of courtesy. "So feelings don't get hurt; feelings are important," he reminded them. Mr. Cheney was emphatic about admitting that what they knew in their hearts was as important to him as what they knew in their minds. These turned out to be more than opening remarks. He conducted his lower-ability biology class, for instance, by constantly referring to his guidelines on feelings, and explicitly acknowledging the students' feelings as well. His behaviour defined for them what his guidelines meant. In September, his lower-ability group constantly laughed at each other's mistakes. If someone in the hallway happened to trip or drop a book, the class would break out into gales of laughter. One girl was so shy about talking out loud, she stuttered and nervously twisted her hair as she spoke. Others were simply too scared to answer a question. By October, the class began laughing *with* Mr. Cheney, and the shyer students were offering answers quietly. By November, the class seemed to have matured considerably. Attendance was high. They cooperated in their learning activities. They were courteous to each other.

Obviously, Mr. Cheney meant it when he told me, "This bunch, they're quite special to me." His strategy for dealing with the student "product" related directly to the classroom climate he wished to maintain:

Cheney: Well, one of the things I told you this morning is that the lower academic group deal with product. If we concentrate more on product, it makes for all-round good feelings. I'm happy when they get something done. They're happy to get it done. They feel better about being able to do something. Whereas if you go into a situation where they just can't do it — and it's not a question of repetition and drilling or whatever — it's just not worth that kind of scene. Well, how can we come away with any kind of good feelings? At least here there are a number of things they're going to do. And some will do them extremely well. . . . The feeling is there, and yet [the work] is academic.

The classroom feelings and attributes described above were not the monopoly of Mr. Almon and Mr. Cheney. An atmosphere of support and concern for students was part of the climate in every science classroom at Prairie High. This atmosphere of support and concern encouraged both academic success and social success. While such an atmosphere served to fulfill teachers' aspirations, it also served as a subtle, though effective, behavioural guide for students. In the currency of classroom interactions, "feeling good" had motivational value and behavioural dividends.

Here we return to the purpose of the case study at Prairie High, in which particular attention was to be given to the viewpoints held by the science teachers themselves. This case study is meant to be *their* case study, in the sense that they could have written it themselves had they been given the appropriate time and assistance. Simply put, my function has been to bring their perceptions and beliefs into focus and articulate them in an organized fashion. My general method has been to observe classroom events, to ask about the decisions that led to those events, to inquire into the reasons behind those decisions, and to record the teachers' perceptions and beliefs that gave rise to those reasons. My task has not been to come to conclusions. Thus, this case study does not end with a series of conclusions, although it does suggest some directions a reader might follow.

Conclusions may be drawn by the reader. If the reader has an interest in school science curricula, but is not a teacher, then this case study illustrates, I believe, some — but only some — of the sensitive, complex and interrelated facets of teaching science in a high school. If the reader designs curricula or wishes to implement curricula, and if he or she gains a better appreciation for the teaching process as a result of this case study, then it will have already served a useful purpose.

Publications of the Science Council of Canada

Policy Reports

No. 1. **A Space Program for Canada,** July 1967 (SS22-1967/1, $0.75), 31 p.
No. 2. **The Proposal for an Intense Neutron Generator: Initial Assessment and Recommendation,** December 1967 (SS22-1967/2, $0.75), 12 p.
No. 3. **A Major Program of Water Resources Research in Canada,** September 1968 (SS22-1968/3, $0.75), 37 p.
No. 4. **Towards a National Science Policy in Canada,** October 1968 (SS22-1968/4, $1.00), 56 p.
No. 5. **University Research and the Federal Government,** September 1969 (SS22-1969/5, $0.75), 28 p.
No. 6. **A Policy for Scientific and Technical Information Dissemination,** September 1969 (SS22-1969/6, $0.75), 35 p.
No. 7. **Earth Sciences Serving the Nation – Recommendations,** April 1970 (SS22-1970/7, $0.75), 36 p.
No. 8. **Seeing the Forest and the Trees,** October 1970 (SS22-1970/8, $0.75), 22 p.
No. 9. **This Land is Their Land. . . ,** October 1970 (SS22-1970/9, $0.75), 41 p.
No. 10. **Canada, Science and the Oceans,** November 1970 (SS22-1970/10, $0.75), 37 p.
No. 11. **A Canadian STOL Air Transport System – A Major Program,** December 1970 (SS22-1970/11, $0.75), 33 p.
No. 12. **Two Blades of Grass: The Challenge Facing Agriculture,** March 1971 (SS22-1971/12, $1.25), 61 p.
No. 13. **A Trans-Canada Computer Communications Network: Phase 1 of a Major Program on Computers,** August 1971 (SS22-1971/13, $0.75), 41 p.
No. 14. **Cities for Tomorrow: Some Applications of Science and Technology to Urban Development,** September 1971 (SS22-1971/14, $1.25), 67 p.
No. 15. **Innovation in a Cold Climate: The Dilemma of Canadian Manufacturing,** October 1971 (SS22-1971/15, $0.75), 49 p.
No. 16. **It Is Not Too Late – Yet: A look at some pollution problems in Canada. . . ,** June 1972 (SS22-1972/16, $1.00), 52 p.
No. 17. **Lifelines: Some Policies for a Basic Biology in Canada,** August 1972 (SS22-1972/17, $1.00), 73 p.
No. 18. **Policy Objectives for Basic Research in Canada,** September 1972 (SS22-1972/18, $1.00), 75 p.
No. 19. **Natural Resource Policy Issues in Canada,** January 1973 (SS22-1973/19, $1.25), 59 p.
No. 20. **Canada, Science and International Affairs,** April 1973 (SS22-1973/20, $1.25), 66 p.
No. 21. **Strategies of Development for the Canadian Computer Industry,** September 1973 (SS22-1973/21, $1.50), 80 p.
No. 22. **Science for Health Services,** October 1974 (SS22-1974/22, $2.00), 140 p.
No. 23. **Canada's Energy Opportunities,** March 1975 (SS22-1975/23, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 135 p.
No. 24. **Technology Transfer: Government Laboratories to Manufacturing Industry,** December 1975 (SS22-1975/24, Canada: $1.00, other countries: $1.20), 61 p.
No. 25. **Population, Technology and Resources,** July 1976 (SS22-1976/25, Canada: $3.00, other countries: $3.60), 91 p.

No. 26. **Northward Looking: A Strategy and a Science Policy for Northern Development,** August 1977 (SS22-1977/26, Canada: $2.50, other countries: $3.00), 95 p.

No. 27. **Canada as a Conserver Society: Resource Uncertainties and the Need for New Technologies,** September 1977 (SS22-1977/27, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 108 p.

No. 28. **Policies and Poisons: The Containment of Long-term Hazards to Human Health in the Environment and in the Workplace,** October 1977 (SS22-1977/28, Canada: $2.00, other countries: $2.40), 76 p.

No. 29. **Forging the Links: A Technology Policy for Canada,** February 1979 (SS22-1979/29, Canada: $2.25, other countries: $2.70), 72 p.

No. 30. **Roads to Energy Self-Reliance: The Necessary National Demonstrations,** June 1979 (SS22-1979/30, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 200 p.

No. 31. **University Research in Jeopardy: The Threat of Declining Enrolment,** December 1979 (SS22-1979/31, Canada: $2.95, other countries: $3.55), 61 p.

No. 32. **Collaboration for Self-Reliance: Canada's Scientific and Technological Contribution to the Food Supply of Developing Countries,** March 1981 (SS22-1981/32, Canada: $3.95, other countries: $4.75), 112 p.

No. 33. **Tomorrow is Too Late: Planning Now for an Information Society,** April 1982 (SS22-1982/33, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 77 p.

No. 34. **Transportation in a Resource-Conscious Future: Intercity Passenger Travel in Canada,** September 1982 (SS22-1982/34, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 112 p.

No. 35. **Regulating the Regulators: Science, Values and Decisions,** October 1982 (SS22-1982/35, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 106 p.

No. 36. **Science for Every Student: Educating Canadians for Tomorrow's World,** April 1984 (SS22-1984/36E, Canada: $5.25, other countries: $6.30).

Statements of Council

Supporting Canadian Science: Time for Action, May 1978
Canada's Threatened Forests, March 1983

Statements of Council Committees

Toward a Conserver Society: A Statement of Concern, by the Committee on the Implications of a Conserver Society, 1976, 22 p.

Erosion of the Research Manpower Base in Canada: A Statement of Concern, by the Task Force on Research in Canada, 1976.

Uncertain Prospects: Canadian Manufacturing Industry 1971-1977, by the Industrial Policies Committee, 1977, 55 p.

Communications and Computers: Information and Canadian Society, by an ad hoc committee, 1978, 40 p.

A Scenario for the Implementation of Interactive Computer-Communications Systems in the Home, by the Committee on Computers and Communication, 1979, 40 p.

Multinationals and Industrial Strategy: The Role of World Product Mandates, by the Working Group on Industrial Policies, 1980, 77 p.

Hard Times, Hard Choices: A Statement, by the Industrial Policies Committee, 1981, 99 p.

The Science Education of Women in Canada: A Statement of Concern, by the Science and Education Committee, 1982.

Reports on Matters Referred by the Minister

Research and Development in Canada, a report of the Ad Hoc Advisory Committee to the Minister of State for Science and Technology, 1979, 32 p.

Public Awareness of Science and Technology in Canada, a staff report to the Minister of State for Science and Technology, 1981, 57 p.

Background Studies

No. 1. **Upper Atmosphere and Space Programs in Canada,** by J.H. Chapman, P.A. Forsyth, P.A. Lapp, G.N. Patterson, February 1967 (SS21-1/1, $2.50), 258 p.

No. 2. **Physics in Canada: Survey and Outlook,** by a Study Group of the Canadian Association of Physicists, headed by D.C. Rose, May 1967 (SS21-1/2, $2.50), 385 p.

No. 3. **Psychology in Canada,** by M.H. Appley and Jean Rickwood, September 1967 (SS21-1/3, $2.50), 131 p.

No. 4. **The Proposal for an Intense Neutron Generator: Scientific and Economic Evaluation,** by a Committee of the Science Council of Canada, December 1967 (SS21-1/4, $2.00), 181 p.

No. 5. **Water Resources Research in Canada,** by J.P. Bruce and D.E.L. Maasland, July 1968 (SS21-1/5, $2.50), 169 p.

No. 6. **Background Studies in Science Policy: Projections of R&D Manpower and Expenditure,** by R.W. Jackson, D.W. Henderson and B. Leung, 1969 (SS21-1/6, $1.25), 85 p.

No. 7. **The Role of the Federal Government in Support of Research in Canadian Universities,** by John B. Macdonald, L.P. Dugal, J.S. Dupré, J.B. Marshall, J.G. Parr, E. Sirluck, and E. Vogt, 1969 (SS21-1/7, $3.75), 361 p.

No. 8. **Scientific and Technical Information in Canada, Part I,** by J.P.I. Tyas, 1969 (SS21-1/8, $1.50), 62 p.
Part II, Chapter 1, Government Departments and Agencies (SS21-1/8-2-1, $1.75), 168 p.
Part II, Chapter 2, Industry (SS21-1/8-2-2, $1.25), 80 p.
Part II, Chapter 3, Universities (SS21-1/8-2-3, $1.75), 115 p.
Part II, Chapter 4, International Organizations and Foreign Countries (SS21-1/8-2-4, $1.00), 63 p.
Part II, Chapter 5, Techniques and Sources (SS21-1/8-2-5, $1.15), 99 p.
Part II, Chapter 6, Libraries (SS21-1/8-2-6, $1.00), 49 p.
Part II, Chapter 7, Economics (SS21-1/8-2-7, $1.00), 63 p.

No. 9. **Chemistry and Chemical Engineering: A Survey of Research and Development in Canada,** by a Study Group of the Chemical Institute of Canada, 1969 (SS21-1/9, $2.50), 102 p.

No. 10. **Agricultural Science in Canada,** by B.N. Smallman, D.A. Chant, D.M. Connor, J.C. Gilson, A.E. Hannah, D.N. Huntley, E. Mercer, M. Shaw, 1970 (SS21-1/10, $2.00), 148 p.

No. 11. **Background to Invention,** by Andrew H. Wilson, 1970 (SS21-1/11, $1.50), 77 p.

No. 12. **Aeronautics – Highway to the Future,** by J.J. Green, 1970 (SS21-1/12, $2.50), 148 p.

No. 13. **Earth Sciences Serving the Nation,** by Roger A. Blais, Charles H. Smith, J.E. Blanchard, J.T. Cawley, D.R. Derry, Y.O. Fortier, G.G.L. Henderson, J.R. Mackay, J.S. Scott, H.O. Seigel, R.B. Toombs, H.D.B. Wilson, 1971 (SS21-1/13, $4.50), 363 p.

No. 14. **Forest Resources in Canada,** by J. Harry, G. Smith and Gilles Lessard, May 1971 (SS21-1/14, $3.50), 204 p.

No. 15. **Scientific Activities in Fisheries and Wildlife Resources,** by D.H. Pimlott, C.J. Kerswill and J.R. Bider, June 1971 (SS21-1/15, $3.50), 191 p.

No. 16. **Ad Mare: Canada Looks to the Sea,** by R.W. Stewart and L.M. Dickie, September 1971 (SS21-1/16, $2.50), 175 p.

No. 17. **A Survey of Canadian Activity in Transportation R&D,** by C.B. Lewis, May 1971 (SS21-1/17, $0.75), 29 p.

No. 18. **From Formalin to Fortran: Basic Biology in Canada,** by P.A. Larkin and W.J.D. Stephen, August 1971 (SS21-1/18, $2.50), 79 p.

No. 19. **Research Councils in the Provinces: A Canadian Resource,** by Andrew H. Wilson, June 1971 (SS21-1/19, $1.50), 115 p.

No. 20. **Prospects for Scientists and Engineers in Canada,** by Frank Kelly, March 1971 (SS21-1/20, $1.00), 61 p.

No. 21. **Basic Research,** by P. Kruus, December 1971 (SS21-1/21, $1.50), 73 p.

No. 22. **The Multinational Firm, Foreign Direct Investment, and Canadian Science Policy,** by Arthur J. Cordell, December 1971 (SS21-1/22, $1.50), 95 p.

No. 23. **Innovation and the Structure of Canadian Industry,** by Pierre L. Bourgault, October 1972 (SS21-1/23, $4.00), 135 p.

No. 24. **Air Quality – Local, Regional and Global Aspects,** by R.E. Munn, October 1972 (SS21-1/24, $0.75), 39 p.

No. 25. **National Engineering, Scientific and Technological Societies of Canada,** by the Management Committee of SCITEC and Prof. Allen S. West, December 1971 (SS21-1/25, $2.50), 131 p.

No. 26. **Governments and Innovation,** by Andrew H. Wilson, April 1973 (SS21-1/26, $3.75), 275 p.

No. 27. **Essays on Aspects of Resource Policy,** by W.D. Bennett, A.D. Chambers, A.R. Thompson, H.R. Eddy, and A.J. Cordell, May 1973 (SS21-1/27, $2.50), 113 p.

No. 28. **Education and Jobs: Career patterns among selected Canadian science graduates with international comparisons,** by A.D. Boyd and A.C. Gross, June 1973 (SS21-1/28, $2.25), 139 p.

No. 29. **Health Care in Canada: A Commentary,** by H. Rocke Robertson, August 1973 (SS21-1/29, $2.75), 173 p.

No. 30. **A Technology Assessment System: A Case Study of East Coast Offshore Petroleum Exploration,** by M. Gibbons and R. Voyer, March 1974 (SS21-1/30, $2.00), 114 p.

No. 31. **Knowledge, Power and Public Policy,** by Peter Aucoin and Richard French, November 1974 (SS21-1/31, $2.00), 95 p.

No. 32. **Technology Transfer in Construction,** by A.D. Boyd and A.H. Wilson, January 1975 (SS21-1/32, $3.50), 163 p.

No. 33. **Energy Conservation,** by F.H. Knelman, July 1975 (SS21-1/33, Canada: $1.75, other countries: $2.10), 169 p.

No. 34. **Northern Development and Technology Assessment Systems: A study of petroleum development programs in the Mackenzie Delta-Beaufort Sea Region and the Arctic Islands,** by Robert F. Keith, David W. Fischer, Colin E. De'Ath, Edward J. Farkas, George R. Francis, and Sally C. Lerner, January 1976 (SS21-1/34, Canada: $3.75, other countries: $4.50), 219 p.

No. 35. **The Role and Function of Government Laboratories and the Transfer of Technology to the Manufacturing Sector,** by A.J. Cordell and J.M. Gilmour, April 1976 (SS21-1/35, Canada: $6.50, other countries: $7.80), 397 p.

No. 36. **The Political Economy of Northern Development,** by K.J. Rea, April 1976 (SS21-1/36, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 251 p.

No. 37. **Mathematical Sciences in Canada,** by Klaus P. Beltzner, A. John Coleman, and Gordon D. Edwards, July 1976 (SS21-1/37, Canada: $6.50, other countries: $7.80), 339 p.

No. 38. **Human Goals and Science Policy,** by R.W. Jackson, October 1976 (SS21-1/38, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 134 p.

No. 39. **Canadian Law and the Control of Exposure to Hazards,** by Robert T. Franson, Alastair R. Lucas, Lorne Giroux, and Patrick Kenniff, October 1977 (SS21-1/39, Canada: $4.00, other countries: $4.80), 152 p.

No. 40. **Government Regulation of the Occupational and General Environments in the United Kingdom, United States and Sweden,** by Roger Williams, October 1977 (SS21-1/40, Canada: $5.00, other countries: $6.00), 155 p.

No. 41. **Regulatory Processes and Jurisdictional Issues in the Regulation of Hazardous Products in Canada,** by G. Bruce Doern, October 1977 (SS21-1/41, Canada: $5.50, other countries: $6.00), 201 p.

No. 42. **The Strathcona Sound Mining Project: A Case Study of Decision Making,** by Robert B. Gibson, February 1978 (SS21-1/42, Canada: $8.00, other countries: $9.60), 274 p.

No. 43. **The Weakest Link: A Technological Perspective on Canadian Industrial Underdevelopment,** by John N.H. Britton and James M. Gilmour, assisted by Mark G. Murphy, October 1978 (SS21-1/43, Canada: $5.00, other countries: $6.00), 216 p.

No. 44. **Canadian Government Participation in International Science and Technology,** by Jocelyn Maynard Ghent, February 1979 (SS21-1/44, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 136 p.

No. 45. **Partnership in Development: Canadian Universities and World Food,** by William E. Tossell, August 1980 (SS21-1/45, Canada: $6.00, other countries: $7.20), 145 p.

No. 46. **The Peripheral Nature of Scientific and Technological Controversy in Federal Policy Formation,** by G. Bruce Doern, July 1981 (SS21-1/46, Canada: $4.95, other countries: $5.95), 108 p.

No. 47. **Public Inquiries in Canada,** by Liora Salter and Debra Slaco, with the assistance of Karin Konstantynowicz, September 1981 (SS21-1/47, Canada: $7.95, other countries: $9.55), 232 p.

No. 48. **Threshold Firms: Backing Canada's Winners,** by Guy P.F. Steed, July 1982 (SS21-1/48, Canada: $6.95, other countries: $8.35), 173 p.

No. 49. **Governments and Microelectronics: The European Experience,** by Dirk de Vos, March 1983 (SS21-1/49, Canada: $4.50, other countries: $5.40), 112 p.

No. 50. **The Challenge of Diversity: Industrial Policy in the Canadian Federation,** by Michael Jenkin, July 1983, (SS21-1/50, Canada: $8.95, other countries: $10.75), 214 p.

No. 51. **Partners in Industrial Strategy: The Special Role of the Provincial Research Organizations,** by Donald J. Le Roy and Paul Dufour, November 1983 (SS21-1/51, Canada: $5.50, other countries: $6.60, 146 p.

Occasional Publications

1976

Energy Scenarios for the Future, by Hedlin, Menzies & Associates, 423 p.
Science and the North: An Essay on Aspirations, by Peter Larkin, 8 p.

A Nuclear Dialogue: Proceedings of a Workshop on Issues in Nuclear Power for Canada, 75 p.

1977

An Overview of the Canadian Mercury Problem, by Clarence T. Charlebois, 20 p.
An Overview of the Vinyl Chloride Hazard in Canada, by J. Basuk, 16 p.
Materials Recycling: History, Status, Potential, by F.T. Gerson Limited, 98 p.

University Research Manpower: Concerns and Remedies, Proceedings of a Workshop on the Optimization of Age Distribution in University Research, 19 p.
The Workshop on Optimization of Age Distribution in University Research:
 Papers for Discussion, 215 p.
 Background Papers, 338 p.
Living with Climatic Change: A Proceedings, 90 p.
Proceedings of the Seminar on Natural Gas from the Arctic by Marine Mode: A Preliminary Assessment, 254 p.
Seminar on a National Transportation System for Optimum Service: A Proceedings, 73 p.

1978

A Northern Resource Centre: A First Step Toward a University of the North, by the Committee on Northern Development, 13 p.
An Overview of the Canadian Asbestos Problem, by Clarence T. Charlebois, 20 p.
An Overview of the Oxides of Nitrogen Problem in Canada, by J. Basuk, 48 p.
Federal Funding of Science in Canada: Apparent and Effective Levels, by J. Miedzinski and K.P. Beltzner, 78 p.

Appropriate Scale for Canadian Industry: A Proceedings, 211 p.
Proceedings of the Public Forum on Policies and Poisons, 40 p.
Science Policies in Smaller Industrialized Northern Countries: A Proceedings, 93 p.

1979

A Canadian Context for Science Education, by James E. Page, 52 p.
An Overview of the Ionizing Radiation Hazard in Canada, by J. Basuk, 225 p.
Canadian Food and Agriculture: Sustainability and Self-Reliance: A Discussion Paper, by the Committee on Canada's Scientific and Technological Contribution to World Food Supply, 52 p.

From the Bottom Up – Involvement of Canadian NGOs in Food and Rural Development in the Third World: A Proceedings, 153 p.
Opportunities in Canadian Transportation:
 Conference Proceedings: 1, 162 p.
 Auto Sub-Conference Proceedings: 2, 136 p.
 Bus/Rail Sub-Conference Proceedings: 3, 122 p.
 Air Sub-Conference Proceedings: 4, 131 p.
The Politics of an Industrial Strategy: A Proceedings, 115 p.

1980

Food for the Poor: The Role of CIDA in Agricultural, Fisheries and Rural Development, by Suteera Thomson, 194 p.
Science in Social Issues: Implications for Teaching, by Glen S. Aikenhead, 81 p.

Entropy and the Economic Process: A Proceedings, 107 p.
Opportunities in Canadian Transportation Conference Proceedings: 5, 270 p.
Proceedings of the Seminar on University Research in Jeopardy, 83 p.
Social Issues in Human Genetics – Genetic Screening and Counselling: A Proceedings, 110 p.
The Impact of the Microelectronics Revolution on Work and Working: A Proceedings, 73 p.

1981

An Engineer's View of Science Education, by Donald A. George, 34 p.

The Limits of Consultation: A Debate among Ottawa, the Provinces, and the Private Sector on an Industrial Strategy, by D. Brown, J. Eastman, with I. Robinson, 195 p.

Biotechnology in Canada – Promises and Concerns, 62 p.
Challenge of the Research Complex:
    Proceedings, 116 p.
    Papers, 324 p.
The Adoption of Foreign Technology by Canadian Industry, 152 p.
The Impact of the Microelectronics Revolution on the Canadian Electronics Industry, 109 p.
Policy Issues in Computer-Aided Learning

1982

What is Scientific Thinking? by Hugh Munby, 43 p.
Macroscole, A Holistic Approach to Science Teaching, by M. Risi, 61 p.

Québec Science Education – Which Directions?, 135 p.
Who Turns The Wheel?, 136 p.

1983

Parliamentarians and Science, by Karen Fish, 49 p.
Scientific Literacy: Towards Balance in Setting Goals for School Science Programs, by Douglas A. Roberts, 43 p.
The Conserver Society Revisited, by Ted Schrecker, 50 p.

A Workshop on Artificial Intelligence, 75 p.